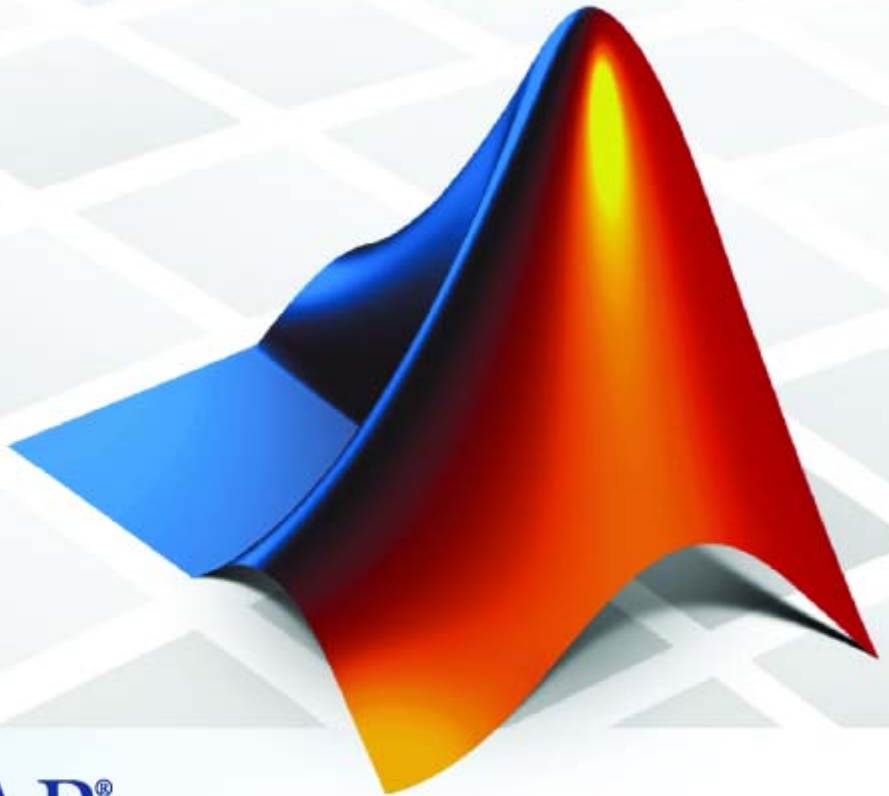


Bioinformatics Toolbox 2

Reference



MATLAB®

How to Contact The MathWorks



www.mathworks.com
comp.soft-sys.matlab
www.mathworks.com/contact_TS.html

Web
Newsgroup
Technical Support



suggest@mathworks.com
bugs@mathworks.com
doc@mathworks.com
service@mathworks.com
info@mathworks.com

Product enhancement suggestions
Bug reports
Documentation error reports
Order status, license renewals, passcodes
Sales, pricing, and general information



508-647-7000 (Phone)



508-647-7001 (Fax)



The MathWorks, Inc.
3 Apple Hill Drive
Natick, MA 01760-2098

For contact information about worldwide offices, see the MathWorks Web site.

Bioinformatics Toolbox Reference

© COPYRIGHT 2003–2007 by The MathWorks, Inc.

The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement. The software may be used or copied only under the terms of the license agreement. No part of this manual may be photocopied or reproduced in any form without prior written consent from The MathWorks, Inc.

FEDERAL ACQUISITION: This provision applies to all acquisitions of the Program and Documentation by, for, or through the federal government of the United States. By accepting delivery of the Program or Documentation, the government hereby agrees that this software or documentation qualifies as commercial computer software or commercial computer software documentation as such terms are used or defined in FAR 12.212, DFARS Part 227.72, and DFARS 252.227-7014. Accordingly, the terms and conditions of this Agreement and only those rights specified in this Agreement, shall pertain to and govern the use, modification, reproduction, release, performance, display, and disclosure of the Program and Documentation by the federal government (or other entity acquiring for or through the federal government) and shall supersede any conflicting contractual terms or conditions. If this License fails to meet the government's needs or is inconsistent in any respect with federal procurement law, the government agrees to return the Program and Documentation, unused, to The MathWorks, Inc.

Trademarks

MATLAB, Simulink, Stateflow, Handle Graphics, Real-Time Workshop, and xPC TargetBox are registered trademarks, and SimBiology, SimEvents, and SimHydraulics are trademarks of The MathWorks, Inc.

Other product or brand names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

Patents

The MathWorks products are protected by one or more U.S. patents. Please see www.mathworks.com/patents for more information.

Revision History

May 2005 Online only
September 2005 Online only
November 2005 Online only
March 2006 Online only
May 2006 Online only
September 2006 Online only
March 2007 Online only
April 2007 Online only

New for Version 2.1 (Release 14SP2+)
Revised for Version 2.1.1 (Release 14SP3)
Revised for Version 2.2 (Release 14SP3+)
Revised for Version 2.2.1 (Release 2006a)
Revised for Version 2.3 (Release 2006a+)
Revised for Version 2.4 (Release 2006b)
Revised for Version 2.5 (Release 2007a)
Revised for Version 2.6 (Release 2007a+)

Functions — By Category

1

Constructor	1-3
Data Formats and Databases	1-3
Trace Tools	1-5
Sequence Conversion	1-6
Sequence Utilities	1-7
Sequence Statistics	1-8
Sequence Visualization	1-9
Pair-wise Sequence Alignment	1-10
Multiple Sequence Alignment	1-10
Scoring Matrices	1-11
Phylogenetic Tree Tools	1-11
Graph Theory	1-12
Gene Ontology	1-13
Protein Analysis	1-13
Profile Hidden Markov Models	1-14

Microarray File Formats	1-15
Microarray Utility	1-15
Microarray Data Analysis and Visualization	1-16
Microarray Normalization and Filtering	1-17
Statistical Learning	1-18
Mass Spectrometry File Formats, Preprocessing, and Visualization	1-19

Functions — Alphabetical List

2

Methods — By Category

3

Phylogenetic Tree	3-1
Graph Visualization	3-2
Gene Ontology	3-3

Methods — Alphabetical List

4

Objects — Alphabetical List

5

Index

Functions — By Category

Constructor (p. 1-3)	Create objects
Data Formats and Databases (p. 1-3)	Get data into MATLAB® from Web databases; read and write to files using specific sequence data formats
Trace Tools (p. 1-5)	Read data from SCF file and draw nucleotide trace plots
Sequence Conversion (p. 1-6)	Convert nucleotide and amino acid sequences between character and integer formats, reverse and complement order of nucleotide bases, and translate nucleotides codons to amino acids
Sequence Utilities (p. 1-7)	Calculate consensus sequence from set of multiply aligned sequences, run BLAST search from MATLAB, and search sequences using regular expressions
Sequence Statistics (p. 1-8)	Determine base counts, nucleotide density, codon bias, and CpG islands; search for words and identify open reading frames (ORFs)
Sequence Visualization (p. 1-9)	Visualize sequence data
Pair-wise Sequence Alignment (p. 1-10)	Compare nucleotide or amino acid sequences using pair-wise sequence alignment functions

Multiple Sequence Alignment (p. 1-10)	Compare sets of nucleotide or amino acid sequences; progressively align sequences using phylogenetic tree for guidance
Scoring Matrices (p. 1-11)	Standard scoring matrices such as PAM and BLOSUM families of matrices that alignment functions use.
Phylogenetic Tree Tools (p. 1-11)	Read phylogenetic tree files, calculate pair-wise distances between sequences, and build a phylogenetic tree
Graph Theory (p. 1-12)	Apply basic graph theory algorithms to sparse matrices
Gene Ontology (p. 1-13)	Read Gene Ontology formatted files
Protein Analysis (p. 1-13)	Determine protein characteristics and simulate enzyme cleavage reactions
Profile Hidden Markov Models (p. 1-14)	Get profile hidden Markov model data from the PFAM database or create your own profiles from set of sequences
Microarray File Formats (p. 1-15)	Read data from common microarray file formats including Affymetrix [®] GeneChip [®] , ImaGene results, and SPOT files; read GenePix GPR and GAL files
Microarray Utility (p. 1-15)	Using Affymetrix and GeneChip data sets, get library information for probe, gene information from probe set, and probe set values from CEL and CDF information; show probe set information from the NetAffx [™] Web site and plot probe set values

Microarray Data Analysis and Visualization (p. 1-16)	Analyze and visualize microarray data with t tests, spatial plots, box plots, loglog plots, and intensity-ratio plots
Microarray Normalization and Filtering (p. 1-17)	Normalize microarray data with lowess and mean normalization functions; filter raw data for cleanup before analysis
Statistical Learning (p. 1-18)	Classify and identify features in data sets, set up cross-validation experiments, and compare different classification methods
Mass Spectrometry File Formats, Preprocessing, and Visualization (p. 1-19)	Read data from common mass spectrometry file formats, preprocess raw mass spectrometry data from instruments, and analyze spectra to identify patterns and compounds

Constructor

biograph	Create biograph object
geneont	Create geneont object
phytree	Create phytree object

Data Formats and Databases

affyprobeseqread	Read data file containing probe sequence information for Affymetrix GeneChip array
affyread	Read microarray data from Affymetrix GeneChip file

agferead	Read Agilent Feature Extraction Software file
blastread	Read data from NCBI BLAST report file
celintensityread	Read probe intensities from Affymetrix CEL files
emblread	Read data from EMBL file
fastaread	Read data from FASTA file
fastawrite	Write to file using FASTA format
galread	Read microarray data from GenePix array list file
genbankread	Read data from GenBank file
genpeptread	Read data from GenPept file
geosoftread	Read Gene Expression Omnibus (GEO) SOFT format data
getblast	Retrieve BLAST report from NCBI Web site
getembl	Sequence information from EMBL database
getgenbank	Sequence information from GenBank database
getgenpept	Retrieve sequence information from GenPept database
getgeodata	Retrieve Gene Expression Omnibus (GEO) Sample (GSM) data
gethmmalignment	Retrieve multiple sequence alignment associated with hidden Markov model (HMM) profile from PFAM database
gethmmprof	Retrieve hidden Markov model (HMM) profile from PFAM database

gethmmtree	Phylogenetic tree data from PFAM database
getpdb	Retrieve protein structure data from Protein Data Bank (PDB) database
gprread	Read microarray data from GenePix Results (GPR) file
imageneread	Read microarray data from ImaGene Results file
jcampread	Read JCAMP-DX formatted files
multialignread	Read multiple-sequence alignment file
mzxmlread	Read mzXML file into MATLAB as structure
pdbread	Read data from Protein Data Bank (PDB) file
pdbwrite	Write to file using Protein Data Bank (PDB) format
pfamhmmread	Read data from PFAM-HMM file
phytreeread	Read phylogenetic tree file
phytreewrite	Write phylogenetic tree object to Newick-formatted file
scfread	Read trace data from SCF file
sptread	Read data from SPOT file

Trace Tools

scfread	Read trace data from SCF file
traceplot	Draw nucleotide trace plots

Sequence Conversion

aa2int	Convert amino acid sequence from letter to integer representation
aa2nt	Convert amino acid sequence to nucleotide sequence
aminolookup	Find amino acid codes, integers, abbreviations, names, and codons
baselookup	Nucleotide codes, abbreviations, and names
dna2rna	Convert DNA sequence to RNA sequence
int2aa	Convert amino acid sequence from integer to letter representation
int2nt	Convert nucleotide sequence from integer to letter representation
nt2aa	Convert nucleotide sequence to amino acid sequence
nt2int	Convert nucleotide sequence from letter to integer representation
rna2dna	Convert RNA sequence of nucleotides to DNA sequence
seq2regex	Convert sequence with ambiguous characters to regular expression
seqcomplement	Calculate complementary strand of nucleotide sequence
seqrcomplement	Calculate reverse complement of nucleotide sequence
seqreverse	Reverse letters or numbers in nucleotide sequence

Sequence Utilities

<code>aminolookup</code>	Find amino acid codes, integers, abbreviations, names, and codons
<code>baselookup</code>	Nucleotide codes, abbreviations, and names
<code>blastncbi</code>	Create remote NCBI BLAST report request ID
<code>cleave</code>	Cleave amino acid sequence with enzyme
<code>evalrasmolscript</code>	Send RasMol script commands to Molecule Viewer window
<code>featuresparse</code>	Parse features from GenBank, GenPept, or EMBL data
<code>geneticcode</code>	Nucleotide codon to amino acid mapping
<code>joinseq</code>	Join two sequences to produce shortest supersequence
<code>molviewer</code>	Display and manipulate 3-D molecule structure
<code>oligoprop</code>	Calculate sequence properties of DNA oligonucleotide
<code>palindromes</code>	Find palindromes in sequence
<code>pdbdistplot</code>	Visualize intermolecular distances in Protein Data Bank (PDB) file
<code>proteinplot</code>	Characteristics for amino acid sequences
<code>proteinpropplot</code>	Plot properties of amino acid sequence
<code>ramachandran</code>	Draw Ramachandran plot for Protein Data Bank (PDB) data

<code>randseq</code>	Generate random sequence from finite alphabet
<code>rebasecuts</code>	Find restriction enzymes that cut protein sequence
<code>restrict</code>	Split nucleotide sequence at restriction site
<code>revgeneticcode</code>	Reverse mapping for genetic code
<code>seqconsensus</code>	Calculate consensus sequence
<code>seqdisp</code>	Format long sequence output for easy viewing
<code>seqinsertgaps</code>	Insert gaps into nucleotide or amino acid sequence
<code>seqlogo</code>	Display sequence logo for nucleotide or amino acid sequences
<code>seqmatch</code>	Find matches for every string in library
<code>seqprofile</code>	Calculate sequence profile from set of multiply aligned sequences
<code>seqshoworfs</code>	Display open reading frames in sequence

Sequence Statistics

<code>aaaccount</code>	Count amino acids in sequence
<code>aminolookup</code>	Find amino acid codes, integers, abbreviations, names, and codons
<code>basecount</code>	Count nucleotides in sequence
<code>baselookup</code>	Nucleotide codes, abbreviations, and names

codonbias	Calculate codon frequency for each amino acid in DNA sequence
codoncount	Count codons in nucleotide sequence
cpgisland	Locate CpG islands in DNA sequence
dimercount	Count dimers in sequence
isoelectric	Estimate isoelectric point for amino acid sequence
molweight	Calculate molecular weight of amino acid sequence
nmercount	Count number of n-mers in nucleotide or amino acid sequence
ntdensity	Plot density of nucleotides along sequence
seqshowwords	Graphically display words in sequence
seqwordcount	Count number of occurrences of word in sequence

Sequence Visualization

featuresmap	Draw linear or circular map of features from GenBank structure
seqtool	Open tool to interactively explore biological sequences

Pair-wise Sequence Alignment

<code>fastaread</code>	Read data from FASTA file
<code>nwalign</code>	Globally align two sequences using Needleman-Wunsch algorithm
<code>seqdotplot</code>	Create dot plot of two sequences
<code>showalignment</code>	Sequence alignment with color
<code>swalign</code>	Locally align two sequences using Smith-Waterman algorithm

Multiple Sequence Alignment

<code>fastaread</code>	Read data from FASTA file
<code>multialign</code>	Align multiple sequences using progressive method
<code>multialignread</code>	Read multiple-sequence alignment file
<code>multialignviewer</code>	Open viewer for multiple sequence alignments
<code>profalign</code>	Align two profiles using Needleman-Wunsch global alignment
<code>seqpdist</code>	Calculate pair-wise distance between sequences
<code>showalignment</code>	Sequence alignment with color

Scoring Matrices

<code>blosum</code>	BLOSUM scoring matrix
<code>dayhoff</code>	Dayhoff scoring matrix
<code>gonnet</code>	Gonnet scoring matrix
<code>nuc44</code>	NUC44 scoring matrix for nucleotide sequences
<code>pam</code>	PAM scoring matrix

Phylogenetic Tree Tools

<code>dnds</code>	Estimate synonymous and nonsynonymous substitution rates
<code>dndsm1</code>	Estimate synonymous and nonsynonymous substitution rates using maximum likelihood method
<code>gethmmtree</code>	Phylogenetic tree data from PFAM database
<code>phytreeread</code>	Read phylogenetic tree file
<code>phytreetool</code>	View, edit, and explore phylogenetic tree data
<code>phytreewrite</code>	Write phylogenetic tree object to Newick-formatted file
<code>seqinsertgaps</code>	Insert gaps into nucleotide or amino acid sequence
<code>seqlinkage</code>	Construct phylogenetic tree from pair-wise distances

seqneighjoin

Neighbor-joining method for phylogenetic tree reconstruction

seqpdist

Calculate pair-wise distance between sequences

Graph Theory

graphallshortestpaths

Find all shortest paths in graph

graphconncomp

Find strongly or weakly connected components in graph

graphisdag

Test for cycles in directed graph

graphisomorphism

Find isomorphism between two graphs

graphisspantree

Determine if tree is spanning tree

graphmaxflow

Calculate maximum flow and minimum cut in directed graph

graphminspantree

Find minimal spanning tree in graph

graphpred2path

Convert predecessor indices to paths

graphshortestpath

Solve shortest path problem in graph

graphtopoorder

Perform topological sort of directed acyclic graph

graphtraverse

Traverse graph by following adjacent nodes

Gene Ontology

goannotread	Annotations from Gene Ontology annotated file
num2goid	Convert numbers to Gene Ontology IDs

Protein Analysis

aaccount	Count amino acids in sequence
aminolookup	Find amino acid codes, integers, abbreviations, names, and codons
atomiccomp	Calculate atomic composition of protein
cleave	Cleave amino acid sequence with enzyme
evalrasmolscript	Send RasMol script commands to Molecule Viewer window
isoelectric	Estimate isoelectric point for amino acid sequence
molviewer	Display and manipulate 3-D molecule structure
molweight	Calculate molecular weight of amino acid sequence
pdbdistplot	Visualize intermolecular distances in Protein Data Bank (PDB) file
proteinplot	Characteristics for amino acid sequences
proteinpropplot	Plot properties of amino acid sequence

<code>ramachandran</code>	Draw Ramachandran plot for Protein Data Bank (PDB) data
<code>rebasecuts</code>	Find restriction enzymes that cut protein sequence

Profile Hidden Markov Models

<code>gethmmalignment</code>	Retrieve multiple sequence alignment associated with hidden Markov model (HMM) profile from PFAM database
<code>gethmmprof</code>	Retrieve hidden Markov model (HMM) profile from PFAM database
<code>gethmmtree</code>	Phylogenetic tree data from PFAM database
<code>hmmprofalign</code>	Align query sequence to profile using hidden Markov model alignment
<code>hmmprofestimate</code>	Estimate profile Hidden Markov Model (HMM) parameters using pseudocounts
<code>hmmprofgenerate</code>	Generate random sequence drawn from profile Hidden Markov Model (HMM)
<code>hmmprofmerge</code>	Concatenate prealigned strings of several sequences to profile Hidden Markov Model (HMM)
<code>hmmprofstruct</code>	Create profile Hidden Markov Model (HMM) structure
<code>pfamhmmread</code>	Read data from PFAM-HMM file
<code>showhmmprof</code>	Plot Hidden Markov Model (HMM) profile

Microarray File Formats

affyprobeseqread	Read data file containing probe sequence information for Affymetrix GeneChip array
affyread	Read microarray data from Affymetrix GeneChip file
agferead	Read Agilent Feature Extraction Software file
celintensityread	Read probe intensities from Affymetrix CEL files
galread	Read microarray data from GenePix array list file
geosoftread	Read Gene Expression Omnibus (GEO) SOFT format data
getgeodata	Retrieve Gene Expression Omnibus (GEO) Sample (GSM) data
gprread	Read microarray data from GenePix Results (GPR) file
imageneread	Read microarray data from ImaGene Results file
sptread	Read data from SPOT file

Microarray Utility

magetfield	Extract data from microarray structure
probelibraryinfo	Create table of probe set library information
probesetlink	Display probe set information on NetAffx Web site

<code>probesetlookup</code>	Look up information for probe set
<code>probesetplot</code>	Plot Affymetrix probe set intensity values
<code>probesetvalues</code>	Create table of Affymetrix probe set intensity values

Microarray Data Analysis and Visualization

<code>clustergram</code>	Create dendrogram and heat map
<code>maboxplot</code>	Box plot for microarray data
<code>mafdr</code>	Estimate false discovery rate (FDR) of differentially expressed genes from two experimental conditions or phenotypes
<code>maimage</code>	Spatial image for microarray data
<code>mairplot</code>	Create intensity versus ratio scatter plot of microarray data
<code>maloglog</code>	Create loglog plot of microarray data
<code>mapcaplot</code>	Create Principal Component Analysis plot of microarray data
<code>mattest</code>	Perform two-tailed t-test to evaluate differential expression of genes from two experimental conditions or phenotypes
<code>mavolcanoplot</code>	Create significance versus gene expression ratio (fold change) scatter plot of microarray data
<code>redgreencmap</code>	Create red and green color map

Microarray Normalization and Filtering

<code>affyinvarsetnorm</code>	Perform rank invariant set normalization on probe intensities from multiple Affymetrix CEL or DAT files
<code>affyprobeaffinities</code>	Compute Affymetrix probe affinities from their sequences and MM probe intensities
<code>exprprofrange</code>	Calculate range of gene expression profiles
<code>exprprofvar</code>	Calculate variance of gene expression profiles
<code>gcrma</code>	Perform GC Robust Multi-array Average (GCRMA) background adjustment, quantile normalization, and median-polish summarization on Affymetrix microarray probe-level data
<code>gcrmabackadj</code>	Perform GC Robust Multi-array Average (GCRMA) background adjustment on Affymetrix microarray probe-level data using sequence information
<code>geneentropyfilter</code>	Remove genes with low entropy expression values
<code>genelowvalfilter</code>	Remove gene profiles with low absolute values
<code>generangefilter</code>	Remove gene profiles with small profile ranges
<code>genevarfilter</code>	Filter genes with small profile variance

<code>mainvarsetnorm</code>	Perform rank invariant set normalization on gene expression values from two experimental conditions or phenotypes
<code>malowess</code>	Smooth microarray data using Lowess method
<code>manorm</code>	Normalize microarray data
<code>quantilenorm</code>	Quantile normalization over multiple arrays
<code>rmabackadj</code>	Perform background adjustment on Affymetrix microarray probe-level data using Robust Multi-array Average (RMA) procedure
<code>rmasummary</code>	Calculate gene (probe set) expression values from Affymetrix microarray probe-level data using Robust Multi-array Average (RMA) procedure
<code>zonebackadj</code>	Perform background adjustment on Affymetrix microarray probe-level data using zone-based method

Statistical Learning

<code>classperf</code>	Evaluate performance of classifier
<code>crossvalind</code>	Generate cross-validation indices
<code>knnclassify</code>	Classify data using nearest neighbor method
<code>knnimpute</code>	Impute missing data using nearest-neighbor method
<code>optimalleaforder</code>	Determine optimal leaf ordering for hierarchical binary cluster tree

randfeatures	Generate randomized subset of features
rankfeatures	Rank key features by class separability criteria
samplealign	Align two data sets containing sequential observations by introducing gaps
svmclassify	Classify data using support vector machine
svmsmoset	Create or edit Sequential Minimal Optimization (SMO) options structure
svmtrain	Train support vector machine classifier

Mass Spectrometry File Formats, Preprocessing, and Visualization

jcampread	Read JCAMP-DX formatted files
msalign	Align peaks in mass spectrum to reference peaks
msbackadj	Correct baseline of mass spectrum
msdotplot	Plot set of peak lists from LC/MS or GC/MS data set
msheatmap	Create pseudocolor image of set of mass spectra
mslowess	Smooth mass spectrum using nonparametric method
msnorm	Normalize set of mass spectra

<code>malign</code>	Align mass spectra from multiple peak lists from LC/MS or GC/MS data set
<code>mspeaks</code>	Convert raw mass spectrometry data to peak list (centroided data)
<code>mppresample</code>	Resample mass spectrometry signal while preserving peaks
<code>msresample</code>	Resample mass spectrometry signal
<code>mssgolay</code>	Smooth mass spectrum with least-squares polynomial
<code>msviewer</code>	Explore mass spectrum or set of mass spectra
<code>mzxml2peaks</code>	Convert mzXML structure to peak list
<code>mzxmlread</code>	Read mzXML file into MATLAB as structure
<code>samplealign</code>	Align two data sets containing sequential observations by introducing gaps

Functions — Alphabetical List

aa2int

Purpose Convert amino acid sequence from letter to integer representation

Syntax `SeqInt = aa2int(SeqChar)`

Arguments `SeqChar` Either of the following:

- Character string of single-letter codes specifying an amino acid sequence. See the table Mapping Amino Acid Letters to Integers on page 2-2 for valid codes. Unknown characters are mapped to 0. Integers are arbitrarily assigned to IUB/IUPAC letters.
- Structure containing a Sequence field that contains an amino acid sequence, such as returned by `fastaread`, `getembl`, `getgenpept`, or `getpdb`.

Return Values `SeqInt` Row vector of integers specifying an amino acid sequence.

Mapping Amino Acid Letters to Integers

Amino Acid	Code	Integer
Alanine	A	1
Arginine	R	2
Asparagine	N	3
Aspartic acid (Aspartate)	D	4
Cysteine	C	5
Glutamine	Q	6
Glutamic acid (Glutamate)	E	7
Glycine	G	8
Histidine	H	9

Amino Acid	Code	Integer
Isoleucine	I	10
Leucine	L	11
Lysine	K	12
Methionine	M	13
Phenylalanine	F	14
Proline	P	15
Serine	S	16
Threonine	T	17
Tryptophan	W	18
Tyrosine	Y	19
Valine	V	20
Asparagine or Aspartic acid (Aspartate)	B	21
Glutamine or Glutamic acid (Glutamate)	Z	22
Any amino acid	X	23
Translation stop	*	24
Gap of indeterminate length	-	25
Unknown or any character or symbol not in table	?	0

Description

$SeqInt = aa2int(SeqChar)$ converts *SeqChar*, a string of single-letter codes specifying an amino acid sequence, to *SeqInt*, a 1-by-N array of integers specifying the same amino acid sequence. See the table Mapping Amino Acid Letters to Integers on page 2-2 for valid codes.

Examples

Converting a Simple Sequence

Convert the sequence of letters MATLAB to integers.

```
SeqInt = aa2int('MATLAB')
```

```
SeqInt =
```

```
13    1    17    11    1    21
```

Converting a Random Sequence

Convert a random amino acid sequence of letters to integers.

- 1 Create a random character string to represent an amino acid sequence.

```
SeqChar = randseq(20, 'alphabet', 'amino')
```

```
SeqChar =
```

```
dwcztecakfuecvifchds
```

- 2 Convert the amino acid sequence from letter to integer representation.

```
SeqInt = aa2int(SeqChar)
```

```
SeqInt =
```

```
Columns 1 through 13
```

```
4 18 5 22 17 7 5 1 12 14 0 7 5
```

```
Columns 14 through 20
```

```
20 10 14 5 9 4 16
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: aminolookup, int2aa, int2nt, nt2int

Purpose Convert amino acid sequence to nucleotide sequence

Syntax

```
SeqNT = aa2nt(SeqAA)
aa2nt(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
aa2nt(..., 'GeneticCode', GeneticCodeValue)
aa2nt(..., 'Alphabet' AlphabetValue)
```

Arguments

<i>SeqAA</i>	Amino acid sequence. Enter a character string or a vector of integers from the table. Examples: 'ARN' or [1 2 3]
<i>GeneticCodeValue</i>	Property to select a genetic code. Enter a code number or code name from the Genetic Code on page 2-5 table below. If you use a code name, you can truncate the name to the first two characters of the name.
<i>AlphabetValue</i>	Property to select a nucleotide alphabet. Enter either 'DNA' or 'RNA'. The default value is 'DNA', which uses the symbols A, C, T, G. The value 'RNA' uses the symbols A, C, U, G.

Genetic Code

Code Number	Code Name	Code Number	Code Name
1	Standard	12	Alternative Yeast Nuclear
2	Vertebrate Mitochondrial	13	Ascidian Mitochondrial
3	Yeast Mitochondrial	14	Flatworm Mitochondrial

Code Number	Code Name	Code Number	Code Name
4	Mold, Protozoan, Coelenterate Mitochondrial, and Mycoplasma /Spiroplasma	15	Blepharisma Nuclear
5	Invertebrate Mitochondrial	16	Chlorophycean Mitochondrial
6	Ciliate, Dasycladacean, and Hexamita Nuclear	21	Trematode Mitochondrial
9	Echinoderm Mitochondrial	22	Scenedesmus Obliquus Mitochondrial
10	Euplotid Nuclear	23	Thraustochytrium Mitochondrial
11	Bacterial and Plant Plastid		

Description

SeqNT = *aa2nt(SeqAA)* converts an amino acid sequence (*SeqAA*) to a nucleotide sequence (*SeqNT*) using the standard genetic code. In general, the mapping from an amino acid to a nucleotide codon is not a one-to-one mapping. For amino acids with more than one possible nucleotide codon, this function selects randomly a codon corresponding to that particular amino acid.

For the ambiguous characters B and Z, one of the amino acids corresponding to the letter is selected randomly, and then a codon sequence is selected randomly. For the ambiguous character X, a codon sequence is selected randomly from all possibilities.

aa2nt(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...) defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`aa2nt(..., 'GeneticCode', GeneticCodeValue)` selects a genetic code (*GeneticCodeValue*) to use when converting an amino acid sequence (*SeqAA*) to a nucleotide sequence (*SeqNT*).

`aa2nt(..., 'Alphabet' AlphabetValue)` selects a nucleotide alphabet (*AlphabetValue*).

Standard Genetic Code

Amino Acid		Amino Acid	
Alanine (A)	GCT, GCC, GCA, GCG	Phenylalanine (F)	TTT, TTC
Arginine (R)	CGT, CGC, CGA, CCG, AGA, AGG	Proline (P)	CCT, CCC, CCA, CCG
Asparagine (N)	ATT, AAC	Serine (S)	TCT, TCC, TCA, TCG, AGT, AGC
Aspartic acid (Aspartate, D)	GAT, GAC	Threonine (T)	ACT, ACC, ACA, ACG
Cysteine (C)	TGT, TGC	Tryptophan (W)	TGG
Glutamine (Q)	CAA, CAG	Tyrosine (Y)	TAT, TAC
Glutamic acid (Glutamate, E)	GAA, GAG	Valine (V)	GTT, GTC, GTA, GTG
Glycine (G)	GGT, GGC, GGA, GGG	Aspartic acid or Asparagine	B—random codon from D and N

Amino Acid		Amino Acid	
Histidine (H)	CAT, CAC	Glutamic acid or Glutamine	Z—random codon from E and Q
Isoleucine (I)	ATT, ATC, ATA	Unknown or any amino acid	X random codon
Leucine (L)	TTA, TTG, CTT, CTC, CTA, CTG	Translation stop (*)	TAA, TAG, TGA
Lysine (K)	AAA, AAG	Gap of indeterminate length (-)	---
Methionine (M)	ATG	Any character or any symbol not in table (?)	???

Examples

- 1 Convert an amino acid sequence to a nucleotide sequence using the standard genetic code.

```
aa2nt('MATLAB')
```

```
Warning: The sequence contains ambiguous characters.
```

```
ans =
ATGGCAACCCTGGCGAAT
```

- 2 Use the Vertebrate Mitochondrial genetic code.

```
aa2nt('MATLAP', 'GeneticCode', 2)
```

```
ans =
ATGGCAACTCTAGCGCCT
```

- 3 Use the genetic code for the Echinoderm Mitochondrial RNA alphabet.

```
aa2nt('MATLAB','GeneticCode','ec','Alphabet','RNA')
```

```
Warning: The sequence contains ambiguous characters.
```

```
ans =  
AUGGCUACAUUGGCUGAU
```

4 Convert a sequence with the ambiguous amino acid character B.

```
aa2nt('abcd')
```

```
Warning: The sequence contains ambiguous characters.
```

```
ans =  
GCCACATGCGAC
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `geneticcode`, `nt2aa`,
`revgeneticcode`, `seqtool`

MATLAB function: `rand`

aaccount

Purpose Count amino acids in sequence

Syntax

```
Amino = aaccount(SeqAA)  
aaccount(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)  
aaccount(..., 'Chart', ChartValue)  
aaccount(..., 'Others', OthersValue)  
aaccount(..., 'Structure', StructureValue)
```

Arguments

<i>SeqAA</i>	Amino acid sequence. Enter a character string or vector of integers from the table. Examples: 'ARN' or [1 2 3]. You can also enter a structure with the field <i>Sequence</i> .
<i>ChartValue</i>	Property to select a type of plot. Enter either 'pie' or 'bar'.
<i>OthersValue</i>	Property to control the counting of ambiguous characters individually. Enter either 'full' or 'bundle' (default).
<i>StructureValue</i>	Property to control blocking the unknown characters warning and to not count unknown characters.

Description

Amino = aaccount(*SeqAA*) counts the type and number of amino acids in an amino acid sequence (*SeqAA*) and returns the counts in a 1-by-1 structure (*Amino*) with fields for the standard 20 amino acids (A R N D C Q E G H I L K M F P S T W Y V).

- If a sequence contains amino acids with ambiguous characters (B, Z, X), the stop character (*), or gaps indicated with a hyphen (-), the field *Others* is added to the structure and a warning message is displayed.

Warning: Symbols other than the standard 20 amino acids appear in the sequence.

- If a sequence contains any characters other than the 20 standard amino acids, ambiguous characters, stop, and gap characters, the characters are counted in the field `Others` and a warning message is displayed.

Warning: Sequence contains unknown characters. These will be ignored.

- If the property `Others = 'full'`, this function lists the ambiguous characters separately, asterisks are counted in a new field (`Stop`), and hyphens are counted in a new field (`Gap`).

`aaccount(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs:

`aaccount(..., 'Chart', ChartValue)` creates a chart showing the relative proportions of the amino acids.

`aaccount(..., 'Others', OthersValue)`, when `OthersValue` is `'full'`, counts the ambiguous amino acid characters individually instead of adding them together in the field `Others`.

`aaccount(..., 'Structure', StructureValue)`, when `StructureValue` is `'full'`, blocks the unknown characters warning and ignores counting unknown characters.

- `aaccount(SeqAA)` — Display 20 amino acids, and only if there are ambiguous and unknown characters, add an `Others` field with the counts.
- `aaccount(SeqAA, 'Others', 'full')` — Display 20 amino acids, 3 ambiguous amino acids, stops, gaps, and only if there are unknown characters, add an `Others` field with the unknown counts.
- `aaccount(SeqAA, 'Structure', 'full')` — Display 20 amino acids and always display an `Others` field. If there are ambiguous and unknown characters, add counts to the `Others` field; otherwise display 0.

aaccount

- `aaccount(SeqAA, 'Others', 'full', 'Structure', 'full')` — Display 20 amino acids, 3 ambiguous amino acids, stops, gaps, and Others field. If there are unknown characters, add counts to the Others field otherwise display 0.

Examples

- 1 Create a sequence.

```
Seq = aaccount('MATLAB')
```

- 2 Count the amino acids in the sequence.

```
AA = aaccount(Seq)
```

```
Warning: Symbols other than the standard 20 amino acids appear  
in the sequence.
```

```
AA =  
A: 2  
R: 0  
N: 0  
D: 0  
C: 0  
Q: 0  
E: 0  
G: 0  
H: 0  
I: 0  
L: 1  
K: 0  
M: 1  
F: 0  
P: 0  
S: 0  
T: 1  
W: 0  
Y: 0  
V: 0  
Others: 1
```


3 Get the count for alanine (A) residues.

```
AA.A  
ans =  
    2
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `aminolookup`, `atomiccomp`, `basecount`, `codoncount`, `dimercount`, `isoelectric`, `molweight`, `proteinplot`, `seqtool`

affyinvvarsetnorm

Purpose Perform rank invariant set normalization on probe intensities from multiple Affymetrix CEL or DAT files

Syntax

```
NormData = affyinvvarsetnorm(Data)
[NormData, MedStructure] = affyinvvarsetnorm(Data)
... affyinvvarsetnorm(..., 'Baseline', BaselineValue, ...)
... affyinvvarsetnorm(..., 'Thresholds',
ThresholdsValue, ...)
... affyinvvarsetnorm(..., 'StopPrctile',
StopPrctileValue, ...)
... affyinvvarsetnorm(..., 'RayPrctile',
RayPrctileValue, ...)
... affyinvvarsetnorm(..., 'Method', MethodValue, ...)
... affyinvvarsetnorm(..., 'Showplot', ShowplotValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>Data</i>	Matrix of intensity values where each row corresponds to a perfect match (PM) probe and each column corresponds to an Affymetrix CEL or DAT file. (Each CEL or DAT file is generated from a separate chip. All chips should be of the same type.)
<i>MedStructure</i>	Structure of each column's intensity median before and after normalization, and the index of the column chosen as the baseline.
<i>BaselineValue</i>	Property to control the selection of the column index <i>N</i> from <i>Data</i> to be used as the baseline column. Default is the column index whose median intensity is the median of all the columns.

ThresholdsValue Property to set the thresholds for the lowest average rank and the highest average rank, which are used to determine the invariant set. The rank invariant set is a set of data points whose proportional rank difference is smaller than a given threshold. The threshold for each data point is determined by interpolating between the threshold for the lowest average rank and the threshold for the highest average rank. Select these two thresholds empirically to limit the spread of the invariant set, but allow enough data points to determine the normalization relationship.

ThresholdsValue is a 1-by-2 vector [LT , HT] where LT is the threshold for the lowest average rank and HT is threshold for the highest average rank. Values must be between 0 and 1. Default is [0.05, 0.005].

StopPrctileValue Property to stop the iteration process when the number of data points in the invariant set reaches N percent of the total number of data points. Default is 1.

Note If you do not use this property, the iteration process continues until no more data points are eliminated.

RayPrctileValue Property to select the N percentage of the highest ranked invariant set of data points to fit a straight line through, while the remaining data points are fitted to a running median curve. The final running median curve is a piece-wise linear curve. Default is 1.5.

affyinvarsetnorm

<i>MethodValue</i>	Property to select the smoothing method used to normalize the data. Enter 'lowess' or 'runmedian'. Default is 'lowess'.
<i>ShowplotValue</i>	Property to control the plotting of two pairs of scatter plots (before and after normalization). The first pair plots baseline data versus data from a specified column (chip) from the matrix <i>Data</i> . The second is a pair of M-A scatter plots, which plots M (ratio between baseline and sample) versus A (the average of the baseline and sample). Enter either 'all' (plot a pair of scatter plots for each column or chip) or specify a subset of columns (chips) by entering the column number(s) or a range of numbers.

For example:

- ..., 'Showplot', 3, ...) plots data from column 3.
- ..., 'Showplot', [3,5,7], ...) plots data from columns 3, 5, and 7.
- ... , 'Showplot', 3:9, ...) plots data from columns 3 to 9.

Description

NormData = `affyinvarsetnorm(Data)` normalizes the values in each column (chip) of probe intensities in *Data* to a baseline reference, using the invariant set method. *NormData* is a matrix of normalized probe intensities from *Data*.

Specifically, `affyinvarsetnorm`:

- Selects a baseline index, typically the column whose median intensity is the median of all the columns.

- For each column, determines the proportional rank difference (*prd*) for each pair of ranks, *RankX* and *RankY*, from the sample column and the baseline reference.

$$prd = \text{abs}(\text{Rank}X - \text{Rank}Y)$$

- For each column, determines the invariant set of data points by selecting data points whose proportional rank differences (*prd*) are below *threshold*, which is a predetermined threshold for a given data point (defined by the *ThresholdsValue* property). It repeats the process until either no more data points are eliminated, or a predetermined percentage of data points is reached.

The invariant set is data points with a $prd < \text{threshold}$.

- For each column, uses the invariant set of data points to calculate the lowess or running median smoothing curve, which is used to normalize the data in that column.

[*NormData*, *MedStructure*] = `affyinvarsetnorm(Data)` also returns a structure of the index of the column chosen as the baseline and each column's intensity median before and after normalization.

Note If *Data* contains NaN values, then *NormData* will also contain NaN values at the corresponding positions.

`... affyinvarsetnorm(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties that use property name/value pairs in any order. These property name/value pairs are as follows:

`... affyinvarsetnorm(..., 'Baseline', BaselineValue, ...)` lets you select the column index *N* from *Data* to be the baseline column. Default is the index of the column whose median intensity is the median of all the columns.

... `affyinvarsetnorm(..., 'Thresholds', ThresholdsValue, ...)` sets the thresholds for the lowest average rank and the highest average rank, which are used to determine the invariant set. The rank invariant set is a set of data points whose proportional rank difference is smaller than a given threshold. The threshold for each data point is determined by interpolating between the threshold for the lowest average rank and the threshold for the highest average rank. Select these two thresholds empirically to limit the spread of the invariant set, but allow enough data points to determine the normalization relationship.

ThresholdsValue is a 1-by-2 vector [*LT*, *HT*] where *LT* is the threshold for the lowest average rank and *HT* is threshold for the highest average rank. Values must be between 0 and 1. Default is [0.05, 0.005].

... `affyinvarsetnorm(..., 'StopPrctile', StopPrctileValue, ...)` stops the iteration process when the number of data points in the invariant set reaches *N* percent of the total number of data points. Default is 1.

Note If you do not use this property, the iteration process continues until no more data points are eliminated.

... `affyinvarsetnorm(..., 'RayPrctile', RayPrctileValue, ...)` selects the *N* percentage of the highest ranked invariant set of data points to fit a straight line through, while the remaining data points are fitted to a running median curve. The final running median curve is a piece-wise linear curve. Default is 1.5.

... `affyinvarsetnorm(..., 'Method', MethodValue, ...)` selects the smoothing method for normalizing the data. When *MethodValue* is 'lowess', `affyinvarsetnorm` uses the lowess method. When *MethodValue* is 'runmedian', `affyinvarsetnorm` uses the running median method. Default is 'lowess'.

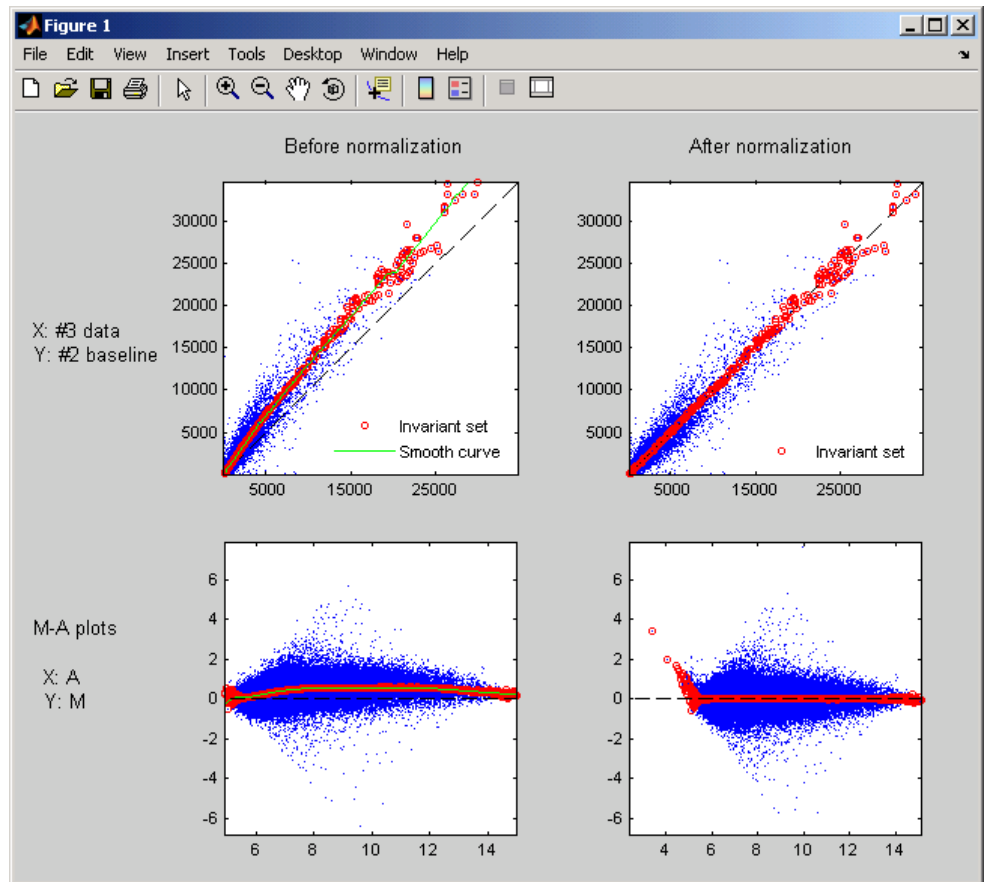
... `affyinvarsetnorm(..., 'Showplot', ShowplotValue, ...)` plots two pairs of scatter plots (before and after normalization). The

first pair plots baseline data versus data from a specified column (chip) from the matrix *Data*. The second is a pair of M-A scatter plots, which plots M (ratio between baseline and sample) versus A (the average of the baseline and sample). When *ShowplotValue* is 'all', *affyinvarsetnorm* plots a pair of scatter plots for each column or chip. When *ShowplotValue* is a number(s) or range of numbers, *affyinvarsetnorm* plots a pair of scatter plots for the indicated column numbers (chips).

For example:

- ..., 'Showplot', 3) plots the data from column 3 of *Data*.
- ..., 'Showplot', [3,5,7]) plots the data from columns 3, 5, and 7 of *Data*.
- ..., 'Showplot', 3:9) plots the data from columns 3 to 9 of *Data*.

affyinvarsetnorm



Examples

- 1 Load a MAT file, included with Bioinformatics Toolbox, which contains Affymetrix data variables, including `pmMatrix`, a matrix of PM probe intensity values from multiple CEL files.

```
load prostatecancerrawdata
```

- 2 Normalize the data in `pmMatrix`, using the `affyinvarsetnorm` function.


```
NormMatrix = affyinvvarsetnorm(pmMatrix);
```

The `prostatecancerrawdata.mat` file used in the previous example contains data from Best et al., 2005.

References

- [1] Li, C., and Wong, W.H. (2001). Model-based analysis of oligonucleotide arrays: model validation, design issues and standard error application. *Genome Biology* 2(8): research0032.1-0032.11.
- [2] <http://biosun1.harvard.edu/complab/dchip/normalizing%20arrays.htm#isn>
- [3] Best, C.J.M., Gillespie, J.W., Yi, Y., Chandramouli, G.V.R., Perlmutter, M.A., Gathright, Y., Erickson, H.S., Georgevich, L., Tangrea, M.A., Duray, P.H., Gonzalez, S., Velasco, A., Linehan, W.M., Matusik, R.J., Price, D.K., Figg, W.D., Emmert-Buck, M.R., and Chuaqui, R.F. (2005). Molecular alterations in primary prostate cancer after androgen ablation therapy. *Clinical Cancer Research* 11, 6823-6834.

See Also

`affyread`, `celintensityread`, `mainvarsetnorm`, `malowess`, `manorm`, `quantilenorm`, `rmabackadj`, `rmasummary`

affyprobeaffinities

Purpose

Compute Affymetrix probe affinities from their sequences and MM probe intensities

Syntax

```
[AffinPM, AffinMM] = affyprobeaffinities(SequenceMatrix,  
    MMIntensity)  
[AffinPM, AffinMM,  
    BaseProf] = affyprobeaffinities(SequenceMatrix,  
    MMIntensity)  
[AffinPM, AffinMM, BaseProf,  
    Stats] = affyprobeaffinities(SequenceMatrix, MMIntensity)  
... = affyprobeaffinities(SequenceMatrix, MMIntensity,  
    ...'ProbeIndices', ProbeIndicesValue, ...)  
... = affyprobeaffinities(SequenceMatrix, MMIntensity,  
    ...'Showplot', ShowplotValue, ...)
```

Arguments

SequenceMatrix

An N -by-25 matrix of sequence information for the perfect match (PM) probes on an Affymetrix GeneChip array, where N is the number of probes on the array. Each row corresponds to a probe, and each column corresponds to one of the 25 sequence positions. Nucleotides in the sequences are represented by one of the following integers:

- 0 — None
- 1 — A
- 2 — C
- 3 — G
- 4 — T

Tip You can use the `affyprobeseqread` function to generate this matrix. If you have this sequence information in letter representation, you can convert it to integer representation using the `nt2int` function.

MMIntensity

Column vector containing mismatch (MM) probe intensities from a CEL file, generated from a single Affymetrix GeneChip array. Each row corresponds to a probe.

Tip You can extract this column vector from the `MMIntensities` matrix returned by the `celintensityread` function.

affyprobeaffinities

ProbeIndicesValue Column vector containing probe indexing information. Probes within a probe set are numbered 0 through $N - 1$, where N is the number of probes in the probe set.

Tip You can use the `affyprobeseqread` function to generate this column vector.

ShowplotValue Controls the display of a plot showing the affinity values of each of the four bases (A, C, G, and T) for each of the 25 sequence positions, for all probes on the Affymetrix GeneChip array. Choices are `true` or `false` (default).

Return Values

AffinPM Column vector of PM probe affinities, computed from their probe sequences and MM probe intensities.

AffinMM Column vector of MM probe affinities, computed from their probe sequences and MM probe intensities.

Description

`[AffinPM, AffinMM] = affyprobeaffinities(SequenceMatrix, MMIntensity)` returns a column vector of PM probe affinities and a column vector of MM probe affinities, computed from their probe sequences and MM probe intensities. Each row in *AffinPM* and *AffinMM* corresponds to a probe. NaN is returned for probes with no sequence information. Each probe affinity is the sum of position-dependent base affinities. For a given base type, the positional effect is modeled as a polynomial of degree 3.

`[AffinPM, AffinMM, BaseProf] = affyprobeaffinities(SequenceMatrix, MMIntensity)` also estimates affinity coefficients using multiple linear regression. It

returns *BaseProf*, a 4-by-4 matrix containing the four parameters for a polynomial of degree 3, for each base, A, C, G, and T. Each row corresponds to a base, and each column corresponds to a parameter. These values are estimated from the probe sequences and intensities, and represent all probes on an Affymetrix GeneChip array.

[*AffinPM*, *AffinMM*, *BaseProf*, *Stats*] =
affyprobeaffinities(*SequenceMatrix*, *MMIntensity*) also returns
Stats, a row vector containing four statistics in the following order:

- R-square statistic
- F statistic
- p value
- error variance

... = affyprobeaffinities(*SequenceMatrix*, *MMIntensity*,
...'PropertyName', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls
affyprobeaffinities with optional properties that use
property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more
properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single
quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property
value pairs are as follows:

... = affyprobeaffinities(*SequenceMatrix*, *MMIntensity*,
...'ProbeIndices', *ProbeIndicesValue*, ...) uses probe indices to
normalize the probe intensities with the median of their probe set
intensities.

Tip Use of the *ProbeIndices* property is recommended only if your
MMIntensity data are not from a nonspecific binding experiment.

... = affyprobeaffinities(*SequenceMatrix*, *MMIntensity*,
...'Showplot', *ShowplotValue*, ...) controls the display of a plot of
the probe affinity base profile. Choices are true or false (default).

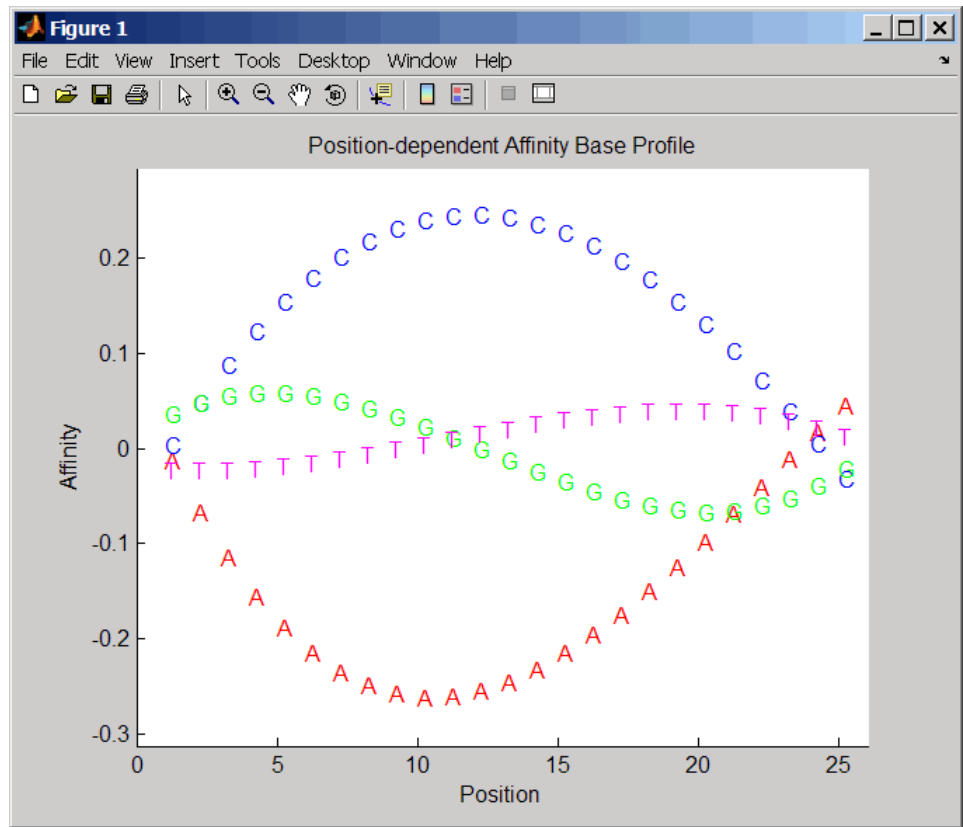
Examples

- 1 Load the MAT file, included with Bioinformatics Toolbox, that contains Affymetrix data from a prostate cancer study. The variables in the MAT file include `seqMatrix`, a matrix containing sequence information for PM probes, `mmMatrix`, a matrix containing MM probe intensity values, and `probeIndices`, a column vector containing probe indexing information.

```
load prostatecancerrawdata
```

- 2 Compute the Affymetrix PM and MM probe affinities from their sequences and MM probe intensities, and also plot the affinity values of each of the four bases (A, C, G, and T) for each of the 25 sequence positions, for all probes on the Affymetrix GeneChip array.

```
[apm, amm] = affyprobeaffinities(seqMatrix, mmMatrix(:,1),...  
                                'ProbeIndices', probeIndices, 'showplot', true);
```



The prostatecancerrawdata.mat file used in this example contains data from Best et al., 2005.

References

- [1] Naef, F., and Magnasco, M.O. (2003). Solving the Riddle of the Bright Mismatches: Labeling and Effective Binding in Oligonucleotide Arrays. *Physical Review E* 68, 011906.
- [2] Wu, Z., Irizarry, R.A., Gentleman, R., Murillo, F.M. and Spencer, F. (2004). A Model Based Background Adjustment for Oligonucleotide

affyprobeaffinities

Expression Arrays. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* 99(468), 909–917.

[3] Best, C.J.M., Gillespie, J.W., Yi, Y., Chandramouli, G.V.R., Perlmutter, M.A., Gathright, Y., Erickson, H.S., Georgevich, L., Tangrea, M.A., Duray, P.H., Gonzalez, S., Velasco, A., Linehan, W.M., Matusik, R.J., Price, D.K., Figg, W.D., Emmert-Buck, M.R., and Chuaqui, R.F. (2005). Molecular alterations in primary prostate cancer after androgen ablation therapy. *Clinical Cancer Research* 11, 6823–6834.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `affyprobeseqread`, `affyread`, `celintensityread`, `probelibraryinfo`

Purpose Read data file containing probe sequence information for Affymetrix GeneChip array

Syntax

```
Struct = affyprobeseqread(SeqFile, CDFFile)  
Struct = affyprobeseqread(SeqFile, CDFFile, ...'SeqPath',  
SeqPathValue, ...)  
Struct = affyprobeseqread(SeqFile, CDFFile, ...'CDFPath',  
CDFPathValue, ...)  
Struct = affyprobeseqread(SeqFile, CDFFile, ...'SeqOnly',  
SeqOnlyValue, ...)
```

affyprobeseqread

Arguments

SeqFile

String specifying a file name of a sequence file (tab-separated or FASTA) that contains the following information for a specific type of Affymetrix GeneChip array:

- Probe set IDs
- Probe x -coordinates
- Probe y -coordinates
- Probe sequences in each probe set
- Affymetrix GeneChip array type (FASTA file only)

The sequence file (tab-separated or FASTA) must be on the MATLAB search path or in the Current Directory (unless you use the *SeqPath* property). In a tab-separated file, each row represents a probe; in a FASTA file, each header represents a probe.

CDFFile

Either of the following:

- String specifying a file name of an Affymetrix CDF library file, which contains information that specifies which probe set each probe belongs to on a specific type of Affymetrix GeneChip array. The CDF library file must be on the MATLAB search path or in the MATLAB Current Directory (unless you use the *CDFPath* property).
- CDF structure, such as returned by the *affyread* function, which contains information that specifies which probe set each probe belongs to on a specific type of Affymetrix GeneChip array.

Caution Make sure that *SeqFile* and *CDFFile* contain information for the same type of Affymetrix GeneChip array.

SeqPathValue String specifying a directory or path and directory where *SeqFile* is stored.

CDFPathValue String specifying a directory or path and directory where *CDFFile* is stored.

SeqOnlyValue Controls the return of a structure, *Struct*, with only one field, *SequenceMatrix*. Choices are true or false (default).

Return Values

Struct MATLAB structure containing the following fields:

- ProbeSetIDs
- ProbeIndices
- SequenceMatrix

Description

Struct = `affyprobeseqread(SeqFile, CDFFile)` reads the data from files *SeqFile* and *CDFFile*, and stores the data in the MATLAB structure *Struct*, which contains the following fields.

Field	Description
ProbeSetIDs	Cell array containing the probe set IDs from the Affymetrix CDF library file.

affyprobeseqread

Field	Description
ProbeIndices	Column vector containing probe indexing information. Probes within a probe set are numbered 0 through $N - 1$, where N is the number of probes in the probe set.
SequenceMatrix	<p>An N-by-25 matrix of sequence information for the perfect match (PM) probes on the Affymetrix GeneChip array, where N is the number of probes on the array. Each row corresponds to a probe, and each column corresponds to one of the 25 sequence positions. Nucleotides in the sequences are represented by one of the following integers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0 — None• 1 — A• 2 — C• 3 — G• 4 — T <hr/> <p>Note Probes without sequence information are represented in <code>SequenceMatrix</code> as a row containing all 0s.</p> <hr/> <p>Tip You can use the <code>int2nt</code> function to convert the nucleotide sequences in <code>SequenceMatrix</code> to letter representation.</p>

`Struct = affyprobeseqread(SeqFile, CDFFile, ... 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `affyprobeseqread` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs.

You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

Struct = affyprobeseqread(*SeqFile*, *CDFFile*, ... 'SeqPath', *SeqPathValue*, ...) lets you specify a path and directory where *SeqFile* is stored.

Struct = affyprobeseqread(*SeqFile*, *CDFFile*, ... 'CDFPath', *CDFPathValue*, ...) lets you specify a path directory where *CDFFile* is stored.

Struct = affyprobeseqread(*SeqFile*, *CDFFile*, ... 'SeqOnly', *SeqOnlyValue*, ...) controls the return of a structure, *Struct*, with only one field, *SequenceMatrix*. Choices are true or false (default).

Examples

- 1 Read the data from a FASTA file and associated CDF library file, assuming both are located on the MATLAB search path or in the Current Directory.

```
S1 = affyprobeseqread('HG-U95A_probe_fasta', 'HG_U95A.CDF');
```

- 2 Read the data from a tab-separated file and associated CDF structure, assuming the tab-separated file is located in the specified directory and the CDF structure is in your MATLAB Workspace.

```
S2 = affyprobeseqread('HG-U95A_probe_tab', hgu95aCDFStruct, ...  
    'secpath', 'C:\Affymetrix\SequenceFiles\HGGenome');
```

- 3 Access the nucleotide sequences of the first probe set (rows 1 through 20) in the *SequenceMatrix* field of the S2 structure.

```
seq = int2nt(S2.SequenceMatrix(1:20,:))
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: affyinvarsetnorm, affyread, celintensityread, int2nt, probelibraryinfo, probesetlink, probesetlookup, probesetplot, probesetvalues

affyread

Purpose

Read microarray data from Affymetrix GeneChip file

Syntax

```
AffyStruct = affyread(File)
```

```
AffyStruct = affyread(File, LibraryPath)
```

Arguments

File String specifying a file name or a path and file name of one of the following Affymetrix file types:

- **EXP** — Data file containing information about experimental conditions and protocols.
- **DAT** — Data file containing raw image data (pixel intensity values).
- **CEL** — Data file containing information about the intensity values of the individual probes.
- **CHP** — Data file containing summary information of the probe sets, including intensity values.
- **CDF** — Library file containing information about which probes belong to which probe set.
- **GIN** — Library file containing information about the probe sets, such as the gene name with which the probe set is associated.

If you specify only a file name, that file must be on the MATLAB search path or in the current directory. If you specify only a file name of a CDF or GIN library file, you can specify the path and directory in the *LibraryPath* input argument.

LibraryPath String specifying the path and directory of:

- CDF library file associated with *File* when *File* is a CHP file
- CDF library file when *File* is a CDF file
- GIN library file when *File* is a GIN file

Note If you do not specify *LibraryPath* when reading a CHP file, *affyread* looks in the current directory for the CDF file. If it does not find the CDF file, it still reads the CHP file, but the probe set names and types will be omitted from the return value, *AffyStruct*.

Return Values

AffyStruct MATLAB structure containing information from an Affymetrix data or library file, for expression, genotyping (SNP), or resequencing assay types.

Description

Note This function does not work on the Solaris platform.

AffyStruct = `affyread(File)` reads *File*, an Affymetrix file, and creates *AffyStruct*, a MATLAB structure. The `affyread` function can read Affymetrix EXP, DAT, CEL, CHP, CDF, and GIN files created from Affymetrix GeneChip arrays for expression, genotyping (SNP), or resequencing assays.

AffyStruct = `affyread(File, LibraryPath)` specifies the path and directory of:

- CDF library file associated with *File* when *File* is a CHP file
- CDF library file when *File* is a CDF file
- GIN library file when *File* is a GIN file

Note If you do not specify *LibraryPath* when reading a CHP file, `affyread` looks in the current directory for the CDF file. If it does not find the CDF file, it still reads the CHP file, but the probe set names and types will be omitted from the return value, *AffyStruct*.

You can learn more about the Affymetrix GeneChip files and download sample files from:

http://www.affymetrix.com/support/technical/sample_data/demo_data.affx

Note Some Affymetrix sample data files (DAT, EXP, CEL, and CHP) are combined in a DTT or CAB file. You must download and use the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool to extract these files from the DTT or CAB file. You can download the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool from:

<http://www.affymetrix.com/products/software/specific/dtt.affx>

You will have to register and log in at the Affymetrix Web site to download the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool.

The following tables describe the fields in *AffyStruct* for the different Affymetrix file types.

All File Types (EXP, DAT, CEL, CHP, CDF, and GIN)

Field	Description
Name	File name.
DataPath	Path and directory of the file.
LibPath	Path and directory of the CDF and GIN library files associated with the file being read.
FullPathName	Path and directory of the file
ChipType	Name of the Affymetrix GeneChip array (for example, DrosGenome1 or HG-Focus).
Date	Date the file was created.

EXP File

Field	Description
ChipLot Operator SampleType SampleDesc Project Comments Reagents ReagentLot Protocol Station Module HybridizeDate ScanPixelSize ScanFilter ScanDate ScannerID NumberOfScans ScannerType NumProtocolSteps ProtocolSteps	Information about experimental conditions and protocols captured by the Affymetrix software.

DAT File

Field	Description
NumPixelsPerRow	Number of pixels per row in the image created from the GeneChip array (number of columns).
NumRows	Number of rows in the image created from the GeneChip array.
MinData	Minimum intensity value in the image created from the GeneChip array.

Field	Description
MaxData	Maximum intensity value in the image created from the GeneChip array.
PixelSize	Size of one pixel in the image created from the GeneChip array.
CellMargin	Size of gaps between cells in the image created from the GeneChip array.
ScanSpeed	Speed of the scanner used to create the image.
ScanDate	Date the scan was performed.
ScannerID	Name of the scanning device used.
UpperLeftX UpperLeftY UpperRightX UpperRightY LowerLeftX LowerLeftY LowerRightX LowerRightY	Pixel coordinates of the scanned image.
ServerName	Not used.
Image	A NumRows-by-NumPixelsPerRow image of the scanned GeneChip array.

CEL File

Field	Description
FileVersion	Version of the CEL file format.
Algorithm	Algorithm used in the image processing step that converts from DAT format to CEL format.
AlgParams	String containing parameters used by the algorithm in the image processing step.

Field	Description
NumAlgParams	Number of parameters in AlgParams.
CellMargin	Size of gaps between cells in the image created from the GeneChip array, used for computing the intensity values of the cells.
Rows	Number of rows of probes.
Cols	Number of columns of probes.
NumMasked	Number of probes that are masked and not used in subsequent processing.
NumOutliers	Number of cells identified as outliers (very high or very low intensity) by the image processing step.
NumProbes	Number of probes (Rows * Cols) on the GeneChip array.
UpperLeftX UpperLeftY UpperRightX UpperRightY LowerLeftX LowerLeftY LowerRightX LowerRightY	Pixel coordinates of the scanned image.

Field	Description
ProbeColumnNames	<p>Cell array containing the eight column names in the Probes field:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PosX — x-coordinate of the cell • PosY — y-coordinate of the cell • Intensity — Intensity value of the cell • StdDev — Standard deviation of intensity value • Pixels — Number of pixels in the cell • Outlier — True/false flag indicating if the cell was marked as an outlier • Masked — True/false flag indicating if the cell was masked • ProbeType — Integer indicating the probe type (for example, 1 = expression)
Probes	<p>NumProbes-by-8 array of information about the individual probes, including intensity values. The columns of this array are contained in the ProbeColumnNames field.</p>

CHP File

Field	Description
AssayType	Type of assay that the GeneChip array contained (for example, Expression, Genotyping, or Resequencing).
CellFile	File name of the CEL file from which the CHP file was created.

Field	Description
Algorithm	Algorithm used to convert from CEL format to CHP format.
AlgVersion	Version of the algorithm used to create the CHP file.
NumAlgParams	Number of parameters in AlgParams.
AlgParams	String containing parameters used in steps needed to create the CHP file (for example, background correction).
NumChipSummary	Number of entries in ChipSummary.
ChipSummary	Summary information for the GeneChip array, including background average, standard deviation, max, and min.
BackgroundZones	Structure containing information about the zones used in the background adjustment step.
Rows	Number of rows of probes.
Cols	Number of columns of probes.
NumProbeSets	Number of probe sets on the GeneChip array.
NumQCProbeSets	Number of QC probe sets on the GeneChip array.

Field	Description
ProbeSets (Expression GeneChip array)	<p>A NumProbeSets-by-1 structure array containing information for each expression probe set, including the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Name — Name of the probe set. • ProbeSetType — Type of the probe set. • CompDataExists — True/false flag indicating if the probe set has additional computed information. • NumPairs — Number of probe pairs in the probe set. • NumPairsUsed — Number of probe pairs in the probe set used for calculating the probe set signal (not masked). • Signal — Summary intensity value for the probe set. • Detection — Indicator of statistically significant difference between the intensity value of the PM probes and the intensity value of the MM probes in a single probe set (Present, Absent, or Marginal). • DetectionPValue — P value for the Detection indicator. • CommonPairs — When CompDataExists is true, contains the number of common pairs between the experiment and the baseline after outliers and masked probes have been removed. • SignalLogRatio — When CompDataExists is true, contains the change in signal between the experiment and baseline. • SignalLogRatioLow — When CompDataExists is true, contains the lowest ratios of probes between the experiment and the baseline. • SignalLogRatioHigh — When CompDataExists is true, contains the highest ratios of probes between the experiment and the baseline.

Field	Description
ProbeSets (Genotyping GeneChip array)	<p>A NumProbeSets-by-1 structure array containing information for each genotyping probe set, including the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Name — Name of the probe set • AlleleCall — Allele that is present for the probe set. Possibilities are AA (homozygous for the major allele), AB (heterozygous for the major and minor allele), BB (homozygous for the minor allele), or NoCall (unable to determine allele). • Confidence — A measure of the accuracy of the allele call. • RAS1 — Relative Allele Signal 1 for the SNP site, which is calculated using sense probes. • RAS2 — Relative Allele Signal 2 for the SNP site, which is calculated using antisense probes. • PValueAA — P value for an AA call. • PValueAB — P value for an AB call. • PValueBB — P value for a BB call. • PValueNoCall — P value for a NoCall call.
ProbeSets (Resequencing GeneChip array)	<p>A NumProbeSets-by-1 structure array containing information for each resequencing probe set, including the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CalledBases — A 1-by-NumProbeSets character array containing the bases called by the resequencing algorithm. Possible values are a, c, g, t, and n. • Scores — A 1-by-NumProbeSets array containing the score associated with each base call.

CDF File

Field	Description
Rows	Number of rows of probes.
Cols	Number of columns of probes.
NumProbeSets	Number of probe sets on the GeneChip array.
NumQCProbeSets	Number of QC probe sets on the GeneChip array.

Field	Description
ProbeSetColumnNames	<p>Cell array containing the six column names in the ProbePairs field in the ProbeSets array:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ProbeSetNumber — Number identifying the probe set to which the probe pair belongs. • ProbePairNumber — Index of the probe pair within the probe set. • PMPosX — x-coordinate of the perfect match probe. • PMPosY — y-coordinate of the perfect match probe. • MMPosX — x-coordinate of the mismatch probe. • MMPosY — y-coordinate of the mismatch probe.
ProbeSets	<p>A NumProbeSets-by-1 structure array containing information for each probe set, including the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Name — Name of the probe set. • ProbeSetType — Type of the probe set. • CompDataExists — True/false flag indicating if the probe set has additional computed information. • NumPairs — Number of probe pairs in the probe set. • NumQCProbes — Number of QC probes in the probe set. • QCType — Type of QC probes. • ProbePairs — NumPairs-by-6 array of information about the probe pairs. The column names of this array are contained in the ProbeSetColumnNames field.

GIN File

Field	Description
Version	GIN file format version.
ProbeSetName	Probe set ID/name.
ID	Identifier for the probe set (gene ID).
Description	Description of the probe set.
SourceNames	Source(s) of the probe sets.
SourceURL	Source URL(s) for the probe sets.
SourceID	Vector of numbers specifying which SourceNames or SourceURL each probe set is associated with.

Examples

The following example uses the demo data and CDF library file from the *E. coli* Antisense Genome array, which you can download from:

http://www.affymetrix.com/support/technical/sample_data/demo_data.affx

After you download the demo data, you will need the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool to extract the CEL, DAT, and CHP files from a DTT file. You can download the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool from:

<http://www.affymetrix.com/products/software/specific/dtt.affx>

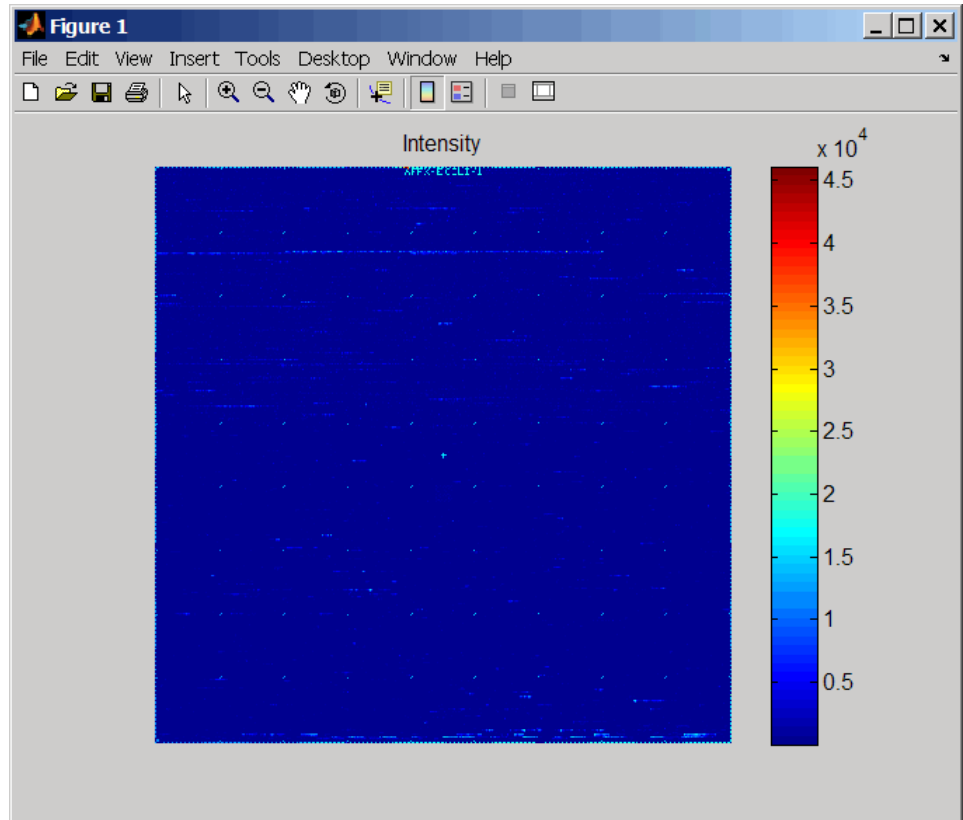
The following example assumes that files `Ecoli-antisense-121502.CEL`, `Ecoli-antisense-121502.dat`, and `Ecoli-antisense-121502.chp` are stored on the MATLAB search path or in the current directory. It also assumes that the associated CDF library file, `Ecoli_ASv2.CDF`, is stored at `D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\Ecoli`.

- 1 Read the contents of a CEL file into a MATLAB structure.

```
celStruct = affyread('Ecoli-antisense-121502.CEL');
```

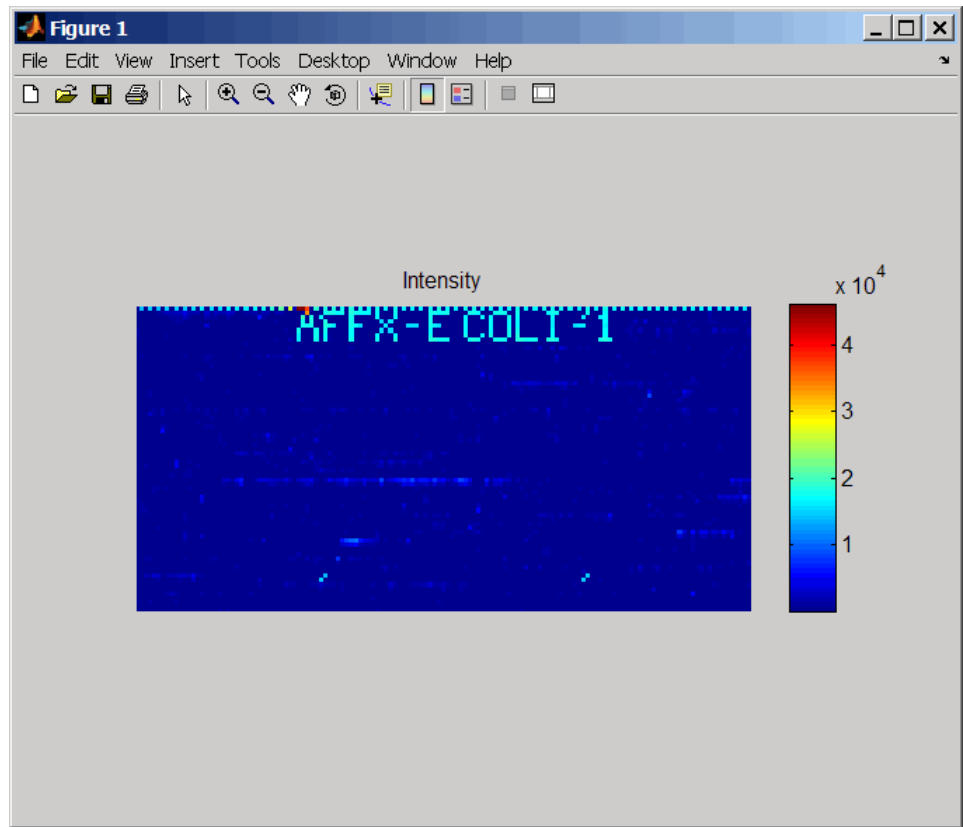
- 2 Display a spatial plot of the probe intensities.

```
mimage(celStruct, 'Intensity')
```



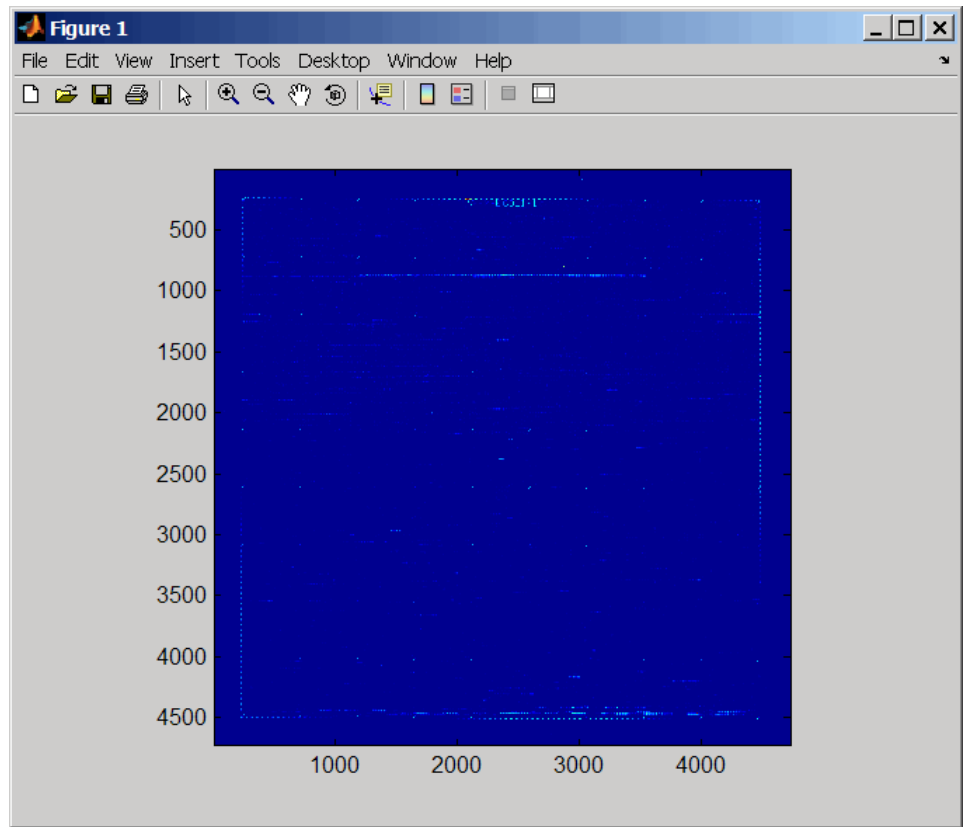
- 3 Zoom in on a specific region of the plot.

```
axis([200 340 0 70])
```



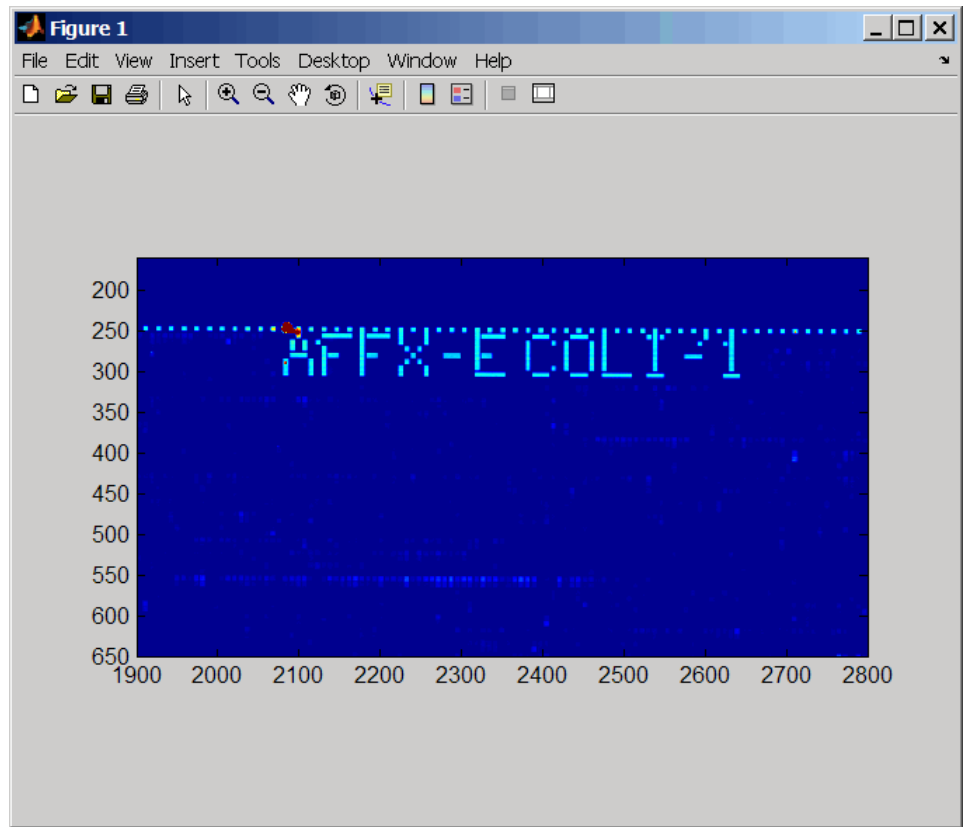
- 4 Read the contents of a DAT file into a MATLAB structure, display the raw image data, and then use the `axis image` function to set the correct aspect ratio.

```
datStruct = affyread('Ecoli-antisense-121502.dat');  
imagesc(datStruct.Image)  
axis image
```



5 Zoom in on a specific region of the plot.

```
axis([1900 2800 160 650])
```



- 6 Read the contents of a CHP file into a MATLAB structure, specifying the location of the associated CDF library file. Then extract information for probe set 3315278.

```
chpStruct = affyread('Ecoli-antisense-121502.chp',...
                    'D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\Ecoli');
geneName = probesetlookup(chpStruct,'3315278')
```

```
geneName =
```

affyread

```
Identifier: '3315278'  
ProbeSetName: 'argG_b3172_at'  
CDFIndex: 5213  
GINIndex: 3074  
Description: [1x82 char]  
Source: 'NCBI EColi Genome'  
SourceURL: [1x74 char]
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `agferead`, `celintensityread`, `gprread`, `probelibraryinfo`, `probesetlink`, `probesetlookup`, `probesetplot`, `probesetvalues`, `sptread`

Purpose Read Agilent Feature Extraction Software file

Syntax `AGFEData = agferead(File)`

Arguments

File Microarray data file generated with the Agilent Feature Extraction Software.

Description

`AGFEData = agferead(File)` reads files generated with Feature Extraction Software from Agilent microarray scanners and creates a structure (*AGFEData*) containing the following fields:

- Header
- Stats
- Columns
- Rows
- Names
- IDs
- Data
- ColumnNames
- TextData
- TextColumnNames

Feature Extraction Software takes an image from an Agilent microarray scanner and generates raw intensity data for each spot on the plate. For more information about this software, see a description on their Web site at

<http://www.chem.agilent.com/scripts/pds.asp?lpage=2547>

Examples

- 1 Read in a sample Agilent Feature Extraction Software file. Note that the file `fe_sample.txt` is not provided with Bioinformatics Toolbox.

agferead

```
agfeStruct = agferead('fe_sample.txt')
```

2 Plot the median foreground.

```
mimage(agfeStruct, 'gMedianSignal');  
maboxplot(agfeStruct, 'gMedianSignal');
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `affyread`, `celintensityread`, `galread`, `geosoftread`, `gprread`, `imageneread`, `magetfield`, `sptread`

Purpose Find amino acid codes, integers, abbreviations, names, and codons

Syntax

```
aminolookup  
aminolookup(SeqAA)  
aminolookup('Code', CodeValue)  
aminolookup('Integer', IntegerValue)  
aminolookup('Abbreviation', AbbreviationValue)  
aminolookup('Name', NameValue)
```

Arguments

<i>SeqAA</i>	Character string of single-letter codes or three-letter abbreviations representing an amino acid sequence. For valid codes and abbreviations, see the table Amino Acid Lookup on page 2-56.
<i>CodeValue</i>	String specifying a single-letter code representing an amino acid. For valid single-letter codes, see the table Amino Acid Lookup on page 2-56.
<i>IntegerValue</i>	Single integer representing an amino acid. For valid integers, see the table Amino Acid Lookup on page 2-56.
<i>AbbreviationValue</i>	String specifying a three-letter abbreviation representing an amino acid. For valid three-letter abbreviations, see the table Amino Acid Lookup on page 2-56.
<i>NameValue</i>	String specifying an amino acid name. For valid amino acid names, see the table Amino Acid Lookup on page 2-56.

Amino Acid Lookup

Code	Integer	Abbreviation	Name	Codons
A	1	Ala	Alanine	GCU GCC GCA GCG
R	2	Arg	Arginine	CGU CGC CGA CGG AGA AGG
N	3	Asn	Asparagine	AAU AAC
D	4	Asp	Aspartic acid (Aspartate)	GAU GAC
C	5	Cys	Cysteine	UGU UGC
Q	6	Gln	Glutamine	CAA CAG
E	7	Glu	Glutamic acid (Glutamate)	GAA GAG
G	8	Gly	Glycine	GGU GGC GGA GGG
H	9	His	Histidine	CAU CAC
I	10	Ile	Isoleucine	AUU AUC AUA
L	11	Leu	Leucine	UUA UUG CUU CUC CUA CUG
K	12	Lys	Lysine	AAA AAG
M	13	Met	Methionine	AUG
F	14	Phe	Phenylalanine	UUU UUC
P	15	Pro	Proline	CCU CCC CCA CCG
S	16	Ser	Serine	UCU UCC UCA UCG AGU AGC
T	17	Thr	Threonine	ACU ACC ACA ACG
W	18	Trp	Tryptophan	UGG

Code	Integer	Abbreviation	Name	Codons
Y	19	Tyr	Tyrosine	UAU UAC
V	20	Val	Valine	GUU GUC GUA GUG
B	21	Asx	Asparagine or Aspartic acid (Aspartate)	AAU AAC GAU GAC
Z	22	Glx	Glutamine or Glutamic acid (Glutamate)	CAA CAG GAA GAG
X	23	Xaa	Any amino acid	All codons
*	24	END	Termination codon (translation stop)	UAA UAG UGA
-	25	GAP	Gap of unknown length	NA

Description

`aminolookup` displays a table of amino acid codes, integers, abbreviations, names, and codons.

`aminolookup(SeqAA)` converts between single-letter codes and three-letter abbreviations for an amino acid sequence. If the input is a character string of single-letter codes, then the output is a character string of three-letter abbreviations. If the input is a character string of three-letter abbreviations, then the output is a character string of the corresponding single-letter codes.

If you enter one of the ambiguous single-letter codes B, Z, or X, this function displays the corresponding abbreviation for the ambiguous amino acid character.

aminolookup

```
aminolookup('abc')
```

```
ans =
```

```
AlaAsxCys
```

`aminolookup('Code', CodeValue)` displays the corresponding amino acid three-letter abbreviation and name.

`aminolookup('Integer', IntegerValue)` displays the corresponding amino acid single-letter code, three-letter abbreviation, and name.

`aminolookup('Abbreviation', AbbreviationValue)` displays the corresponding amino acid single-letter code and name.

`aminolookup('Name', NameValue)` displays the corresponding amino acid single-letter code and three-letter abbreviation.

Examples

- Convert an amino acid sequence in single-letter codes to the corresponding three-letter abbreviations.

```
aminolookup('MWKQAEDIRDIYDF')
```

```
ans =
```

```
MetTrpLysGlnAlaGluAspIleArgAspIleTyrAspPhe
```

- Convert an amino acid sequence in three-letter abbreviations to the corresponding single-letter codes.

```
aminolookup('MetTrpLysGlnAlaGluAspIleArgAspIleTyrAspPhe')
```

```
ans =
```

```
MWKQAEDIRDIYDF
```

- Display the three-letter abbreviation and name for the amino acid corresponding to the single-letter code R.

```
aminolookup('Code', 'R')
```

```
ans =
```

```
Arg Arginine
```

- Display the single-letter code, three-letter abbreviation, and name for the amino acid corresponding to the integer 1.

```
aminolookup('Integer', 1)
```

```
ans =
```

```
A Ala Alanine
```

- Display the single-letter code and name for the amino acid corresponding to the three-letter abbreviation asn.

```
aminolookup('Abbreviation', 'asn')
```

```
ans =
```

```
N Asparagine
```

- Display the single-letter code and three-letter abbreviation for the amino acid proline.

```
aminolookup('Name', 'proline')
```

```
ans =
```

```
P Pro
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `aa2int`, `aaccount`, `geneticcode`, `int2aa`, `nt2aa`, `revgeneticcode`

atomiccomp

Purpose Calculate atomic composition of protein

Syntax `NumberAtoms = atomiccomp(SeqAA)`

Arguments

`SeqAA` Amino acid sequence. Enter a character string or vector of integers from the table . You can also enter a structure with the field `Sequence`.

Description

`NumberAtoms = atomiccomp(SeqAA)` counts the type and number of atoms in an amino acid sequence (`SeqAA`) and returns the counts in a 1-by-1 structure (`NumberAtoms`) with fields C, H, N, O, and S.

Examples

- 1 Get an amino acid sequence from the NCBI Genpept Database.

```
rhodopsin = getgenpept('NP_000530');
```

- 2 Count the atoms in a sequence.

```
rhodopsinAC = atomiccomp(rhodopsin)
```

```
rhodopsinAC =
```

```
    C: 1814  
    H: 2725  
    N:  423  
    O:  477  
    S:   25
```

- 3 Retrieve the number of carbon atoms in the sequence.

```
rhodopsinAC.C
```

```
ans =
```

```
    1814
```


See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `aaccount`, `molweight`, `proteinplot`

basecount

Purpose Count nucleotides in sequence

Syntax

```
NumberBases = basecount(SeqNT)
basecount(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
basecount(..., 'Chart', ChartValue)
basecount(..., 'Others', OthersValue)
basecount(..., 'Structure', StructureValue),
```

Arguments

<i>SeqNT</i>	Nucleotide sequence. Enter a character string with the letters A, T, U, C, and G. The count for U characters is included with the count for T characters. . You can also enter a structure with the field Sequence.
<i>ChartValue</i>	Property to select a type of plot. Enter either 'pie' or 'bar'.
<i>OthersValue</i>	Property to control counting ambiguous characters individually. Enter either full' or 'bundle' (default).

Description

NumberBases = basecount(*SeqNT*) counts the number of bases in a nucleotide sequence (*SeqNT*) and returns the base counts in a 1-by-1 structure (*Bases*) with the fields A, C, G, T.

- For sequences with the character U, the number of U characters is added to the number of T characters.
- If a sequence contains ambiguous nucleotide characters (R, Y, K, M, S, W, B, D, H, V, N), or gaps indicated with a hyphen (-), this function creates a field *Others* and displays a warning message.

Warning: Ambiguous symbols '*symbol list*' appear in the sequence.
These will be in *Others*.

- If a sequence contains undefined nucleotide characters (E F H I J L O P Q X Z), the characters are counted in the field `Others` and a warning message is displayed.

```
Warning: Unknown symbols 'symbol list' appear
in the sequence.
These will be ignored.
```

- If the property `Others = 'full'`, ambiguous characters are listed separately and hyphens are counted in a new field (`Gaps`).

`basecount(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs:

`basecount(..., 'Chart', ChartValue)` creates a chart showing the relative proportions of the nucleotides.

`basecount(..., 'Others', OthersValue)`, when `OthersValue` is `'full'`, counts all the ambiguous nucleotide symbols individually instead of bundling them together into the `Others` field of the output structure.

`basecount(..., 'Structure', StructureValue)`, when `StructureValue` is `'full'`, blocks the unknown characters warning and ignores counting unknown characters.

- `basecount(SeqNT)` — Display four nucleotides, and only if there are ambiguous and unknown characters, add an `Others` field with the counts.
- `basecount(SeqNT, 'Others', 'full')` — Display four nucleotides, 11 ambiguous nucleotides, gaps, and only if there are unknown characters, add an `Others` field with the unknown counts.
- `basecount(SeqNT, 'Structure', 'full')` — Display four nucleotides and always display an `Others` field. If there are ambiguous and unknown characters, add counts to the `Others` field; otherwise display 0.

basecount

- `basecount(SeqNT, 'Others', 'full', 'Structure', 'full')`
— Display 4 nucleotides, 11 ambiguous nucleotides, gaps, and the Others field. If there are unknown characters, add counts to the Others field; otherwise display 0.

Examples

- 1 Count the number of bases in a DNA sequence.

```
Bases = basecount('TAGCTGGCCAAGCGAGCTTG')
```

```
Bases =  
  A: 4  
  C: 5  
  G: 7  
  T: 4
```

- 2 Get the count for adenosine (A) bases.

```
Bases.A
```

```
ans =  
  4
```

- 3 Count the bases in a DNA sequence with ambiguous characters.

```
basecount('ABCDGGCCAAGCGAGCTTG', 'Others', 'full')
```

```
ans =  
  A: 4  
  C: 5  
  G: 6  
  T: 2  
  R: 0  
  Y: 0  
  K: 0  
  M: 0  
  S: 0  
  W: 0  
  B: 1
```

D: 1
H: 0
V: 0
N: 0
Gaps: 0

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `aaccount`, `baselookup`, `codoncount`, `cpgisland`, `dimercount`, `nmercount`, `ntdensity`, `seqtool`

baselookup

Purpose Nucleotide codes, abbreviations, and names

Syntax
baselookup('Complement', *SeqNT*)
baselookup('Code', *CodeValue*)
baselookup('Integer', *IntegerValue*)
baselookup('Name', *NameValue*)

Arguments

<i>SeqNT</i>	Nucleotide sequence. Enter a character string of single-letter codes from the Nucleotide Lookup Table below. In addition to a single nucleotide sequence, <i>SeqNT</i> can be a cell array of sequences, or a two-dimensional character array of sequences. The complement for each sequence is determined independently.
<i>CodeValue</i>	Nucleotide letter code. Enter a single character from the Nucleotide Lookup Table below. Code can also be a cell array or a two-dimensional character array.
<i>IntegerValue</i>	Nucleotide integer. Enter an integer from the Nucleotide Lookup Table below. Integers are arbitrarily assigned to IUB/IUPAC letters.
<i>NameValue</i>	Nucleotide name. Enter a nucleotide name from the Nucleotide Lookup Table below. <i>NameValue</i> can also be a single name, a cell array, or a two-dimensional character array.

Nucleotide Lookup Table

Code	Integer	Base Name	Meaning	Complement
A	1	Adenine	A	T
C	2	Cytosine	C	G

Code	Integer	Base Name	Meaning	Complement
G	3	Guanine	G	C
T	4	Thymine	T	A
U	4	Uracil	U	A
R	5	(Purine)	G A	Y
Y	6	(Pyrimidine)	T C	R
K	7	(Keto)	G T	M
M	8	(Amino)	A C	K
S	9	Strong interaction (3 H bonds)	G C	S
W	10	Weak interaction (2 H bonds)	A T	W
B	11	Not A	G T C	V
D	12	Not C	G A T	H
H	13	Not G	A T C	D
V	14	Not T or U	G A C	B
N,X	15	Any nucleotide	G A T C	N
-	16	Gap of indeterminate length	Gap	-

Description

`baselookup('Complement', SeqNT)` displays the complementary nucleotide sequence.

`baselookup('Code', CodeValue)` displays the corresponding letter code, meaning, and name. For ambiguous nucleotide letters (R Y K M S W B D H V N X), the name is replace by a descriptive name.

`baselookup('Integer', IntegerValue)` displays the corresponding letter code, meaning, and nucleotide name.

baselookup

`baselookup('Name', NameValue)` displays the corresponding letter code and meaning.

Examples

```
baselookup('Complement', 'TAGCTGRCCAAGGCCAAGCGAGCTTN')
```

```
baselookup('Name', 'cytosine')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `basecount`, `codoncount`, `dimercount`, `geneticcode`, `nt2aa`, `nt2int`, `revgeneticcode`, `seqtool`

Purpose

Create biograph object

Syntax

```
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'ID', IDValue, ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'Label', LabelValue,
    ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'Description',
    DescriptionValue, ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'LayoutType',
    LayoutTypeValue, ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'EdgeType',
    EdgeTypeValue, ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'Scale', ScaleValue,
    ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'LayoutScale',
    LayoutScaleValue, ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'EdgeTextColor',
    EdgeTextColorValue, ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'EdgeFontSize',
    EdgeFontSizeValue, ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'ShowArrows',
    ShowArrowsValue, ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'ArrowSize',
    ArrowSizeValue, ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'ShowWeights',
    ShowWeightsValue, ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'ShowTextInNodes',
    ShowTextInNodesValue, ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'NodeAutoSize',
    NodeAutoSizeValue, ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'NodeCallback',
    NodeCallbackValue, ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'EdgeCallback',
    EdgeCallbackValue, ...)
BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'CustomNodeDrawFcn',
    CustomNodeDrawFcnValue, ...)
```

Arguments

CMatrix Full or sparse square matrix that acts as a connection matrix. That is, a value of 1 indicates a connection between nodes while a 0 indicates no connection. The number of rows/columns is equal to the number of nodes.

NodeIDs Node identification strings. Enter any of the following:

- Cell array of strings with the number of strings equal to the number of rows or columns in the connection matrix *CMatrix*. Each string must be unique.
- Character array with the number of rows equal to the number of nodes. Each row in the array must be unique.
- String with the number of characters equal to the number of nodes. Each character must be unique.

Default values are the row or column numbers.

Note You must specify *NodeIDs* if you want to specify property name/value pairs. Set *NodeIDs* to [] to use the default values of the row/column numbers.

IDValue String to identify the biograph object. Default is ''. (This information is for bookkeeping purposes only.)

<i>LabelValue</i>	String to label the biograph object. Default is ''. (This information is for bookkeeping purposes only.)
<i>DescriptionValue</i>	String that describes the biograph object. Default is ''. (This information is for bookkeeping purposes only.)
<i>LayoutTypeValue</i>	String that specifies the algorithm for the layout engine. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 'hierarchical' (default)• 'equilibrium'• 'radial'
<i>EdgeTypeValue</i>	String that specifies how edges display. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 'straight'• 'curved' (default)• 'segmented'

Note Curved or segmented edges occur only when necessary to avoid obstruction by nodes. Biograph objects with `LayoutType` equal to 'equilibrium' or 'radial' cannot produce curved or segmented edges.

<i>ScaleValue</i>	Positive number that post-scales the node coordinates. Default is 1.
<i>LayoutScaleValue</i>	Positive number that scales the size of the nodes before calling the layout engine. Default is 1.

biograph

<i>EdgeTextColorValue</i>	Three-element numeric vector of RGB values. Default is [0, 0, 0], which defines black.
<i>EdgeFontSizeValue</i>	Positive number that sets the size of the edge font in points. Default is 8.
<i>ShowArrowsValue</i>	Controls the display of arrows for the edges. Choices are 'on' (default) or 'off'.
<i>ArrowSizeValue</i>	Positive number that sets the size of the arrows in points. Default is 8.
<i>ShowWeightsValue</i>	Controls the display of text indicating the weight of the edges. Choices are 'on' (default) or 'off'.
<i>ShowTextInNodesValue</i>	String that specifies the node property used to label nodes when you display a biograph object using the view method. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 'Label' — Uses the Label property of the node object (default).• 'ID' — Uses the ID property of the node object.• 'None'

<i>NodeAutoSizeValue</i>	Controls precalculating the node size before calling the layout engine. Choices are 'on' (default) or 'off'.
<i>NodeCallbackValue</i>	User callback for all nodes. Enter the name of a function, a function handle, or a cell array with multiple function handles. After using the <code>view</code> function to display the biograph in the Biograph Viewer, you can double-click a node to activate the first callback, or right-click and select a callback to activate. Default is <code>@(node) inspect(node)</code> , which displays the Property Inspector dialog box.
<i>EdgeCallbackValue</i>	User callback for all edges. Enter the name of a function, a function handle, or a cell array with multiple function handles. After using the <code>view</code> function to display the biograph in the Biograph Viewer, you can double-click an edge to activate the first callback, or right-click and select a callback to activate. Default is <code>@(edge) inspect(edge)</code> , which displays the Property Inspector dialog box.
<i>CustomNodeDrawFcnValue</i>	Function handle to customized function to draw nodes. Default is <code>[]</code> .

Description

`BGobj = biograph(CMatrix)` creates a biograph object, `BGobj`, using a connection matrix, `CMatrix`. All nondiagonal and positive entries in the connection matrix, `CMatrix`, indicate connected nodes, rows represent the source nodes, and columns represent the sink nodes.

`BGobj = biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs)` specifies the node identification strings. `NodeIDs` can be:

- Cell array of strings with the number of strings equal to the number of rows or columns in the connection matrix *CMatrix*. Each string must be unique.
- Character array with the number of rows equal to the number of nodes. Each row in the array must be unique.
- String with the number of characters equal to the number of nodes. Each character must be unique.

Default values are the row or column numbers.

Note If you want to specify property name/value pairs, you must specify *NodeIDs*. Set *NodeIDs* to [] to use the default values of the row/column numbers.

BGobj = biograph(..., '*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls biograph with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

BGobj = biograph(*CMatrix*, *NodeIDs*, ...'ID', *IDValue*, ...) specifies an ID for the biograph object. Default is ''. (This information is for bookkeeping purposes only.)

BGobj = biograph(*CMatrix*, *NodeIDs*, ...'Label', *LabelValue*, ...) specifies a label for the biograph object. Default is ''. (This information is for bookkeeping purposes only.)

BGobj = biograph(*CMatrix*, *NodeIDs*, ...'Description', *DescriptionValue*, ...) specifies a description of the biograph object. Default is ''. (This information is for bookkeeping purposes only.)

BGobj = biograph(*CMatrix*, *NodeIDs*, ...'LayoutType', *LayoutTypeValue*, ...) specifies the algorithm for the layout engine.

BGobj = `biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'EdgeType', EdgeTypeValue, ...)` specifies how edges display.

BGobj = `biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'Scale', ScaleValue, ...)` post-scales the node coordinates. Default is 1.

BGobj = `biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'LayoutScale', LayoutScaleValue, ...)` scales the size of the nodes before calling the layout engine. Default is 1.

BGobj = `biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'EdgeTextColor', EdgeTextColorValue, ...)` specifies a three-element numeric vector of RGB values. Default is [0, 0, 0], which defines black.

BGobj = `biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'EdgeFontSize', EdgeFontSizeValue, ...)` sets the size of the edge font in points. Default is 8.

BGobj = `biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'ShowArrows', ShowArrowsValue, ...)` controls the display of arrows for the edges. Choices are 'on' (default) or 'off'.

BGobj = `biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'ArrowSize', ArrowSizeValue, ...)` sets the size of the arrows in points. Default is 8.

BGobj = `biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'ShowWeights', ShowWeightsValue, ...)` controls the display of text indicating the weight of the edges. Choices are 'on' (default) or 'off'.

BGobj = `biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'ShowTextInNodes', ShowTextInNodesValue, ...)` specifies the node property used to label nodes when you display a biograph object using the view method.

BGobj = `biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'NodeAutoSize', NodeAutoSizeValue, ...)` controls precalculating the node size before calling the layout engine. Choices are 'on' (default) or 'off'.

BGobj = `biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'NodeCallback', NodeCallbackValue, ...)` specifies user callback for all nodes.

BGobj = `biograph(CMatrix, NodeIDs, ...'EdgeCallback', EdgeCallbackValue, ...)` specifies user callback for all edges.

biograph

BGobj = biograph(*CMatrix*, *NodeIDs*, ...'CustomNodeDrawFcn', *CustomNodeDrawFcnValue*, ...) specifies function handle to customized function to draw nodes. Default is [].

Examples

- 1 Create a biograph object with default node IDs, and then use the get function to display the node IDs.

```
cm = [0 1 1 0 0;1 0 0 1 1;1 0 0 0 0;0 0 0 0 1;1 0 1 0 0];
bg1 = biograph(cm)
Biograph object with 5 nodes and 9 edges.
get(bg1.nodes, 'ID')
```

```
ans =
```

```
'Node 1'
'Node 2'
'Node 3'
'Node 4'
'Node 5'
```

- 2 Create a biograph object, assign the node IDs, and then use the get function to display the node IDs.

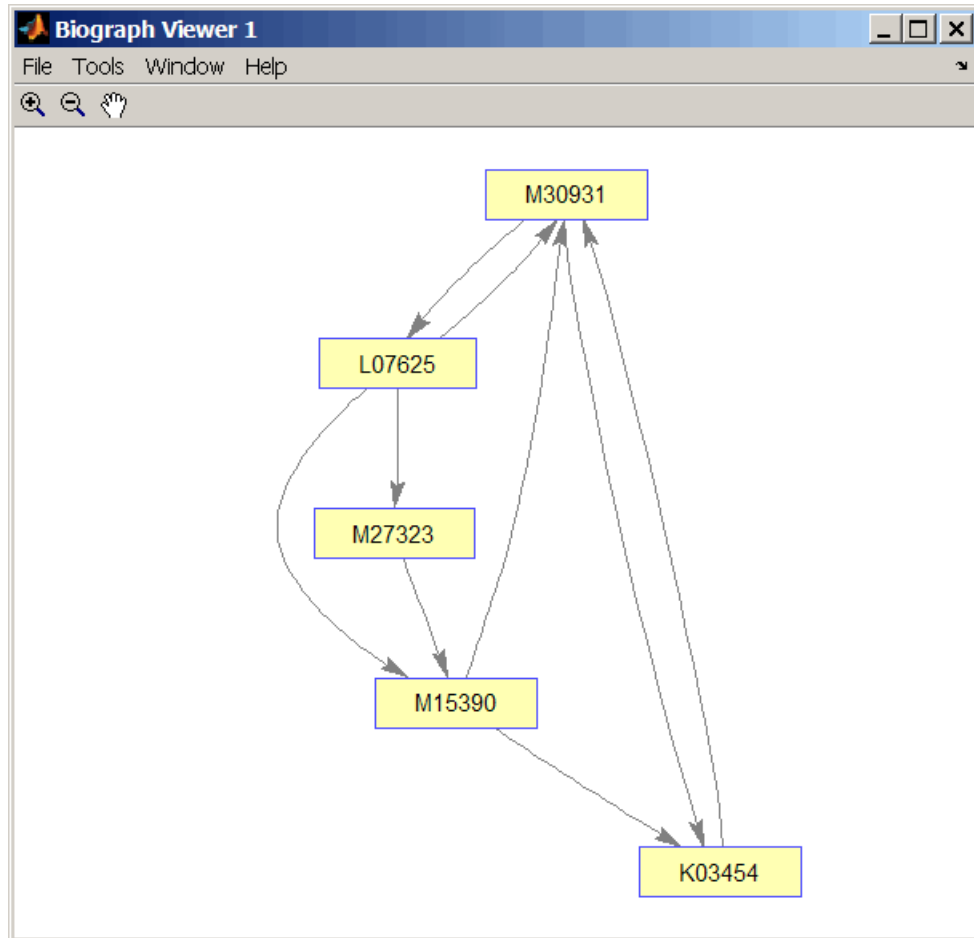
```
cm = [0 1 1 0 0;1 0 0 1 1;1 0 0 0 0;0 0 0 0 1;1 0 1 0 0];
ids = {'M30931', 'L07625', 'K03454', 'M27323', 'M15390'};
bg2 = biograph(cm,ids);
get(bg2.nodes, 'ID')
```

```
ans =
```

```
'M30931'
'L07625'
'K03454'
'M27323'
'M15390'
```

- 3 Use the view method to display the biograph object.


```
view(bg2)
```



See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `biograph` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a `biograph` object:
`allshortestpaths`, `conncomp`, `dolayout`, `getancestors`,
`getdescendants`, `getedgesbynodeid`, `getmatrix`, `getnodesbyid`,

biograph

getrelatives, isdag, isomorphism, isspantree, maxflow,
minspantree, shortestpath, topoorder, traverse, view

MATLAB functions: get, set

Purpose

Create remote NCBI BLAST report request ID

Syntax

```
blastncbi(Seq, Program)
RID = blastncbi(Seq, Program)
[RID, RTOE] = blastncbi(Seq, Program)
... blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Database',
DatabaseValue, ...)
... blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Descriptions',
DescriptionsValue, ...)
... blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Alignments',
AlignmentsValue,
...)
... blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Filter', FilterValue, ...)
... blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Expect', ExpectValue, ...)
... blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Word', WordValue, ...)
... blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Matrix', MatrixValue, ...)
... blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'GapOpen',
GapOpenValue, ...)
... blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'ExtendGap', ExtendGapValue,
...)
... blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Inclusion', InclusionValue,
...)
... blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Pct', PctValue, ...)
```

Arguments

Seq

Nucleotide or amino acid sequence specified by any of the following:

- GenBank, GenPept, or RefSeq accession number
- GI sequence identifier
- FASTA file
- URL pointing to a sequence file
- String
- Character array
- MATLAB structure containing a Sequence field

Program

String specifying a BLAST program. Choices are:

- 'blastn' — Search nucleotide query versus nucleotide database.
- 'blastp' — Search protein query versus protein database.
- 'blastx' — Search translated query versus protein database.
- 'megablast' — Quickly search for highly similar nucleotide sequences.
- 'psiblast' — Search protein query using position-specific iterated BLAST.
- 'tblastn' — Search protein query versus translated database.
- 'tblastx' — Search translated query versus translated database.

DatabaseValue

String specifying a database. Compatible databases depend on the type of sequence specified by *Seq*, and the program specified by *Program*.

Choices for nucleotide sequences are:

- 'nr' (default)
- 'refseq_rna'
- 'refseq_genomic'
- 'est'
- 'est_human'
- 'est_mouse'
- 'est_others'
- 'gss'
- 'htgs'
- 'pat'
- 'pdb'
- 'month'
- 'alu_repeats'
- 'dbsts'
- 'chromosome'
- 'wgs'
- 'env_nt'

Choices for amino acid sequences are:

- 'nr' (default)
- 'refseq_protein'
- 'swissprot'
- 'pat'
- 'month'
- 'pdb'
- 'env_nr'

DescriptionsValue Value specifying the number of short descriptions to include in the report. Default is 100, unless *Program* = 'psiblast', then default is 500.

Note Specify a *DescriptionsValue* only when you do not specify return values.

AlignmentsValue Value specifying the number of sequences for which high-scoring sequence pairs (HSPs) are reported. Default is 100, unless *Program* = 'psiblast', then default is 500.

Note Specify an *AlignmentsValue* only when you do not specify return values.

FilterValue String specifying a filter. Possible choices are:

- 'L' (default) — Low complexity
- 'R' — Human repeats
- 'm' — Mask for lookup table
- 'lcase' — Turn on the lowercase mask

Choices vary depending on the selected *Program*. For more information, see the table Choices for Optional Properties by BLAST Program on page 2-90.

ExpectValue Value specifying the statistical significance threshold for matches against database sequences. Choices are any real number. Default is 10.

WordValue

Value specifying a word length for the query sequence.

Choices for amino acid sequences are:

- 2
- 3 (default)

Choices for nucleotide sequences are:

- 7
- 11 (default)
- 15

Choices when *Program* = 'megablast' are:

- 11
- 12
- 16
- 20
- 24
- 28 (default)
- 32
- 48
- 64

MatrixValue String specifying the substitution matrix for amino acid sequences only. The matrix assigns the score for a possible alignment of any two amino acid residues. Choices are:

- 'PAM30'
- 'PAM70'
- 'BLOSUM45'
- 'BLOSUM62' (default)
- 'BLOSUM80'

GapOpenValue Either of the following:

- Integer that specifies the penalty for opening a gap in the alignment of amino acid sequences.
- Vector containing two integers: the first is the penalty for opening a gap, and the second is the penalty for extending the gap.

Choices and default depend on the substitution matrix specified by the 'Matrix' property. For more information, see the table Choices for the GapOpen Property by Matrix on page 2-91.

GapExtendValue Integer that specifies the penalty for extending a gap in the alignment of amino acid sequences. Choices and default depend on the substitution matrix specified by the 'Matrix' property. For more information, see the table Choices for the GapOpen Property by Matrix on page 2-91.

InclusionValue Value specifying the statistical significance threshold for including a sequence in the Position-Specific Score Matrix (PSSM) created by PSI-BLAST for the subsequent iteration. Default is 0.005.

Note Specify an *InclusionValue* only when *Program* = 'psiblast'.

PctValue Value specifying the percent identity and the corresponding match and mismatch score for matching existing sequences in a public database. Choices are:

- None
- 99 (default) — 99, 1, -3
- 98 — 98, 1, -3
- 95 — 95, 1, -3
- 90 — 90, 1, -2
- 85 — 85, 1, -2
- 80 — 80, 2, -3
- 75 — 75, 4, -5
- 60 — 60, 1, -1

Note Specify a *PctValue* only when *Program* = 'megablast'.

blastncbi

Return Values

<i>RID</i>	Request ID for the NCBI BLAST report.
<i>RTOE</i>	Request Time Of Execution, which is an estimate of the time (in minutes) until completion.

Tip Use this time estimate with the 'WaitTime' property when using the getblast function.

Description

The Basic Local Alignment Search Tool (BLAST) offers a fast and powerful comparative analysis of protein and nucleotide sequences against known sequences in online databases.

`blastncbi(Seq, Program)` sends a BLAST request to NCBI against a *Seq*, a nucleotide or amino acid sequence, using *Program*, a specified BLAST program, and then returns a command window link to the NCBI BLAST report. For help in selecting an appropriate BLAST program, visit:

<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/BLAST/producttable.shtml>

`RID = blastncbi(Seq, Program)` returns *RID*, the Request ID for the report.

`[RID, RTOE] = blastncbi(Seq, Program)` returns both *RID*, the Request ID for the NCBI BLAST report, and *RTOE*, the Request Time Of Execution, which is an estimate of the time until completion.

Tip Use *RTOE* with the 'WaitTime' property when using the getblast function.

... `blastncbi(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `blastncbi` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are explained below. Additional information on these optional properties can be found at:

http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/staff/tao/URLAPI/blastcgihelp_new.html

... `blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Database', DatabaseValue, ...)` specifies a database for the alignment search. For help in selecting an appropriate database, visit:

<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/BLAST/producttable.shtml>

... `blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Descriptions', DescriptionsValue, ...)` specifies the number of short descriptions to include in the report, when you do not specify return values.

... `blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Alignments', AlignmentsValue, ...)` specifies the number of sequences for which high-scoring segment pairs (HSPs) are reported, when you do not specify return values.

... `blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Filter', FilterValue, ...)` specifies the filter to apply to the query sequence.

... `blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Expect', ExpectValue, ...)` specifies a statistical significance threshold for matches against database sequences. Choices are any real number. Default is 10. You can learn more about the statistics of local sequence comparison at:

<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/BLAST/tutorial/Altschul-1.html#head2>

... `blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Word', WordValue, ...)` specifies a word size for the query sequence.

... `blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Matrix', MatrixValue, ...)` specifies the substitution matrix for amino acid sequences only. This

matrix assigns the score for a possible alignment of two amino acid residues.

... `blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'GapOpen', GapOpenValue, ...)` specifies the penalty for opening a gap in the alignment of amino acid sequences.

Choices and default depend on the substitution matrix specified by the 'Matrix' property. For more information, see the table Choices for the GapOpen Property by Matrix on page 2-91.

For more information about allowed gap penalties for various matrices, see:

http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/blast/html/sub_matrix.html

... `blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'ExtendGap', ExtendGapValue, ...)` specifies the penalty for extending a gap greater than one space in the alignment of amino acid sequences. Choices and default depend on the substitution matrix specified by the 'Matrix' property. For more information, see the table Choices for the GapOpen Property by Matrix on page 2-91.

... `blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Inclusion', InclusionValue, ...)` specifies the statistical significance threshold for including a sequence in the Position-Specific Score Matrix (PSSM) created by PSI-BLAST for the subsequent iteration. Default is 0.005.

Note Specify an *InclusionValue* only when *Program* = 'psiblast'.

... `blastncbi(Seq, Program, ...'Pct', PctValue, ...)` specifies the percent identity and the corresponding match and mismatch score for matching existing sequences in a public database. Default is 99.

Note Specify a *PctValue* only when *Program* = 'megablast'.

Choices for Optional Properties by BLAST Program

Then choices for the following properties are ...						
When BLAST program is ...	Database	Filter	Word	Matrix	GapOpen	Pct
'blastn'	'nr' (default)	'L' (default)	7	—	—	—
	'est'	'R'	11			
'megablast'	'est_human'	'm'	(default)			None
	'est_mouse'	'lcase'	15			
	'est_others'					
	'gss'	'L'	11			
	'htgs'		12			
	'pat'		16			
	'pdb'		20			
	'month'		24			
	'alu_repeats'		28			
	'dbsts'		(default)			
	'chromosome'		32			
	'wgs'		48			
'tblastn'	'refseq_rna'		64			99 (default)
	'refseq_genomic'					
	'env_nt'					
'tblastx'		'L' (default)	2	'PAM30'	See the next table.	—
		'm'	3 (default)	'PAM70'		
		'lcase'		'BLOSUM45'		
				'BLOSUM62' (default)		
'blastp'		'L' (default)		'BLOSUM80'		
		'R'				
		'm'				
		'lcase'				
'blastx'	'nr' (default)	'L' (default)				
	'swissprot'	'm'				
	'pat'	'lcase'				
'psiblast'	'pdb'					
	'month'					
	'refseq_protein'					
	'env_nr'					

Choices for the GapOpen Property by Matrix

When Substitution Matrix is ...	Then choices for GapOpen are ...
'PAM30'	[7 2] [6 2] [5 2] [10 1] [9 1](default) [8 1]
'PAM70'	[8 2] [7 2] [6 2] [11 1] [10 1](default) [9 1]
'BLOSUM80'	
'BLOSUM45'	[13 3] [12 3] [11 3] [10 3] [15 2](default) [14 2] [13 2] [12 2] [19 1] [18 1] [17 1] [16 1]
'BLOSUM62'	[9 2] [8 2] [7 2] [12 1] [11 1](default) [10 1]

blastncbi

Examples

```
% Get a sequence from the Protein Data Bank and create
% a MATLAB structure.
S = getpdb('1CIV')

% Use the structure as input for a BLAST search with an
% expectation of 1e-10.
blastncbi(S,'blastp','expect',1e-10)

% Click the URL link (Link to NCBI BLAST Request) to go
% directly to the NCBI request.

% You can also try a search directly with an accession
% number and an alternative scoring matrix.
RID = blastncbi('AAA59174','blastp','matrix','PAM70','...
                'expect',1e-10)

% The results based on the RID are at
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/BLAST/Blast.cgi

% or pass the RID to BLASTREAD to parse the report and
% load it into a MATLAB structure.
blastread(RID)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `blastread`, `getblast`

Purpose Read data from NCBI BLAST report file

Syntax `Data = blastread(File)`

Arguments *File* NCBI BLAST-formatted report file specified by any of the following:

- File name or path and file name, such as returned by the `getblast` function with the 'ToFile' property.
- URL pointing to a file.
- MATLAB character array that contains the text for a NCBI BLAST report.

If you specify only a file name, that file must be on the MATLAB search path or in the current directory.

Return Values *Data* MATLAB structure containing fields corresponding to BLAST keywords and data from an NCBI BLAST report.

Description The Basic Local Alignment Search Tool (BLAST) offers a fast and powerful comparative analysis of protein and nucleotide sequences against known sequences in online databases. BLAST reports can be lengthy, and parsing the data from the various formats can be cumbersome.

`Data = blastread(File)` reads a BLAST report from *File*, an NCBI-formatted file, and returns *Data*, a data structure containing fields corresponding to the BLAST keywords. `blastread` parses the basic BLAST reports BLASTN, BLASTP, BLASTX, TBLASTN, and TBLASTX.

Data contains the following fields.

blastread

Field	Description
RID	Request ID for retrieving results for a specific NCBI BLAST search.
Algorithm	NCBI algorithm used to do a BLAST search.
Query	Full sequence submitted to a BLAST search.
Database	All databases searched.
Hits.Name	Name of a database sequence (subject sequence) that matched the query sequence.
Hits.Length	Length of a subject sequence.
Hits.HSPs.Score	Pair-wise alignment score for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.
Hits.HSPs.Expect	Expectation value for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.
Hits.HSPs.Identities	Identities (matches, possibles, and percent) for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.

Field	Description
Hits.HSPs.Positives	<p>Identical or similar residues (matches, possibles, and percent) for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject amino acid sequence.</p> <hr/> <p>Note This field applies only to translated nucleotide or amino acid query sequences and/or databases.</p> <hr/>
Hits.HSPs.Gaps	<p>Nonaligned residues for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.</p>
Hits.HSPs.Frame	<p>Reading frame of the translated nucleotide sequence for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.</p> <hr/> <p>Note This field applies only when performing translated searches, that is, when using tblastx, tblastn, and blastx.</p> <hr/>

blastread

Field	Description
Hits.HSPs.Strand	Sense (Plus = 5' to 3' and Minus = 3' to 5') of the DNA strands for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence. <hr/> Note This field applies only when using a nucleotide query sequence and database. <hr/>
Hits.HSPs.Alignment	Three-row matrix showing the alignment for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.
Hits.HSPs.QueryIndices	Indices of the query sequence residue positions for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.
Hits.HSPs.SubjectIndices	Indices of the subject sequence residue positions for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.
Statistics	Summary of statistical details about the performed search, such as lambda values, gap penalties, number of sequences searched, and number of hits.

Examples

- 1 Create an NCBI BLAST report request using a GenPept accession number.

```
RID = blastncbi('AAA59174', 'blastp', 'expect', 1e-10)
```

```
RID =
```

```
    '1175088155-31624-126008617054.BLASTQ3'
```

- 2 Pass the Request ID for the report to the `getblast` function, and save the report data to a text file.

```
    getblast(RID, 'ToFile' , 'AAA59174_BLAST.rpt');
```

Note You may need to wait for the report to become available on the NCBI Web site before you can run the preceding command.

- 3 Using the saved file, read the results into a MATLAB structure.

```
    resultsStruct = blastread('AAA59174_BLAST.rpt')
```

```
    resultsStruct =
```

```
        RID: '1175093446-29831-201366571074.BLASTQ2'  
    Algorithm: 'BLASTP 2.2.16 [Mar-11-2007]'  
      Query: [1x63 char]  
    Database: [1x96 char]  
        Hits: [1x50 struct]  
    Statistics: [1x1034 char]
```

References

For more information about reading and interpreting NCBI BLAST reports, see:

http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Education/BLASTinfo/Blast_output.html

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `blastncbi`, `getblast`

blosum

Purpose BLOSUM scoring matrix

Syntax

```
Matrix = blosum(Identity)
[Matrix, MatrixInfo] = blosum(Identity)
blosum(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
blosum(..., 'Extended', ExtendedValue)
blosum(..., 'Order', OrderValue)
```

Arguments

<i>Identity</i>	Percent identity level. Enter values from 30 to 90 in increments of 5, enter 62, or enter 100.
<i>ExtendedValue</i>	Property to control the listing of extended amino acid codes. Enter either true (default) or false.
<i>OrderValue</i>	Property to specify the order amino acids are listed in the matrix. Enter a character string of legal amino acid characters. The length is 20 or 24 characters.

Description

Matrix = blosum(*Identity*) returns a BLOSUM (**B**locks **S**ubstitution **M**atrix) matrix with a specified percent identity. The default ordering of the output includes the extended characters B, Z, X, and *.

A R N D C Q E G H I L K M F P S T W Y V B Z X *

[*Matrix*, *MatrixInfo*] = blosum(*Identity*) returns a structure of information (*MatrixInfo*) about a BLOSUM matrix (*Matrix*) with the fields Name, Scale, Entropy, ExpectedScore, HighestScore, LowestScore, and Order.

blosum(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...) defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`blosum(..., 'Extended', ExtendedValue)`, if `Extended` is `false`, returns the scoring matrix for the standard 20 amino acids. Ordering of the output when `Extended` is `false` is

```
A R N D C Q E G H I L K M F P S T W Y V
```

`blosum(..., 'Order', OrderValue)` returns a BLOSUM matrix ordered by an amino acid sequence (*OrderString*).

Examples

Return a BLOSUM matrix with a value of 50.

```
B50 = blosum(50)
```

Return a BLOSUM matrix with the amino acids in a specific order.

```
B75 = blosum(75, 'Order', 'CSTPAGNDEQHRKMILVFYW')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `dayhoff`, `gonnet`, `nwalign`, `pam`, `swalign`

celintensityread

Purpose Read probe intensities from Affymetrix CEL files

Syntax

```
ProbeStructure = celintensityread(CELFiles, CDFFile)
ProbeStructure = celintensityread(..., 'CELPPath',
CELPathValue, ...)
ProbeStructure = celintensityread(..., 'CDFPath',
CDFPathValue, ...)
ProbeStructure = celintensityread(..., 'PMOnly',
PMOnlyValue,
...)
ProbeStructure = celintensityread(..., 'Verbose',
VerboseValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>CELFiles</i>	Any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• String specifying a single CEL file name.• '*', which reads all CEL files in the current directory.• ' ', which opens the Select CEL Files dialog box from which you select the CEL files. From this dialog box, you can press and hold Ctrl or Shift while clicking to select multiple CEL files.• Cell array of CEL file names.
<i>CDFFile</i>	Either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• String specifying a CDF file name.• ' ', which opens the Select CDF File dialog box from which you select the CDF file.
<i>CELPPathValue</i>	String specifying the path and directory where the files specified in <i>CELFiles</i> are stored.
<i>CDFPathValue</i>	String specifying the path and directory where the file specified in <i>CDFFile</i> is stored.

<i>PMOnlyValue</i>	Property to include or exclude the mismatch (MM) probe intensity values in the returned structure. Enter true to return only perfect match (PM) probe intensities. Enter false to return both PM and MM probe intensities. Default is true.
<i>VerboseValue</i>	Controls the display of a progress report showing the name of each CEL file as it is read. When <i>VerboseValue</i> is false, no progress report is displayed. Default is true.
<i>ProbeStructure</i>	MATLAB structure containing information from the CEL files, including probe intensities, probe indices, and probe set IDs.

Return Values

Description

Note This function does not work on the Solaris platform.

ProbeStructure = celintensityread(*CELFiles*, *CDFFile*) reads the specified Affymetrix CEL files and the associated CDF library file (created from Affymetrix GeneChip arrays for expression or genotyping assays), and then creates *ProbeStructure*, a structure containing information from the CEL files, including probe intensities, probe indices, and probe set IDs. *CELFiles* is a string or cell array of CEL file names. *CDFFile* is a string specifying a CDF file name.

If you set *CELFiles* to '*', then it reads all CEL files in the current directory. If you set *CELFiles* to ' ', then it opens the Select CEL Files dialog box from which you select the CEL files. From this dialog box, you can press and hold **Ctrl** or **Shift** while clicking to select multiple CEL files.

If you set *CDFFile* to ' ', then it opens the Select CDF File dialog box from which you select the CDF file.

celintensityread

ProbeStructure = celintensityread(..., 'PropertyName', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls celintensityread with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

ProbeStructure = celintensityread(..., 'CELPPath', *CELPPathValue*, ...) specifies a path and directory where the files specified in *CELFiles* are stored.

ProbeStructure = celintensityread(..., 'CDFPath', *CDFPathValue*, ...) specifies a path and directory where the file specified in *CDFFile* is stored.

ProbeStructure = celintensityread(..., 'PMOnly', *PMOnlyValue*, ...) includes or excludes the mismatch (MM) probe intensity values. When *PMOnlyValue* is true, celintensityread returns only perfect match (PM) probe intensities. When *PMOnlyValue* is false, celintensityread returns both PM and MM probe intensities. Default is true.

You can learn more about the Affymetrix CEL files and download sample files from:

http://www.affymetrix.com/support/technical/sample_data/demo_data.affx

Note Some Affymetrix CEL files are combined with other data files in a DTT or CAB file. You must download and use the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool to extract these files from the DTT or CAB file. You can download the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool from:

<http://www.affymetrix.com/products/software/specific/dtt.affx>

You will have to register and log in at the Affymetrix Web site to download the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool.

ProbeStructure contains the following fields.

Field	Description
CDFName	File name of the Affymetrix CDF library file.
CELNames	Cell array of names of the Affymetrix CEL files.
NumProbeSets	Number of probe sets in each CEL file.
ProbeSetIDs	Cell array of the probe set IDs from the Affymetrix CDF library file.
ProbeIndices	Column vector containing probe indexing information. Probes within a probe set are numbered 0 through $N - 1$, where N is the number of probes in the probe set.
PMIntensities	Matrix containing PM probe intensity values. Each row corresponds to a probe, and each column corresponds to a CEL file. The rows are ordered the same way as in <i>ProbeIndices</i> , and the columns are ordered the same way as in the <i>CELFiles</i> input argument.
MMIntensities	Matrix containing MM probe intensity values. Each row corresponds to a probe, and each column corresponds to a CEL file. The rows are ordered the same way as in <i>ProbeIndices</i> , and the columns are ordered the same way as in the <i>CELFiles</i> input argument.

ProbeStructure = celintensityread(..., 'Verbose', *VerboseValue*, ...) controls the display of a progress report showing the name of each CEL file as it is read. When *VerboseValue* is false, no progress report is displayed. Default is true.

Examples

The following example assumes that you have the HG_U95Av2.CDF library file stored at D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\HGGenome, and that your current directory points to a location containing CEL files associated with this CDF library file. In this example, the

celintensityread

celintensityread function reads all the CEL files in the current directory and a CDF file in a specified directory. The next command line uses the rmabackadj function to perform background adjustment on the PM probe intensities in the PMIntensities field of PMProbeStructure.

```
PMProbeStructure = celintensityread('*', 'HG_U95Av2.CDF',...  
                                     'CDFPath', 'D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\HGGenome');  
BackAdjustedMatrix = rmabackadj(PMProbeStructure.PMIntensities);
```

The following example lets you select CEL files and a CDF file to read using Open File dialog boxes:

```
PMProbeStructure = celintensityread(' ', ' ');
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: affyinvarsetnorm, affyprobeseqread, affyread, agferead, gcrma, gcrmabackadj, gprread, probelibraryinfo, probesetlink, probesetlookup, probesetplot, probesetvalues, rmabackadj, rmasummary, sptread

Purpose

Evaluate performance of classifier

Syntax

```
classperf
cp = classperf(groundtruth)
classperf(cp, classout)
classperf(cp, classout, testidx)
cp = classperf(groundtruth, classout,...)
cp = classperf(..., 'Positive', PositiveValue, 'Negative',
    NegativeValue)
```

Description

`classperf` provides an interface to keep track of the performance during the validation of classifiers. `classperf` creates and updates a classifier performance object (*CP*) that accumulates the results of the classifier. Later, classification standard performance parameters can be accessed using the function `get` or as fields in structures. Some of these performance parameters are `ErrorRate`, `CorrectRate`, `ErrorDistributionByClass`, `Sensitivity` and `Specificity`. `classperf`, without input arguments, displays all the available performance parameters.

`cp = classperf(groundtruth)` creates and initializes an empty object. *CP* is the handle to the object. *groundtruth* is a vector containing the true class labels for every observation. *groundtruth* can be a numeric vector or a cell array of strings. When used in a cross-validation design experiment, *groundtruth* should have the same size as the total number of observations.

`classperf(cp, classout)` updates the *CP* object with the classifier output *classout*. *classout* is the same size and type as *groundtruth*. When *classout* is numeric and *groundtruth* is a cell array of strings, the function `grp2idx` is used to create the index vector that links *classout* to the class labels. When *classout* is a cell array of strings, an empty string, ' ', represents an inconclusive result of the classifier. For numeric arrays, NaN represents an inconclusive result.

`classperf(cp, classout, testidx)` updates the *CP* object with the classifier output *classout*. *classout* has smaller size than *groundtruth*, and *testidx* is an index vector or a logical index vector of

classperf

the same size as *groundtruth*, which indicates the observations that were used in the current validation.

`cp = classperf(groundtruth, classout,...)` creates and updates the *CP* object with the first validation. This form is useful when you want to know the performance of a single validation.

`cp = classperf(..., 'Positive', PositiveValue, 'Negative', NegativeValue)` sets the 'positive' and 'negative' labels to identify the target disorder and the control classes. These labels are used to compute clinical diagnostic test performance. *p* and *n* must consist of disjoint sets of the labels used in *groundtruth*. For example, if

```
groundtruth = [1 2 2 1 3 4 4 1 3 3 3 2]
```

you could set

```
p = [1 2];  
n = [3 4];
```

If *groundtruth* is a cell array of strings, *p* and *n* can either be cell arrays of strings or numeric vectors whose entries are subsets of `grp2idx(groundtruth)`. *PositiveValue* defaults to the first class returned by `grp2idx(groundtruth)`, while *NegativeValue* defaults to all the others. In clinical tests, inconclusive values ('' or NaN) are counted as false negatives for the computation of the specificity and as false positives for the computation of the sensitivity, that is, inconclusive results may decrease the diagnostic value of the test. Tested observations for which true class is not within the union of *PositiveValue* and *NegativeValue* are not considered. However, tested observations that result in a class not covered by the vector *groundtruth* are counted as inconclusive.

Examples

```
% Classify the fisheriris data with a K-Nearest Neighbor  
classifier load fisheriris  
c = knnclassify(meas,meas,species,4,'euclidean','Consensus');  
cp = classperf(species,c)  
get(cp)
```

```

% 10-fold cross-validation on the fisheriris data using linear
% discriminant analysis and the third column as only feature for
% classification
load fisheriris
indices = crossvalind('Kfold',species,10);
cp = classperf(species); % initializes the CP object
for i = 1:10
    test = (indices == i); train = ~test;
    class = classify(meas(test,3),meas(train,3),species(train));
    % updates the CP object with the current classification results
    classperf(cp,class,test)
end
cp.CorrectRate % queries for the correct classification rate

```

```
cp =
```

```
biolearning.classperformance
```

```

                Label: ''
            Description: ''
        ClassLabels: {3x1 cell}
        GroundTruth: [150x1 double]
NumberOfObservations: 150
        ControlClasses: [2x1 double]
        TargetClasses: 1
        ValidationCounter: 1
        SampleDistribution: [150x1 double]
        ErrorDistribution: [150x1 double]
SampleDistributionByClass: [3x1 double]
ErrorDistributionByClass: [3x1 double]
        CountingMatrix: [4x3 double]
        CorrectRate: 1
        ErrorRate: 0
InconclusiveRate: 0.0733
        ClassifiedRate: 0.9267
        Sensitivity: 1

```

classperf

```
                Specificity: 0.8900
PositivePredictiveValue: 0.8197
NegativePredictiveValue: 1
                PositiveLikelihood: 9.0909
                NegativeLikelihood: 0
                Prevalence: 0.3333
                DiagnosticTable: [2x2 double]
```

```
ans =
    0.9467
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `knnclassify`, `svmclassify`, `crossvalind`

Statistics Toolbox functions `grp2idx`, `classify`

Purpose

Cleave amino acid sequence with enzyme

Syntax

```

Fragments = cleave(SeqAA, PeptidePattern, Position)
[Fragments, CuttingSites] = cleave(...)
[Fragments, CuttingSites, Lengths] = cleave(...)
cleave(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
cleave(..., 'PartialDigest', PartialDigestValue)

```

Arguments

<i>SeqAA</i>	Amino acid sequence. Enter a character string or a vector of integers from the table . Examples: 'ARN' or [1 2 3]. You can also enter a structure with the field Sequence.
<i>PeptidePattern</i>	Short amino acid sequence to search in a larger sequence. Enter a character string, vector of integers, or a regular expression.
<i>Position</i>	Position on the PeptidePattern where the sequence is cleaved. Enter a position within the PeptidePattern. Position 0 corresponds to the N terminal end of the PeptidePattern.
<i>PartialDigestValue</i>	Property to specify the probability that a cleavage site will be cleaved. Enter a value from 0 to 1 (default).

Description

Fragments = cleave(*SeqAA*, *PeptidePattern*, *Position*) cuts an amino acid sequence (*SeqAA*) into parts at the specified cleavage site specified by a peptide pattern and position.

[*Fragments*, *CuttingSites*] = cleave(...) returns a numeric vector with the indices representing the cleave sites. A 0 (zero) is added to the list, so `numel(Fragments)==numel(CuttingSites)`. You can use *CuttingSites* + 1 to point to the first amino acid of every fragment respective to the original sequence.

cleave

`[Fragments, CuttingSites, Lengths] = cleave(...)` returns a numeric vector with the lengths of every fragment.

`cleave(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`cleave(..., 'PartialDigest', PartialDigestValue)` simulates a partial digestion where `PartialDigest` is the probability of a cleavage site being cut.

The following table lists some common proteases and their cleavage sites.

Protease	Peptide Pattern	Position
Trypsin	[KR](?!P)	1
Chymotrypsin	[WYF](?!P)	1
Glutamine C	[ED](?!P)	1
Lysine C	[K](?!P)	1
Aspartic acid N	D	1

Examples

- 1 Get a protein sequence from the GenPept database.

```
S = getgenpept('AAA59174')
```

- 2 Cleave the sequence using trypsin. Trypsin cleaves after K or R when the next residue is not P.

```
[parts, sites, lengths] = cleave(S.Sequence, '[KR](?!P)', 1);  
for i=1:10  
    fprintf('%5d%5d    %s\n', sites(i), lengths(i), parts{i})  
end
```

```
0    6    MGTGGR  
6    1    R  
7   34    GAAAAPLLVAVAALLLGAAGHLYPGEVCPGMDIR  
41   5   >NNLTR
```

46	21	LHELENCVIEGHLQILLMFK
67	7	TRPEDFR
74	6	DLSFPK
80	12	LIMITDYLLLFR
92	8	VYGLESLK
100	10	DLFPNLTVIR

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: rebasecuts, restrict, seqshowwords

MATLAB function: regexp

clustergram

Purpose Create dendrogram and heat map

Syntax

```
clustergram(Data)
clustergram(Data, ...'RowLabels', RowLabelsValue, ...)
clustergram(Data, ...'ColumnLabels',
ColumnLabelsValue, ...)
clustergram(Data, ...'Pdist', PdistValue, ...)
clustergram(Data, ...'Linkage', LinkageValue, ...)
clustergram(Data, ...'Dendrogram', DendrogramValue, ...)
clustergram(Data, ...'OptimalLeafOrder',
OptimalLeafOrderValue, ...)
clustergram(Data, ...'ColorMap', ColorMapValue, ...)
clustergram(Data, ...'SymmetricRange', SymmetricRangeValue,
...)
clustergram(Data, ...'Dimension', DimensionValue, ...)
clustergram(Data, ...'Ratio', RatioValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>Data</i>	Matrix in which each row corresponds to a gene and each column corresponds to a single experiment or microarray.
<i>RowLabelsValue</i>	Vector of numbers or cell array of text strings to label the rows in <i>Data</i> .
<i>ColumnLabelsValue</i>	Vector of numbers or cell array of text strings to label the columns in <i>Data</i> .

PdistValue

String to specify the distance metric to pass to the `pdist` function (Statistics Toolbox) to use to calculate the pair-wise distances between observations. For information on choices, see the `pdist` function. Default is `euclidean`.

Note If the distance metric requires extra arguments, then *PdistValue* is a cell array. For example, to use the Minkowski distance with exponent `P`, you would use `{'minkowski', P}`.

LinkageValue

String to specify the linkage method to pass to the `linkage` function (Statistics Toolbox) to use to create the hierarchical cluster tree. For information on choices, see the `linkage` function. Default is `average`.

DendrogramValue

Cell array of property name/property value pairs to pass to the `dendrogram` function (Statistics Toolbox) to create the dendrogram plot. For information on choices, see the `dendrogram` function.

clustergram

OptimalLeafOrderValue Property to enable or disable the optimal leaf ordering calculation, which determines the leaf order that maximizes the similarity between neighboring leaves. Choices are `true` (enable) or `false` (disable). Default depends on the size of *Data*. If the number of rows or columns in *Data* is greater than 1000, default is `false`; otherwise, default is `true`.

Note Disabling the optimal leaf ordering calculation can be useful when working with large data sets because this calculation uses a large amount of memory and can be very time consuming.

ColorMapValue

Either of the following:

- M-by-3 matrix of RGB values
- Name or function handle of a function that returns a color map

Default is `redgreencmap`.

SymmetricRangeValue

Property to force the color range of the heat map to be symmetric around zero. Choices are `true` (default) or `false`.

<i>DimensionValue</i>	Property to specify either a one-dimensional or two-dimensional clustergram. Choices are 1 (default) or 2.
<i>RatioValue</i>	Either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Scalar • Two-element vector <p>Default is 1/5.</p>

Description

`clustergram(Data)` creates a dendrogram and heat map from the gene expression data in the matrix *Data*. It uses hierarchical clustering with euclidean distance metric and average linkage to generate the hierarchical tree. The clustering is performed on the rows in matrix *Data*, in which the rows correspond to genes and the columns correspond to different microarrays. To cluster the columns instead of the rows, transpose the data using the transpose (') operator.

`clustergram(Data, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `clustergram` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`clustergram(Data, ...'RowLabels', RowLabelsValue, ...)` uses the contents of *RowLabelsValue*, a vector of numbers or cell array of text strings, as labels for the rows in *Data*.

`clustergram(Data, ...'ColumnLabels', ColumnLabelsValue, ...)` uses the contents of *ColumnLabelsValue*, a vector of numbers or cell array of text strings, as labels for the columns in *Data*.

`clustergram(Data, ...'Pdist', PdistValue, ...)` specifies the distance metric to pass to the `pdist` function (Statistics Toolbox) to use to calculate the pair-wise distances between observations. *PdistValue* is a string. For information on choices, see the `pdist` function. Default is euclidean.

Note If the distance metric requires extra arguments, then *PdistValue* is a cell array. For example, to use the Minkowski distance with exponent *P*, you would use {'minkowski', *P*}.

`clustergram(Data, ...'Linkage', LinkageValue, ...)` specifies the linkage method to pass to the linkage function (Statistics Toolbox) to use to create the hierarchical cluster tree. *LinkageValue* is a string. For information on choices, see the linkage function. Default is average.

`clustergram(Data, ...'Dendrogram', DendrogramValue, ...)` specifies property name/property value pairs to pass to the dendrogram function (Statistics Toolbox) to create the dendrogram plot. *DendrogramValue* is a cell array of property name/property value pairs. For information on choices, see the dendrogram function.

`clustergram(Data, ...'OptimalLeafOrder', OptimalLeafOrderValue, ...)` enables or disables the optimal leaf ordering calculation, which determines the leaf order that maximizes the similarity between neighboring leaves. Choices are true (enable) or false (disable). Default depends on the size of *Data*. If the number of rows or columns in *Data* is greater than 1000, default is false; otherwise, default is true.

Note Disabling the optimal leaf ordering calculation can be useful when working with large data sets because this calculation uses a large amount of memory and can be very time consuming.

`clustergram(Data, ...'ColorMap', ColorMapValue, ...)` specifies the color map to use to create the clustergram. This controls the colors used to display the heat map. *ColorMapValue* is either a M-by-3 matrix of RGB values or the name or function handle of a function that returns a color map. Default is redgreencmap.

`clustergram(Data, ...'SymmetricRange', SymmetricRangeValue, ...)`, controls whether the color range of the heat map is symmetric around zero. *SymmetricRangeValue* can be true (default) or false.

`clustergram(Data, ...'Dimension', DimensionValue, ...)` specifies whether to create a one-dimensional or two-dimensional clustergram. Choices are 1 (default) or 2. The one-dimensional clustergram clusters the rows of the data. The two-dimensional clustergram creates the one-dimensional clustergram, and then clusters the columns of the row-clustered data.

`clustergram(Data, ...'Ratio', RatioValue, ...)` specifies the ratio of the space that the dendrogram(s) use in the *X* and *Y* directions, relative to the size of the heat map. If *RatioValue* is a scalar, it is used as the ratio for both directions. If *RatioValue* is a two-element vector, the first element is used for the *X* ratio, and the second element is used for the *Y* ratio. The *Y* ratio is ignored for one-dimensional clustergrams. Default ratio is 1/5.

Tip Click and hold the mouse button on the heat map to display the intensity value, column label, and row label for that area of the heat map. View row labels by using the zoom icon to zoom the right side of the clustergram.

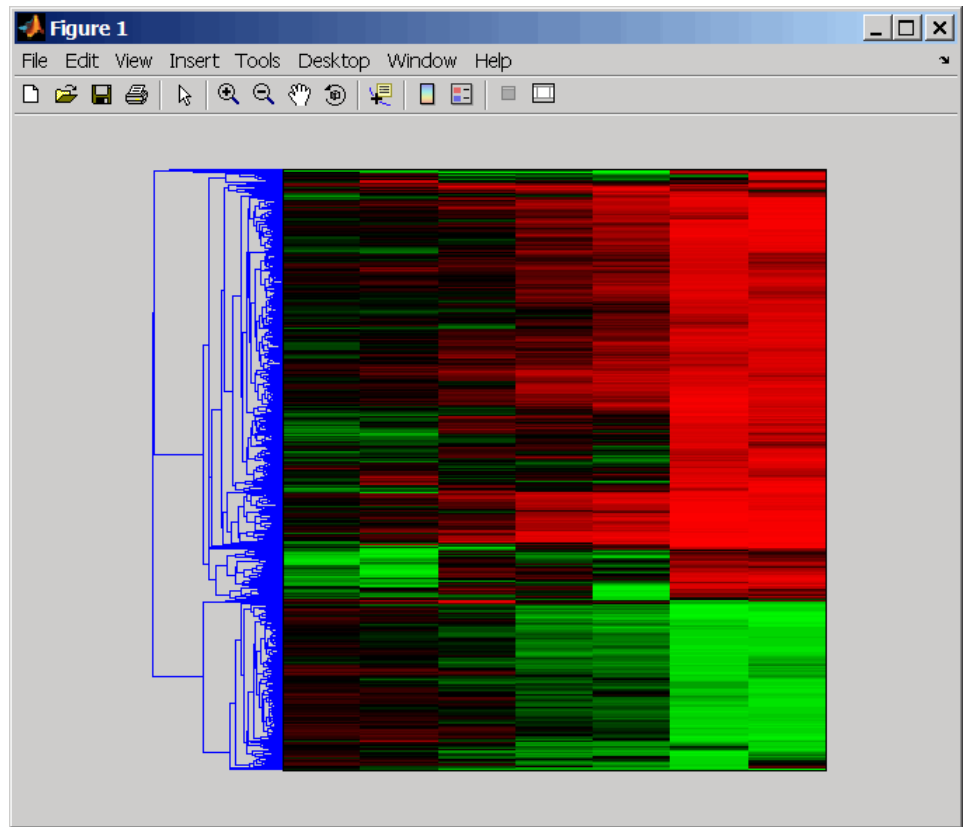
Examples

The following example uses data from an experiment (DeRisi et al., 1997) that used DNA microarrays to study temporal gene expression of almost all genes in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* during the metabolic shift from fermentation to respiration. Expression levels were measured at seven time points during the diauxic shift.

- 1 Load the filtered yeast data provided with Bioinformatics Toolbox, and then create a clustergram from the gene expression data in the `yeastvalues` matrix.

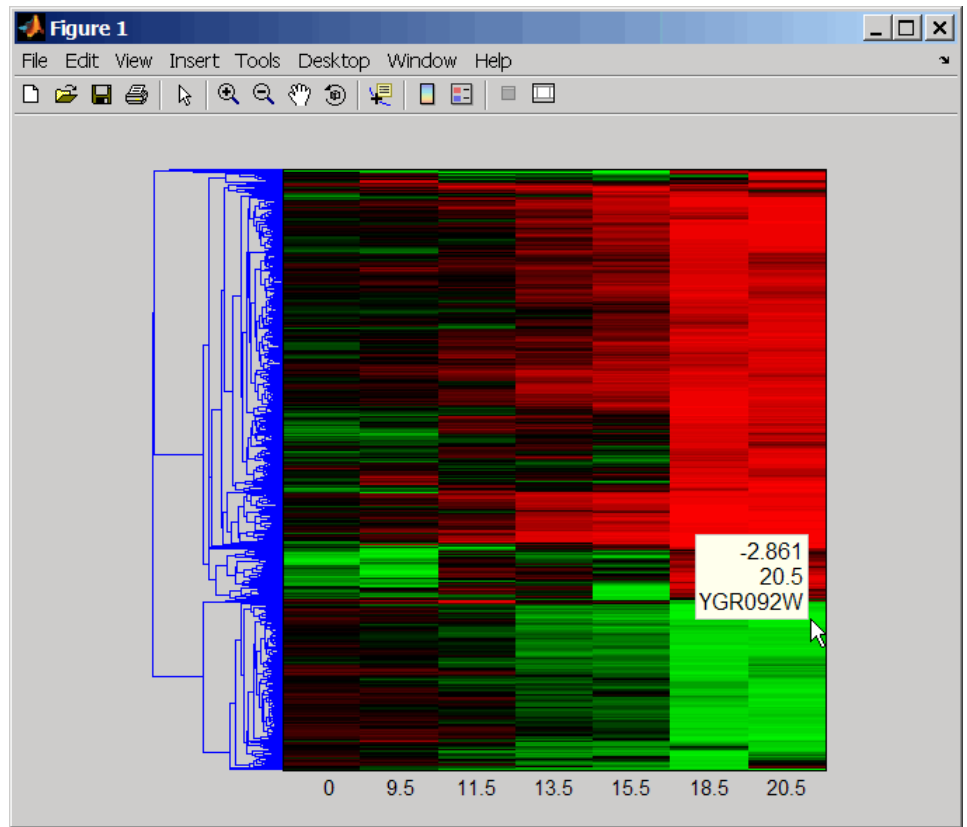
```
load filteredyeastdata
clustergram(yeastvalues)
```

clustergram



- 2 Add labels to the clustergram, then click and hold the mouse button on the heat map to display the intensity value, column label, and row label for that area of the heat map. View the row labels by using the Zoom icon to zoom the right side of the clustergram.

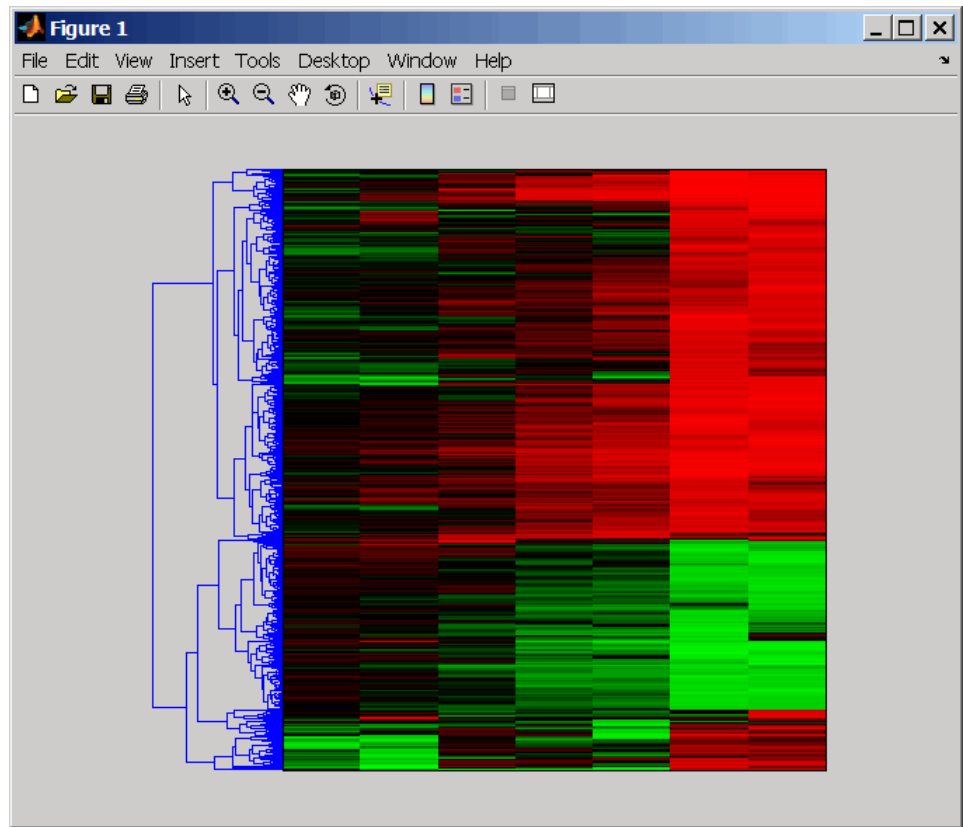
```
clustergram(yeastvalues, 'RowLabels', genes, 'ColumnLabels', times)
```



3 Change the clustering parameters.

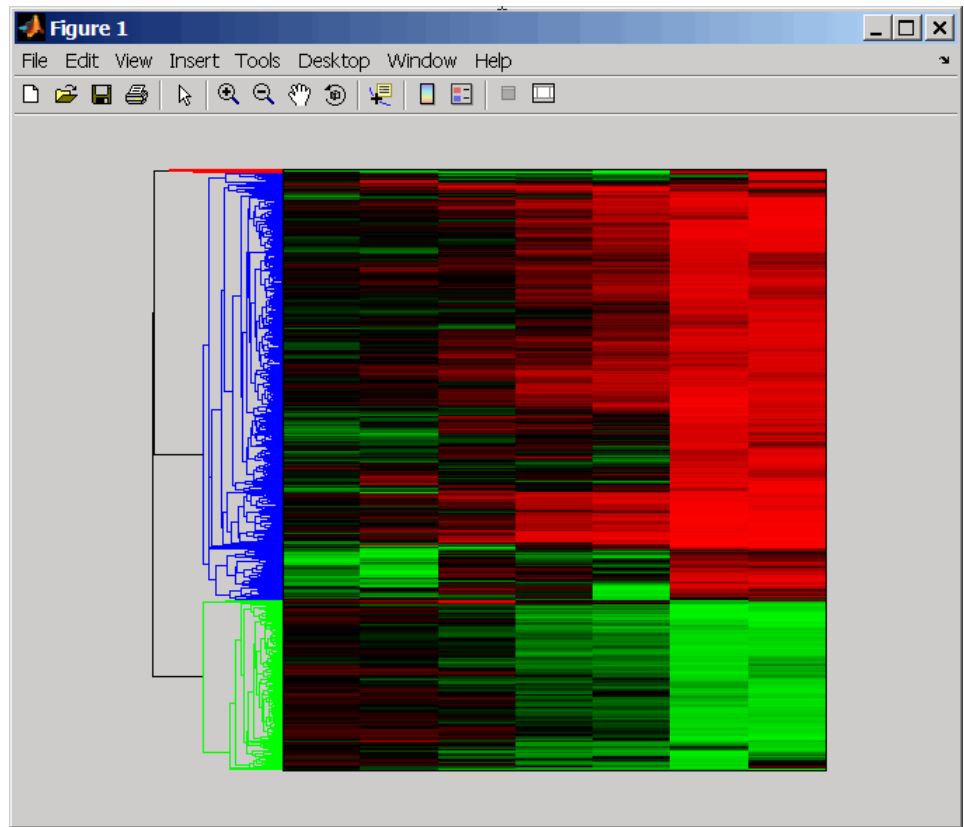
```
clustergram(yeastvalues, 'Linkage', 'complete')
```

clustergram



- 4** Change the color of the groups of nodes in the dendrogram whose linkage is less than a threshold of 5.

```
clustergram(yeastvalues, 'RowLabels', genes, ...  
            'Dendrogram', {'colorthreshold', 5})
```



References

- [1] Bar-Joseph, Z., Gifford, D.K., and Jaakkola, T.S. (2001). Fast optimal leaf ordering for hierarchical clustering. *Bioinformatics* 17, Suppl 1:S22 – 9. PMID: 11472989.
- [2] Eisen, M.B., Spellman, P.T., Brown, P.O., and Botstein, D. (1998). Cluster analysis and display of genome-wide expression patterns. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 95, 14863 – 8.

clustergram

[3] DeRisi, J.L., Iyer, V.R., and Brown, P.O. (1997) Exploring the metabolic and genetic control of gene expression on a genomic scale. *Science* 278, 680–686s.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function: `redgreencmap`

Statistics Toolbox functions: `cluster`, `dendrogram`, `linkage`, `pdist`

Purpose Calculate codon frequency for each amino acid in DNA sequence

Syntax

```
codonbias(SeqDNA)
codonbias(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
codonbias(..., 'GeneticCode', GeneticCodeValue)
codonbias(..., 'Frame', FrameValue)
codonbias(..., 'Reverse', ReverseValue)
codonbias(..., 'Pie', PieValue)
```

Arguments

SeqDNA Nucleotide sequence (DNA or RNA). Enter a character string with the letters A, T or U, C, and G or a vector of integers. You can also enter a structure with the field *Sequence*. *codonbias* does not count ambiguous bases or gaps.

Description

Many amino acids are coded by two or more nucleic acid codons. However, the probability that a codon (from the various possible codons for an amino acid) is used to code an amino acid is different between sequences. Knowing the frequency of each codon in a protein coding sequence for each amino acid is a useful statistic.

codonbias(SeqDNA) calculates the codon frequency in percent for each amino acid in a DNA sequence (*SeqDNA*).

codonbias(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...) defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

codonbias(..., 'GeneticCode', GeneticCodeValue) selects an alternative genetic code (*GeneticCodeValue*). The default value is 'Standard' or 1. For a list of genetic codes, see .

codonbias(..., 'Frame', FrameValue) selects a reading frame (*FrameValue*). *FrameValue* can be 1 (default), 2, or 3.

codonbias(..., 'Reverse', ReverseValue), when *ReverseValue* is true, returns the codon frequency for the reverse complement of the DNA sequence (*SeqDNA*).

codonbias

`codonbias(..., 'Pie', PieValue)`, when *PieValue* is true, creates a figure of 20 pie charts for each amino acid.

Example

- 1 Import a nucleotide sequence from GenBank to MATLAB. For example, get the DNA sequence that codes for a human insulin receptor.

```
S = getgenbank('M10051');
```

- 2 Calculate the codon frequency for each amino acid and plot the results.

```
cb = codonbias(S.Sequence, 'PIE', true)
```

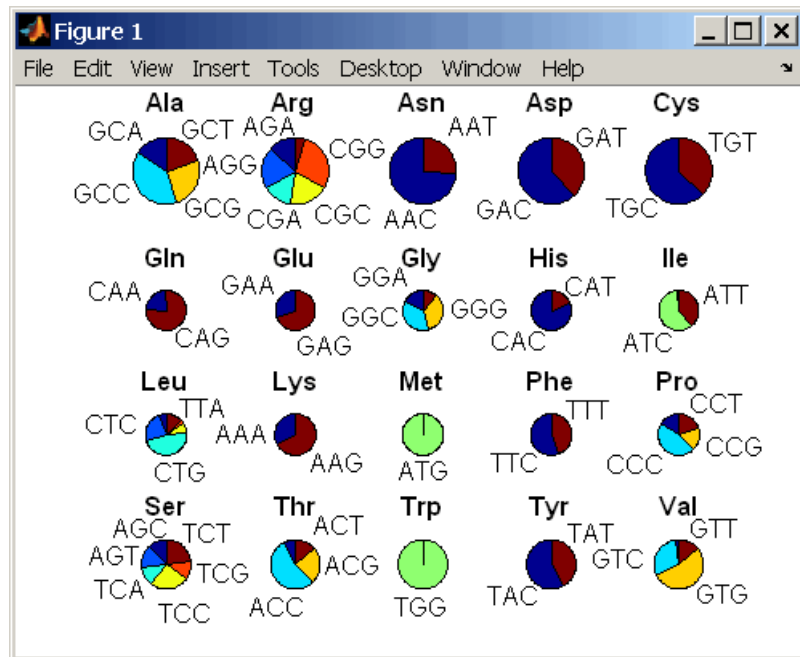
```
cb.Ala
```

```
ans =
```

```
    Codon: {'GCA' "GCC' "GCG' 'GCT'}
```

```
    Freq: [0.1600 0.3867 0.2533 0.2000]
```

MATLAB draws a figure with 20 pie charts for the 20 amino acids.



See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions aminolookup, codoncount, geneticcode, nt2aa

codoncount

Purpose Count codons in nucleotide sequence

Syntax

```
Codons = codoncount(SeqNT)
codoncount(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
codoncount(..., 'Frame', FrameValue)
codoncount(..., 'Reverse', ReverseValue)
codoncount(..., 'Figure', FigureValue)
```

Arguments

<i>SeqNT</i>	Nucleotide sequence. Enter a character string or vector of integers. You can also enter a structure with the field <i>Sequence</i> .
<i>FrameValue</i>	Property to select a reading frame. Enter 1 (default), 2, or 3.
<i>ReverseValue</i>	Property to control returning the complement sequence. Enter true or false (default).
<i>FigureValue</i>	Property to control plotting a heat map. Enter either true or false (default).

Description *Codons = codoncount(SeqNT)* counts the number of codon in a sequence (*SeqNT*) and returns the codon counts in a structure with the fields AAA, AAC, AAG, ..., TTG, TTT.

- For sequences that have codons with the character U, the U characters are added to codons with T characters.
- If the sequence contains ambiguous nucleotide characters (R Y K M S W B D H V N), or gaps indicated with a hyphen (-), this function creates a field *Others* and displays a warning message.

```
Warning: Ambiguous symbols 'symbol' appear
in the sequence.
These will be in Others.
```

- If the sequence contains undefined nucleotide characters (E F H I J L O P Q X Z), codoncount ignores the characters and displays a warning message.

```
Warning: Unknown symbols 'symbol' appear
in the sequence.
These will be ignored.
```

[*Codons*, *CodonArray*] = codoncount(*SeqNT*) returns a 4x4x4 array (*CodonArray*) with the raw count data for each codon. The three dimensions correspond to the three positions in the codon. For example, the element (2,3,4) of the array gives the number of CGT codons where A <=> 1, C <=> 2, G <=> 3, and T <=> 4.

codoncount(..., '*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*,...) defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

codoncount(..., '*Frame*', *FrameValue*) counts the codons in a specific reading frame.

codoncount(..., '*Reverse*', *ReverseValue*), when *ReverseValue* is true, counts the codons for the reverse complement of the sequence.

codoncount(..., '*Figure*', *FigureValue*), when *FigureValue* is true displays a figure showing a heat map of the codon counts.

Examples

Count the number of standard codons in a nucleotide sequence.

```
codons = codoncount('AAACGTTA')
```

```
codons =
```

```
AAA: 1  ATC: 0  CGG: 0  GCT: 0  TCA: 0
AAC: 0  ATG: 0  CGT: 1  GGA: 0  TCC: 0
AAG: 0  ATT: 0  CTA: 0  GGC: 0  TCG: 0
AAT: 0  CAA: 0  CTC: 0  GGG: 0  TCT: 0
ACA: 0  CAC: 0  CTG: 0  GGT: 0  TGA: 0
ACC: 0  CAG: 0  CTT: 0  GTA: 0  TGC: 0
ACG: 0  CAT: 0  GAA: 0  GTC: 0  TGG: 0
ACT: 0  CCA: 0  GAC: 0  GTG: 0  TGT: 0
```

codoncount

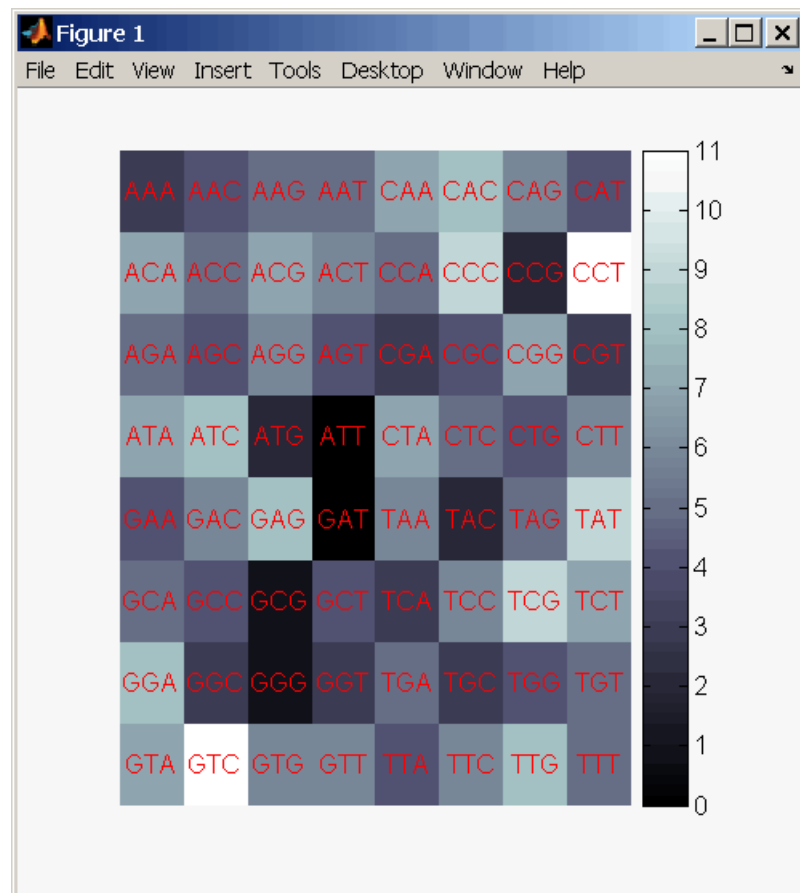
```
AGA: 0 CCC: 0 GAG: 0 GTT: 0 TTA: 0
AGC: 0 CCG: 0 GAT: 0 TAA: 0 TTC: 0
AGG: 0 CCT: 0 GCA: 0 TAC: 0 TTG: 0
AGT: 0 CGA: 0 GCC: 0 TAG: 0 TTT: 0
ATA: 0 CGC: 0 GCG: 0 TAT: 0
```

Count the codons in the second frame for the reverse complement of a sequence.

```
r2codons = codoncount('AAACGTTA', 'Frame',2,...
                      'Reverse',true);
```

Create a heat map for the codons in a nucleotide sequence.

```
a = randseq(1000);
codoncount(a,'Figure', true);
```



See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `acount` , `basecount`, `baselookup`, `codonbias`, `dimercount`, `nmercount`, `ntdensity`, `segrcomplement`, `seqwordcount`

cpgisland

Purpose Locate CpG islands in DNA sequence

Syntax

```
cpgisland(SeqDNA)
cpgisland(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
cpgisland(..., 'Window', WindowValue)
cpgisland(..., 'MinIsland', MinIslandValue)
cpgisland(..., 'CpGoe', CpGoeValue)
cpgisland(..., 'GCmin', GCminValue)
cpgisland(..., 'Plot', PlotValue)
```

Arguments

<i>SeqDNA</i>	DNA nucleotide sequence. Enter a character string with the letters A, T, C, and G. You can also enter a structure with the field <i>Sequence</i> . <i>cpgisland</i> does not count ambiguous bases or gaps.
---------------	---

Description

cpgisland(SeqDNA) finds CpG islands by marking bases within a moving window of 100 DNA bases with a GC content greater than 50% and a CpGobserved/CpGexpected ratio greater than 60%.

cpgisland(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...) defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

cpgisland(..., 'Window', WindowValue) specifies the window size for calculating GC percent and CpGobserved/CpGexpected ratios for a sequence. The default value is 100 bases. A smaller window size increases the noise in a plot.

cpgisland(..., 'MinIsland', MinIslandValue) specifies the minimum number of consecutive marked bases to report. The default value is 200 bases.

cpgisland(..., 'CpGoe', CpGoeValue) specifies the minimum CpGobserved/CpGexpected ratio in each window needed to mark a base. Enter a value between 0 and 1. The default value is 0.6. This ratio is defined as

$$\text{CPGobs/CpGexp} = (\text{NumCpGs} * \text{Length}) / (\text{NumGs} * \text{NumCs})$$

`cpgisland(..., 'GCmin', GCminValue)` specifies the minimum GC percent in a window needed to mark a base. Enter a value between 0 and 1. The default value is 0.5.

`cpgisland(..., 'Plot', PlotValue)`, when `Plot` is true, plots GC content, CpG content, CpG islands greater than the minimum island size, and all potential CpG islands for the specified criteria.

Example

- 1 Import a nucleotide sequence from GenBank. For example, get a sequence from Homo Sapiens chromosome 12.

```
S = getgenbank('AC156455');
```

- 2 Calculate the CpG islands in the sequence and plot the results.

```
cpgisland(S.Sequence, 'PLOT', true)
```

MATLAB lists the CpG islands greater than 200 bases and draws a figure.

```
ans =  
Starts: [4470 28753 29347 36229]  
Stops: [5555 29064 29676 36450]
```



See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `basecount`, `ntdensity`, `seqshoworfs`

Purpose

Generate cross-validation indices

Syntax

```
Indices = crossvalind('Kfold', N, K)
[Train, Test] = crossvalind('HoldOut', N, P)
[Train, Test] = crossvalind('LeaveMOut', N, M)
[Train, Test] = crossvalind('Resubstitution', N, [P,Q])
[...] = crossvalind(Method, Group, ...)
[...] = crossvalind(Method, Group, ..., 'Classes', C)
[...] = crossvalind(Method, Group, ..., 'Min', MinValue)
```

Description

Indices = crossvalind('Kfold', N, K) returns randomly generated indices for a K-fold cross-validation of N observations. *Indices* contains equal (or approximately equal) proportions of the integers 1 through K that define a partition of the N observations into K disjoint subsets. Repeated calls return different randomly generated partitions. K defaults to 5 when omitted. In K-fold cross-validation, K-1 folds are used for training and the last fold is used for evaluation. This process is repeated K times, leaving one different fold for evaluation each time.

[Train, Test] = crossvalind('HoldOut', N, P) returns logical index vectors for cross-validation of N observations by randomly selecting P*N (approximately) observations to hold out for the evaluation set. P must be a scalar between 0 and 1. P defaults to 0.5 when omitted, corresponding to holding 50% out. Using holdout cross-validation within a loop is similar to K-fold cross-validation one time outside the loop, except that non-disjointed subsets are assigned to each evaluation.

[Train, Test] = crossvalind('LeaveMOut', N, M), where M is an integer, returns logical index vectors for cross-validation of N observations by randomly selecting M of the observations to hold out for the evaluation set. M defaults to 1 when omitted. Using LeaveMOut cross-validation within a loop does not guarantee disjointed evaluation sets. Use K-fold instead.

[Train, Test] = crossvalind('Resubstitution', N, [P,Q]) returns logical index vectors of indices for cross-validation of N observations by randomly selecting P*N observations for the evaluation set and Q*N observations for training. Sets are selected in order to

minimize the number of observations that are used in both sets. P and Q are scalars between 0 and 1. $Q=1-P$ corresponds to holding out $(100*P)\%$, while $P=Q=1$ corresponds to full resubstitution. $[P,Q]$ defaults to $[1,1]$ when omitted.

`[...] = crossvalind(Method, Group, ...)` takes the group structure of the data into account. `Group` is a grouping vector that defines the class for each observation. `Group` can be a numeric vector, a string array, or a cell array of strings. The partition of the groups depends on the type of cross-validation: For K-fold, each group is divided into K subsets, approximately equal in size. For all others, approximately equal numbers of observations from each group are selected for the evaluation set. In both cases the training set contains at least one observation from each group.

`[...] = crossvalind(Method, Group, ..., 'Classes', C)` restricts the observations to only those values specified in `C`. `C` can be a numeric vector, a string array, or a cell array of strings, but it is of the same form as `Group`. If one output argument is specified, it contains the value 0 for observations belonging to excluded classes. If two output arguments are specified, both will contain the logical value false for observations belonging to excluded classes.

`[...] = crossvalind(Method, Group, ..., 'Min', MinValue)` sets the minimum number of observations that each group has in the training set. `Min` defaults to 1. Setting a large value for `Min` can help to balance the training groups, but adds partial resubstitution when there are not enough observations. You cannot set `Min` when using K-fold cross-validation.

Examples

Create a 10-fold cross-validation to compute classification error.

```
load fisheriris
indices = crossvalind('Kfold',species,10);
cp = classperf(species);
for i = 1:10
    test = (indices == i); train = ~test;
    class = classify(meas(test,:),meas(train,:),species(train,:));
```

```

        classperf(cp,class,test)
    end
    cp.ErrorRate

```

Approximate a leave-one-out prediction error estimate.

```

load carbig
x = Displacement; y = Acceleration;
N = length(x);
sse = 0;
for i = 1:100
    [train,test] = crossvalind('LeaveMOut',N,1);
    yhat = polyval(polyfit(x(train),y(train),2),x(test));
    sse = sse + sum((yhat - y(test)).^2);
end
CVerr = sse / 100

```

Divide cancer data 60/40 without using the 'Benign' observations.
Assume groups are the true labels of the observations.

```

labels = {'Cancer','Benign','Control'};
groups = labels(ceil(rand(100,1)*3));
[train,test] = crossvalind('holdout',groups,0.6,'classes',...
    {'Control','Cancer'});
sum(test) % Total groups allocated for testing
sum(train) % Total groups allocated for training

```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `classperf`, `knnclassify`, `svmclassify`

Statistics Toolbox functions: `classify`, `grp2idx`

dayhoff

Purpose Dayhoff scoring matrix

Syntax *ScoringMatrix* = dayhoff

Description *ScoringMatrix* = dayhoff returns a PAM250 type scoring matrix. The order of amino acids in the matrix is A R N D C Q E G H I L K M F P S T W Y V B Z X *.

See Also Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: blosum, gonnet, pam

Purpose Count dimers in sequence

Syntax

```
Dimers = dimercount(SeqNT)
[Dimers, Percent] = dimercount(SeqNT)
dimercount(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)
dimercount(..., 'Chart', ChartStyle)
```

Arguments

<i>SeqNT</i>	Nucleotide sequence. Enter a character string or vector of integers. Examples: 'ACGT' and [1 2 3 4]. You can also enter a structure with the field Sequence.
<i>ChartStyleValue</i>	Property to select the type of plot. Enter 'pie' or 'bar'.

Description

Dimers = dimercount(SeqNT) counts the number of nucleotide dimers in a 1-by-1 sequence and returns the dimer counts in a structure with the fields AA, AC, AG, AT, CA, CC, CG, CT, GA, GC, GG, GT, TA, TC, TG, TT.

- For sequences that have dimers with the character U, the U characters are added to dimers with T characters.
- If the sequence contains ambiguous nucleotide characters (R Y K M S W B D H V N), or gaps indicated with a hyphen (-), this function creates a field Others and displays a warning message.

```
Warning: Ambiguous symbols 'symbol list' appear
in the sequence.
These will be in Others.
```

- If the sequence contains undefined nucleotide characters (E F H I J L O P Q X Z), codoncount ignores the characters and displays a warning message.

dimercount

```
Warning: Unknown symbols 'symbol list' appear
in the sequence.
These will be ignored.
```

`[Dimers, Percent] = dimercount(SeqNT)` returns a 4-by-4 matrix with the relative proportions of the dimers in SeqNT. The rows correspond to A, C, G, and T in the first element of the dimer, and the columns correspond to A, C, G, and T in the second element.

`dimercount(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`dimercount(..., 'Chart', ChartStyle)` creates a chart showing the relative proportions of the dimers.

Examples

Count the number of dimers in a nucleotide sequence.

```
dimercount('TAGCTGGCCAAGCGAGCTTG')
```

```
ans =
    AA: 1
    AC: 0
    AG: 3
    AT: 0
    CA: 1
    CC: 1
    CG: 1
    CT: 2
    GA: 1
    GC: 4
    GG: 1
    GT: 0
    TA: 1
    TC: 0
    TG: 2
    TT: 1
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `aaccount`, `basecount`, `baselookup`, `codoncount`, `nmercount`, `ntdensity`

dna2rna

Purpose Convert DNA sequence to RNA sequence

Syntax `SeqRNA = dna2rna(SeqDNA)`

Arguments

<i>SeqDNA</i>	DNA sequence. Enter either a character string with the characters A, T, G, C, and ambiguous characters R, Y, K, M, S, W, B, D, H, V, N, or a vector of integers from the table Mapping Nucleotide Letters to Integers on page 2-545. You can also enter a structure with the field <i>Sequence</i> .
<i>SeqRNA</i>	RNA sequence.

Description `SeqRNA = dna2rna(SeqDNA)` converts a DNA sequence to an RNA sequence by converting any thymine nucleotides (T) in the DNA sequence to uracil (U). The RNA sequence is returned in the same format as the DNA sequence. For example, if *SeqDNA* is a vector of integers, then so is *SeqRNA*.

Examples Convert a DNA sequence to an RNA sequence.

```
rna = dna2rna('ACGATGAGTCATGCTT')  
  
rna =  
ACGAUGAGUCAUGCUU
```

See Also Bioinformatics Toolbox function: `rna2dna`
MATLAB functions: `regexp`, `strrep`

Purpose

Estimate synonymous and nonsynonymous substitution rates

Syntax

```
[Dn, Ds, Vardn, Vards] = dnds(SeqNT1, SeqNT2)
[Dn, Ds, Vardn, Vards] = dnds(SeqNT1, SeqNT2,
... 'GeneticCode', GeneticCodeValue, ...)
[Dn, Ds, Vardn, Vards] = dnds(SeqNT1, SeqNT2, ... 'Method',
    MethodValue, ...)
[Dn, Ds, Vardn, Vards] = dnds(SeqNT1, SeqNT2, ... 'Window',
    WindowValue, ...)
[Dn, Ds, Vardn, Vards] = dnds(SeqNT1, SeqNT2, ... 'Verbose',
    VerboseValue, ...)
```

Arguments

SeqNT1, SeqNT2

Nucleotide sequences. Enter either a string or a structure with the field `Sequence`.

GeneticCodeValue

Property to specify a genetic code. Enter a Code Number or a string with a Code Name from the table. If you use a Code Name, you can truncate it to the first two characters. Default is 1 or Standard.

<i>MethodValue</i>	<p>String specifying the method for calculating substitution rates. Choices are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• NG (default) — Nei-Gojobori method (1986) uses the number of synonymous and nonsynonymous substitutions and the number of potentially synonymous and nonsynonymous sites. Based on the Jukes-Cantor model.• LWL — Li-Wu-Luo method (1985) uses the number of transitional and transversal substitutions at three different levels of degeneracy of the genetic code. Based on Kimura's two-parameter model.• PBL — Pamilo-Bianchi-Li method (1993) is similar to the Li-Wu-Luo method, but with bias correction. Use this method when the number of transitions is much larger than the number of transversions.
<i>WindowValue</i>	<p>Integer specifying the sliding window size, in codons, for calculating substitution rates and variances.</p>
<i>VerboseValue</i>	<p>Property to control the display of the codons considered in the computations and their amino acid translations. Choices are true or false (default).</p>

Tip Specify true to use this display to manually verify the codon alignment of the two input sequences. The presence of stop codons (*) in the amino acid translation can indicate that *SeqNT1* and *SeqNT2* are not codon-aligned.

Return Values

<i>Dn</i>	Nonsynonymous substitution rate(s).
<i>Ds</i>	Synonymous substitution rate(s).
<i>Vardn</i>	Variance for the nonsynonymous substitution rate(s).
<i>Vards</i>	Variance for the synonymous substitutions rate(s).

Description

$[Dn, Ds, Vardn, Vards] = \text{dnds}(\text{SeqNT1}, \text{SeqNT2})$ estimates the synonymous and nonsynonymous substitution rates per site between the two homologous nucleotide sequences, *SeqNT1* and *SeqNT2*, by comparing codons using the Nei-Gojobori method.

dnds returns:

- *Dn* — Nonsynonymous substitution rate(s).
- *Ds* — Synonymous substitution rate(s).
- *Vardn* — Variance for the nonsynonymous substitution rate(s).
- *Vards* — Variance for the synonymous substitutions rate(s)

This analysis:

- Assumes that the nucleotide sequences, *SeqNT1* and *SeqNT2*, are codon-aligned, that is, do not have frame shifts.

Tip If your sequences are not codon-aligned, use the `nt2aa` function to convert them to amino acid sequences, use the `nwalign` function to globally align them, then use the `seqinsertgaps` function to recover the corresponding codon-aligned nucleotide sequences. See *Estimating Synonymous and Nonsynonymous Substitution Rates Between Two Nucleotide Sequences That Are Not Codon-Aligned* on page 2-146.

- Excludes codons that include ambiguous nucleotide characters or gaps
- Considers the number of codons in the shorter of the two nucleotide sequences

Caution

If *SeqNT1* and *SeqNT2* are too short or too divergent, saturation can be reached, and dnds returns NaNs and a warning message.

`[Dn, Ds, Vardn, Vards] = dnds(SeqNT1, SeqNT2, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls dnds with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`[Dn, Ds, Vardn, Vards] = dnds(SeqNT1, SeqNT2, ...'GeneticCode', GeneticCodeValue, ...)` calculates synonymous and nonsynonymous substitution rates using the specified genetic code. Enter a Code Number or a string with a Code Name from the table. If you use a Code Name, you can truncate it to the first two characters. Default is 1 or Standard.

`[Dn, Ds, Vardn, Vards] = dnds(SeqNT1, SeqNT2, ...'Method', MethodValue, ...)` allows you to calculate synonymous and nonsynonymous substitution rates using the following algorithms:

- NG (default) — Nei-Gojobori method (1986) uses the number of synonymous and nonsynonymous substitutions and the number of potentially synonymous and nonsynonymous sites. Based on the Jukes-Cantor model.
- LWL — Li-Wu-Luo method (1985) uses the number of transitional and transversional substitutions at three different levels of degeneracy of the genetic code. Based on Kimura's two-parameter model.

- PBL — Pamilo-Bianchi-Li method (1993) is similar to the Li-Wu-Luo method, but with bias correction. Use this method when the number of transitions is much larger than the number of transversions.

`[Dn, Ds, Vardn, Vards] = dnds(SeqNT1, SeqNT2, ...'Window', WindowValue, ...)` performs the calculations over a sliding window, specified in codons. Each output is an array containing a rate or variance for each window.

`[Dn, Ds, Vardn, Vards] = dnds(SeqNT1, SeqNT2, ...'Verbose', VerboseValue, ...)` controls the display of the codons considered in the computations and their amino acid translations. Choices are `true` or `false` (default).

Tip Specify `true` to use this display to manually verify the codon alignment of the two input sequences, `SeqNT1` and `SeqNT2`. The presence of stop codons (*) in the amino acid translation can indicate that `SeqNT1` and `SeqNT2` are not codon-aligned.

Examples

Estimating Synonymous and Nonsynonymous Substitution Rates Between the gag Genes of Two HIV Viruses

- 1 Retrieve two sequences from the GenBank database for the gag genes of two HIV viruses.

```
gag1 = getgenbank('L11768');
gag2 = getgenbank('L11770');
```

- 2 Estimate the synonymous and nonsynonymous substitution rates between the two sequences.

```
[dn ds vardn vards] = dnds(gag1, gag2)
```

```
dn =
```

```
0.0241
```

```
ds =  
    0.0739  
vardn =  
    2.2785e-005  
vars =  
    2.6447e-004
```

Estimating Synonymous and Nonsynonymous Substitution Rates Between Two Nucleotide Sequences That Are Not Codon-Aligned

- 1 Retrieve two nucleotide sequences from the GenBank database for the neuraminidase (NA) protein of two strains of the Influenza A virus (H5N1).

```
hk01 = getgenbank('AF509094');  
vt04 = getgenbank('DQ094287');
```

- 2 Extract the coding region from the two nucleotide sequences.

```
hk01_cds = featuresparse(hk01, 'feature', 'CDS', 'Sequence', true);  
vt04_cds = featuresparse(vt04, 'feature', 'CDS', 'Sequence', true);
```

- 3 Align the amino acids sequences converted from the nucleotide sequences.

```
[sc, a1] = nwalign(nt2aa(hk01_cds), nt2aa(vt04_cds), 'extendgap', 1);
```

- 4 Use the seqinsertgaps function to copy the gaps from the aligned amino acid sequences to their corresponding nucleotide sequences, thus codon-aligning them.

```
hk01_aligned = seqinsertgaps(hk01_cds,al(1,:))  
vt04_aligned = seqinsertgaps(vt04_cds,al(3,:))
```

- 5 Estimate the synonymous and nonsynonymous substitutions rates of the codon-aligned nucleotide sequences and also display the codons considered in the computations and their amino acid translations.

```
[dn,ds] = dnds(hk01_aligned,vt04_aligned,'verbose',true)
```

References

- [1] Li, W., Wu, C., and Luo, C. (1985). A new method for estimating synonymous and nonsynonymous rates of nucleotide substitution considering the relative likelihood of nucleotide and codon changes. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 2(2), 150–174.
- [2] Nei, M., and Gojobori, T. (1986). Simple methods for estimating the numbers of synonymous and nonsynonymous nucleotide substitutions. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 3(5), 418–426.
- [3] Nei, M., and Jin, L. (1989). Variances of the average numbers of nucleotide substitutions within and between populations. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 6(3), 290–300.
- [4] Nei, M., and Kumar, S. (2000). Synonymous and nonsynonymous nucleotide substitutions” in *Molecular Evolution and Phylogenetics* (Oxford University Press).
- [5] Pamilo, P., and Bianchi, N. (1993). Evolution of the Zfx And Zfy genes: rates and interdependence between the genes. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 10(2), 271–281.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `dndsml`, `featuresparse`, `geneticcode`, `nt2aa`, `nwalign`, `seqinsertgaps`, `seqpdist`

dndsm1

Purpose Estimate synonymous and nonsynonymous substitution rates using maximum likelihood method

Syntax

```
[Dn, Ds, Like] = dndsm1(SeqNT1, SeqNT2)
[Dn, Ds, Like] = dndsm1(SeqNT1, SeqNT2, ...'GeneticCode',
GeneticCodeValue, ...)
[Dn, Ds, Like] = dndsm1(SeqNT1, SeqNT2, ...'Verbose',
VerboseValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>SeqNT1, SeqNT2</i>	Nucleotide sequences. Enter either a string or a structure with the field <i>Sequence</i> .
<i>GeneticCodeValue</i>	Property to specify a genetic code. Enter a Code Number or a string with a Code Name from the table . If you use a Code Name, you can truncate it to the first two characters. Default is 1 or Standard.
<i>VerboseValue</i>	Property to control the display of the codons considered in the computations and their amino acid translations. Choices are true or false (default).

Tip Specify true to use this display to manually verify the codon alignment of the two input sequences. The presence of stop codons (*) in the amino acid translation can indicate that *SeqNT1* and *SeqNT2* are not codon-aligned.

Return Values

<i>Dn</i>	Nonsynonymous substitution rate(s).
<i>Ds</i>	Synonymous substitution rate(s).
<i>Like</i>	Likelihood of estimate of substitution rates.

Description

$[Dn, Ds, Like] = \text{dndsm1}(\text{SeqNT1}, \text{SeqNT2})$ estimates the synonymous and nonsynonymous substitution rates between the two homologous sequences, *SeqNT1* and *SeqNT2*, using the Yang-Nielsen method (2000). This maximum likelihood method estimates an explicit model for codon substitution that accounts for transition/transversion rate bias and base/codon frequency bias. Then it uses the model to correct synonymous and nonsynonymous counts to account for multiple substitutions at the same site. The maximum likelihood method is best suited when the sample size is significant (larger than 100 bases) and when the sequences being compared can have transition/transversion rate biases and base/codon frequency biases.

`dndsm1` returns:

- *Dn* — Nonsynonymous substitution rate(s).
- *Ds* — Synonymous substitution rate(s).
- *Like* — Likelihood of this estimate.

This analysis:

- Assumes that the nucleotide sequences, *SeqNT1* and *SeqNT2*, are codon-aligned, that is, do not have frame shifts.

Tip If your sequences are not codon-aligned, use the `nt2aa` function to convert them to amino acid sequences, use the `nwalignment` function to globally align them, then use the `seqinsertgaps` function to recover the corresponding codon-aligned nucleotide sequences. See [Estimating Synonymous and Nonsynonymous Substitution Rates Between Two Nucleotide Sequences That Are Not Codon-Aligned](#) on page 2-151

- Excludes any ambiguous nucleotide characters or codons that include gaps.

- Considers the number of codons in the shorter of the two nucleotide sequences.

Caution

If *SeqNT1* and *SeqNT2* are too short or too divergent, saturation can be reached, and `dndsm1` returns NaNs and a warning message.

`[Dn, Ds, Like] = dndsm1(SeqNT1, SeqNT2, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `dnds` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`[Dn, Ds, Like] = dndsm1(SeqNT1, SeqNT2, ...'GeneticCode', GeneticCodeValue, ...)` calculates synonymous and nonsynonymous substitution rates using the specified genetic code. Enter a Code Number or a string with a Code Name from the table. If you use a Code Name, you can truncate it to the first two characters. Default is 1 or Standard.

`[Dn, Ds, Like] = dndsm1(SeqNT1, SeqNT2, ...'Verbose', VerboseValue, ...)` controls the display of the codons considered in the computations and their amino acid translations. Choices are `true` or `false` (default).

Tip Specify `true` to use this display to manually verify the codon alignment of the two input sequences, *SeqNT1* and *SeqNT2*. The presence of stop codons (*) in the amino acid translation can indicate that *SeqNT1* and *SeqNT2* are not codon-aligned.

Examples

Estimating Synonymous and Nonsynonymous Substitution Rates Between the gag Genes of Two HIV Viruses

- 1 Retrieve two sequences from the GenBank database for the gag genes of two HIV viruses

```
gag1 = getgenbank('L11768');  
gag2 = getgenbank('L11770');
```

- 2 Estimate the synonymous and nonsynonymous substitution rates between the two sequences.

```
[dn ds like] = dndsml(gag1, gag2)  
  
dn =  
    0.0259  
ds =  
    0.0624  
like =  
   -2.1864e+003
```

Estimating Synonymous and Nonsynonymous Substitution Rates Between Two Nucleotide Sequences That Are Not Codon-Aligned

- 1 Retrieve two nucleotide sequences from the GenBank database for the neuraminidase (NA) protein of two strains of the Influenza A virus (H5N1).

```
hk01 = getgenbank('AF509094');  
vt04 = getgenbank('DQ094287');
```

- 2 Extract the coding region from the two nucleotide sequences.

```
hk01_cds = featuresparse(hk01, 'feature', 'CDS', 'Sequence', true);  
vt04_cds = featuresparse(vt04, 'feature', 'CDS', 'Sequence', true);
```

- 3 Align the amino acids sequences converted from the nucleotide sequences.

```
[sc,al]=nwaligned(nt2aa(hk01_cds),nt2aa(vt04_cds),'extendgap',1);
```

- 4 Use the seqinsertgaps function to copy the gaps from the aligned amino acid sequences to their corresponding nucleotide sequences, thus codon-aligning them.

```
hk01_aligned = seqinsertgaps(hk01_cds,al(1,:))  
vt04_aligned = seqinsertgaps(vt04_cds,al(3,:))
```

- 5 Estimate the synonymous and nonsynonymous substitutions rates of the codon-aligned nucleotide sequences and also display the codons considered in the computations and their amino acid translations.

```
[dn,ds] = dndsml(hk01_aligned,vt04_aligned,'verbose',true)
```

References

- [1] Tamura, K., and Mei, M. (1993). Estimation of the number of nucleotide substitutions in the control region of mitochondrial DNA in humans and chimpanzees. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 10, 512–526.
- [2] Yang, Z., and Nielsen, R. (2000). Estimating synonymous and nonsynonymous substitution rates under realistic evolutionary models. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 17, 32–43.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `dnds`, `featuresparse`, `geneticcode`, `nt2aa`, `nwaligned`, `seqinsertgaps`, `seqpdist`

Purpose Read data from EMBL file

Syntax

```
EMBLData = emblread('File')
EMBLSeq = emblread('File', SequenceOnly',
SequenceOnlyValue)
```

Arguments

<i>File</i>	EMBL formatted file (ASCII text file). Enter a file name, a path and file name, or a URL pointing to a file. <i>File</i> can also be a MATLAB character array that contains the text for a file name.
<i>SequenceOnlyValue</i>	Property to control reading EMBL file information. If <i>SequenceOnlyValue</i> is true, emblread returns only the sequence (<i>EMBLSeq</i>).
<i>EMBLData</i>	MATLAB structure with fields corresponding to EMBL data.
<i>EMBLSeq</i>	MATLAB character string without metadata for the sequence.

Description *EMBLData* = emblread('File') reads data from an EMBL formatted file (*File*) and creates a MATLAB structure (*EMBLData*) with fields corresponding to the EMBL two-character line type code. Each line type code is stored as a separate element in the structure.

EMBLData contains the following fields:

Field
Identification.EntryName
Identification.Version
Identification.Topology
Identification.Molecule
Identification.DataClass

Field
Identification.Division
Identification.SequenceLength
Accession
SequenceVersion
DateCreated
DateUpdated
Description
Keyword
OrganismSpecies
OrganismClassification
Organelle
Reference{#}.Number
Reference{#}.Comment
Reference{#}.Position
Reference{#}.MedLine
Reference{#}.PubMed
Reference{#}.Authors
Reference{#}.Title
Reference{#}.Location
DatabaseCrossReference
Comments
Feature
Basecount.BP
Basecount.A
Basecount.C

Field

Basecount.G
Basecount.T
Basecount.Other
Sequence

Note Topology information was not included in EMBL flat files before release 87 of the database. When reading a file created before release 87, EMBLREAD returns an empty Identification.Topology field.

Note The entry name is no longer displayed in the ID line of EMBL flat files in release 87. When reading a file created in release 87, EMBLREAD returns the accession number in the Identification.EntryName field.

EMBLSeq = emblread ('File', SequenceOnly',
SequenceOnlyValue), when SequenceOnlyValue is true,
reads only the sequence information.

Examples

Get sequence information from the Web, save to a file, and then read back into MATLAB.

```
getembl('X00558','ToFile','rat_protein.txt');  
EMBLData = emblread('rat_protein.txt')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: fastaread, genbankread, getembl, seqtool

evalrasmolscript

Purpose Send RasMol script commands to Molecule Viewer window

Syntax
`evalrasmolscript(FigureHandle, Command)`
`evalrasmolscript(FigureHandle, 'File', FileValue)`

Arguments

FigureHandle Figure handle to a molecule viewer returned by the `molviewer` function.

Command Either of the following:

- String specifying one or more RasMol script commands. Use a ; to separate commands.
- Character array or cell array containing strings specifying RasMol script commands.

Note For a complete list of RasMol script commands, see

<http://www.stolaf.edu/academics/chemapps/jmol/docs/>

FileValue String specifying a file name or a path and file name of a text file containing Jmol script commands. If you specify only a file name, that file must be on the MATLAB search path or in the MATLAB Current Directory.

Description `evalrasmolscript(FigureHandle, Command)` sends the RasMol script commands specified by *Command* to *FigureHandle*, the figure handle of a Molecule Viewer window created using the `molviewer` function.

`evalrasmolscript(FigureHandle, 'File', FileValue)` sends the RasMol script commands specified by *FileValue* to *FigureHandle*, the

figure handle of a Molecule Viewer window created using the `molviewer` function.

Examples

- 1 Use the `molviewer` function to create a figure handle to a Molecule Viewer window.

```
FH = molviewer('2DHB')
```

- 2 Use the `evalrasmolscript` function to send script commands to the molecule viewer that change the background to black and spin the molecule.

```
evalrasmolscript(FH, 'background white; spin')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `getpdb`, `molviewer`, `pdbread`, `pdbrwrite`

exprprofrange

Purpose Calculate range of gene expression profiles

Syntax

```
Range = exprprofrange(Data)
[Range, LogRange] = exprprofrange(Data)
exprprofrange(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
exprprofrange(..., 'ShowHist', ShowHistValue)
```

Arguments

<i>Data</i>	Matrix where each row corresponds to a gene.
<i>ShowHistValue</i>	Property to control displaying a histogram with range data. Enter either true (include range data) or false. The default value is false.

Description

Range = `exprprofrange(Data)` calculates the range of each expression profile in a data set (*Data*).

[Range, LogRange] = `exprprofrange(Data)` returns the log range, that is, $\log(\max(\text{prof})) - \log(\min(\text{prof}))$, of each expression profile. If you do not specify output arguments, `exprprofrange` displays a histogram bar plot of the range.

`exprprofrange(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`exprprofrange(..., 'ShowHist', ShowHistValue)`, when *ShowHistValue* is true, displays a histogram of the range data.

Examples

Calculate the range of expression profiles for yeast data as gene expression changes during the metabolic shift from fermentation to respiration.

```
load yeastdata
range = exprprofrange(yeastvalues, 'ShowHist', true);
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function `exprprofvar`, `generangefilter`

Purpose Calculate variance of gene expression profiles

Syntax

```
Variance = exprprofvar(Data)
exprprofvar(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
exprprofvar(..., 'ShowHist', ShowHistValue)
```

Arguments

Data Matrix where each row corresponds to a gene.
ShowHistValue Property to control the display of a histogram with variance data. Enter either true or false (default).

Description

Variance = `exprprofvar(Data)` calculates the variance of each expression profile in a data set (*Data*). If you do not specify output arguments, this function displays a histogram bar plot of the range.

`exprprofvar(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`exprprofvar(..., 'ShowHist', ShowHistValue)`, when `ShowHist` is true, displays a histogram of the range data .

Examples

Calculate the variance of expression profiles for yeast data as gene expression changes during the metabolic shift from fermentation to respiration.

```
load yeastdata
datavar = exprprofvar(yeastvalues,'ShowHist',true);
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `exprprofrange`, `generangefilter`, `genevarfilter`

fastaread

Purpose Read data from FASTA file

Syntax

```
FASTAData = fastaread(File)
[Header, Sequence] = fastaread(File)
fastaread(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)
fastaread(..., 'IgnoreGaps', IgnoreGapsValue, ...)
fastaread(..., 'Blockread', BlockreadValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>File</i>	FASTA-formatted file (ASCII text file). Enter a file name, a path and file name, or a URL pointing to a file. <i>File</i> can also be a MATLAB character array that contains the text for a file name.
<i>FASTAData</i>	MATLAB structure with the fields Header and Sequence.
<i>IgnoreGapsValue</i>	Property to control removing gap symbols. Enter either true or false (default).
<i>BlockreadValue</i>	Property to control reading a single entry or block of entries from a file containing multiple sequences. Enter a scalar <i>N</i> , to read the <i>N</i> th entry in the file. Enter a 1-by-2 vector [<i>M1</i> , <i>M2</i>], to read the block of entries starting at entry <i>M1</i> and ending at entry <i>M2</i> . To read all remaining entries in the file starting at entry <i>M1</i> , enter a positive value for <i>M1</i> and enter Inf for <i>M2</i> .

Description fastaread reads data from a FASTA-formatted file into a MATLAB structure with the following fields:

Field
Header
Sequence

A file with a FASTA format begins with a right angle bracket (>) and a single line description. Following this description is the sequence as a series of lines with fewer than 80 characters. Sequences are expected to use the standard IUB/IUPAC amino acid and nucleotide letter codes.

For a list of codes, see `aminolookup` and `baselookup`.

`FASTAData = fastaread(File)` reads a file with a FASTA format and returns the data in a structure. `FASTAData.Header` is the header information, while `FASTAData.Sequence` is the sequence stored as a string of letters.

`[Header, Sequence] = fastaread(File)` reads data from a file into separate variables. If the file contains more than one sequence, then header and sequence are cell arrays of header and sequence information.

`fastaread(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties. The property name/value pairs can be in any format supported by the function `set` (for example, name-value string pairs, structures, and name-value cell array pairs).

`fastaread(..., 'IgnoreGaps', IgnoreGapsValue, ...)`, when `IgnoreGapsValue` is true, removes any gap symbol ('-' or '.') from the sequences. Default is false.

`fastaread(..., 'Blockread', BlockreadValue, ...)` lets you read in a single entry or block of entries from a file containing multiple sequences. If `BlockreadValue` is a scalar `N`, then `fastaread` reads the `N`th entry in the file. If `BlockreadValue` is a 1-by-2 vector `[M1, M2]`, then `fastaread` reads the block of entries starting at entry `M1` and ending at entry `M2`. To read all remaining entries in the file starting at entry `M1`, enter a positive value for `M1` and enter `Inf` for `M2`.

Examples

Read the sequence for the human p53 tumor gene.

```
p53nt = fastaread('p53nt.txt')
```

Read the sequence for the human p53 tumor protein.

fastaread

```
p53aa = fastaread('p53aa.txt')
```

Read the human mitochondrion genome in FASTA format.

```
entrezSite = 'http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/entrez/viewer.fcgi?'  
textOptions = '&txt=on&view=fasta'  
genbankID = '&list_uids=NC_001807'  
mitochondrion = fastaread([entrezSite textOptions genbankID])
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `emblread`, `fastawrite`, `genbankread`, `genpeptread`, `multialignread`, `seqprofile`, `seqtool`

Purpose	Write to file using FASTA format								
Syntax	<code>fastawrite(<i>File</i>, <i>Data</i>)</code> <code>fastawrite(<i>File</i>, <i>Header</i>, <i>Sequence</i>)</code>								
Arguments	<table><tr><td><i>File</i></td><td>String specifying either a file name or a path and file name supported by your operating system. If you specify only a file name, the file is saved to the MATLAB Current Directory.</td></tr><tr><td><i>Data</i></td><td>Any of the following:<ul style="list-style-type: none">• String with a FASTA format• Sequence object• MATLAB structure containing the fields <code>Header</code> and <code>Sequence</code>• GenBank/GenPept structure</td></tr><tr><td><i>Header</i></td><td>String containing information about the sequence. This text will be included in the header of the FASTA-formatted file, <i>File</i>.</td></tr><tr><td><i>Sequence</i></td><td>String or name of variable containing an amino acid or nucleotide sequence using the standard IUB/IUPAC letter or integer codes. For a list of valid characters, see Amino Acid Lookup on page 2-56 or Nucleotide Lookup Table on page 2-66.</td></tr></table>	<i>File</i>	String specifying either a file name or a path and file name supported by your operating system. If you specify only a file name, the file is saved to the MATLAB Current Directory.	<i>Data</i>	Any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• String with a FASTA format• Sequence object• MATLAB structure containing the fields <code>Header</code> and <code>Sequence</code>• GenBank/GenPept structure	<i>Header</i>	String containing information about the sequence. This text will be included in the header of the FASTA-formatted file, <i>File</i> .	<i>Sequence</i>	String or name of variable containing an amino acid or nucleotide sequence using the standard IUB/IUPAC letter or integer codes. For a list of valid characters, see Amino Acid Lookup on page 2-56 or Nucleotide Lookup Table on page 2-66.
<i>File</i>	String specifying either a file name or a path and file name supported by your operating system. If you specify only a file name, the file is saved to the MATLAB Current Directory.								
<i>Data</i>	Any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• String with a FASTA format• Sequence object• MATLAB structure containing the fields <code>Header</code> and <code>Sequence</code>• GenBank/GenPept structure								
<i>Header</i>	String containing information about the sequence. This text will be included in the header of the FASTA-formatted file, <i>File</i> .								
<i>Sequence</i>	String or name of variable containing an amino acid or nucleotide sequence using the standard IUB/IUPAC letter or integer codes. For a list of valid characters, see Amino Acid Lookup on page 2-56 or Nucleotide Lookup Table on page 2-66.								
Description	<p><code>fastawrite(<i>File</i>, <i>Data</i>)</code> writes the contents of <i>Data</i> to a FASTA-formatted file (ASCII text file).</p> <p><code>fastawrite(<i>File</i>, <i>Header</i>, <i>Sequence</i>)</code> writes the specified header and sequence information to a FASTA-formatted file (ASCII text file).</p>								
Examples	<pre>%get the sequence for the human p53 gene from GenBank. seq = getgenbank('NM_000546')</pre>								

fastawrite

```
%find the CDS line in the FEATURES information.
cdsline = strmatch('CDS',seq.Features)

%read the coordinates of the coding region.
[start,stop] = strread(seq.Features(cdsline,:), '%s%d..%d')

%extract the coding region.
codingSeq = seq.Sequence(start:stop)

%write just the coding region to a FASTA file.
fastawrite('p53coding.txt','Coding region for p53',codingSeq);
```

Save multiple sequences.

```
data(1).Sequence = 'ACACAGGAAA'
data(1).Header = 'First sequence'
data(2).Sequence = 'ACGTCAGGTC'
data(2).Header = 'Second sequence'

fastawrite('my_sequences.txt', data)
type('my_sequences.txt')

>First sequence
ACACAGGAAA

>Second sequence
ACGTCAGGTC
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `fastaread`, `seqtool`

Purpose

Draw linear or circular map of features from GenBank structure

Syntax

```
featuresmap(GBStructure)
featuresmap(GBStructure, FeatList)
featuresmap(GBStructure, FeatList, Levels)
featuresmap(GBStructure, Levels)
[Handles, OutFeatList] = featuresmap(...)
featuresmap(..., 'FontSize', FontSizeValue, ...)
featuresmap(..., 'ColorMap', ColorMapValue, ...)
featuresmap(..., 'Qualifiers', QualifiersValue, ...)
featuresmap(..., 'ShowPositions', ShowPositionsValue, ...)
```

Arguments

GBStructure

GenBank structure, typically created using the `getgenbank` or the `genbankread` function.

FeatList

Cell array of features (from the list of all features in the GenBank structure) to include in or exclude from the map.

- If *FeatList* is a cell array of features, these features are mapped. Any features in *FeatList* not found in the GenBank structure are ignored.
- If *FeatList* includes '-' as the first string in the cell array, then the remaining strings (features) are not mapped.

By default, *FeatList* is the a list of all features in the GenBank structure.

featuresmap

<i>Levels</i>	Vector of N integers, where N is the number of features. Each integer represents the level in the map for the corresponding feature. For example, if <i>Levels</i> = [1, 1, 2, 3, 3], the first two features would appear on level 1, the third feature on level 2, and the fourth and fifth features on level 3. By default, <i>Levels</i> = [1:N].
<i>FontSizeValue</i>	Scalar that sets the font size (points) for the annotations of the features. Default is 9.
<i>ColorMapValue</i>	Three-column matrix, to specify a list of colors to use for each feature. This matrix replaces the default matrix, which specifies the following colors and order: blue, green, red, cyan, magenta, yellow, brown, light green, orange, purple, gold, and silver. In the matrix, each row corresponds to a color, and each column specifies red, green, and blue intensity respectively. Valid values for the RGB intensities are 0.0 to 1.0.

QualifiersValue

Cell array of strings to specify an ordered list of qualifiers to search for in the structure and use as annotations. For each feature, the first matching qualifier found from the list is used for its annotation. If a feature does not include any of the qualifiers, no annotation displays for that feature. By default, *QualifiersValue* = {'gene', 'product', 'locus_tag', 'note', 'db_xref', 'protein_id'}. Provide your own *QualifiersValue* to limit or expand the list of qualifiers or change the search order.

Tip Set *QualifiersValue* = {} to create a map with no annotations.

Tip To determine all qualifiers available for a given feature, do either of the following:

- Create the map, and then click a feature or its annotation to list all qualifiers for that feature.
 - Use the `featuresparse` command to parse all the features into a new structure, and then use the `fieldnames` command to list the qualifiers for a specific feature. See [Determining Qualifiers for a Specific Feature](#) on page 2-173.
-

ShowPositionsValue

Property to add the sequence position to the annotation label for each feature. Enter true to add the sequence position. Default is false.

Description

`featuresmap(GBStructure)` creates a linear or circular map of all features from a GenBank structure, typically created using the `getgenbank` or the `genbankread` function.

`featuresmap(GBStructure, FeatList)` creates a linear or circular map of a subset of features from a GenBank structure. *FeatList* lets you specify features (from the list of all features in the GenBank structure) to include in or exclude from the map.

- If *FeatList* is a cell array of features, these features are mapped. Any features in *FeatList* not found in the GenBank structure are ignored.
- If *FeatList* includes ' - ' as the first string in the cell array, then the remaining strings (features) are not mapped.

By default, *FeatList* is a list of all features in the GenBank structure.

`featuresmap(GBStructure, FeatList, Levels)` or `featuresmap(GBStructure, Levels)` indicates which level on the map each feature is drawn. Level 1 is the left-most (linear map) or inner-most (circular map) level, and level N is the right-most (linear map) or outer-most (circular map) level, where N is the number of features.

Levels is a vector of N integers, where N is the number of features. Each integer represents the level in the map for the corresponding feature. For example, if *Levels* = [1, 1, 2, 3, 3], the first two features would appear on level 1, the third feature on level 2, and the fourth and fifth features on level 3. By default, *Levels* = [1:N].

`[Handles, OutFeatList] = featuresmap(...)` returns a list of handles for each feature in *OutFeatList*. It also returns *OutFeatList*, which is a cell array of the mapped features.

Tip Use *Handles* and *OutFeatList* with the legend command to create a legend of features.

`featuresmap(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties that use property name/value pairs in any order. These property name/value pairs are as follows:

`featuresmap(..., 'FontSize', FontSizeValue, ...)` sets the font size (points) for the annotations of the features. Default *FontSizeValue* is 9.

`featuresmap(..., 'ColorMap', ColorMapValue, ...)` specifies a list of colors to use for each feature. This matrix replaces the default matrix, which specifies the following colors and order: blue, green, red, cyan, magenta, yellow, brown, light green, orange, purple, gold, and silver. *ColorMapValue* is a three-column matrix, where each row corresponds to a color, and each column specifies red, green, and blue intensity respectively. Valid values for the RGB intensities are 0.0 to 1.0.

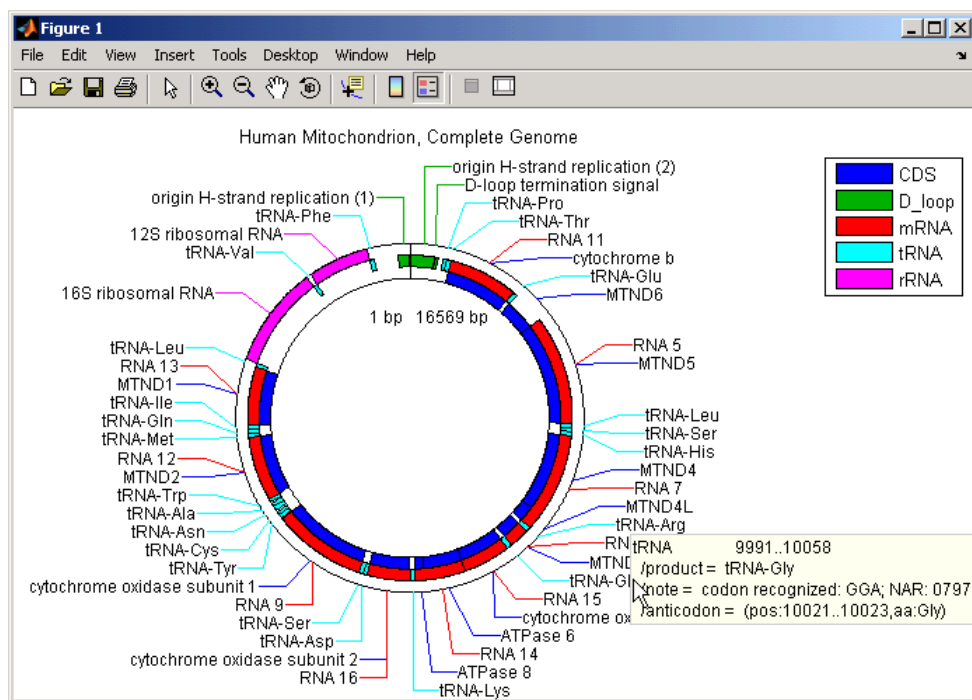
`featuresmap(..., 'Qualifiers', QualifiersValue, ...)` lets you specify an ordered list of qualifiers to search for and use as annotations. For each feature, the first matching qualifier found from the list is used for its annotation. If a feature does not include any of the qualifiers, no annotation displays for that feature. *QualifiersValue* is a cell array of strings. By default, *QualifiersValue* = {'gene', 'product', 'locus_tag', 'note', 'db_xref', 'protein_id'}. Provide your own *QualifiersValue* to limit or expand the list of qualifiers or change the search order.

Tip Set *QualifiersValue* = {} to create a map with no annotations.

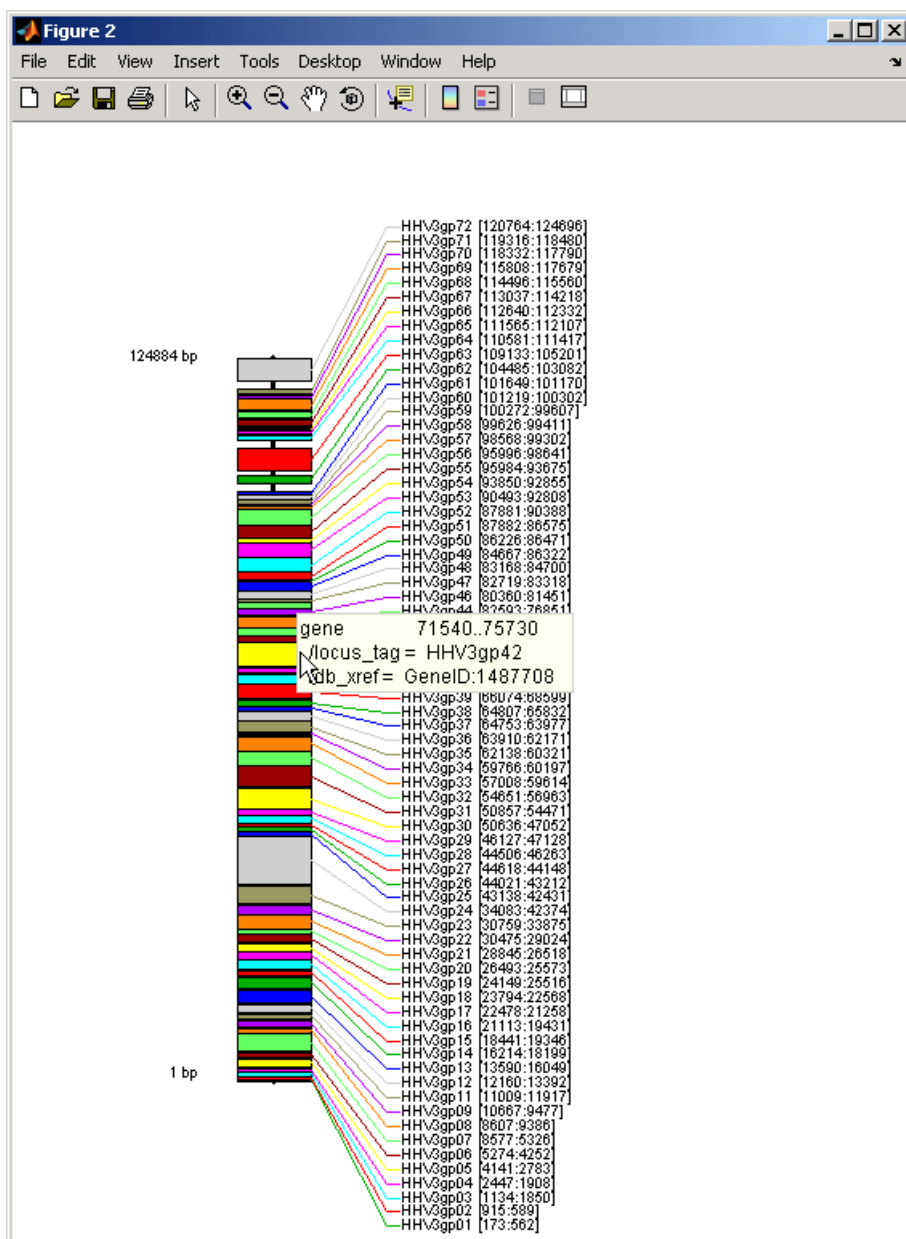
Tip To determine all qualifiers available for a given feature, do either of the following:

- Create the map, and then click a feature or its annotation to list all qualifiers for that feature.
 - Use the `featuresparse` command to parse all the features into a new structure, and then use the `fieldnames` command to list the qualifiers for a specific feature. See [Determining Qualifiers for a Specific Feature](#) on page 2-173.
-

`featuresmap(..., 'ShowPositions', ShowPositionsValue, ...)`
lets you add the sequence position to the annotation label. If *ShowPositionsValue* is `true`, sequence positions are added to the annotation labels. Default is `false`.

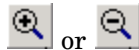


featuresmap



After creating a map:

- Click a feature or annotation to display a list of all qualifiers for that feature.
- Zoom the plot by clicking the following buttons:



Examples

Creating a Circular Map with Legend

The following example creates a circular map of five different features mapped on three levels. It also uses outputs from the `featuresmap` function as inputs to the `legend` function to add a legend to the map.

```
GBStructure = getgenbank('J01415');
[Handles, OutFeatList] = featuresmap(GBStructure, ...
    {'CDS', 'D_loop', 'mRNA', 'tRNA', 'rRNA'}, [1 2 2 2 3])
legend(Handles, OutFeatList, 'interpreter', 'none', ...
    'location', 'bestoutside')
title('Human Mitochondrion, Complete Genome')
```

Creating a Linear Map with Sequence Position Labels and Changed Font Size

The following example creates a linear map showing only the gene feature. It changes the font of the labels to seven points and includes the sequence position in the labels.

```
herpes = getgenbank('NC_001348');
featuresmap(herpes, {'gene'}, 'fontsize', 7, 'showpositions', true)
title('Genes in Human herpesvirus 3 (strain Dumas)')
```

Determining Qualifiers for a Specific Feature

The following example uses the `getgenbank` function to create a GenBank structure, `GBStructure`. It then uses the `featuresparse` function to parse the features in the GenBank structure into a new

featuresmap

structure, features. It then uses the `fieldnames` function to return all qualifiers for one of the features, `D_loop`.

```
GenBankStructure = getgenbank('J01415');
features = featuresparse (GenBankStructure)
features =

    source: [1x1 struct]
    D_loop: [1x2 struct]
    rep_origin: [1x3 struct]
    repeat_unit: [1x4 struct]
    misc_signal: [1x1 struct]
    misc_RNA: [1x1 struct]
    variation: [1x17 struct]
    tRNA: [1x22 struct]
    rRNA: [1x2 struct]
    mRNA: [1x10 struct]
    CDS: [1x13 struct]
    conflict: [1x1 struct]

fieldnames(features.D_loop)

ans =

    'Location'
    'Indices'
    'note'
    'citation'
```

See Also

`featuresparse`, `genbankread`, `getgenbank`, `seqtool`

Purpose

Parse features from GenBank, GenPept, or EMBL data

Syntax

```
FeatStruct = featuresparse(Features)
FeatStruct = featuresparse(Features, ...'Feature',
    FeatureValue, ...)
FeatStruct = featuresparse(Features, ...'Sequence',
    SequenceValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>Features</i>	Any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • String containing GenBank, GenPept, or EMBL features • MATLAB character array including text describing GenBank, GenPept, or EMBL features • MATLAB structure with fields corresponding to GenBank, GenPept, or EMBL data, such as those returned by <code>genbankread</code>, <code>genpeptread</code>, <code>emblread</code>, <code>getgenbank</code>, <code>getgenpept</code>, or <code>getembl</code>
<i>FeatureValue</i>	Name of a feature contained in <i>Features</i> . When specified, <code>featuresparse</code> returns only the substructure that corresponds to this feature. If there are multiple features with the same <i>FeatureValue</i> , then <i>FeatStruct</i> is an array of structures.
<i>SequenceValue</i>	Property to control the extraction, when possible, of the sequences respective to each feature, joining and complementing pieces of the source sequence and storing them in the <code>Sequence</code> field of the returned structure, <i>FeatStruct</i> . When extracting the sequence from an incomplete CDS feature, <code>featuresparse</code> uses the <code>codon_start</code> qualifier to adjust the frame of the sequence. Choices are <code>true</code> or <code>false</code> (default).

featuresparse

Return Values

FeatStruct Output structure containing a field for every database feature. Each field name in *FeatStruct* matches the corresponding feature name in the GenBank, GenPept, or EMBL database, with the exceptions listed in the table below. Fields in *FeatStruct* contain substructures with feature qualifiers as fields. In the GenBank, GenPept, and EMBL databases, for each feature, the only mandatory qualifier is its location, which *featuresparse* translates to the field `Location`. When possible, *featuresparse* also translates this location to numeric indices, creating an `Indices` field.

Note If you use the `Indices` field to extract sequence information, you may need to complement the sequences.

Description

FeatStruct = *featuresparse*(*Features*) parses the features from *Features*, which contains GenBank, GenPept, or EMBL features. *Features* can be a:

- String containing GenBank, GenPept, or EMBL features
- MATLAB character array including text describing GenBank, GenPept, or EMBL features
- MATLAB structure with fields corresponding to GenBank, GenPept, or EMBL data, such as those returned by `genbankread`, `genpeptread`, `emblread`, `getgenbank`, `getgenpept`, or `getembl`

FeatStruct is the output structure containing a field for every database feature. Each field name in *FeatStruct* matches the corresponding

feature name in the GenBank, GenPept, or EMBL database, with the following exceptions.

Feature Name in GenBank, GenPept, or EMBL Database	Field Name in MATLAB Structure
-10_signal	minus_10_signal
-35_signal	minus_35_signal
3'UTR	three_prime_UTR
3'clip	three_prime_clip
5'UTR	five_prime_UTR
5'clip	five_prime_clip
D-loop	D_loop

Fields in *FeatStruct* contain substructures with feature qualifiers as fields. In the GenBank, GenPept, and EMBL databases, for each feature, the only mandatory qualifier is its location, which *featuresparse* translates to the field *Location*. When possible, *featuresparse* also translates this location to numeric indices, creating an *Indices* field.

Note If you use the *Indices* field to extract sequence information, you may need to complement the sequences.

FeatStruct = *featuresparse* (*Features*, ...'*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls *featuresparse* with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

FeatStruct = *featuresparse*(*Features*, ...'*Feature*', *FeatureValue*, ...) returns only the substructure that corresponds to *FeatureValue*, the name of a feature contained in *Features*. If there are multiple

features with the same *FeatureValue*, then *FeatStruct* is an array of structures.

FeatStruct = `featuresparse(Features, ... 'Sequence', SequenceValue, ...)` controls the extraction, when possible, of the sequences respective to each feature, joining and complementing pieces of the source sequence and storing them in the field *Sequence*. When extracting the sequence from an incomplete CDS feature, `featuresparse` uses the `codon_start` qualifier to adjust the frame of the sequence. Choices are `true` or `false` (default).

Examples

Obtaining All Features from a GenBank File

The following example obtains all the features stored in the GenBank file `nm175642.txt`:

```
gbkStruct = genbankread('nm175642.txt');
features = featuresparse(gbkStruct)
```

```
features =
```

```
    source: [1x1 struct]
     gene: [1x1 struct]
     CDS: [1x1 struct]
```

Obtaining a Subset of Features from a GenBank Record

The following example obtains only the coding sequences (CDS) feature of the *Caenorhabditis elegans* cosmid record (accession number `Z92777`) from the GenBank database:

```
worm = getgenbank('Z92777');
CDS = featuresparse(worm, 'feature', 'cds')
```

```
CDS =
```

```
1x12 struct array with fields:
    Location
    Indices
```

```
locus_tag
standard_name
note
codon_start
product
protein_id
db_xref
translation
```

Extracting Sequences for Each Feature

- 1 Retrieve two nucleotide sequences from the GenBank database for the neuraminidase (NA) protein of two strains of the Influenza A virus (H5N1).

```
hk01 = getgenbank('AF509094');
vt04 = getgenbank('DQ094287');
```

- 2 Extract the sequence of the coding region for the neuraminidase (NA) protein from the two nucleotide sequences. The sequences of the coding regions are stored in the Sequence fields of the returned structures, hk01_cds and vt04_cds.

```
hk01_cds = featuresparse(hk01, 'feature', 'CDS', 'Sequence', true);
vt04_cds = featuresparse(vt04, 'feature', 'CDS', 'Sequence', true);
```

- 3 Once you have extracted the nucleotide sequences, you can use the nt2aa and nwalignment functions to align the amino acid sequences converted from the nucleotide sequences.

```
[sc, al] = nwalignment(nt2aa(hk01_cds), nt2aa(vt04_cds), 'extendgap', 1);
```

- 4 Then you can use the seqinsertgaps function to copy the gaps from the aligned amino acid sequences to their corresponding nucleotide sequences, thus codon-aligning them.

```
hk01_aligned = seqinsertgaps(hk01_cds, al(1, :))
vt04_aligned = seqinsertgaps(vt04_cds, al(3, :))
```

- 5 Once you have code aligned the two sequences, you can use them as input to other functions such as `dnds`, which calculates the synonymous and nonsynonymous substitutions rates of the codon-aligned nucleotide sequences. By setting `Verbose` to `true`, you can also display the codons considered in the computations and their amino acid translations.

```
[dn,ds] = dnds(hk01_aligned,vt04_aligned,'verbose',true)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `emblread`, `genbankread`, `genpeptread`, `getgenbank`, `getgenpept`

Purpose Read microarray data from GenePix array list file

Syntax `GALData = galread('File')`

Arguments

File GenePix Array List formatted file (GAL). Enter a file name, or enter a path and file name.

Description

galread reads data from a GenePix formatted file into a MATLAB structure.

`GALData = galread('File')` reads in a GenePix Array List formatted file (*File*) and creates a structure (GALData) containing the following fields:

Field
Header
BlockData
IDs
Names

The field BlockData is an N-by-3 array. The columns of this array are the block data, the column data, and the row data respectively. For more information on the GAL format, see

http://www.moleculardevices.com/pages/software/gn_genepix_file_formats.html#gal

For a list of supported file format versions, see

http://www.moleculardevices.com/pages/software/gn_genepix_file_formats.html

GenePix is a registered trademark of Molecular Devices Corporation.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `affyread`, `geosoftread`, `gprread`, `imageneread`, `sptread`

Purpose

Perform GC Robust Multi-array Average (GCRMA) background adjustment, quantile normalization, and median-polish summarization on Affymetrix microarray probe-level data

Syntax

```
ExpressionMatrix = gcrma(PMMatrix, MMMatrix, ProbeIndices,  
    AffinPM, AffinMM)  
ExpressionMatrix = gcrma(PMMatrix, MMMatrix, ProbeIndices,  
    SequenceMatrix)  
ExpressionMatrix = gcrma( ...'ChipIndex',  
    ChipIndexValue, ...)  
ExpressionMatrix = gcrma( ...'OpticalCorr',  
    OpticalCorrValue,  
    ...)  
ExpressionMatrix = gcrma( ...'CorrConst', CorrConstValue,  
    ...)  
ExpressionMatrix = gcrma( ...'Method', MethodValue, ...)  
ExpressionMatrix = gcrma( ...'TuningParam',  
    TuningParamValue,  
    ...)  
ExpressionMatrix = gcrma( ...'GSBCorr', GSBCorrValue, ...)  
ExpressionMatrix = gcrma( ...'Normalize', NormalizeValue,  
    ...)  
ExpressionMatrix = gcrma( ...'Verbose', VerboseValue, ...)
```

Arguments

PMMatrix

Matrix of intensity values where each row corresponds to a perfect match (PM) probe and each column corresponds to an Affymetrix CEL file. (Each CEL file is generated from a separate chip. All chips should be of the same type.)

Tip You can use the `PMIntensities` matrix returned by the `celintensityread` function.

MMMatrix

Matrix of intensity values where each row corresponds to a mismatch (MM) probe and each column corresponds to an Affymetrix CEL file. (Each CEL file is generated from a separate chip. All chips should be of the same type.)

Tip You can use the `MMIntensities` matrix returned by the `celintensityread` function.

ProbeIndices

Column vector containing probe indices. Probes within a probe set are numbered 0 through $N - 1$, where N is the number of probes in the probe set.

Tip You can use the `affyprobeseqread` function to generate this column vector.

AffinPM

Column vector of PM probe affinities.

Tip You can use the `affyprobeaffinities` function to generate this column vector.

AffinMM

Column vector of MM probe affinities.

Tip You can use the `affyprobeaffinities` function to generate this column vector.

SequenceMatrix An N -by-25 matrix of sequence information for the perfect match (PM) probes on the Affymetrix GeneChip array, where N is the number of probes on the array. Each row corresponds to a probe, and each column corresponds to one of the 25 sequence positions. Nucleotides in the sequences are represented by one of the following integers:

- 0 — None
- 1 — A
- 2 — C
- 3 — G
- 4 — T

Tip You can use the `affyprobeseqread` function to generate this matrix. If you have this sequence information in letter representation, you can convert it to integer representation using the `nt2int` function.

ChipIndexValue Positive integer specifying a column index in *MMMatrix*, which specifies a chip. This chip intensity data is used to compute probe affinities, assuming no affinity data is provided. Default is 1.

OpticalCorrValue Controls the use of optical background correction on the PM and MM intensity values in *PMMatrix* and *MMMatrix*. Choices are `true` (default) or `false`.

<i>CorrConstValue</i>	Value that specifies the correlation constant, rho, for background intensity for each PM/MM probe pair. Choices are any value ≥ 0 and ≤ 1 . Default is 0.7.
<i>MethodValue</i>	String that specifies the method to estimate the signal. Choices are MLE, a faster, ad hoc Maximum Likelihood Estimate method, or EB, a slower, more formal, empirical Bayes method. Default is MLE.
<i>TuningParamValue</i>	Value that specifies the tuning parameter used by the estimate method. This tuning parameter sets the lower bound of signal values with positive probability. Choices are a positive value. Default is 5 (MLE) or 0.5 (EB).

Tip For information on determining a setting for this parameter, see Wu et al., 2004.

<i>GSBCorrValue</i>	Controls whether gene specific binding (GSB) correction is performed on the non-specific binding (NSB) data. Choices are true (default) or false.
<i>NormalizeValue</i>	Controls whether quantile normalization is performed on background adjusted data. Choices are true (default) or false.
<i>VerboseValue</i>	Controls the display of a progress report showing the number of each chip as it is completed. Choices are true (default) or false.

Return Values

ExpressionMatrix Matrix of \log_2 expression values where each row corresponds to a gene (probe set) and each column corresponds to an Affymetrix CEL file, which represents a single chip.

Description

ExpressionMatrix = `gcrma(PMMatrix, MMMatrix, ProbeIndices, AffinPM, AffinMM)` performs GCRMA background adjustment, quantile normalization, and median-polish summarization on Affymetrix microarray probe-level data using probe affinity data. *ExpressionMatrix* is a matrix of \log_2 expression values where each row corresponds to a gene (probe set) and each column corresponds to an Affymetrix CEL file, which represents a single chip.

Note There is no column in *ExpressionMatrix* that contains probe set or gene information.

ExpressionMatrix = `gcrma(PMMatrix, MMMatrix, ProbeIndices, SequenceMatrix)` performs GCRMA background adjustment, quantile normalization, and Robust Multi-array Average (RMA) summarization on Affymetrix microarray probe-level data using probe sequence data to compute probe affinity data. *ExpressionMatrix* is a matrix of \log_2 expression values where each row corresponds to a gene (probe set) and each column corresponds to an Affymetrix CEL file, which represents a single chip.

Note If *AffinPM* and *AffinMM* affinity data and *SequenceMatrix* sequence data are not available, you can still use the `gcrma` function by entering an empty matrix for these inputs in the syntax.

ExpressionMatrix = `gcrma(...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `gcrma` with optional properties that use property

name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

ExpressionMatrix = `gcrma(...'ChipIndex', ChipIndexValue, ...)` computes probe affinities from MM probe intensity data from the chip with the specified column index in *MMMatrix*, assuming no affinity data is provided. Default *ChipIndexValue* is 1. If *AffinPM* and *AffinMM* affinity data are provided, this property is ignored.

ExpressionMatrix = `gcrma(...'OpticalCorr', OpticalCorrValue, ...)` controls the use of optical background correction on the PM and MM intensity values in *PMMatrix* and *MMMatrix*. Choices are true (default) or false.

ExpressionMatrix = `gcrma(...'CorrConst', CorrConstValue, ...)` specifies the correlation constant, rho, for background intensity for each PM/MM probe pair. Choices are any value ≥ 0 and ≤ 1 . Default is 0.7.

ExpressionMatrix = `gcrma(...'Method', MethodValue, ...)` specifies the method to estimate the signal. Choices are MLE, a faster, ad hoc Maximum Likelihood Estimate method, or EB, a slower, more formal, empirical Bayes method. Default is MLE.

ExpressionMatrix = `gcrma(...'TuningParam', TuningParamValue, ...)` specifies the tuning parameter used by the estimate method. This tuning parameter sets the lower bound of signal values with positive probability. Choices are a positive value. Default is 5 (MLE) or 0.5 (EB).

Tip For information on determining a setting for this parameter, see Wu et al., 2004.

ExpressionMatrix = `gcrma(...'GSBCorr', GSBCorrValue, ...)` controls whether gene specific binding (GSB) correction is performed

on the non-specific binding (NSB) data. Choices are true (default) or false.

`ExpressionMatrix = gcrma(...'Normalize', NormalizeValue, ...)` controls whether quantile normalization is performed on background adjusted data. Choices are true (default) or false.

`ExpressionMatrix = gcrma(...'Verbose', VerboseValue, ...)` controls the display of a progress report showing the number of each chip as it is completed. Choices are true (default) or false.

Examples

- 1 Load the MAT file, included with Bioinformatics Toolbox, that contains Affymetrix data from a prostate cancer study. The variables in the MAT file include `seqMatrix`, a matrix containing sequence information for PM probes, `pmMatrix` and `mmMatrix`, matrices containing PM and MM probe intensity values, and `probeIndices`, a column vector containing probe indexing information.

```
load prostatecancerrawdata
```

- 2 Compute the Affymetrix PM and MM probe affinities from their sequences and MM probe intensities.

```
[apm, amm] = affyprobeaffinities(seqMatrix, mmMatrix(:,1),...
                                'ProbeIndices', probeIndices);
```

- 3 Perform GCRMA background adjustment, quantile normalization, and Robust Multi-array Average (RMA) summarization on the Affymetrix microarray probe-level data and create a matrix of expression values.

```
expdata = gcrma(pmMatrix, mmMatrix, probeIndices, seqMatrix);
```

The `prostatecancerrawdata.mat` file used in this example contains data from Best et al., 2005.

References

- [1] Wu, Z., Irizarry, R.A., Gentleman, R., Murillo, F.M. and Spencer, F. (2004). A Model Based Background Adjustment for Oligonucleotide

Expression Arrays. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* 99(468), 909–917.

[2] Wu, Z., and Irizarry, R.A. (2005). Stochastic Models Inspired by Hybridization Theory for Short Oligonucleotide Arrays. Proceedings of RECOMB 2004. *J Comput Biol.* 12(6), 882–93.

[3] Wu, Z., and Irizarry, R.A. (2005). A Statistical Framework for the Analysis of Microarray Probe-Level Data. Johns Hopkins University, Biostatistics Working Papers 73.

[4] Speed, T. (2006). Background models and GCRMA. Lecture 10, Statistics 246, University of California Berkeley.
<http://www.stat.berkeley.edu/users/terry/Courses/s246.2006/Week10/Week10L10.pdf>.

[5] Best, C.J.M., Gillespie, J.W., Yi, Y., Chandramouli, G.V.R., Perlmutter, M.A., Gathright, Y., Erickson, H.S., Georgevich, L., Tangrea, M.A., Duray, P.H., Gonzalez, S., Velasco, A., Linehan, W.M., Matusik, R.J., Price, D.K., Figg, W.D., Emmert-Buck, M.R., and Chuaqui, R.F. (2005). Molecular alterations in primary prostate cancer after androgen ablation therapy. *Clinical Cancer Research* 11, 6823–6834.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `affyprobeseqread`, `affyread`, `celintensityread`, `gcrmabackadj`, `quantilenorm`, `rmabackadj`, `rmasummary`

Purpose

Perform GC Robust Multi-array Average (GCRMA) background adjustment on Affymetrix microarray probe-level data using sequence information

Syntax

```
PMMatrix_Adj = gcrmabackadj(PMMatrix, MMMatrix, AffinPM,  
                             AffinMM)  
[PMMatrix_Adj, nsbStruct] = gcrmabackadj(PMMatrix,  
                                           MMMatrix,  
                                           AffinPM, AffinMM)  
... = gcrmabackadj( ...'OpticalCorr',  
                   OpticalCorrValue, ...)  
... = gcrmabackadj( ...'CorrConst', CorrConstValue, ...)  
... = gcrmabackadj( ...'Method', MethodValue, ...)  
... = gcrmabackadj( ...'TuningParam',  
                   TuningParamValue, ...)  
... = gcrmabackadj( ...'AddVariance',  
                   AddVarianceValue, ...)  
... = gcrmabackadj( ...'Showplot', ShowplotValue, ...)  
... = gcrmabackadj( ...'Verbose', VerboseValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>PMMatrix</i>	Matrix of intensity values where each row corresponds to a perfect match (PM) probe and each column corresponds to an Affymetrix CEL file. (Each CEL file is generated from a separate chip. All chips should be of the same type.)
	<hr/> Tip You can use the <code>PMIntensities</code> matrix returned by the <code>celintensityread</code> function. <hr/>
<i>MMMatrix</i>	Matrix of intensity values where each row corresponds to a mismatch (MM) probe and each column corresponds to an Affymetrix CEL file. (Each CEL file is generated from a separate chip. All chips should be of the same type.)
	<hr/> Tip You can use the <code>MMIntensities</code> matrix returned by the <code>celintensityread</code> function. <hr/>
<i>AffinPM</i>	Column vector of PM probe affinities, such as returned by the <code>affyprobeaffinities</code> function. Each row corresponds to a probe.
<i>AffinMM</i>	Column vector of MM probe affinities, such as returned by the <code>affyprobeaffinities</code> function. Each row corresponds to a probe.
<i>OpticalCorrValue</i>	Controls the use of optical background correction on the PM and MM probe intensity values in <i>PMMatrix</i> and <i>MMMatrix</i> . Choices are <code>true</code> (default) or <code>false</code> .

<i>CorrConstValue</i>	Value that specifies the correlation constant, rho, for log background intensity for each PM/MM probe pair. Choices are any value ≥ 0 and ≤ 1 . Default is 0.7.
<i>MethodValue</i>	String that specifies the method to estimate the signal. Choices are MLE, a faster, ad hoc Maximum Likelihood Estimate method, or EB, a slower, more formal, empirical Bayes method. Default is MLE.
<i>TuningParamValue</i>	Value that specifies the tuning parameter used by the estimate method. This tuning parameter sets the lower bound of signal values with positive probability. Choices are a positive value. Default is 5 (MLE) or 0.5 (EB).

Tip For information on determining a setting for this parameter, see Wu et al., 2004.

<i>AddVarianceValue</i>	Controls whether the signal variance is added to the weight function for smoothing low signal edge. Choices are true or false (default).
-------------------------	--

<i>ShowplotValue</i>	Controls the display of a plot showing the \log_2 of probe intensity values from a specified column (chip) in <i>MMMatrix</i> , versus probe affinities in <i>AffinMM</i> . Choices are <i>true</i> , <i>false</i> , or <i>I</i> , an integer specifying a column in <i>MMMatrix</i> . If set to <i>true</i> , the first column in <i>MMMatrix</i> is plotted. Default is: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>false</i> — When return values are specified.• <i>true</i> — When return values are not specified.
<i>VerboseValue</i>	Controls the display of a progress report showing the number of each chip as it is completed. Choices are <i>true</i> (default) or <i>false</i> .

Return Values

<i>PMMatrix_Adj</i>	Matrix of background adjusted PM (perfect match) intensity values.
<i>nsbStruct</i>	Structure containing nonspecific binding background parameters, estimated from the intensities and affinities of probes on an Affymetrix GeneChip array. <i>nsbStruct</i> includes the following fields: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>sigma</i>• <i>mu_pm</i>• <i>mu_mm</i>

Description

PMMatrix_Adj = `gcrmabackadj(PMMatrix, MMMatrix, AffinPM, AffinMM)` performs GCRMA background adjustment (including optical background correction and nonspecific binding correction) on Affymetrix microarray probe-level data, using probe sequence information and returns *PMMatrix_Adj*, a matrix of background adjusted PM (perfect match) intensity values.

Note If *AffinPM* and *AffinMM* data are not available, you can still use the `gcrmabackadj` function by entering empty column vectors for both of these inputs in the syntax.

`[PMMatrix_Adj, nsbStruct] = gcrmabackadj(PMMatrix, MMMatrix, AffinPM, AffinMM)` returns *nsbStruct*, a structure containing nonspecific binding background parameters, estimated from the intensities and affinities of probes on an Affymetrix GeneChip array. *nsbStruct* includes the following fields:

- `sigma`
- `mu_pm`
- `mu_mm`

`... = gcrmabackadj(...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `gcrmabackadj` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`... = gcrmabackadj(...'OpticalCorr', OpticalCorrValue, ...)` controls the use of optical background correction on the PM and MM probe intensity values in *PMMatrix* and *MMMatrix*. Choices are `true` (default) or `false`.

`... = gcrmabackadj(...'CorrConst', CorrConstValue, ...)` specifies the correlation constant, ρ , for log background intensity for each PM/MM probe pair. Choices are any value ≥ 0 and ≤ 1 . Default is 0.7.

`... = gcrmabackadj(...'Method', MethodValue, ...)` specifies the method to estimate the signal. Choices are MLE, a faster, ad hoc Maximum Likelihood Estimate method, or EB, a slower, more formal, empirical Bayes method. Default is MLE.

`...` = `gcrmabackadj(...'TuningParam', TuningParamValue, ...)` specifies the tuning parameter used by the estimate method. This tuning parameter sets the lower bound of signal values with positive probability. Choices are a positive value. Default is 5 (MLE) or 0.5 (EB).

Tip For information on determining a setting for this parameter, see Wu et al., 2004.

`...` = `gcrmabackadj(...'AddVariance', AddVarianceValue, ...)` controls whether the signal variance is added to the weight function for smoothing low signal edge. Choices are true or false (default).

`...` = `gcrmabackadj(...'Showplot', ShowplotValue, ...)` controls the display of a plot showing the \log_2 of probe intensity values from a specified column (chip) in *MMMatrix*, versus probe affinities in *AffinMM*. Choices are true, false, or *I*, an integer specifying a column in *MMMatrix*. If set to true, the first column in *MMMatrix* is plotted. Default is:

- false — When return values are specified.
- true — When return values are not specified.

`...` = `gcrmabackadj(...'Verbose', VerboseValue, ...)` controls the display of a progress report showing the number of each chip as it is completed. Choices are true (default) or false.

Examples

- 1 Load the MAT file, included with Bioinformatics Toolbox, that contains Affymetrix data from a prostate cancer study. The variables in the MAT file include `seqMatrix`, a matrix containing sequence information for PM probes, `pmMatrix` and `mmMatrix`, matrices containing PM and MM probe intensity values, and `probeIndices`, a column vector containing probe indexing information.

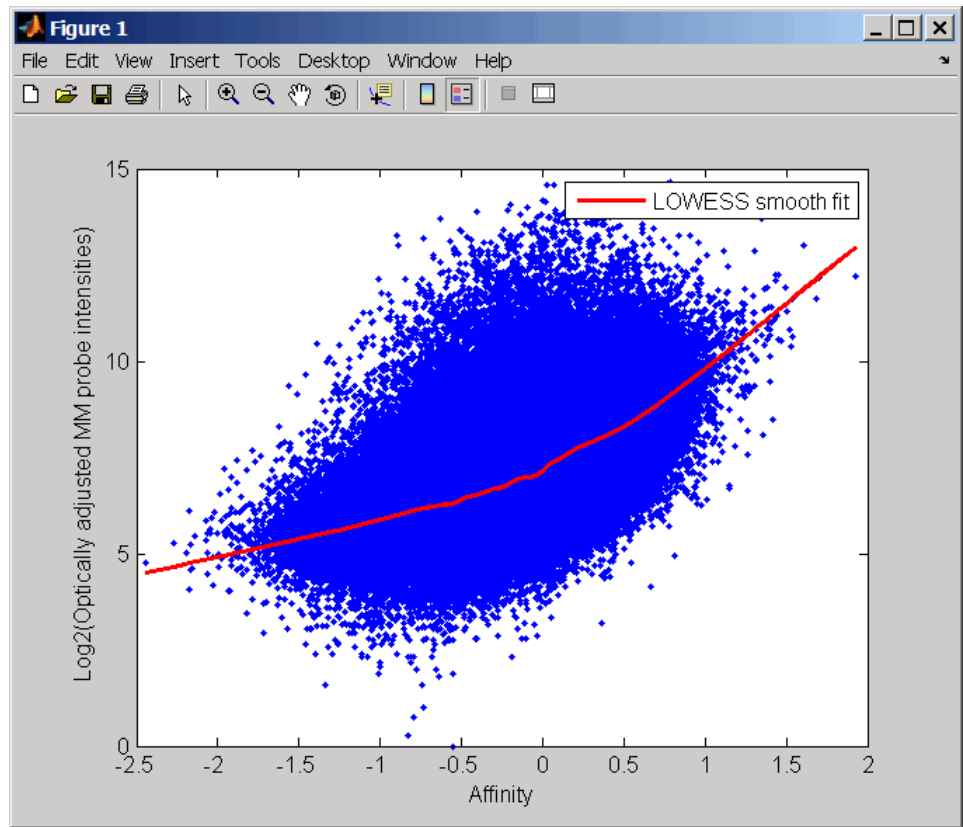
```
load prostatecancerrawdata
```


- 2 Compute the Affymetrix PM and MM probe affinities from their sequences and MM probe intensities.

```
[apm, amm] = affyprobeaffinities(seqMatrix, mmMatrix(:,1),...  
                                'ProbeIndices', probeIndices);
```

- 3 Perform GCRMA background adjustment on the Affymetrix microarray probe-level data, creating a matrix of background adjusted PM intensity values. Also, display a plot showing the \log_2 of probe intensity values from column 3 (chip 3) in `mmMatrix`, versus probe affinities in `amm`.

```
pms_adj = gcrmabackadj(pmMatrix, mmMatrix, apm, amm, 'showplot', 3);
```



- 4 Perform GCRMA background adjustment again, using the slower, more formal, empirical Bayes method.

```
pms_adj2 = gcrmabackadj(pmMatrix, mmMatrix, apm, amm, 'method', 'EB');
```

The `prostatecancerrawdata.mat` file used in this example contains data from Best et al., 2005.

References

- [1] Wu, Z., Irizarry, R.A., Gentleman, R., Murillo, F.M., and Spencer, F. (2004). A Model Based Background Adjustment for Oligonucleotide

Expression Arrays. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* 99(468), 909–917.

[2] Wu, Z., and Irizarry, R.A. (2005). Stochastic Models Inspired by Hybridization Theory for Short Oligonucleotide Arrays. *Proceedings of RECOMB 2004. J Comput Biol.* 12(6), 882–93.

[3] Wu, Z., and Irizarry, R.A. (2005). A Statistical Framework for the Analysis of Microarray Probe-Level Data. Johns Hopkins University, Biostatistics Working Papers 73.

[4] Wu, Z., and Irizarry, R.A. (2003). A Model Based Background Adjustment for Oligonucleotide Expression Arrays. *RSS Workshop on Gene Expression*, Wye, England, <http://biosun01.biostat.jhsph.edu/%7Eirizarry/Talks/gctalk.pdf>.

[5] Abd Rabbo, N.A., and Barakat, H.M. (1979). Estimation Problems in Bivariate Lognormal Distribution. *Indian J. Pure Appl. Math* 10(7), 815–825.

[6] Best, C.J.M., Gillespie, J.W., Yi, Y., Chandramouli, G.V.R., Perlmutter, M.A., Gathright, Y., Erickson, H.S., Georgevich, L., Tangrea, M.A., Duray, P.H., Gonzalez, S., Velasco, A., Linehan, W.M., Matusik, R.J., Price, D.K., Figg, W.D., Emmert-Buck, M.R., and Chuaqui, R.F. (2005). Molecular alterations in primary prostate cancer after androgen ablation therapy. *Clinical Cancer Research* 11, 6823–6834.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `affyprobeseqread`, `affyread`, `celintensityread`, `probelibraryinfo`

genbankread

Purpose Read data from GenBank file

Syntax `GenBankData = genbankread(File)`

Arguments

File Either of the following:

- String specifying a file name, a path and file name, or a URL pointing to a file. The referenced file is a GenBank-formatted file (ASCII text file). If you specify only a file name, that file must be on the MATLAB search path or in the MATLAB Current Directory.
- MATLAB character array that contains the text of a GenBank-formatted file.

GenBankData MATLAB structure with fields corresponding to GenBank keywords.

Description

`GenBankData = genbankread(File)` reads in a GenBank-formatted file, *File*, and creates a structure, *GenBankData*, containing fields corresponding to the GenBank keywords. Each separate sequence listed in the output structure *GenBankData* is stored as a separate element of the structure.

Examples

- 1 Get sequence information for a gene (HEXA), store data in a file, and then read back into MATLAB.

```
getgenbank('nm_000520', 'ToFile', 'TaySachs_Gene.txt')
s = genbankread('TaySachs_Gene.txt')
```

```
s =
```

```
                LocusName: 'NM_000520'
    LocusSequenceLength: '2255'
    LocusNumberofStrands: ''
```

```

LocusTopology: 'linear'
LocusMoleculeType: 'mRNA'
LocusGenBankDivision: 'PRI'
LocusModificationDate: '13-AUG-2006'
Definition: [1x63 char]
Accession: 'NM_000520'
Version: 'NM_000520.2'
GI: '13128865'
Project: []
Keywords: []
Segment: []
Source: 'Homo sapiens (human)'
SourceOrganism: [4x65 char]
Reference: {1x58 cell}
Comment: [15x67 char]
Features: [74x74 char]
CDS: [1x1 struct]
Sequence: [1x2255 char]

```

2 Display the source organism for this sequence.

```

s.SourceOrganism

ans =

Homo sapiens
Eukaryota; Metazoa; Chordata; Craniata; Vertebrata; Euteleostomi;
Mammalia; Eutheria; Euarchontoglires; Primates; Haplorrhini;
Catarrhini; Hominidae; Homo.

```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `emblread`, `fastaread`, `genpeptread`, `getgenbank`, `scfread`, `seqtool`

geneentropyfilter

Purpose Remove genes with low entropy expression values

Syntax

```
Mask = geneentropyfilter(Data)
[Masks, FData] = geneentropyfilter(Data)
[Mask, FData, FNames] = geneentropyfilter(Data, Names)
geneentropyfilter(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)
geneentropyfilter(..., 'Percentile', PercentileValue)
```

Arguments

<i>Data</i>	Matrix where each row corresponds to the experimental results for one gene. Each column is the results for all genes from one experiment.
<i>Names</i>	Cell array with the name of a gene for each row of experimental data. <i>Names</i> has same number of rows as <i>Data</i> with each row containing the name or ID of the gene in the data set.
<i>PercentileValue</i>	Property to specify a percentile below which gene data is removed. Enter a value from 0 to 100.

Description

Mask = geneentropyfilter(*Data*) identifies gene expression profiles in *Data* with entropy values less than the 10th percentile.

Mask is a logical vector with one element for each row in *Data*. The elements of *Mask* corresponding to rows with a variance greater than the threshold have a value of 1, and those with a variance less than the threshold are 0.

[*Masks*, *FData*] = geneentropyfilter(*Data*) returns a filtered data matrix (*FData*). *FData* can also be created using *FData* = Data(find(*I*),:).

[*Mask*, *FData*, *FNames*] = geneentropyfilter(*Data*, *Names*) returns a filtered names array (*FNames*). You can also create *FNames* using *FNames* = Names(*I*).

geneentropyfilter(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...) defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`geneentropyfilter(..., 'Percentile', PercentileValue)`
removes from the experimental data (*Data*) gene expression profiles
with entropy values less than a given percentile (*PercentileValue*).

Examples

```
load yeastdata  
[fyeastvalues, fgenes] = geneentropyfilter(yeastvalues,genes);
```

References

[1] Kohane I.S., Kho A.T., Butte A.J. (2003), Microarrays for an Integrative Genomics, Cambridge, MA:MIT Press.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `exprprofrange`, `exprprofvar`, `genelowvalfilter`, `generangefilter`, `genevarfilter`

genelowvalfilter

Purpose Remove gene profiles with low absolute values

Syntax

```
Mask = genelowvalfilter(Data)
[Mask, FData] = genelowvalfilter(Data)
[Mask, FData, FNames] = genelowvalfilter(Data, Names)
genelowvalfilter(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
genelowvalfilter(..., 'Prctile', PrctileValue)
genelowvalfilter(..., 'AbsValue', AbsValueValue)
genelowvalfilter(..., 'AnyVal', AnyValValue)
```

Arguments

<i>Data</i>	Matrix where each row corresponds to the experimental results for one gene. Each column is the results for all genes from one experiment.
<i>Names</i>	Cell array with the same number of rows as <i>Data</i> . Each row contains the name or ID of the gene in the data set.
<i>PrctileValue</i>	Property to specify a percentile below which gene expression profiles are removed. Enter a value from 0 to 100.
<i>AbsValueValue</i>	Property to specify an absolute value below which gene expression profiles are removed.
<i>AnyValValue</i>	Property to select the minimum or maximum absolute value for comparison with <i>AbsValueValue</i> . If <i>AnyValValue</i> is true, selects the minimum absolute value. If <i>AnyValValue</i> is false, selects the maximum absolute value. The default value is false.

Description Gene expression profile experiments have data where the absolute values are very low. The quality of this type of data is often bad due to large quantization errors or simply poor spot hybridization.

Mask = genelowvalfilter(Data) identifies gene expression profiles in *Data* with all absolute values less than the 10th percentile.

Mask is a logical vector with one element for each row in *Data*. The elements of *Mask* corresponding to rows with absolute expression levels greater than the threshold have a value of 1, and those with absolute expression levels less than the threshold are 0.

`[Mask, FData] = genelowvalfilter(Data)` returns a filtered data matrix (*FData*). You can create *FData* using `FData = Data(find(I),:)`.

`[Mask, FData, FNames] = genelowvalfilter(Data, Names)` returns a filtered names array (*FNames*), where *Names* is a cell array of the names of the genes corresponding to each row of *Data*. You can also create *FNames* using `FNames = Names(I)`.

`genelowvalfilter(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`genelowvalfilter(..., 'Prctile', PrctileValue)` removes from the experimental data (*Data*) gene expression profiles with all absolute values less than a specified percentile (*Percentile*).

`genelowvalfilter(..., 'AbsValue', AbsValueValue)` calculates the maximum absolute value for each gene expression profile and removes the profiles with maximum absolute values less than *AbsValueValue*.

`genelowvalfilter(..., 'AnyVal', AnyValValue)`, when *AnyValValue* is true, calculates the minimum absolute value for each gene expression profile and removes the profiles with minimum absolute values less than *AnyValValue*.

Examples

```
[data, labels, I, FI] = genelowvalfilter(data,labels,'AbsValue',5);
```

References

[1] Kohane I.S., Kho A.T., Butte A.J. (2003), *Microarrays for an Integrative Genomics*, Cambridge, MA:MIT Press.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `exprprofrange`, `exprprofvar`, `geneentropyfilter`, `generangefilter`, `genevarfilter`

geneont

Purpose Create geneont object

Syntax

```
GeneontObj = geneont  
GeneontObj = geneont('File', FileValue)  
GeneontObj = geneont('Live', LiveValue)  
GeneontObj = geneont('Live', LiveValue,  
'ToFile', ToFileValue)
```

Arguments

FileValue file name of an OBO-formatted file that is on the MATLAB search path.

LiveValue Property to create the most up-to-date geneont object. Enter true to create a geneont object (*GeneontObj*) from the most recent version of the Gene Ontology database. Default is false.

ToFileValue file name to which to save the geneont object from the Gene Ontology database.

Description

GeneontObj = geneont searches for the file gene_ontology.obo in the MATLAB Current Directory and creates a geneont object.

GeneontObj = geneont('File', *FileValue*) creates a geneont object (*GeneontObj*) from an OBO-formatted file that is on the MATLAB search path.

GeneontObj = geneont('Live', *LiveValue*), when *LiveValue* is true, creates a geneont object (*GeneontObj*) from the most recent version of the Gene Ontology database, which is the file at

http://www.geneontology.org/ontology/gene_ontology.obo

Note The full Gene Ontology database may take several minutes to download when you run this function using the Live property.

GeneontObj = geneont('Live', *LiveValue*,
'ToFile', *ToFileValue*), when *LiveValue* is true, creates a geneont
object (*GeneontObj*) from the file at

`http://www.geneontology.org/ontology/gene_ontology.obo`

and saves the file to a local file (*ToFileValue*).

Examples

- 1 Download the Gene Ontology database from the Web into MATLAB.

```
GO = geneont('LIVE', true);
```

MATLAB creates a geneont object and displays the number of terms
in the database.

```
Gene Ontology object with 20005 Terms.
```

- 2 Display information about the geneont object.

```
get(GO)
```

```
default_namespace: 'gene_ontology'  
format_version: '1.0'  
date: '01:11:2005 16:51'  
Terms: [20005x1 geneont.term]
```

- 3 Search for all GO terms in the geneont object that contain the string
ribosome in the property field name and create a structure of those
terms.

```
comparison = regexpi(get(GO.Terms,'name'),'ribosome');  
indices = find(~cellfun('isempty',comparison));  
terms_with_ribosome = GO.Term(indices)  
23x1 struct array with fields:  
id  
name  
ontology  
definition  
synonym
```

geneont

is_a
part_of
obsolete

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `goannotread`, `num2goid`

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `geneont` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of `geneont` object: `getancestors`,
`getdescendants`, `getmatrix`, `getrelatives`

Purpose

Remove gene profiles with small profile ranges

Syntax

```
Mask = generangefilter(Data)
[Mask, FData] = generangefilter(Data)
[Mask, FData, FNames] = generangefilter(Data,Names)
generangefilter(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
generangefilter(..., 'Percentile', PercentileValue)
generangefilter(..., 'AbsValue', AbsValueValue)
generangefilter(..., 'LOGPercentile', LOGPercentileValue)
generangefilter(..., 'LOGValue', LOGValueValue)
```

Arguments

<i>Data</i>	Matrix where each row corresponds to the experimental results for one gene. Each column is the results for all genes from one experiment.
<i>Names</i>	Cell array with the name of a gene for each row of experimental data. <i>Names</i> has same number of rows as <i>Data</i> with each row containing the name or ID of the gene in the data set.
<i>PercentileValue</i>	Property to specify a percentile below which gene expression profiles are removed. Enter a value from 0 to 100.
<i>AbsValueValue</i>	Property to specify an absolute value below which gene expression profiles are removed.
<i>LOGPercentileValue</i>	Property to specify the LOG of a percentile.
<i>LOGValueValue</i>	Property to specify the LOG of an absolute value.

Description

Mask = generangefilter(*Data*) calculates the range for each gene expression profile in the experimental data (*Data*), and then identifies the expression profiles with ranges less than the 10th percentile.

generangefilter

Mask is a logical vector with one element for each row in *Data*. The elements of *Mask* corresponding to rows with a range greater than the threshold have a value of 1, and those with a range less than the threshold are 0.

`[Mask, FData] = generangefilter(Data)` returns a filtered data matrix (*FData*). *FData* can also be created using `FData = Data(find(I),:)`.

`[Mask, FData, FNames] = generangefilter(Data,Names)` returns a filtered names array (*FNames*), where *Names* is a cell array with the names of the genes corresponding to each row in *Data*. You can also create *FNames* using `FNames = Names(I)`.

`generangefilter(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`generangefilter(..., 'Percentile', PercentileValue)` removes from the experimental data (*Data*) gene expression profiles with ranges less than a specified percentile (*PercentileValue*).

`generangefilter(..., 'AbsValue', AbsValueValue)` removes from *Data* gene expression profiles with ranges less than *AbsValueValue*.

`generangefilter(..., 'LOGPercentile', LOGPercentileValue)` filters genes with profile ranges in the lowest percent of the log range (*LOGPercentileValue*).

`generangefilter(..., 'LOGValue', LOGValueValue)` filters genes with profile log ranges lower than *LOGValueValue*.

Examples

```
load yeastdata
[mask, fyeastvalues, fgenes] = generangefilter(yeastvalues,genes);
```

References

[1] Kohane I.S., Kho A.T., Butte A.J. (2003), *Microarrays for an Integrative Genomics*, Cambridge, MA:MIT Press.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `exprprorange`, `exprprofvar`, `geneentropyfilter`, `genelowvalfilter`, `genevarfilter`

Purpose Nucleotide codon to amino acid mapping

Syntax `Map = geneticcode`
`geneticcode(GeneticCode)`

Arguments *GeneticCode* Enter a code number or code name from the table .
 If you use a code name, you can truncate the name to the first two characters of the name.

Genetic Code

Code Number	Code Name
1	Standard
2	Vertebrate Mitochondrial
3	Yeast Mitochondrial
4	Mold, Protozoan, Coelenterate Mitochondrial, and Mycoplasma/Spiroplasma
5	Invertebrate Mitochondrial
6	Ciliate, Dasycladacean, and Hexamita Nuclear
9	Echinoderm Mitochondrial
10	Euplotid Nuclear
11	Bacterial and Plant Plastid
12	Alternative Yeast Nuclear
13	Ascidian Mitochondrial
14	Flatworm Mitochondrial
15	Blepharisma Nuclear
16	Chlorophycean Mitochondrial

geneticcode

Code Number	Code Name
21	Trematode Mitochondrial
22	Scenedesmus Obliquus Mitochondrial
23	Thraustochytrium Mitochondrial

Description

Map = `geneticcode` returns a structure with a mapping of nucleotide codons to amino acids for the standard genetic code.

`geneticcode(GeneticCode)` returns a structure of the mapping for alternate genetic codes, where *GeneticCode* is either of the following:

- The `transl_table (code)` number from the NCBI Genetics Web page

<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Taxonomy/Utils/wprintgc.cgi?mode=c>

- One of the supported names in the table above

Examples

List the mapping of nucleotide codons to amino acids for a specific genetic code.

```
wormcode = geneticcode('Flatworm Mitochondrial');
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `aa2nt`, `aminolookup`, `baselookup`, `codonbias`, `dnds`, `dndsm1`, `nt2aa`, `revgeneticcode`, `seqshoworfs`, `seqtool`

Purpose Filter genes with small profile variance

Syntax

```
Mask = genevarfilter(Data)
[Mask, FData] = genevarfilter(Data)
[Mask, FData, FNames] = genevarfilter(Data,Names)
genevarfilter(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
genevarfilter(..., 'Percentile', PercentileValue)
genevarfilter(..., 'AbsValue', AbsValValue)
```

Arguments

<i>Data</i>	Matrix where each row corresponds to a gene. The first column is the names of the genes, and each additional column is the results from an experiment.
<i>Names</i>	Cell array with the name of a gene for each row of experimental data. <i>Names</i> has same number of rows as <i>Data</i> with each row containing the name or ID of the gene in the data set.
<i>Percentile</i>	Property to specify a percentile below which gene expression profiles are removed. Enter a value from 0 to 100.
<i>AbsValue</i>	Property to specify an absolute value below which gene expression profiles are removed.

Description

Gene profiling experiments have genes that exhibit little variation in the profile and are generally not of interest in the experiment. These genes are commonly removed from the data.

Mask = genevarfilter(*Data*) calculates the variance for each gene expression profile in *Data* and then identifies the expression profiles with a variance less than the 10th percentile.

Mask is a logical vector with one element for each row in *Data*. The elements of *Mask* corresponding to rows with a variance greater than the threshold have a value of 1, and those with a variance less than the threshold are 0.

genevarfilter

`[Mask, FData] = genevarfilter(Data)` returns the filtered data matrix (*FData*). You can also create *FData* using `FData = Data(find(I),:)`.

`[Mask, FData, FNames] = genevarfilter(Data,Names)` returns a filtered names array (*FNames*). *Names* is a cell array of the names of the genes corresponding to each row of *Data*. *FNames* can also be created using `FNames = Names(I)`.

`genevarfilter(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`genevarfilter(..., 'Percentile', PercentileValue)` removes from the experimental data (*Data*) gene expression profiles with a variance less than the percentile (*Percentile*).

`genevarfilter(..., 'AbsValue', AbsValValue)` removes from *Data* gene expression profiles with a variance less than *AbsValue*.

Examples

```
load yeastdata
[fyeastvalues, fgenes] = genevarfilter(yeastvalues,genes);
```

References

[1] Kohane I.S., Kho A.T., Butte A.J. (2003), *Microarrays for an Integrative Genomics*, Cambridge, MA:MIT Press.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `exprprofrange`, `exprprofvar`, `generangefilter`, `geneentropyfilter`, `genelowvalfilter`

Purpose Read data from GenPept file

Syntax GenPeptData = genpeptread('File')

Arguments *File* GenPept formatted file (ASCII text file). Enter a file name, a path and file name, or a URL pointing to a file. *File* can also be a MATLAB character array that contains the text of a GenPept file.

Description genpeptread reads data from a GenPept formatted file into a MATLAB structure.

Note NCBI has changed the name of their protein search engine from GenPept to Entrez Protein. However, the function names in Bioinformatics Toolbox (getgenpept and genpeptread) are unchanged representing the still-used GenPept report format.

GenPeptData = genpeptread('File') reads in the GenPept formatted sequence from *File* and creates a structure GenPeptData, containing fields corresponding to the GenPept keywords. Each separate sequence listed in *File* is stored as a separate element of the structure. GenPeptDATA contains these fields:

Field
LocusName
LocusSequenceLength
LocusMoleculeType
LocusGenBankDivision
LocusModificationDate
Definition

Field
Accession
PID
Version
GI
DBSource
Keywords
Source
SourceDatabase
SourceOrganism
Reference.Number
Reference.Authors
Reference.Title
Reference.Journal
Reference.MedLine
Reference.PubMed
Reference.Remark
Comment
Features
Weight
Length
Sequence

Examples

Get sequence information for the protein coded by the gene HEXA, save to a file, and then read back into MATLAB.

```
getgenpept('p06865', 'ToFile', 'TaySachs_Protein.txt')  
genpeptread('TaySachs_Protein.txt')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `fastaread`, `genbankread`, `getgenpept`, `pdbread`, `seqtool`

geosoftread

Purpose Read Gene Expression Omnibus (GEO) SOFT format data

Syntax `GEOSOFTData = geosoftread(File)`

Arguments *File* Gene Expression Omnibus (GEO) SOFT format Sample file (GSM) or Data Set file (GDS). Enter a file name, a path and file name, or a URL pointing to a file.

Note *File* can also be a MATLAB character array that contains the text of a GEO file.

Description `GEOSOFTData = geosoftread(File)` reads a Gene Expression Omnibus (GEO) SOFT format Sample file (GSM) or Data Set file (GDS), and then creates a MATLAB structure, *GEOSOFTdata*, with the following fields.

Fields
Scope
Accession
Header
ColumnDescriptions
ColumnNames
Data
Identifier (GDS files only)
IDRef (GDS files only)

Fields correspond to the GenBank keywords. Each separate entry listed in *File* is stored as a separate element of the structure.

Examples

Get data from the GEO Web site and save it to a file.

```
geodata = getgeodata('GSM3258','ToFile','GSM3258.txt');
```

Use `geosoftread` to access a local copy of a GEO file instead of accessing it from the GEO Web site.

```
geodata = geosoftread('GSM3258.txt')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `galread`, `getgeodata`, `gprread`, `sptread`

getblast

Purpose Retrieve BLAST report from NCBI Web site

Syntax

```
Data = getblast(RID)
Data = getblast(RID, ...'Descriptions',
DescriptionsValue, ...)
Data = getblast(RID, ...'Alignments', AlignmentsValue, ...)
Data = getblast(RID, ...'ToFile', ToFileValue, ...)
Data = getblast(RID, ...'FileFormat', FileFormatValue, ...)
Data = getblast(RID, ...'WaitTime', WaitTimeValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>RID</i>	Request ID for the NCBI BLAST report, such as returned by the <code>blastncbi</code> function.
<i>DescriptionsValue</i>	Integer that specifies the number of descriptions in a report. Choices are any value ≥ 1 and ≤ 500 . Default is 100.
<i>AlignmentsValue</i>	Integer that specifies the number of alignments to include in the report. Choices are any value ≥ 1 and ≤ 500 . Default is 50.
<i>ToFileValue</i>	String specifying a file name for saving report data.
<i>FileFormatValue</i>	String specifying the format of the file. Choices are 'text' (default) or 'html'.
<i>WaitTimeValue</i>	Positive value that specifies a time (in minutes) for MATLAB to wait for a report from the NCBI Web site to be available. If the report is still not available after the wait time, <code>getblast</code> returns an error message. Default behavior is to not wait for a report.

Tip Use the *RTOE* returned by the `blastncbi` function as the *WaitTimeValue*.

Return Values

Data MATLAB structure containing fields corresponding to BLAST keywords and data from an NCBI BLAST report.

Description

The Basic Local Alignment Search Tool (BLAST) offers a fast and powerful comparative analysis of protein and nucleotide sequences against known sequences in online databases. `getblast` parses NCBI BLAST reports, including `blastn`, `blastp`, `psiblast`, `blastx`, `tblastn`, `tblastx`, and `megablast` reports.

`Data = getblast(RID)` reads *RID*, the Request ID for the NCBI BLAST report, and returns the report data in *Data*, a MATLAB structure. The Request ID, *RID*, must be recently generated because NCBI purges reports after 24 hours.

`Data = getblast(RID, ... 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `getblast` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`Data = getblast(RID, ... 'Descriptions', DescriptionsValue, ...)` specifies the number of descriptions in a report. Choices are any integer ≥ 1 and ≤ 500 . Default is 100.

`Data = getblast(RID, ... 'Alignments', AlignmentsValue, ...)` specifies the number of alignments to include in the report. Choices are any integer ≥ 1 and ≤ 500 . Default is 50.

`Data = getblast(RID, ... 'ToFile', ToFileValue, ...)` saves the NCBI BLAST report data to a specified file. The default format for the file is 'text', but you can specify 'html' with the 'FileFormat' property.

`Data = getblast(RID, ... 'FileFormat', FileFormatValue, ...)` specifies the format for the report. Choices are 'text' (default) or 'html'.

`Data = getblast(RID, ...'WaitTime', WaitTimeValue, ...)` pauses MATLAB and waits a specified time (in minutes) for a report from the NCBI Web site to be available. If the report is still unavailable after the wait time, `getblast` returns an error message. Choices are any positive value. Default behavior is to not wait for a report.

Tip Use the *RTOE* returned by the `blastncbi` function as the *WaitTimeValue*.

For more information about reading and interpreting BLAST reports, see:

<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Education/BLASTinfo/tut1.html>

Data contains the following fields.

Field	Description
RID	Request ID for retrieving results for a specific NCBI BLAST search.
Algorithm	NCBI algorithm used to do a BLAST search.
Query	Full sequence submitted to a BLAST search.
Database	All databases searched.
Hits.Name	Name of a database sequence (subject sequence) that matched the query sequence.
Hits.Length	Length of a subject sequence.
Hits.HSPs.Score	Pair-wise alignment score for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.

Field	Description
Hits.HSPs.Expect	Expectation value for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.
Hits.HSPs.Identities	Identities (matches, possibles, and percent) for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.
Hits.HSPs.Positives	<p>Identical or similar residues (matches, possibles, and percent) for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject amino acid sequence.</p> <hr/> <p>Note This field applies only to translated nucleotide or amino acid query sequences and/or databases.</p> <hr/>
Hits.HSPs.Gaps	Nonaligned residues for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.
Hits.HSPs.Frame	<p>Reading frame of the translated nucleotide sequence for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.</p> <hr/> <p>Note This field applies only when performing translated searches, that is, when using tblastx, tblastn, and blastx.</p> <hr/>

Field	Description
Hits.HSPs.Strand	<p>Sense (Plus = 5' to 3' and Minus = 3' to 5') of the DNA strands for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.</p> <hr/> <p>Note This field applies only when using a nucleotide query sequence and database.</p> <hr/>
Hits.HSPs.Alignment	Three-row matrix showing the alignment for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.
Hits.HSPs.QueryIndices	Indices of the query sequence residue positions for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.
Hits.HSPs.SubjectIndices	Indices of the subject sequence residue positions for a high-scoring sequence pair between the query sequence and a subject sequence.
Statistics	Summary of statistical details about the performed search, such as lambda values, gap penalties, number of sequences searched, and number of hits.

Examples

- 1 Create an NCBI BLAST report request using a GenPept accession number.

```
RID = blastncbi('AAA59174', 'blastp', 'expect', 1e-10)
```

```
RID =
```

```
    '1175088155-31624-126008617054.BLASTQ3'
```

- 2 Pass the Request ID for the report to the `getblast` function to parse the report, and return the report data in a MATLAB structure, and save the report data to a text file.

```
reportStruct = getblast(RID, 'ToFile', 'AAA59174_BLAST.rpt')
```

```
reportStruct =
```

```
    RID: '1175093633-2786-174709873694.BLASTQ3'  
  Algorithm: 'BLASTP 2.2.16 [Mar-11-2007]'  
    Query: [1x63 char]  
  Database: [1x96 char]  
    Hits: [1x50 struct]  
  Statistics: [1x1034 char]
```

Note You may need to wait for the report to become available on the NCBI Web site before you can run the preceding command.

References

For more information about reading and interpreting NCBI BLAST reports, see:

http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Education/BLASTinfo/Blast_output.html

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `blastncbi`, `blastread`

getembl

Purpose Sequence information from EMBL database

Syntax

```
Data = getembl('AccessionNumber')
getembl(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
getembl(..., 'ToFile', ToFileValue)
getembl(..., 'SequenceOnly', SequenceOnlyValue)
```

Arguments

<i>AccessionNumber</i>	Unique identifier for a sequence record. Enter a unique combination of letters and numbers.
<i>ToFileValue</i>	Property to specify the location and file name for saving data. Enter either a file name or a path and file name supported by your system (ASCII text file).
<i>SequenceOnlyValue</i>	Property to control getting a sequence without the metadata. Enter either true or false (default).

Description getembl retrieves information from the European Molecular Biology Laboratory (EMBL) database for nucleotide sequences. This database is maintained by the European Bioinformatics Institute (EBI). For more details about the EMBL-Bank database, see

<http://www.ebi.ac.uk/embl/Documentation/index.html>

Data = getembl('AccessionNumber') searches for the accession number in the EMBL database (<http://www.ebi.ac.uk/embl>) and returns a MATLAB structure containing the following fields:

Field
Comments
Identification
Accession

Field

SequenceVersion
DateCreated
DateUpdated
Description
Keyword
OrganismSpecies
OrganismClassification
Organelle
Reference
DatabaseCrossReference
Feature
BaseCount
Sequence

`getembl(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`getembl(..., 'ToFile', ToFileValue)` returns a structure containing information about the sequence and saves the information in a file using an EMBL data format. If you do not give a location or path to the file, the file is stored in the MATLAB current directory. Read an EMBL formatted file back into MATLAB using the function `emblread`.

`getembl(..., 'SequenceOnly', SequenceOnlyValue)`, if `SequenceOnlyValue` is true, returns the sequence information without the metadata.

Examples

Retrieve data for the rat liver apolipoprotein A-I.

```
emblout = getembl('X00558')
```

getembl

Retrieve data for the rat liver apolipoprotein and save in the file `rat_protein`. If a file name is given without a path, the file is stored in the current directory.

```
Seq = getembl('X00558','ToFile','c:\project\rat_protein.txt')
```

Retrieve only the sequence for the rat liver apolipoprotein.

```
Seq = getembl('X00558','SequenceOnly',true)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `emblread`, `getgenbank`, `getgenpept`, `getpdb`, `seqtool`

Purpose

Sequence information from GenBank database

Syntax

```
Data = getgenbank('AccessionNumber')
getgenbank('AccessionNumber')
getgenbank(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
getgenbank(..., 'ToFile', ToFileValue)
getgenbank(..., 'FileFormat', FileFormatValue)
getgenbank(..., 'SequenceOnly', SequenceOnlyValue)
```

Arguments

<i>AccessionNumber</i>	Unique identifier for a sequence record. Enter a unique combination of letters and numbers.
<i>ToFileValue</i>	Property to specify the location and file name for saving data. Enter either a file name or a path and file name supported by your system (ASCII text file).
<i>FileFormatValue</i>	Property to select the format for the file specified with the property ToFileValue. Enter either 'GenBank' or 'FASTA'.
<i>SequenceOnlyValue</i>	Property to control getting the sequence only. Enter either true or false.

Description

getgenbank retrieves nucleotide and amino acid sequence information from the GenBank database. This database is maintained by the National Center for Biotechnology Information (NCBI). For more details about the GenBank database, see

<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Genbank/>

Data = getgenbank('AccessionNumber') searches for the accession number in the GenBank database and returns a MATLAB structure containing information for the sequence. If an error occurs while retrieving the GenBank formatted information, then an attempt is made to retrieve the FASTA formatted data.

`getgenbank('AccessionNumber')` displays information in the MATLAB Command Window without returning data to a variable. The displayed information includes hyperlinks to the URLs for searching and retrieving data.

`getgenbank(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`getgenbank(..., 'ToFile', ToFileValue)` saves the data returned from GenBank in a file. If you do not give a location or path to the file, the file is stored in the MATLAB current directory. Read a GenBank formatted file back into MATLAB using the function `genbankread`.

`getgenbank(..., 'FileFormat', FileFormatValue)` returns the sequence in the specified format (*FileFormatValue*).

`getgenbank(..., 'SequenceOnly', SequenceOnlyValue)` when `SequenceOnly` is true, returns only the sequence as a character array. When the properties `SequenceOnly` and `ToFile` are used together, the output file is in the FASTA format.

Examples

To retrieve the sequence from chromosome 19 that codes for the human insulin receptor and store it in a structure, `S`, in the MATLAB Command Window, type:

```
S = getgenbank('M10051')

S =

    LocusName: 'HUMINSR'
  LocusSequenceLength: '4723'
  LocusNumberofStrands: ''
    LocusTopology: 'linear'
  LocusMoleculeType: 'mRNA'
  LocusGenBankDivision: 'PRI'
  LocusModificationDate: '06-JAN-1995'
    Definition: 'Human insulin receptor mRNA, complete cds.'
    Accession: 'M10051'
    Version: 'M10051.1'
```

```
GI: '186439'  
Project: []  
Keywords: 'insulin receptor; tyrosine kinase.'  
Segment: []  
Source: 'Homo sapiens (human)'  
SourceOrganism: [4x65 char]  
Reference: {[1x1 struct]}  
Comment: [14x67 char]  
Features: [51x74 char]  
CDS: [1x1 struct]  
Sequence: [1x4723 char]  
SearchURL: [1x105 char]  
RetrieveURL: [1x95 char]
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `genbankread`, `getembl`, `getgenpept`, `getpdb`, `seqtool`

getgenpept

Purpose Retrieve sequence information from GenPept database

Syntax

```
Data = getgenpept('AccessionNumber')
getgenpept(...)
getgenpept(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
getgenpept(..., 'ToFile', ToFileValue)
getgenpept(..., 'FileFormat', FileFormatValue)
getgenpept(..., 'SequenceOnly', SequenceOnlyValue)
```

Arguments

<i>AccessionNumber</i>	Unique identifier for a sequence record. Enter a combination of letters and numbers.
<i>ToFileValue</i>	Property to specify the location and file name for saving data. Enter either a file name or a path and file name supported by your system (ASCII text file).
<i>FileFormatValue</i>	Property to select the format for the file specified with the property <i>ToFileValue</i> . Enter either 'GenBank' or 'FASTA'.
<i>SequenceOnlyValue</i>	Property to control getting the sequence without metadata. Enter either true or false.

Description getgenpept retrieves a protein (amino acid) sequence and sequence information from the GenPept database. This database is a translation of the nucleotide sequences in GenBank and is maintained by the National Center for Biotechnology Information (NCBI).

Note NCBI has changed the name of their protein search engine from GenPept to Entrez Protein. However, the function names in Bioinformatics Toolbox (getgenpept and genpeptread) are unchanged representing the still-used GenPept report format.

For more details about the GenBank database, see

<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Genbank/>

`Data = getgenpept('AccessionNumber')` searches for the accession number in the GenPept database and returns a MATLAB structure containing for the sequence. If an error occurs while retrieving the GenBank formatted information, then an attempt is made to retrieve the FASTA formatted data.

`getgenpept(...)` displays the information to the screen without returning data to a variable. The displayed information includes hyperlinks to the URLs used to search for and retrieve the data.

`getgenpept(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`getgenpept(..., 'ToFile', ToFileValue)` saves the information in a file. If you do not give a location or path to the file, the file is stored in the MATLAB current directory. Read a GenPept formatted file back into MATLAB using the function `genpeptread`

`getgenpept(..., 'FileFormat', FileFormatValue)` returns the sequence in the specified format `FileFormatValue`.

`getgenpept(..., 'SequenceOnly', SequenceOnlyValue)` returns only the sequence information without the metadata if `SequenceOnlyValue` is true. When the properties `SequenceOnly` and `ToFile` are used together, the output file is in the FASTA format.

Examples

To retrieve the sequence for the human insulin receptor and store it in a structure, `Seq`, in the MATLAB Command Window, type:

```
Seq = getgenpept('AAA59174')
```

```
Seq =
```

```

                LocusName: 'AAA59174'
    LocusSequenceLength: '1382'
    LocusNumberofStrands: ''
```

getgenpept

```
LocusTopology: 'linear'
LocusMoleculeType: ''
LocusGenBankDivision: 'PRI'
LocusModificationDate: '06-JAN-1995'
Definition: 'insulin receptor precursor.'
Accession: 'AAA59174'
Version: 'AAA59174.1'
GI: '307070'
Project: []
DBSource: 'locus HUMINSR accession M10051.1'
Keywords: ''
Source: 'Homo sapiens (human)'
SourceOrganism: [4x65 char]
Reference: {[1x1 struct]}
Comment: [14x67 char]
Features: [40x64 char]
Sequence: [1x1382 char]
SearchURL: [1x104 char]
RetrieveURL: [1x92 char]
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `genpeptread`, `getembl`, `getgenbank`, `getpdb`

Purpose Retrieve Gene Expression Omnibus (GEO) Sample (GSM) data

Syntax

```
Data = getgeodata('AccessionNumber')
getgeodata(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
getgeodata(..., 'ToFile', ToFileValue)
```

Arguments

<i>AccessionNumber</i>	Unique identifier for a sequence record. Enter a combination of letters and numbers.
<i>ToFileValue</i>	Property to specify the location and file name for saving data. Enter either a file name, or a path and file name supported by your system (ASCII text file).

Description `Data = getgeodata('AccessionNumber')` searches for the accession number in the Gene Expression Omnibus database and returns a MATLAB structure containing the following fields:

Field
Scope
Accession
Header
ColumnDescriptions
ColumnNames
Data

`getgeodata(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`getgeodata(..., 'ToFile', ToFileValue)` saves the data returned from the database to a file. Read a GenPept formatted file back into MATLAB using the function `gensoftread`.

Note Currently, Bioinformatics Toolbox supports only Sample (GSM) records.

For more information, see

<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/About/disclaimer.html>

Examples

```
geoStruct = getgeodata('GSM1768')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `geosoftread`, `getgenbank`, `getgenpept`

Purpose Retrieve multiple sequence alignment associated with hidden Markov model (HMM) profile from PFAM database

Syntax

```
AlignStruct = gethmmalignment(PFAMNumber)
AlignStruct = gethmmalignment(PFAMAccessNumber)
AlignStruct = gethmmalignment(..., 'ToFile',
ToFileValue, ...)
AlignStruct = gethmmalignment(..., 'Type', TypeValue, ...)
AlignStruct = gethmmalignment(..., 'Mirror', MirrorValue,
...)
AlignStruct = gethmmalignment(..., 'IgnoreGaps',
IgnoreGaps,
...)
```

Arguments

<i>PFAMNumber</i>	Integer specifying a protein family number of an HMM profile record in the PFAM database. For example, 2 is the protein family number for the protein family PF0002.
<i>PFAMAccessNumber</i>	String specifying a protein family accession number of an HMM profile record in the PFAM database. For example, PF00002.
<i>ToFileValue</i>	String specifying a file name or a path and file name for saving the data. If you specify only a file name, that file will be saved in the MATLAB Current Directory.
<i>TypeValue</i>	String that specifies the set of alignments returned. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>full</code> — Default. Returns all alignments that fit the HMM profile.• <code>seed</code> — Returns only the alignments used to generate the HMM profile.

gethmmalignment

MirrorValue String that specifies a Web database. Choices are:

- Sanger (default)
- Janelia

IgnoreGapsValue Controls the removal of the symbols - and . from the sequence. Choices are true or false (default).

Return Values

AlignStruct MATLAB structure containing the multiple sequence alignment associated with an HMM profile.

Description

AlignStruct = gethmmalignment(*PFAMNumber*) determines a protein family accession number from *PFAMNumber*, an integer, searches the PFAM database for the associated HMM profile record, retrieves the multiple sequence alignment associated with the HMM profile, and returns *AlignStruct*, a MATLAB structure containing the following fields:

Field
Header
Sequence

AlignStruct = gethmmalignment(*PFAMAccessNumber*) searches the PFAM database for the HMM profile record represented by *PFAMAccessNumber*, a protein family accession number, retrieves the multiple sequence alignment associated with the HMM profile, and returns *AlignStruct*, a MATLAB structure.

AlignStruct = gethmmalignment(..., '*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls gethmmalignment with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

AlignStruct = gethmmalignment(..., 'ToFile', *ToFileValue*, ...) saves the data returned from the PFAM database to a file specified by *ToFileValue*.

Note You can read a FASTA-formatted file containing PFAM data back into MATLAB using the `fastaread` function.

AlignStruct = gethmmalignment(..., 'Type', *TypeValue*, ...) specifies the set of alignments returned. Choices are:

- `full` — Default. Returns all sequences that fit the HMM profile.
- `seed` — Returns only the sequences used to generate the HMM profile.

AlignStruct = gethmmalignment(..., 'Mirror', *MirrorValue*, ...) specifies a Web database. Choices are:

- `Sanger` (default)
- `Janelia`

You can reach other mirror sites by passing the complete URL to the `fastaread` function.

Note These mirror sites are maintained separately and may have slight variations.

For more information about the PFAM database, see:

<http://www.sanger.ac.uk/Software/Pfam/>
<http://pfam.janelia.org/>

gethmmalignment

AlignStruct = gethmmalignment(..., 'IgnoreGaps',
IgnoreGaps, ...) controls the removal of the symbols - and . from
the sequence. Choices are true or false (default).

Examples

To retrieve a multiple alignment of the sequences used to train the
HMM profile for global alignment to the 7-transmembrane receptor
protein in the secretin family, enter either of the following:

```
pfamalign = gethmmalignment(2,'Type','seed')  
  
pfamalign = gethmmalignment('PF00002','Type','seed')  
  
pfamalign =
```

```
32x1 struct array with fields:  
    Header  
    Sequence
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: fastaread, gethmmprof, gethmmtree,
multialignread, pfamhmmread

Purpose

Retrieve hidden Markov model (HMM) profile from PFAM database

Syntax

```
HMMStruct = gethmmprof(PFAMName)
HMMStruct = gethmmprof(PFAMNumber)
HMMStruct = gethmmprof(PFAMAccessNumber)
HMMStruct = gethmmprof(..., 'ToFile', ToFileValue, ...)
HMMStruct = gethmmprof(..., 'Mode', ModeValue, ...)
HMMStruct = gethmmprof(..., 'Mirror', MirrorValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>PFAMName</i>	String specifying a protein family name (unique identifier) of an HMM profile record in the PFAM database. For example, 7tm_2.
<i>PFAMNumber</i>	Integer specifying a protein family number of an HMM profile record in the PFAM database. For example, 2 is the protein family number for the protein family PF0002.
<i>PFAMAccessNumber</i>	String specifying a protein family accession number of an HMM profile record in the PFAM database. The string must include a version number appended at the end of the accession number. For example, PF0002.14.

Note While this is the most efficient way to query the PFAM database, version numbers can change, making your input invalid.

<i>ToFileValue</i>	String specifying a file name or a path and file name for saving the data. If you specify only a file name, that file will be saved in the MATLAB Current Directory.
--------------------	--

<i>ModeValue</i>	String that specifies the returned alignment mode. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>ls</code> — Default. Global alignment mode.• <code>fs</code> — Local alignment mode.
<i>MirrorValue</i>	String that specifies a Web database. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Sanger (default)• Janelia

Return Values

<i>HMMStruct</i>	MATLAB structure containing information retrieved from the PFAM database.
------------------	---

Description

HMMStruct = `gethmmprof(PFAMName)` searches the PFAM database for the record represented by *PFAMName*, a protein family name, retrieves the HMM profile information, and stores it in *HMMStruct*, a MATLAB structure, with the following fields:

Field
Name
PfamAccessionNumber
ModelDescription
ModelLength
Alphabet
MatchEmission
InsertEmission
NullEmission
BeginX
MatchX

Field

InsertX
DeleteX
FlankingInsertX
LoopX
NullX

HMMStruct = gethmmprof(*PFAMNumber*) determines a protein family accession number from *PFAMNumber*, an integer, searches the PFAM database for the associated record, retrieves the HMM profile information, and stores it in *HMMStruct*, a MATLAB structure.

HMMStruct = gethmmprof(*PFAMAccessNumber*) searches the PFAM database for the record represented by *PFAMAccessNumber*, a protein family accession number, retrieves the HMM profile information, and stores it in *HMMStruct*, a MATLAB structure.

Note While this is the most efficient way to query the PFAM database, version numbers can change, making your input invalid.

HMMStruct = gethmmprof(..., '*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls gethmmprof with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

HMMStruct = gethmmprof(..., 'ToFile', *ToFileValue*, ...) saves the data returned from the PFAM database in a file specified by *ToFileValue*.

Note You can read an HMM-formatted file back into MATLAB using the `pfamhmmread` function.

`HMMStruct = gethmmprof(..., 'Mode', ModeValue, ...)` specifies the returned alignment mode. Choices are:

- `ls` — Default. Global alignment mode.
- `fs` — Local alignment mode.

`HMMStruct = gethmmprof(..., 'Mirror', MirrorValue, ...)` specifies a Web database. Choices are:

- Sanger (default)
- Janelia

You can reach other mirror sites by passing the complete URL to the `pfamhmmread` function.

Note These mirror sites are maintained separately and may have slight variations.

For more information about the PFAM database, see:

<http://www.sanger.ac.uk/Software/Pfam/>
<http://pfam.janelia.org/>

Examples

To retrieve a hidden Markov model (HMM) profile for the global alignment of the 7-transmembrane receptor protein in the secretin family, enter either of the following:

```
hmm = gethmmprof(2)
```



```
hmm = gethmmprof('7tm_2')

hmm =

    Name: '7tm_2'
 PfamAccessionNumber: 'PF00002.14'
 ModelDescription: [1x42 char]
  ModelLength: 296
   Alphabet: 'AA'
  MatchEmission: [296x20 double]
 InsertEmission: [296x20 double]
  NullEmission: [1x20 double]
   BeginX: [297x1 double]
   MatchX: [295x4 double]
  InsertX: [295x2 double]
  DeleteX: [295x2 double]
 FlankingInsertX: [2x2 double]
   LoopX: [2x2 double]
   NullX: [2x1 double]
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `gethmmalignment`, `hmmprofalign`, `hmmprofstruct`, `pfamhmmread`, `showhmmprof`

gethmmtree

Purpose Phylogenetic tree data from PFAM database

Syntax

```
Tree = gethmmtree(AccessionNumber)
gethmmtree(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
gethmmtree(..., 'ToFile', ToFileValue)
gethmmtree(..., 'Type', TypeValue)
```

Arguments

AccessionNumber Accession number in the PFAM database.

ToFileValue Property to specify the location and file name for saving data. Enter either a file name or a path and file name supported by your system (ASCII text file).

TypeValue Property to control which alignments are included in the tree. Enter either 'seed' or 'full' (default).

Description

`Tree = gethmmtree(AccessionNumber)` searches for the PFAM family accession number in the PFAM database and returns an object (*Tree*) containing a phylogenetic tree representative of the protein family.

`gethmmtree(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`gethmmtree(..., 'ToFile', ToFileValue)` saves the data returned from the PFAM database in the file *ToFileValue*.

`gethmmtree(..., 'Type', TypeValue)`, when *TypeValue* is 'seed', returns a tree with only the alignments used to generate the HMM model. When *TypeValue* is 'full', returns a tree with all of the alignments that match the model.

Examples

Retrieve a phylogenetic tree built from the multiple aligned sequences used to train the HMM profile model for global alignment. The PFAM accession number PF00002 is for the 7-transmembrane receptor protein in the secretin family.

```
tree = gethmmtree(2, 'type', 'seed')
tree = gethmmtree('PF00002', 'type', 'seed')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `gethmmalignment`, `phytreeread`

getpdb

Purpose Retrieve protein structure data from Protein Data Bank (PDB) database

Syntax

```
PDBStruct = getpdb(PDBid)
PDBStruct = getpdb(PDBid, ...'ToFile', ToFileValue, ...)
PDBStruct = getpdb(PDBid, ...'SequenceOnly',
    SequenceOnlyValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>PDBid</i>	String specifying a unique identifier for a protein structure record in the PDB database.
--------------	---

Note Each structure in the PDB database is represented by a four-character alphanumeric identifier. For example, 4hbb is the identifier for hemoglobin.

<i>ToFileValue</i>	String specifying a file name or a path and file name for saving the PDB-formatted data. If you specify only a file name, that file will be saved in the MATLAB Current Directory.
--------------------	--

Tip After you save the protein structure record to a local PDB-formatted file, you can use the `pdbread` function to read the file into MATLAB offline or use the `molviewer` function to display and manipulate a 3-D image of the structure.

<i>SequenceOnlyValue</i>	Controls the return of the protein sequence only. Choices are <code>true</code> or <code>false</code> (default). If there is one sequence, it is returned as a character array. If there are multiple sequences, they are returned as a cell array.
--------------------------	---

Return Values*PDBStruct*

MATLAB structure containing a field for each PDB record.

Description

The Protein Data Bank (PDB) database is an archive of experimentally determined 3-D biological macromolecular structure data. For more information about the PDB format, see:

http://www.rcsb.org/pdb/file_formats/pdb/pdbguide2.2/guide2.2_frame.html

`getpdb` retrieves protein structure data from the Protein Data Bank (PDB) database, which contains 3-D biological macromolecular structure data.

PDBStruct = `getpdb(PDBid)` searches the PDB database for the protein structure record specified by the identifier *PDBid* and returns the MATLAB structure *PDBStruct*, which contains a field for each PDB record. The following table summarizes the possible PDB records and the corresponding fields in the MATLAB structure *PDBStruct*:

PDB Database Record	Field in the MATLAB Structure
HEADER	Header
OBSLTE	Obsolete
TITLE	Title
CAVEAT	Caveat
COMPND	Compound
SOURCE	Source
KEYWDS	Keywords
EXPDTA	ExperimentData
AUTHOR	Authors
REVDAT	RevisionDate
SPRSDE	Superseded

PDB Database Record	Field in the MATLAB Structure
JRNL	Journal
REMARK 1	Remark1
REMARK <i>N</i>	Remark <i>n</i>
Note <i>N</i> equals 2 through 999.	Note <i>n</i> equals 2 through 999.
DBREF	DBReferences
SEQADV	SequenceConflicts
SEQRES	Sequence
FTNOTE	Footnote
MODRES	ModifiedResidues
HET	Heterogen
HETNAM	HeterogenName
HETSYN	HeterogenSynonym
FORMUL	Formula
HELIX	Helix
SHEET	Sheet
TURN	Turn
SSBOND	SSBond
LINK	Link
HYDBND	HydrogenBond
SLTBRG	SaltBridge
CISPEP	CISPeptides
SITE	Site

PDB Database Record	Field in the MATLAB Structure
CRYST1	Cryst1
ORIGXn	OriginX
SCALEn	Scale
MTRIXn	Matrix
TVECT	TranslationVector
MODEL	Model
ATOM	Atom
SIGATM	AtomSD
ANISOU	AnisotropicTemp
SIGUIJ	AnisotropicTempSD
TER	Terminal
HETATM	HeterogenAtom
CONECT	Connectivity

`PDBStruct = getpdb(PDBid, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `getpdb` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`PDBStruct = getpdb(PDBid, ...'ToFile', ToFileValue, ...)` saves the data returned from the database to a PDB-formatted file, *ToFileValue*.

Tip After you save the protein structure record to a local PDB-formatted file, you can use the `pdbread` function to read the file into MATLAB offline or use the `molviewer` function to display and manipulate a 3-D image of the structure.

`PDBStruct = getpdb(PDBid, ... 'SequenceOnly', SequenceOnlyValue, ...)` controls the return of the protein sequence only. Choices are true or false (default). If there is one sequence, it is returned as a character array. If there are multiple sequences, they are returned as a cell array.

The Sequence Field

The Sequence field is also a structure containing sequence information in the following subfields:

- NumOfResidues
- ChainID
- ResidueNames — Contains the three-letter codes for the sequence residues.
- Sequence — Contains the single-letter codes for the sequence residues.

Note If the sequence has modified residues, then the ResidueNames subfield might not correspond to the standard three-letter amino acid codes. In this case, the Sequence subfield will contain the modified residue code in the position corresponding to the modified residue. The modified residue code is provided in the ModifiedResidues field.

The Model Field

The Model field is also a structure or an array of structures containing coordinate information. If the MATLAB structure contains one model, the Model field is a structure containing coordinate information for that model. If the MATLAB structure contains multiple models, the Model field is an array of structures containing coordinate information for each model. The Model field contains the following subfields:

- Atom
- AtomSD

- AnisotropicTemp
- AnisotropicTempSD
- Terminal
- HeterogenAtom

The Atom Field

The Atom field is also an array of structures containing the following subfields:

- AtomSerNo
- AtomName
- altLoc
- resName
- chainID
- resSeq
- iCode
- X
- Y
- Z
- occupancy
- tempFactor
- segID
- element
- charge
- AtomNameStruct — Contains three subfields: chemSymbol, remoteInd, and branch.

getpdb

Examples

Retrieve the structure information for the electron transport (heme) protein that has a PDB identifier of 5CYT, read the information into a MATLAB structure `pdbstruct`, and save the information to a PDB-formatted file `electron_transport.pdb` in the MATLAB Current Directory.

```
pdbstruct = getpdb('5CYT', 'ToFile', 'electron_transport.pdb')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `getembl`, `getgenbank`, `getgenpept`, `molviewer`, `pdbdistplot`, `pdbread`, `pdbwrite`

Purpose Annotations from Gene Ontology annotated file

Syntax `Annotation = goannotread('File')`

Arguments
`File`

Description `Annotation = goannotread('File')` converts the contents of a Gene Ontology annotated file (`File`) into an array of structs (`Annotation`). Files should have the structure specified in

`http://www.geneontology.org/GO.annotation.shtml#file`

A list with some annotated files can be found at

`http://www.geneontology.org/GO.current.annotations.shtml`

Examples

1 Open a Web browser to

`http://www.geneontology.org/GO.current.annotations.shtml`

2 Download the file containing GO annotations for the gene products of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (`gene_association.sgd.gz`) to your MATLAB Current Directory.

3 Uncompress the file using the `gunzip` function.

`gunzip('gene_association.sgd.gz')`

4 Read the file into MATLAB.

`SGDGenes = goannotread('gene_association.sgd');`

5 Create a structure with GO annotations and get a list of genes.

`S = struct2cell(SGDGenes);
genes = S(3,:)`

goannotread

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox

- functions — geneont (object constructor), num2goid
- geneont object methods — getancestors, getdescendants, getmatrix, getrelatives

Purpose	Gonnet scoring matrix
Syntax	gonnet
Description	<p>gonnet returns the Gonnet matrix.</p> <p>The Gonnet matrix is the recommended mutation matrix for initially aligning protein sequences. Matrix elements are ten times the logarithmic of the probability that the residues are aligned divided by the probability that the residues are aligned by chance, and then matrix elements are normalized to 250 PAM units.</p> <p>Expected score = -0.6152, Entropy = 1.6845 bits Lowest score = -8, Highest score = 14.2</p> <p>Order:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">A R N D C Q E G H I L K M F P S T W Y V B Z X *</p>
References	[1] Gaston H, Gonnet M, Cohen A, Benner S (1992), "Exhaustive matching of the entire protein sequence database", <i>Science</i> , 256:1443-1445.
See Also	Bioinformatics Toolbox functions <code>blosum</code> , <code>dayhoff</code> , <code>pam</code>

gprread

Purpose Read microarray data from GenePix Results (GPR) file

Syntax

```
GPRData = gprread('File')  
gprread(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)  
gprread(..., 'CleanColNames', CleanColNamesValue)
```

Arguments

<i>File</i>	GenePix Results formatted file (file extension GPR). Enter a file name or a path and file name.
<i>CleanColNamesValue</i>	Property to control creating column names that MATLAB can use as variable names.

Description

GPRData = `gprread('File')` reads GenePix results data from *File* and creates a MATLAB structure (*GPRData*) with the following fields:

Field
Header
Data
Blocks
Columns
Rows
Names
IDs
ColumnNames
Indices
Shape

`gprread(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`gprread(..., 'CleanColNames', CleanColNamesValue)`. A GPR file may contain column names with spaces and some characters that MATLAB cannot use in MATLAB variable names. If *CleanColNamesValue* is true, `gprread` returns names in the field `ColumnNames` that are valid MATLAB variable names and names that you can use in functions. By default, *CleanColNamesValue* is false and the field `ColumnNames` may contain characters that are invalid for MATLAB variable names.

The field `Indices` of the structure contains MATLAB indices that can be used for plotting heat maps of the data.

For more details on the GPR format, see

http://www.moleculardevices.com/pages/software/gn_genepix_file_formats.html#gpr

http://www.moleculardevices.com/pages/software/gn_gpr_format_history.html

For a list of supported file format versions, see

http://www.moleculardevices.com/pages/software/gn_genepix_file_formats.html

GenePix is a registered trademark of Molecular Devices Corporation.

Examples

```
% Read in a sample GPR file and plot the median foreground
% intensity for the 635 nm channel.
gprStruct = gprread('mouse_a1pd.gpr')
mimage(gprStruct, 'F635 Median');

% Alternatively you can create a similar plot using
% more basic graphics commands.
F635Median = magetfield(gprStruct, 'F635 Median');
imagesc(F635Median(gprStruct.Indices));
colormap bone
colorbar;
```

gprread

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `affyread`, `agferead`, `celintensityread`, `galread`, `geosoftread`, `imageneread`, `magetfield`, `sptread`

Purpose Find all shortest paths in graph

Syntax

```
[dist] = graphallshortestpaths(G)
[dist] = graphallshortestpaths(G, ...'Directed',
DirectedValue, ...)
[dist] = graphallshortestpaths(G, ...'Weights', WeightsValue,
...)
```

Arguments

<i>G</i>	N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a graph. Nonzero entries in matrix <i>G</i> represent the weights of the edges.
<i>DirectedValue</i>	Property that indicates whether the graph is directed or undirected. Enter <code>false</code> for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is <code>true</code> .
<i>WeightsValue</i>	Column vector that specifies custom weights for the edges in matrix <i>G</i> . It must have one entry for every nonzero value (edge) in matrix <i>G</i> . The order of the custom weights in the vector must match the order of the nonzero values in matrix <i>G</i> when it is traversed column-wise. This property lets you use zero-valued weights. By default, <code>graphallshortestpaths</code> gets weight information from the nonzero entries in matrix <i>G</i> .

Description

Tip For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

`[dist] = graphallshortestpaths(G)` finds the shortest paths between every pair of nodes in the graph represented by matrix *G*, using Johnson’s algorithm. Input *G* is an N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a graph. Nonzero entries in matrix *G* represent the weights of the edges.

graphallshortestpaths

Output *dist* is an N-by-N matrix where $dist(S, T)$ is the distance of the shortest path from node S to node T. A 0 in this matrix indicates the source node; an Inf is an unreachable node. The *pred* output is the predecessor map of the winning paths.

Johnson's algorithm has a time complexity of $O(N \cdot \log(N) + N \cdot E)$, where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

[...] = graphallshortestpaths (G, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...) calls graphallshortestpaths with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

[*dist*] = graphallshortestpaths(G, ...'Directed', DirectedValue, ...) indicates whether the graph is directed or undirected. Set *DirectedValue* to false for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is true.

[*dist*] = graphallshortestpaths(G, ...'Weights', WeightsValue, ...) lets you specify custom weights for the edges. *WeightsValue* is a column vector having one entry for every nonzero value (edge) in matrix G. The order of the custom weights in the vector must match the order of the nonzero values in matrix G when it is traversed column-wise. This property lets you use zero-valued weights. By default, graphallshortestpaths gets weight information from the nonzero entries in matrix G.

Examples

Finding All Shortest Paths in a Directed Graph

1 Create and view a directed graph with 6 nodes and 11 edges.

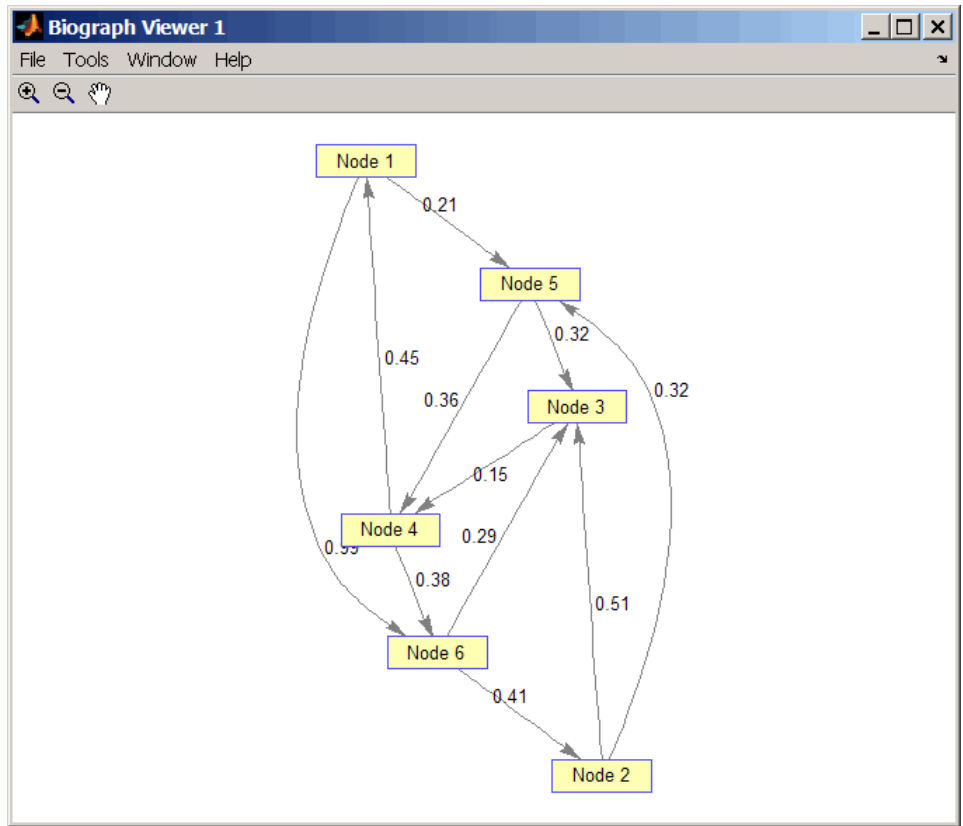
```
W = [.41 .99 .51 .32 .15 .45 .38 .32 .36 .29 .21];  
DG = sparse([6 1 2 2 3 4 4 5 5 6 1],[2 6 3 5 4 1 6 3 4 3 5],W)
```

```
DG =
```

(4,1)	0.4500
(6,2)	0.4100
(2,3)	0.5100
(5,3)	0.3200
(6,3)	0.2900
(3,4)	0.1500
(5,4)	0.3600
(1,5)	0.2100
(2,5)	0.3200
(1,6)	0.9900
(4,6)	0.3800

```
view(biograph(DG,[],'ShowWeights','on'))
```

graphallshortestpaths



2 Find all the shortest paths between every pair of nodes in the directed graph.

```
graphallshortestpaths(DG)
```

```
ans =
```

0	1.3600	0.5300	0.5700	0.2100	0.9500
1.1100	0	0.5100	0.6600	0.3200	1.0400
0.6000	0.9400	0	0.1500	0.8100	0.5300

```
0.4500    0.7900    0.6700         0    0.6600    0.3800
0.8100    1.1500    0.3200    0.3600         0    0.7400
0.8900    0.4100    0.2900    0.4400    0.7300         0
```

The resulting matrix shows the shortest path from node 1 (first row) to node 6 (sixth column) is 0.95. You can see this in the graph by tracing the path from node 1 to node 5 to node 4 to node 6 ($0.21 + 0.36 + 0.38 = 0.95$).

Finding All Shortest Paths in an Undirected Graph

- 1 Create and view an undirected graph with 6 nodes and 11 edges.

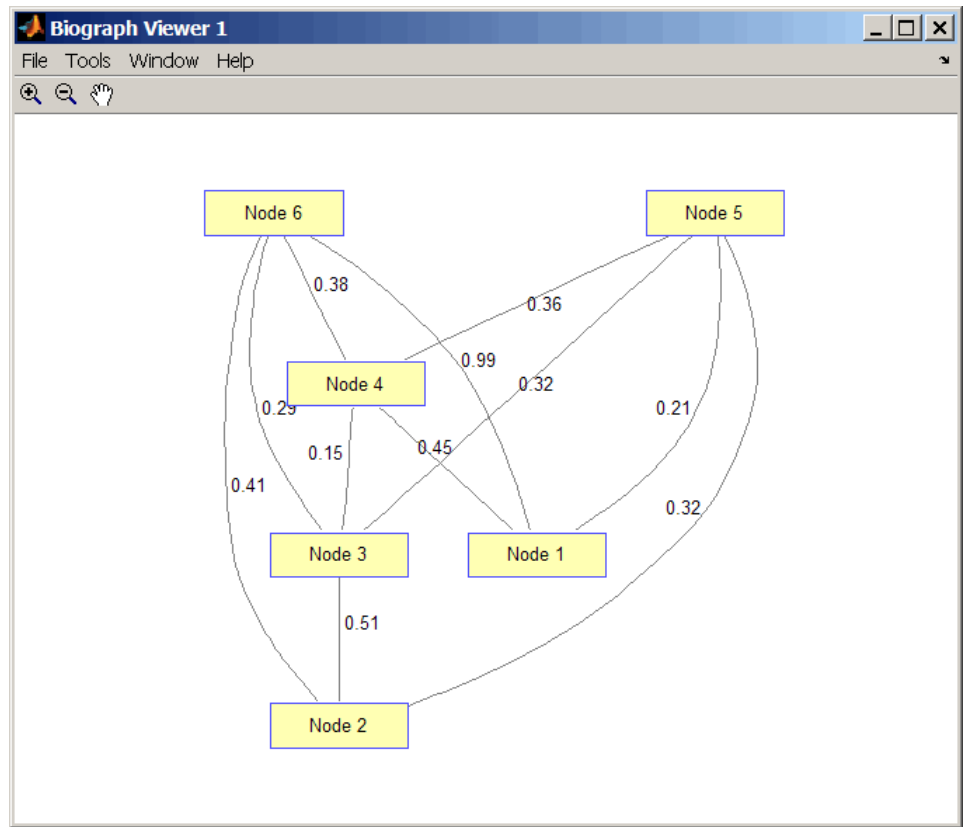
```
UG = tril(DG + DG')
```

```
UG =
```

```
(4,1)    0.4500
(5,1)    0.2100
(6,1)    0.9900
(3,2)    0.5100
(5,2)    0.3200
(6,2)    0.4100
(4,3)    0.1500
(5,3)    0.3200
(6,3)    0.2900
(5,4)    0.3600
(6,4)    0.3800
```

```
view(biograph(UG,[],'ShowArrows','off','ShowWeights','on'))
```

graphallshortestpaths



2 Find all the shortest paths between every pair of nodes in the undirected graph.

```
graphallshortestpaths(UG, 'directed', false)
```

ans =

0	0.5300	0.5300	0.4500	0.2100	0.8300
0.5300	0	0.5100	0.6600	0.3200	0.7000
0.5300	0.5100	0	0.1500	0.3200	0.5300

0.4500	0.6600	0.1500	0	0.3600	0.3800
0.2100	0.3200	0.3200	0.3600	0	0.7400
0.8300	0.7000	0.5300	0.3800	0.7400	0

The resulting matrix is symmetrical because it represents an undirected graph. It shows the shortest path from node 1 (first row) to node 6 (sixth column) is 0.83. You can see this in the graph by tracing the path from node 1 to node 4 to node 6 ($0.45 + 0.38 = 0.83$). Because UG is an undirected graph, we can use the edge between node 1 and node 4, which we could not do in the directed graph DG.

References

[1] Johnson, D.B. (1977). Efficient algorithms for shortest paths in sparse networks. *Journal of the ACM* 24(1), 1-13.

[2] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). *The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual*, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `graphconncomp`, `graphisdag`, `graphisomorphism`, `graphisspanntree`, `graphmaxflow`, `graphminspanntree`, `graphpred2path`, `graphshortestpath`, `graphtopoorder`, `graphtraverse`

Bioinformatics Toolbox method of `biograph` object: `allshortestpaths`

graphconncomp

Purpose Find strongly or weakly connected components in graph

Syntax
[S, C] = graphconncomp(G)
[S, C] = graphconncomp(G, ...'Directed', *DirectedValue*, ...)
[S, C] = graphconncomp(G, ...'Weak', *WeakValue*, ...)

Arguments

<i>G</i>	N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a graph. Nonzero entries in matrix <i>G</i> indicate the presence of an edge.
<i>DirectedValue</i>	Property that indicates whether the graph is directed or undirected. Enter <code>false</code> for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is <code>true</code> . A DFS-based algorithm computes the connected components. Time complexity is $O(N+E)$, where <i>N</i> and <i>E</i> are number of nodes and edges respectively.
<i>WeakValue</i>	Property that indicates whether to find weakly connected components or strongly connected components. A weakly connected component is a maximal group of nodes that are mutually reachable by violating the edge directions. Set <i>WeakValue</i> to <code>true</code> to find weakly connected components. Default is <code>false</code> , which finds strongly connected components. The state of this parameter has no effect on undirected graphs because weakly and strongly connected components are the same in undirected graphs. Time complexity is $O(N+E)$, where <i>N</i> and <i>E</i> are number of nodes and edges respectively.

Description

Tip For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

`[S, C] = graphconncomp(G)` finds the strongly connected components of the graph represented by matrix *G* using Tarjan’s algorithm. A strongly connected component is a maximal group of nodes that are mutually reachable without violating the edge directions. Input *G* is an N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a graph. Nonzero entries in matrix *G* indicate the presence of an edge.

The number of components found is returned in *S*, and *C* is a vector indicating to which component each node belongs.

Tarjan’s algorithm has a time complexity of $O(N+E)$, where *N* and *E* are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

`[S, C] = graphconncomp(G, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `graphconncomp` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`[S, C] = graphconncomp(G, ...'Directed', DirectedValue, ...)` indicates whether the graph is directed or undirected. Set *directedValue* to `false` for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is `true`. A DFS-based algorithm computes the connected components. Time complexity is $O(N+E)$, where *N* and *E* are number of nodes and edges respectively.

`[S, C] = graphconncomp(G, ...'Weak', WeakValue, ...)` indicates whether to find weakly connected components or strongly connected components. A weakly connected component is a maximal group of nodes that are mutually reachable by violating the edge directions. Set *WeakValue* to `true` to find weakly connected components. Default is `false`, which finds strongly connected components. The state of this

graphconncomp

parameter has no effect on undirected graphs because weakly and strongly connected components are the same in undirected graphs. Time complexity is $O(N+E)$, where N and E are number of nodes and edges respectively.

Note By definition, a single node can be a strongly connected component.

Note A directed acyclic graph (DAG) cannot have any strongly connected components larger than one.

Examples

1 Create and view a directed graph with 10 nodes and 17 edges.

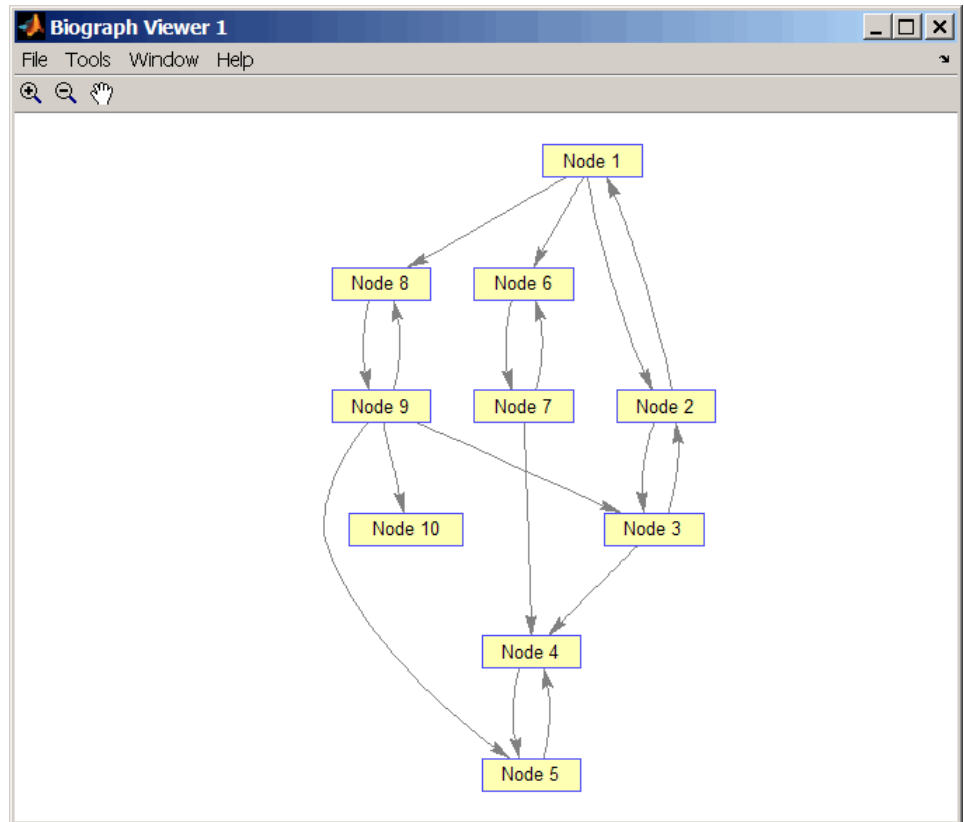
```
DG = sparse([1 1 1 2 2 3 3 4 5 6 7 7 8 9 9 9 9], ...  
           [2 6 8 3 1 4 2 5 4 7 6 4 9 8 10 5 3],true,10,10)
```

DG =

(2,1)	1
(1,2)	1
(3,2)	1
(2,3)	1
(9,3)	1
(3,4)	1
(5,4)	1
(7,4)	1
(4,5)	1
(9,5)	1
(1,6)	1
(7,6)	1
(6,7)	1
(1,8)	1
(9,8)	1

```
(8,9)      1
(9,10)     1
```

```
h = view(biograph(DG));
```



- 2** Find the number of strongly connected components in the directed graph and determine to which component each of the 10 nodes belongs.

```
[S,C] = graphconncomp(DG)
```

graphconncomp

```
S =
```

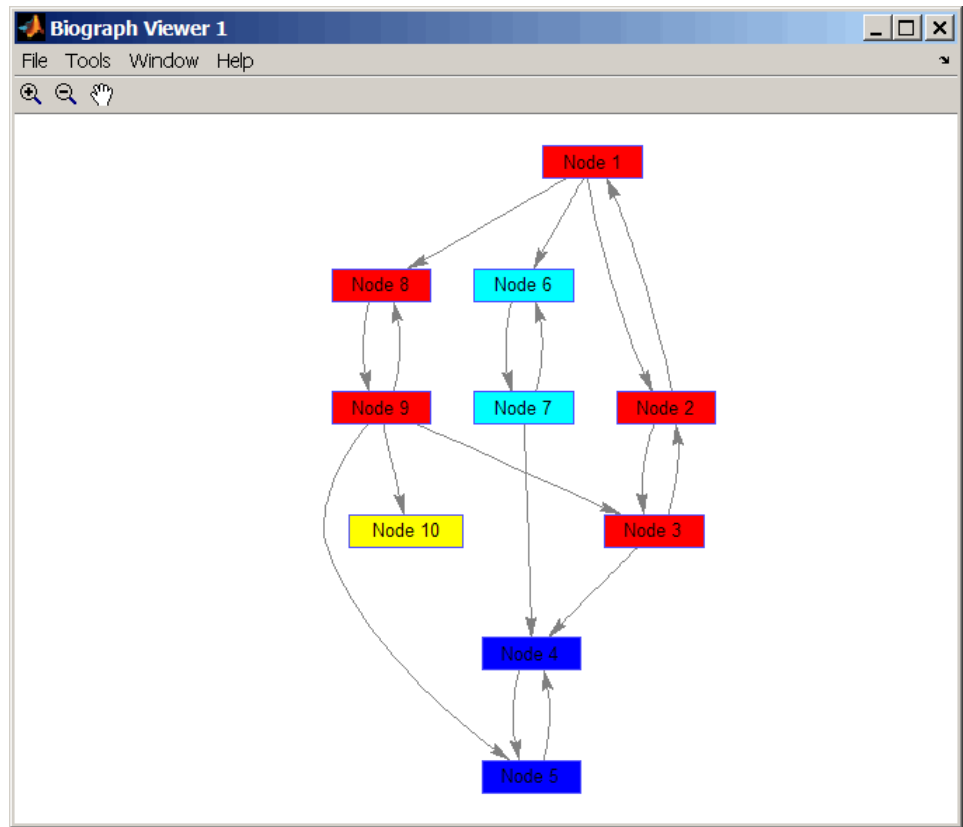
```
4
```

```
C =
```

```
4 4 4 1 1 2 2 4 4 3
```

3 Color the nodes for each component with a different color.

```
colors = jet(S);  
for i = 1:numel(h.nodes)  
    h.Nodes(i).Color = colors(C(i),:);  
end
```



References

- [1] Tarjan, R.E., (1972). Depth first search and linear graph algorithms. *SIAM Journal on Computing* 1(2), 146–160.
- [2] Sedgewick, R., (2002). *Algorithms in C++, Part 5 Graph Algorithms* (Addison-Wesley).
- [3] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). *The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual*, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

graphconncomp

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `graphallshortestpaths`,
`graphisdag`, `graphisomorphism`, `graphisspanntree`, `graphmaxflow`,
`graphminspanntree`, `graphpred2path`, `graphshortestpath`,
`graphtopoorder`, `graphtraverse`

Bioinformatics Toolbox method of `biograph` object: `conncomp`

Purpose Test for cycles in directed graph

Syntax graphisdag(*G*)

Arguments

G N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a directed graph. Nonzero entries in matrix *G* indicate the presence of an edge.

Description

Tip For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

graphisdag(*G*) returns logical 1 (`true`) if the directed graph represented by matrix *G* is a directed acyclic graph (DAG) and logical 0 (`false`) otherwise. *G* is an N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a directed graph. Nonzero entries in matrix *G* indicate the presence of an edge.

Examples

Testing for Cycles in Directed Graphs

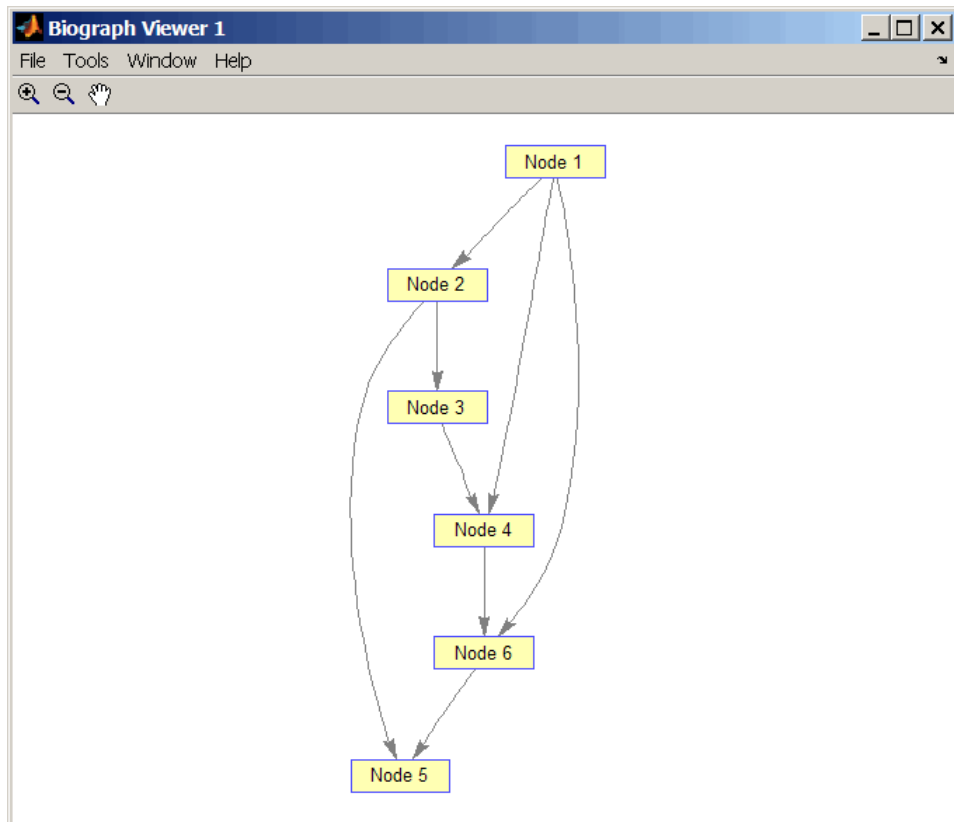
- 1 Create and view a directed acyclic graph (DAG) with six nodes and eight edges.

```
DG = sparse([1 1 1 2 2 3 4 6],[2 4 6 3 5 4 6 5],true,6,6)
```

```
DG =
```

```
(1,2)      1
(2,3)      1
(1,4)      1
(3,4)      1
(2,5)      1
(6,5)      1
(1,6)      1
(4,6)      1
```

```
view(biograph(DG))
```



2 Test for cycles in the DAG.

```
graphisdag(DG)
```

```
ans =
```

```
1
```


- 3** Add an edge to the DAG to make it cyclic, and then view the directed graph.

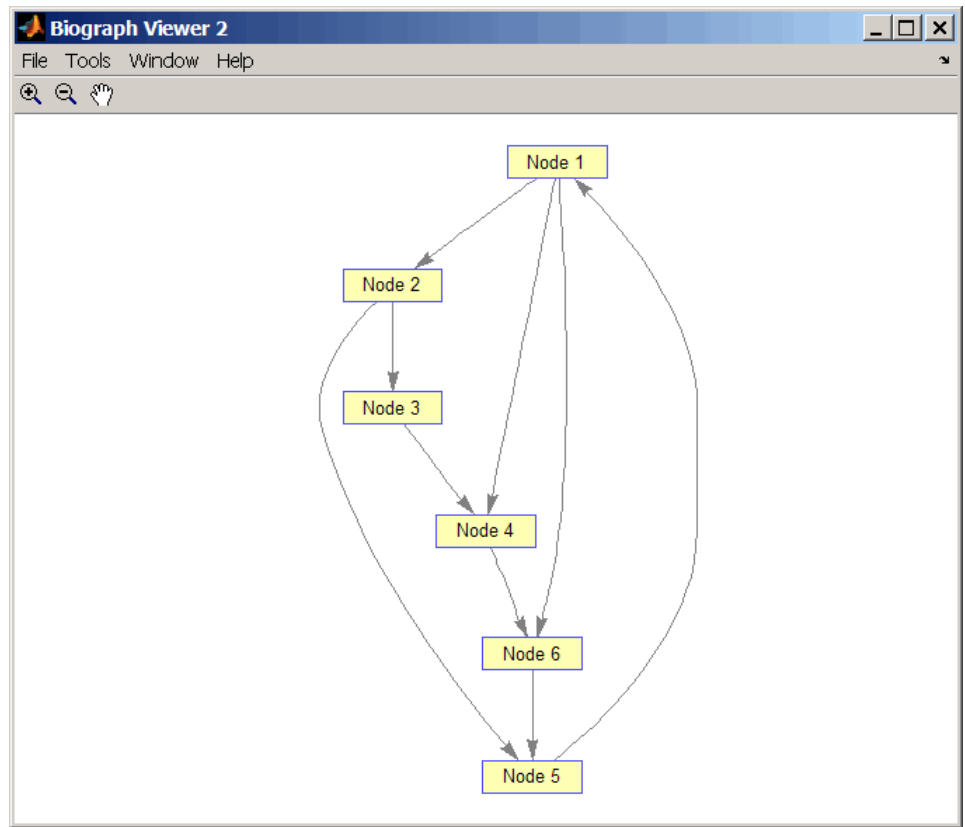
```
DG(5,1) = true
```

```
DG =
```

```
(5,1)      1  
(1,2)      1  
(2,3)      1  
(1,4)      1  
(3,4)      1  
(2,5)      1  
(6,5)      1  
(1,6)      1  
(4,6)      1
```

```
>> view(bigraph(DG))
```

graphisdag



4 Test for cycles in the new graph.

```
graphisdag(DG)
```

```
ans =
```

```
0
```

Testing for Cycles in a Very Large Graph (Greater Than 20,000 Nodes and 30,000 Edges)

- 1 Download the Gene Ontology database to a geneont object.

```
GO = geneont('live',true);
```

- 2 Convert the geneont object to a matrix.

```
CM = getmatrix(GO);
```

- 3 Test for cycles in the graph.

```
graphisdag(CM)
```

Creating a Random DAG

- 1 Create and view a random directed acyclic graph (DAG) with 15 nodes and 20 edges.

```
g = sparse([],[],true,15,15);  
while nnz(g) < 20  
    edge = randsample(15*15,1); % get a random edge  
    g(edge) = true;  
    g(edge) = graphisdag(g);  
end  
view(biograph(g))
```

- 2 Test for cycles in the graph.

```
graphisdag(g)
```

References

[1] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: graphallshortestpaths, graphconncomp, graphisomorphism, graphissspantree, graphmaxflow,

graphisdag

graphminspantree, graphpred2path, graphshortestpath,
graphtopoorder, graphtraverse

Bioinformatics Toolbox method of biograph object: isdag

Purpose

Find isomorphism between two graphs

Syntax

```
[Isomorphic, Map] = graphisomorphism(G1, G2)  
[Isomorphic, Map] = graphisomorphism(G1, G2, 'Directed',  
    DirectedValue)
```

Arguments

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| <i>G1</i> | N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a directed or undirected graph. Nonzero entries in matrix <i>G1</i> indicate the presence of an edge. |
| <i>G2</i> | N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a directed or undirected graph. <i>G2</i> must be the same (directed or undirected) as <i>G1</i> . |
| <i>DirectedValue</i> | Property that indicates whether the graphs are directed or undirected. Enter <code>false</code> when both <i>G1</i> and <i>G2</i> are undirected graphs. In this case, the upper triangles of the sparse matrices <i>G1</i> and <i>G2</i> are ignored. Default is <code>true</code> , meaning that both graphs are directed. |

Description

Tip For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

`[Isomorphic, Map] = graphisomorphism(G1, G2)` returns logical 1 (true) in *Isomorphic* if *G1* and *G2* are isomorphic graphs, and logical 0 (false) otherwise. A graph isomorphism is a 1-to-1 mapping of the nodes in the graph *G1* and the nodes in the graph *G2* such that adjacencies are preserved. *G1* and *G2* are both N-by-N sparse matrices that represent directed or undirected graphs. Return value *Isomorphic* is Boolean. When *Isomorphic* is true, *Map* is a row vector containing the node indices that map from *G2* to *G1*. When *Isomorphic* is false, the worst-case time complexity is $O(N!)$, where N is the number of nodes.

graphisomorphism

`[Isomorphic, Map] = graphisomorphism(G1, G2, 'Directed', DirectedValue)` indicates whether the graphs are directed or undirected. Set `DirectedValue` to false when both `G1` and `G2` are undirected graphs. In this case, the upper triangles of the sparse matrices `G1` and `G2` are ignored. Default is true, meaning that both graphs are directed.

Examples

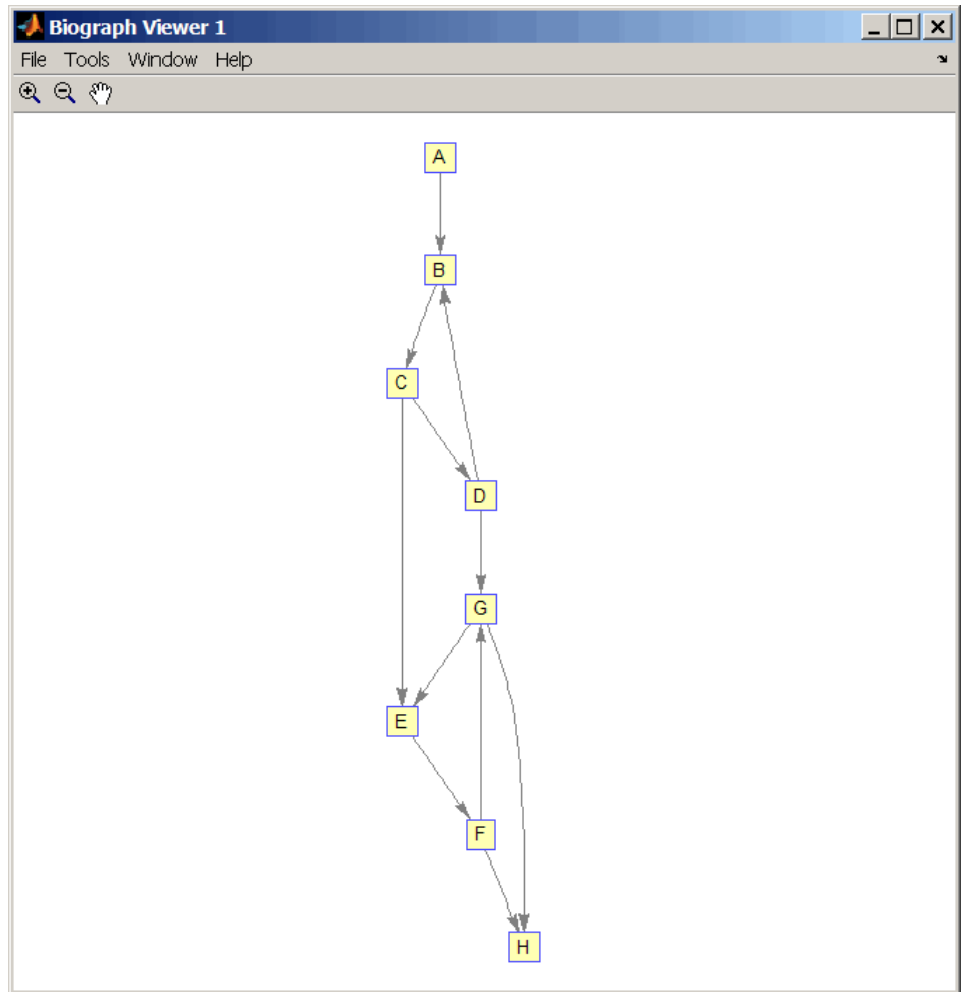
- 1 Create and view a directed graph with 8 nodes and 11 edges.

```
m('ABCDEFGH') = [1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8];  
g1 = sparse(m('ABDCDCGEFFG'),m('BCBDGEEFHGH'),true,8,8)
```

```
g1 =
```

```
(1,2)      1  
(4,2)      1  
(2,3)      1  
(3,4)      1  
(3,5)      1  
(7,5)      1  
(5,6)      1  
(4,7)      1  
(6,7)      1  
(6,8)      1  
(7,8)      1
```

```
view(biograph(g1,'ABCDEFGH'))
```



- 2 Set a random permutation vector and then create and view a new permuted graph.

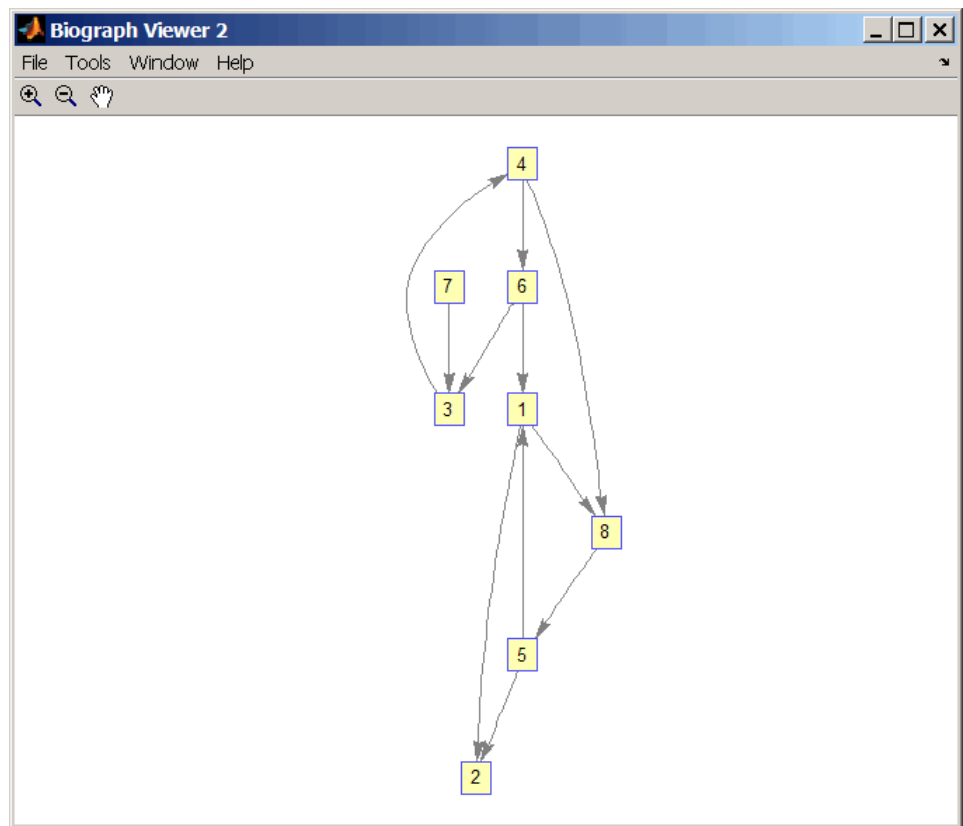
```
p = randperm(8)
```

graphisomorphism

```
p =
```

```
      7      8      2      3      6      4      1      5
```

```
g2 = g1(p,p);  
view(biograph(g2, '12345678'))
```



3 Check if the two graphs are isomorphic.

```
[F,Map] = graphisomorphism(g2,g1)
```


F =

1

Map =

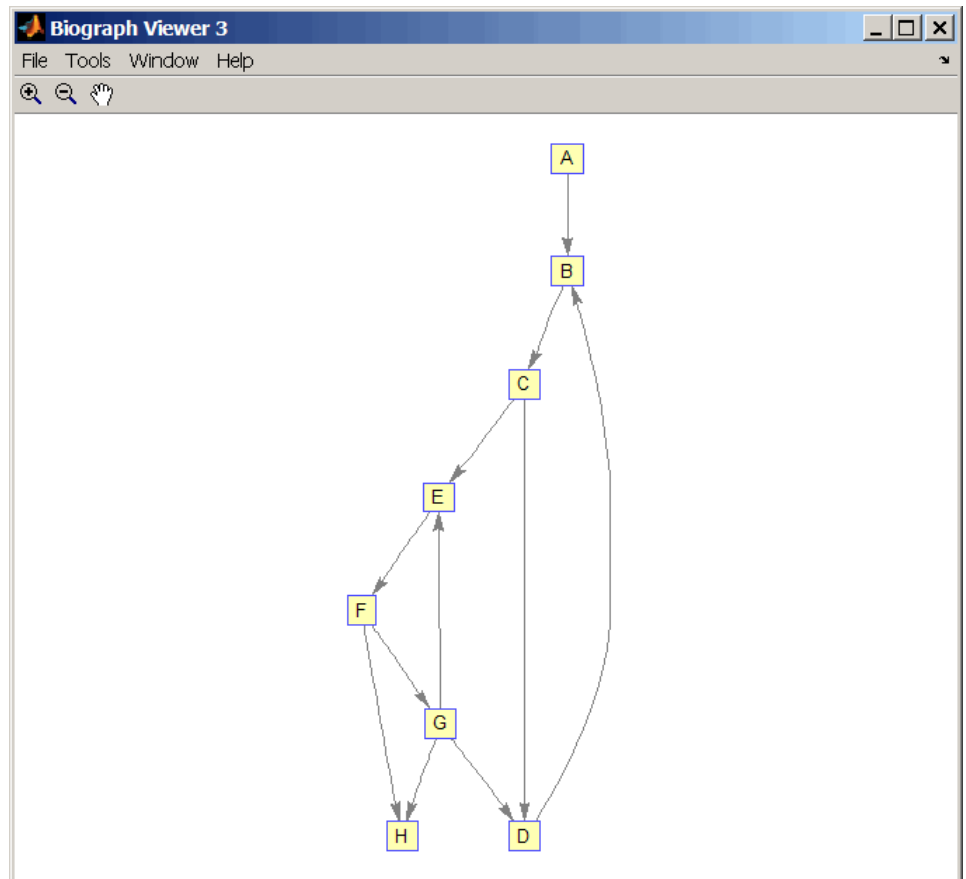
7 8 2 3 6 4 1 5

Note that the Map row vector containing the node indices that map from g2 to g1 is the same as the permutation vector you created in step 2.

- 4 Reverse the direction of the D-G edge in the first graph, and then check for isomorphism again.

```
g1(m('DG'),m('GD')) = g1(m('GD'),m('DG'));  
view(biograph(g1,'ABCDEFGH'))
```

graphisomorphism



$[F, M] = \text{graphisomorphism}(g2, g1)$

F =

0

M =

```
[]
```

5 Convert the graphs to undirected graphs, and then check for isomorphism.

```
[F,M] = graphisomorphism(g2+g2',g1+g1','directed',false)
```

```
F =
```

```
1
```

```
M =
```

```
7 8 2 3 6 4 1 5
```

References

[1] Fortin, S. (1996). The Graph Isomorphism Problem. Technical Report, 96-20, Dept. of Computer Science, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta, Canada.

[2] McKay, B.D. (1981). Practical Graph Isomorphism. *Congressus Numerantium* 30, 45-87.

[3] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `graphallshortestpaths`, `graphconncomp`, `graphisdag`, `graphissspantree`, `graphmaxflow`, `graphminspantree`, `graphpred2path`, `graphshortestpath`, `graphtopoorder`, `graphtraverse`

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of `biograph` object: `isomorphism`

graphisspantree

Purpose Determine if tree is spanning tree

Syntax `TF = graphisspantree(G)`

Arguments

G N-by-N sparse matrix whose lower triangle represents an undirected graph. Nonzero entries in matrix *G* indicate the presence of an edge.

Description

Tip For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

`TF = graphisspantree(G)` returns logical 1 (true) if *G* is a spanning tree, and logical 0 (false) otherwise. A spanning tree must touch all the nodes and must be acyclic. *G* is an N-by-N sparse matrix whose lower triangle represents an undirected graph. Nonzero entries in matrix *G* indicate the presence of an edge.

Examples

1 Create a phytree object from a phylogenetic tree file.

```
tr = phytread('pf00002.tree')
Phylogenetic tree object with 33 leaves (32 branches)
```

2 Create a connection matrix from the phytree object.

```
[CM,labels,dist] = getmatrix(tr);
```

3 Determine if the connection matrix is a spanning tree.

```
graphisspantree(CM)
```

```
ans =
```

```
1
```

- 4 Add an edge between the root and the first leaf in the connection matrix.

```
CM(end,1) = 1;
```

- 5 Determine if the modified connection matrix is a spanning tree.

```
graphisspantree(CM)
```

```
ans =
```

```
0
```

References

[1] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: graphallshortestpaths, graphconncomp, graphisdag, graphisomorphism, graphmaxflow, graphminspantree, graphpred2path, graphshortestpath, graphtopoorder, graphtraverse

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of biograph object: isspantree

graphmaxflow

Purpose Calculate maximum flow and minimum cut in directed graph

Syntax

```
[MaxFlow, FlowMatrix, Cut] = graphmaxflow(G, SNode, TNode)
[...] = graphmaxflow(G, SNode, TNode, ...'Capacity',
CapacityValue, ...)
[...] = graphmaxflow(G, SNode, TNode, ...'Method', MethodValue,
...)
```

Arguments

<i>G</i>	N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a directed graph. Nonzero entries in matrix <i>G</i> represent the capacities of the edges.
<i>SNode</i>	Node in <i>G</i> .
<i>TNode</i>	Node in <i>G</i> .
<i>CapacityValue</i>	Column vector that specifies custom capacities for the edges in matrix <i>G</i> . It must have one entry for every nonzero value (edge) in matrix <i>G</i> . The order of the custom capacities in the vector must match the order of the nonzero values in matrix <i>G</i> when it is traversed column-wise. By default, <code>graphmaxflow</code> gets capacity information from the nonzero entries in matrix <i>G</i> .
<i>MethodValue</i>	String that specifies the algorithm used to find the minimal spanning tree (MST). Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 'Edmonds' — Uses the Edmonds and Karp algorithm, the implementation of which is based on a variation called the <i>labeling algorithm</i>. Time complexity is $O(N \cdot E^2)$, where <i>N</i> and <i>E</i> are the number of nodes and edges respectively.• 'Goldberg' — Default algorithm. Uses the Goldberg algorithm, which uses the generic method known as <i>preflow-push</i>. Time complexity is $O(N^2 \cdot \sqrt{E})$, where <i>N</i> and <i>E</i> are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

Description

Tip For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

`[MaxFlow, FlowMatrix, Cut] = graphmaxflow(G, SNode, TNode)` calculates the maximum flow of directed graph *G* from node *SNode* to node *TNode*. Input *G* is an N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a directed graph. Nonzero entries in matrix *G* represent the capacities of the edges. Output *MaxFlow* is the maximum flow, and *FlowMatrix* is a sparse matrix with all the flow values for every edge. *FlowMatrix(X,Y)* is the flow from node *X* to node *Y*. Output *Cut* is a logical row vector indicating the nodes connected to *SNode* after calculating the minimum cut between *SNode* and *TNode*. If several solutions to the minimum cut problem exist, then *Cut* is a matrix.

`[...] = graphmaxflow(G, SNode, TNode, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `graphmaxflow` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`[...] = graphmaxflow(G, SNode, TNode, ...'Capacity', CapacityValue, ...)` lets you specify custom capacities for the edges. *CapacityValue* is a column vector having one entry for every nonzero value (edge) in matrix *G*. The order of the custom capacities in the vector must match the order of the nonzero values in matrix *G* when it is traversed column-wise. By default, `graphmaxflow` gets capacity information from the nonzero entries in matrix *G*.

`[...] = graphmaxflow(G, SNode, TNode, ...'Method', MethodValue, ...)` lets you specify the algorithm used to find the minimal spanning tree (MST). Choices are:

- 'Edmonds' — Uses the Edmonds and Karp algorithm, the implementation of which is based on a variation called the *labeling*

graphmaxflow

algorithm. Time complexity is $O(N \cdot E^2)$, where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

- 'Goldberg' — Default algorithm. Uses the Goldberg algorithm, which uses the generic method known as *preflow-push*. Time complexity is $O(N^2 \cdot \sqrt{E})$, where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

Examples

- 1 Create a directed graph with six nodes and eight edges.

```
cm = sparse([1 1 2 2 3 3 4 5],[2 3 4 5 4 5 6 6],...  
           [2 3 3 1 1 1 2 3],6,6)
```

```
cm =
```

(1,2)	2
(1,3)	3
(2,4)	3
(3,4)	1
(2,5)	1
(3,5)	1
(4,6)	2
(5,6)	3

- 2 Calculate the maximum flow in the graph from node 1 to node 6.

```
[M,F,K] = graphmaxflow(cm,1,6)
```

```
M =
```

```
4
```

```
F =
```

(1,2)	2
(1,3)	2
(2,4)	1
(3,4)	1

(2,5)	1
(3,5)	1
(4,6)	2
(5,6)	2

K =

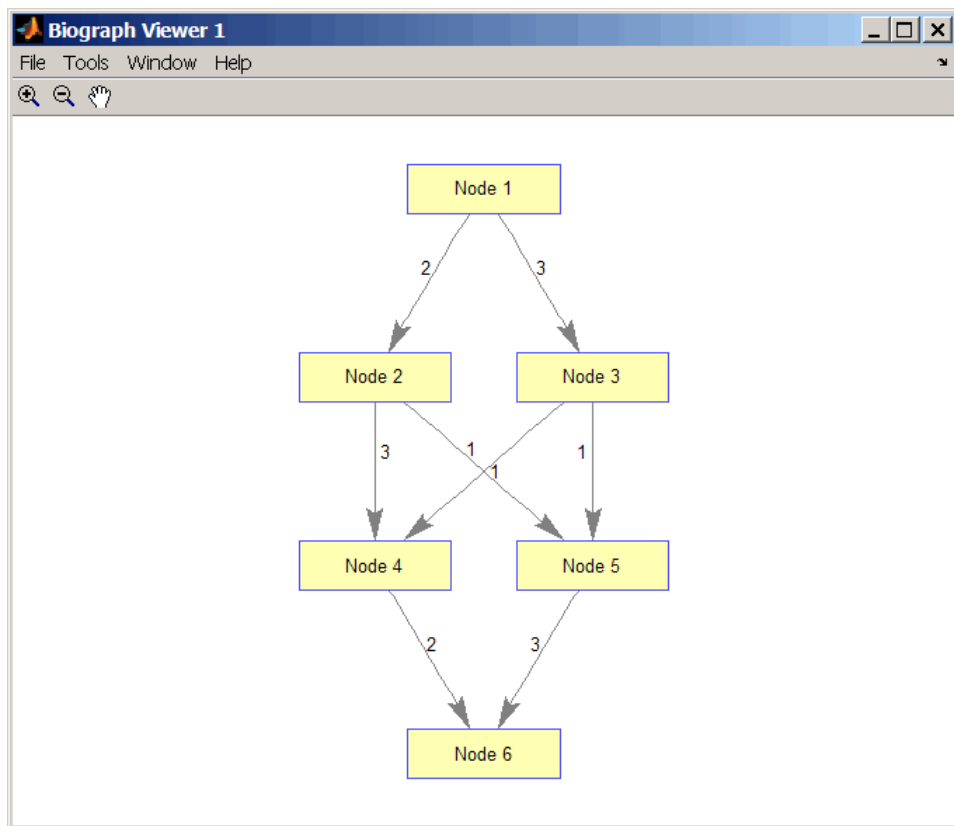
1	1	1	1	0	0
1	0	1	0	0	0

Notice that K is a two-row matrix because there are two possible solutions to the minimum cut problem.

3 View the graph with the original capacities.

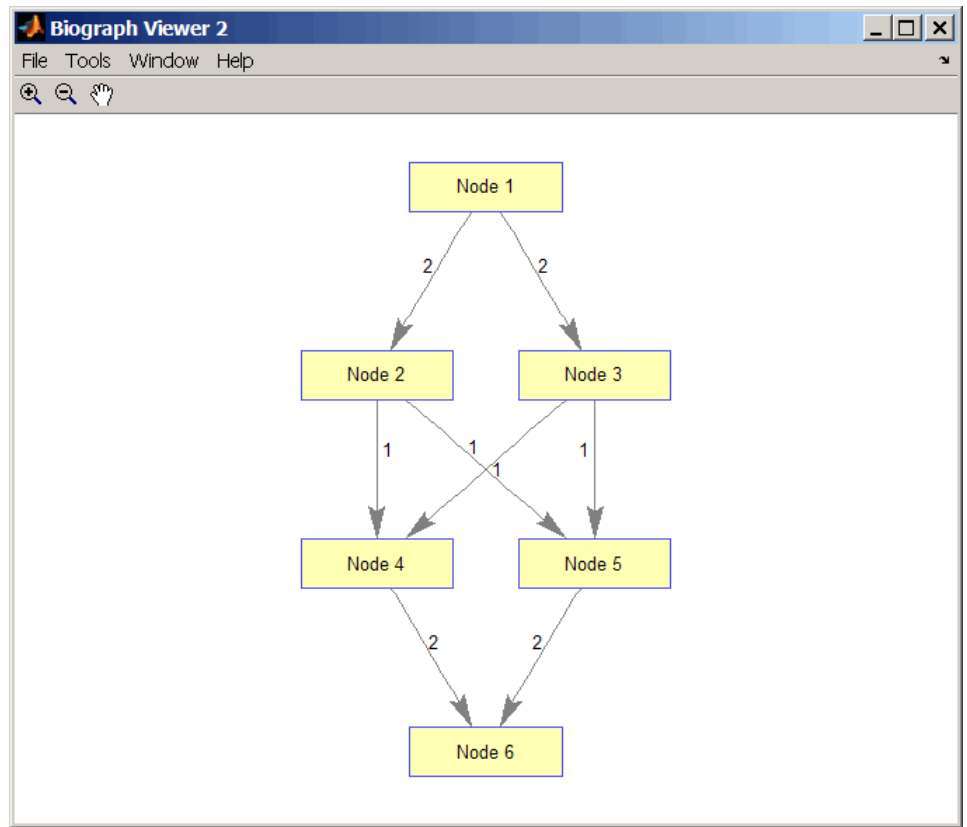
```
h = view(biograph(cm,[], 'ShowWeights', 'on'))
```

graphmaxflow



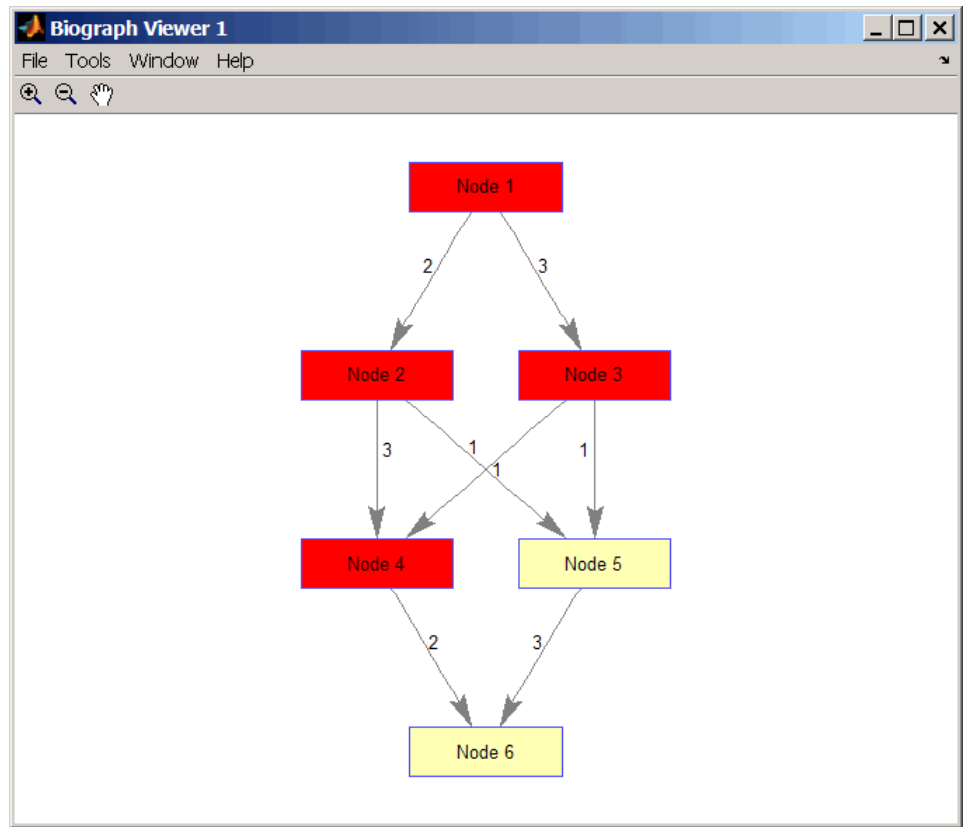
4 View the graph with the calculated maximum flows.

```
view(biograph(F,[], 'ShowWeights', 'on'))
```



5 Show one solution to the minimum cut problem in the original graph.

```
set(h.Nodes(K(1,:)), 'Color', [1 0 0])
```



Notice that in the three edges that connect the source nodes (red) to the destination nodes (yellow), the original capacities and the calculated maximum flows are the same.

References

- [1] Edmonds, J. and Karp, R.M. (1972). Theoretical improvements in the algorithmic efficiency for network flow problems. *Journal of the ACM* 19, 248-264.
- [2] Goldberg, A.V. (1985). A New Max-Flow Algorithm. MIT Technical Report MIT/LCS/TM-291, Laboratory for Computer Science, MIT.

[3] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `graphallshortestpaths`, `graphconncomp`, `graphisdag`, `graphisomorphism`, `graphisspanntree`, `graphminspanntree`, `graphpred2path`, `graphshortestpath`, `graphtopoorder`, `graphtraverse`

Bioinformatics Toolbox method of `biograph` object: `maxflow`

graphminspantree

Purpose Find minimal spanning tree in graph

Syntax

```
[Tree, pred] = graphminspantree(G)
[Tree, pred] = graphminspantree(G, R)
[Tree, pred] = graphminspantree(..., 'Method', MethodValue, ...)
[Tree, pred] = graphminspantree(..., 'Weights', WeightsValue, ...)
```

Arguments

- G* N-by-N sparse matrix that represents an undirected graph. Nonzero entries in matrix *G* represent the weights of the edges.
- R* Scalar between 1 and the number of nodes.

Description

Tip For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

`[Tree, pred] = graphminspantree(G)` finds an acyclic subset of edges that connects all the nodes in the undirected graph *G* and for which the total weight is minimized. Weights of the edges are all nonzero entries in the lower triangle of the N-by-N sparse matrix *G*. Output *Tree* is a spanning tree represented by a sparse matrix. Output *pred* is a vector containing the predecessor nodes of the minimal spanning tree (MST), with the root node indicated by 0. The root node defaults to the first node in the largest connected component. This computation requires an extra call to the `graphconncomp` function.

`[Tree, pred] = graphminspantree(G, R)` sets the root of the minimal spanning tree to node *R*.

`[Tree, pred] = graphminspantree(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `graphminspantree` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes

and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

```
[Tree, pred] = graphminspantree(..., 'Method', MethodValue, ...)
```

lets you specify the algorithm used to find the minimal spanning tree (MST). Choices are:

- 'Kruskal' — Grows the minimal spanning tree (MST) one edge at a time by finding an edge that connects two trees in a spreading forest of growing MSTs. Time complexity is $O(E \cdot X \cdot \log(N))$, where X is the number of edges no longer than the longest edge in the MST, and N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.
- 'Prim' — Default algorithm. Grows the minimal spanning tree (MST) one edge at a time by adding a minimal edge that connects a node in the growing MST with any other node. Time complexity is $O(E \cdot \log(N))$, where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

Note When the graph is unconnected, Prim's algorithm returns only the tree that contains R , while Kruskal's algorithm returns an MST for every component.

```
[Tree, pred] = graphminspantree(..., 'Weights',  
WeightsValue, ...) lets you specify custom weights for the  
edges. WeightsValue is a column vector having one entry for every  
nonzero value (edge) in matrix  $G$ . The order of the custom weights in the  
vector must match the order of the nonzero values in matrix  $G$  when it  
is traversed column-wise. By default, graphminspantree gets weight  
information from the nonzero entries in matrix  $G$ .
```

Examples

- 1 Create and view an undirected graph with 6 nodes and 11 edges.

```
W = [.41 .29 .51 .32 .50 .45 .38 .32 .36 .29 .21];  
DG = sparse([1 1 2 2 3 4 4 5 5 6 6],[2 6 3 5 4 1 6 3 4 2 5],W);
```

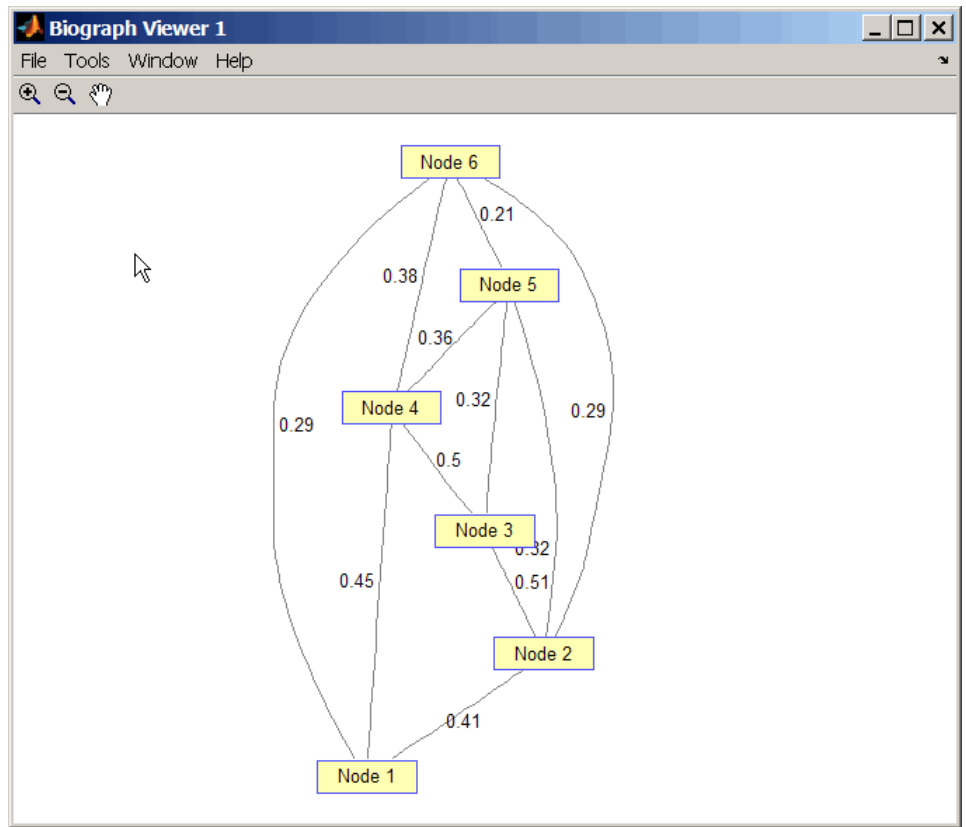
graphminspantree

```
UG = tril(DG + DG')
```

```
UG =
```

(2,1)	0.4100
(4,1)	0.4500
(6,1)	0.2900
(3,2)	0.5100
(5,2)	0.3200
(6,2)	0.2900
(4,3)	0.5000
(5,3)	0.3200
(5,4)	0.3600
(6,4)	0.3800
(6,5)	0.2100

```
view(biograph(UG,[],'ShowArrows','off','ShowWeights','on'))
```

2 Find and view the minimal spanning tree of the undirected graph.

```
[ST,pred] = graphminspantree(UG)
```

ST =

(6,1)	0.2900
(6,2)	0.2900
(5,3)	0.3200
(5,4)	0.3600

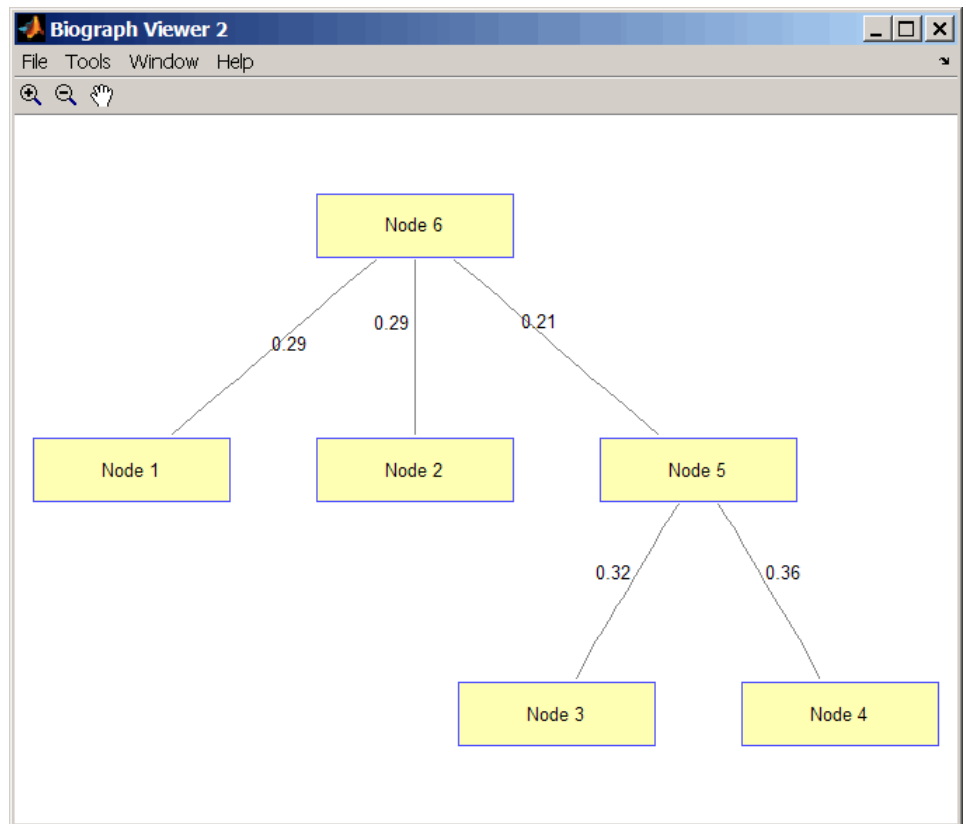
graphminspantree

(6,5) 0.2100

pred =

0 6 5 5 6 1

view(biograph(ST,[], 'ShowArrows', 'off', 'ShowWeights', 'on'))



References

- [1] Kruskal, J.B. (1956). On the Shortest Spanning Subtree of a Graph and the Traveling Salesman Problem. Proceedings of the American Mathematical Society 7, 48-50.
- [2] Prim, R. (1957). Shortest Connection Networks and Some Generalizations. Bell System Technical Journal 36, 1389-1401.
- [3] Siek, J.G. Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: graphallshortestpaths, graphconncomp, graphisdag, graphisomorphism, graphisspantree, graphmaxflow, graphpred2path, graphshortestpath, graphtopoorder, graphtraverse

Bioinformatics Toolbox method of biograph object: minspantree

graphpred2path

Purpose Convert predecessor indices to paths

Syntax $path = \text{graphpred2path}(pred, D)$

Arguments

$pred$ Row vector or matrix of predecessor node indices. The value of the root (or source) node in $pred$ must be 0.

D Destination node in $pred$.

Description

Tip For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

$path = \text{graphpred2path}(pred, D)$ traces back a path by following the predecessor list in $pred$ starting at destination node D .

The value of the root (or source) node in $pred$ must be 0. If a NaN is found when following the predecessor nodes, graphpred2path returns an empty path.

If $pred$ is a ...	And D is a ...	Then $path$ is a ...
row vector of predecessor node indices	scalar	row vector listing the nodes from the root (or source) to D .
	row vector	row cell array with every column containing the path to the destination for every element in D .

If <i>pred</i> is a ...	And <i>D</i> is a ...	Then <i>path</i> is a ...
matrix	scalar	column cell array with every row containing the path for every row in <i>pred</i> .
	row vector	matrix cell array with every row containing the paths for the respective row in <i>pred</i> , and every column containing the paths to the respective destination in <i>D</i> .

Note If *D* is omitted, the paths to all the destinations are calculated for every predecessor listed in *pred*.

Examples

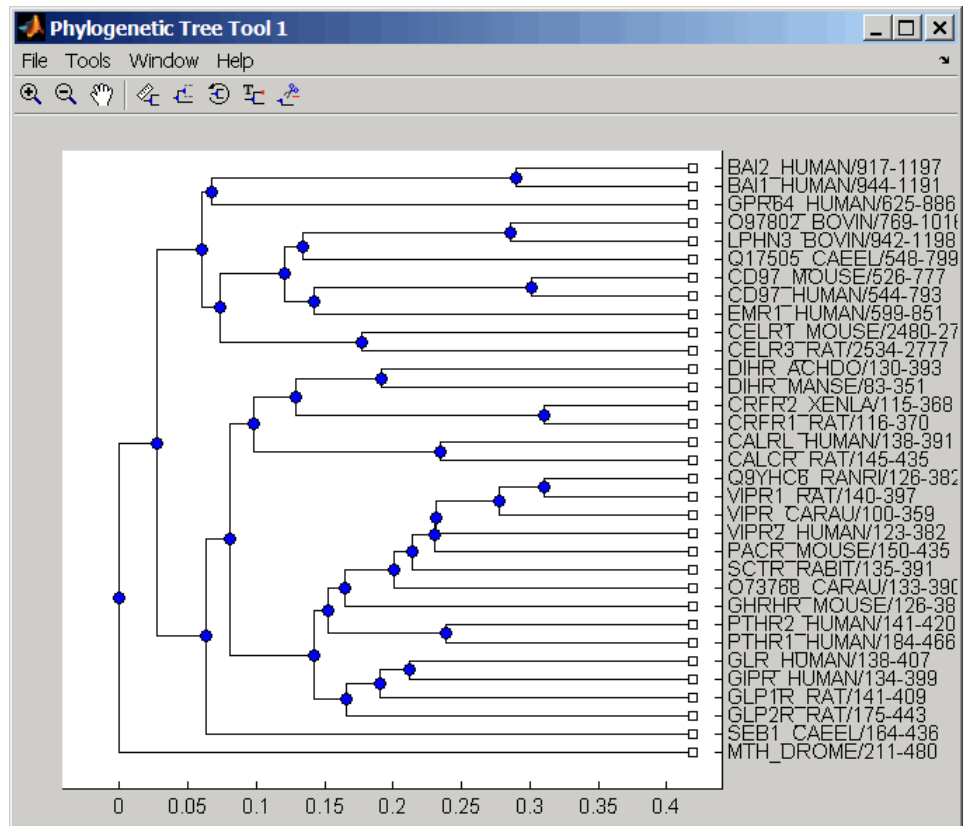
- 1 Create a phytree object from the phylogenetic tree file for the GLR_HUMAN protein.

```
tr = phytread('pf00002.tree')
    Phylogenetic tree object with 33 leaves (32 branches)
```

- 2 View the phytree object.

```
view(tr)
```

graphpred2path



- 3** From the phytree object, create a connection matrix to represent the phylogenetic tree.

```
[CM,labels,dist] = getmatrix(tr);
```

- 4** Find the nodes from the root to one leaf in the phylogenetic tree created from the phylogenetic tree file for the GLR_HUMAN protein.

```
root_loc = size(CM,1)
```

```
root_loc =
```

```
65
```

```
glr_loc = strmatch('GLR',labels)
```

```
glr_loc =
```

```
28
```

```
[T,PRED]=graphminspantree(CM,root_loc);
```

```
PATH = graphpred2path(PRED,glr_loc)
```

```
PATH =
```

```
65 64 53 52 46 45 44 43 28
```

References

[1] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: graphallshortestpaths, graphconncomp, graphisdag, graphisomorphism, graphisppantree, graphmaxflow, graphminspantree, graphshortestpath, graphtopoorder, graphtraverse

graphshortestpath

Purpose Solve shortest path problem in graph

Syntax

```
[dist, path, pred] = graphshortestpath(G, S)  
[dist, path, pred] = graphshortestpath(G, S, T)  
[...] = graphshortestpath(..., 'Directed', DirectedValue, ...)  
[...] = graphshortestpath(..., 'Method', MethodValue, ...)  
[...] = graphshortestpath(..., 'Weights', WeightsValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>G</i>	N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a graph. Nonzero entries in matrix <i>G</i> represent the weights of the edges.
<i>S</i>	Node in <i>G</i> .
<i>T</i>	Node in <i>G</i> .
<i>DirectedValue</i>	Property that indicates whether the graph is directed or undirected. Enter <code>false</code> for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is <code>true</code> .

<i>MethodValue</i>	<p>String that specifies the algorithm used to find the shortest path. Choices are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 'Bellman-Ford' — Assumes weights of the edges to be nonzero entries in sparse matrix G. Time complexity is $O(N * E)$, where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.• 'BFS' — Breadth-first search. Assumes all weights to be equal, and nonzero entries in sparse matrix G to represent edges. Time complexity is $O(N + E)$, where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.• 'Acyclic' — Assumes G to be a directed acyclic graph and that weights of the edges are nonzero entries in sparse matrix G. Time complexity is $O(N + E)$, where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.• 'Dijkstra' — Default algorithm. Assumes weights of the edges to be positive values in sparse matrix G. Time complexity is $O(\log(N) * E)$, where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.
<i>WeightsValue</i>	<p>Column vector that specifies custom weights for the edges in matrix G. It must have one entry for every nonzero value (edge) in matrix G. The order of the custom weights in the vector must match the order of the nonzero values in matrix G when it is traversed column-wise. This property lets you use zero-valued weights. By default, graphshortestpaths gets weight information from the nonzero entries in matrix G.</p>

Description

Tip For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

`[dist, path, pred] = graphshortestpath(G, S)` determines the single-source shortest paths from node *S* to all other nodes in the graph represented by matrix *G*. Input *G* is an N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a graph. Nonzero entries in matrix *G* represent the weights of the edges. *dist* are the N distances from the source to every node (using Inf for nonreachable nodes and 0 for the source node). *path* contains the winning paths to every node. *pred* contains the predecessor nodes of the winning paths.

`[dist, path, pred] = graphshortestpath(G, S, T)` determines the single source-single destination shortest path from node *S* to node *T*.

`[...] = graphshortestpath(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `graphshortestpath` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`[...] = graphshortestpath(..., 'Directed', DirectedValue, ...)` indicates whether the graph is directed or undirected. Set *DirectedValue* to false for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is true.

`[...] = graphshortestpath(..., 'Method', MethodValue, ...)` lets you specify the algorithm used to find the shortest path. Choices are:

- 'Bellman-Ford' — Assumes weights of the edges to be nonzero entries in sparse matrix *G*. Time complexity is $O(N \cdot E)$, where *N* and *E* are the number of nodes and edges respectively.
- 'BFS' — Breadth-first search. Assumes all weights to be equal, and nonzero entries in sparse matrix *G* to represent edges. Time

complexity is $O(N+E)$, where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

- 'Acyclic' — Assumes G to be a directed acyclic graph and that weights of the edges are nonzero entries in sparse matrix G . Time complexity is $O(N+E)$, where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.
- 'Dijkstra' — Default algorithm. Assumes weights of the edges to be positive values in sparse matrix G . Time complexity is $O(\log(N)*E)$, where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

[...] = graphshortestpath(..., 'Weights', *WeightsValue*, ...) lets you specify custom weights for the edges. *WeightsValue* is a column vector having one entry for every nonzero value (edge) in matrix G . The order of the custom weights in the vector must match the order of the nonzero values in matrix G when it is traversed column-wise. This property lets you use zero-valued weights. By default, graphshortestpath gets weight information from the nonzero entries in matrix G .

Examples

Finding the Shortest Path in a Directed Graph

1 Create and view a directed graph with 6 nodes and 11 edges.

```
W = [.41 .99 .51 .32 .15 .45 .38 .32 .36 .29 .21];
DG = sparse([6 1 2 2 3 4 4 5 5 6 1],[2 6 3 5 4 1 6 3 4 3 5],W)
```

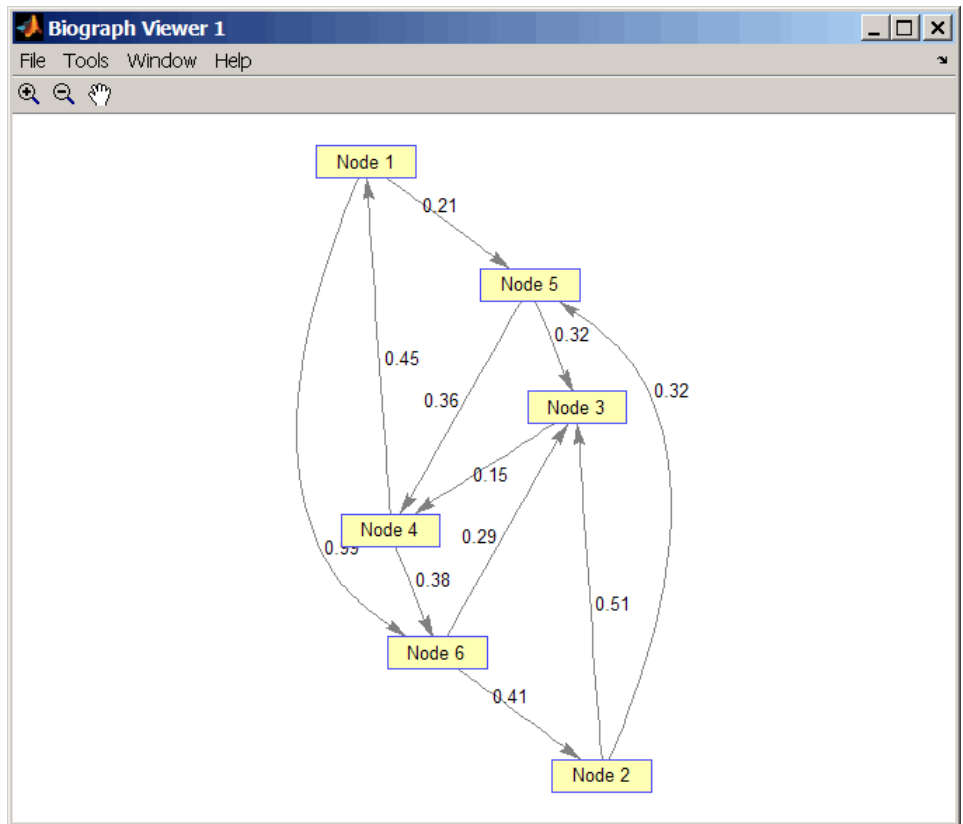
```
DG =
```

```
(4,1)    0.4500
(6,2)    0.4100
(2,3)    0.5100
(5,3)    0.3200
(6,3)    0.2900
(3,4)    0.1500
(5,4)    0.3600
(1,5)    0.2100
```

graphshortestpath

```
(2,5)      0.3200  
(1,6)      0.9900  
(4,6)      0.3800
```

```
h = view(biograph(DG,[],'ShowWeights','on'))  
Biograph object with 6 nodes and 11 edges.
```



2 Find the shortest path in the graph from node 1 to node 6.

```
[dist,path,pred] = graphshortestpath(DG,1,6)
```

```
dist =
```

```
    0.9500
```

```
path =
```

```
    1     5     4     6
```

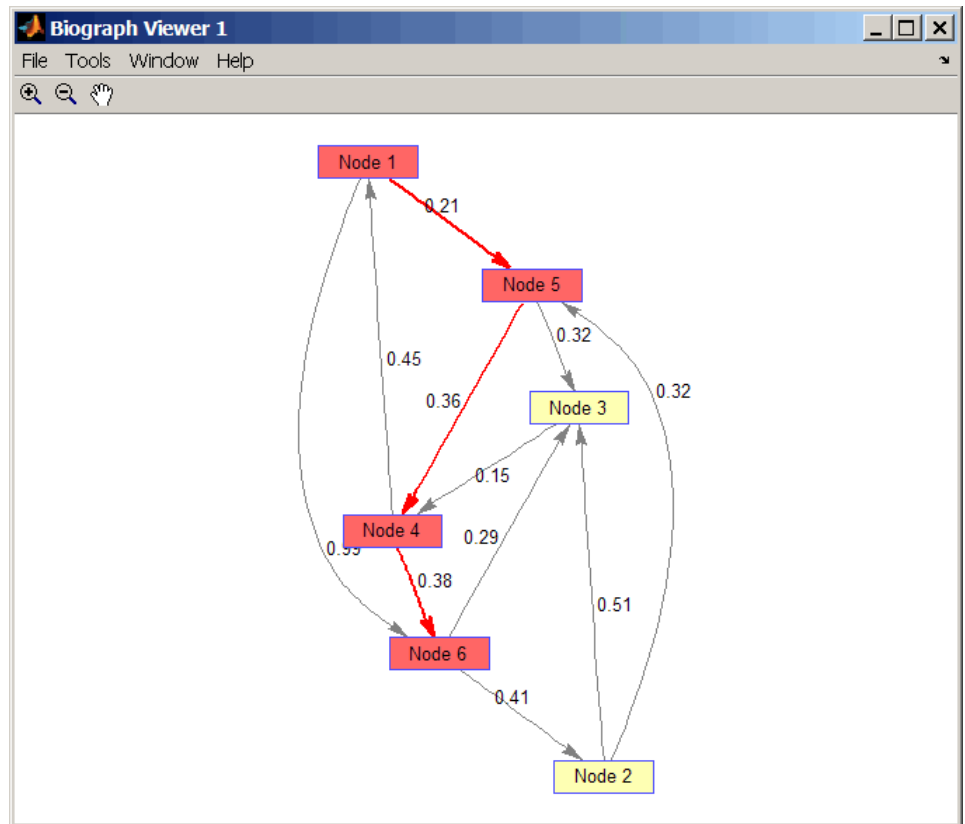
```
pred =
```

```
    0     6     5     5     1     4
```

- 3** Mark the nodes and edges of the shortest path by coloring them red and increasing the line width.

```
set(h.Nodes(path), 'Color', [1 0.4 0.4])  
edges = getedgesbynodeid(h, get(h.Nodes(path), 'ID'));  
set(edges, 'LineColor', [1 0 0])  
set(edges, 'LineWidth', 1.5)
```

graphshortestpath



Finding the Shortest Path in an Undirected Graph

1 Create and view an undirected graph with 6 nodes and 11 edges.

```
UG = tril(DG + DG')
```

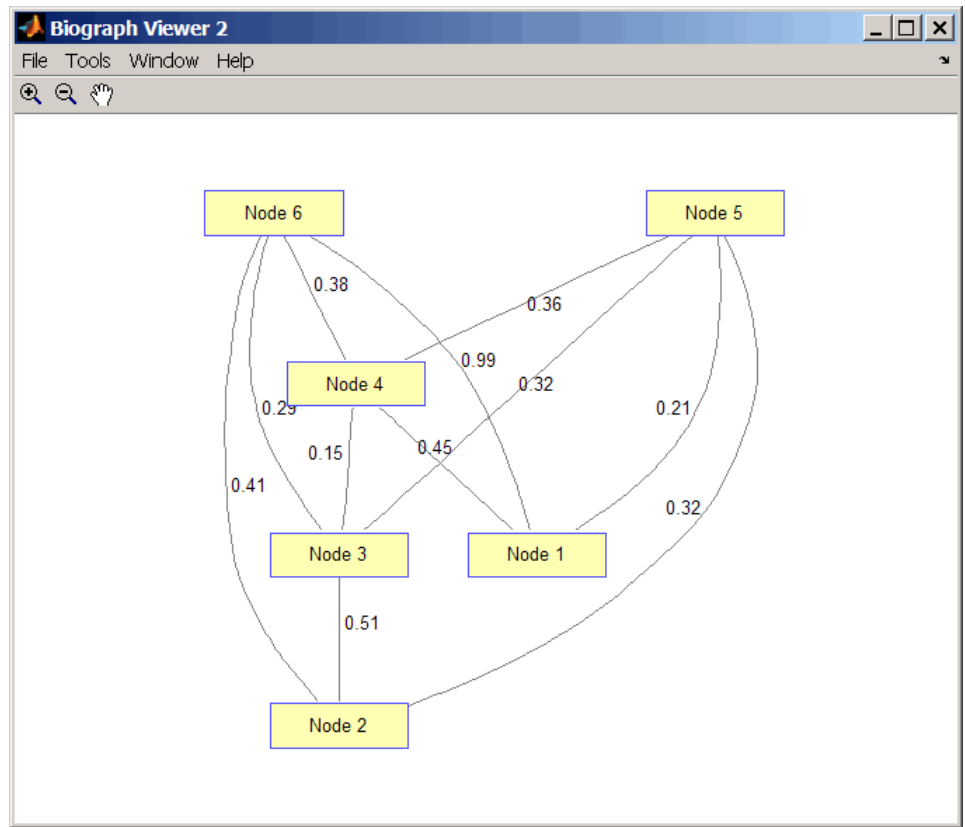
```
UG =
```

```
(4,1)    0.4500  
(5,1)    0.2100
```

(6,1)	0.9900
(3,2)	0.5100
(5,2)	0.3200
(6,2)	0.4100
(4,3)	0.1500
(5,3)	0.3200
(6,3)	0.2900
(5,4)	0.3600
(6,4)	0.3800

```
h = view(biograph(UG,[],'ShowArrows','off','ShowWeights','on'))  
Biograph object with 6 nodes and 11 edges.
```

graphshortestpath



2 Find the shortest path in the graph from node 1 to node 6.

```
[dist,path,pred] = graphshortestpath(UG,1,6,'directed',false)
```

```
dist =
```

```
0.8200
```

```
path =
```



```
1     5     3     6
```

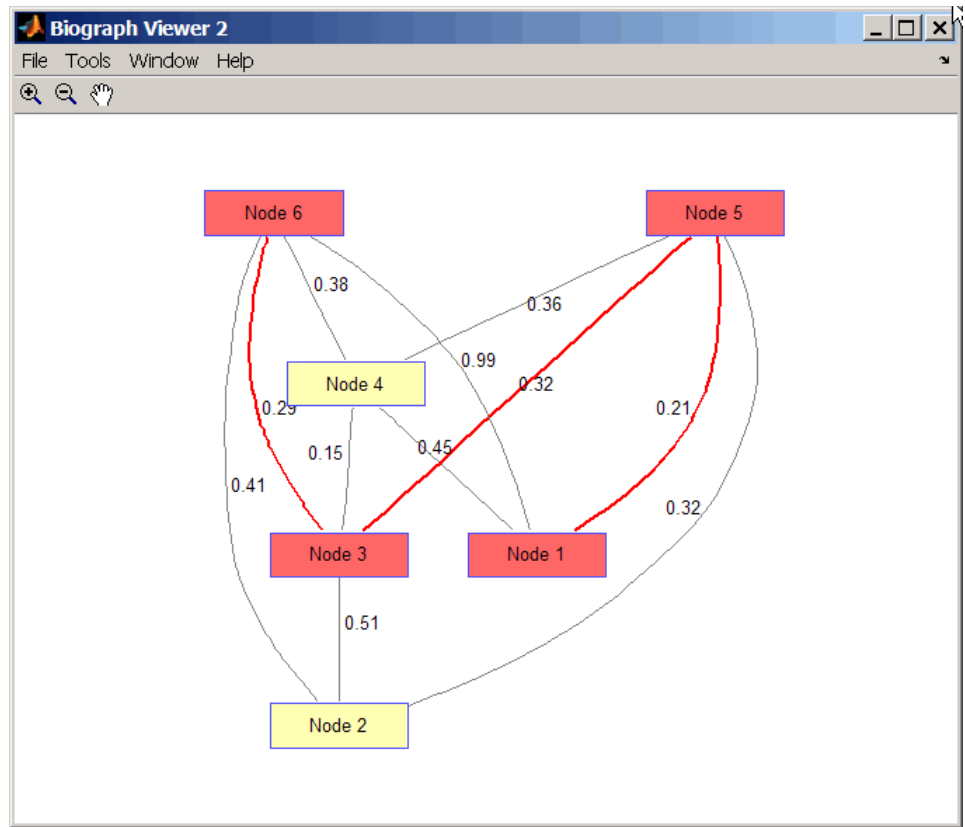
```
pred =
```

```
0     5     5     1     1     3
```

- 3** Mark the nodes and edges of the shortest path by coloring them red and increasing the line width.

```
set(h.Nodes(path), 'Color', [1 0.4 0.4])
fowEdges = getedgesbynodeid(h, get(h.Nodes(path), 'ID'));
revEdges = getedgesbynodeid(h, get(h.Nodes(fliplr(path)), 'ID'));
edges = [fowEdges; revEdges];
set(edges, 'LineColor', [1 0 0])
set(edges, 'LineWidth', 1.5)
```

graphshortestpath



References

- [1] Dijkstra, E.W. (1959). A note on two problems in connexion with graphs. *Numerische Mathematik 1*, 269-271.
- [2] Bellman, R. (1958). On a Routing Problem. *Quarterly of Applied Mathematics 16(1)*, 87-90.
- [3] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). *The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual*, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: graphallshortestpaths, graphconncomp, graphisdag, graphisomorphism, graphissspantree, graphmaxflow, graphminspantree, graphpred2path, graphtopoorder, graphtraverse

Bioinformatics Toolbox method of biograph object: shortestpath

graphtopoorder

Purpose Perform topological sort of directed acyclic graph

Syntax `order = graphtopoorder(G)`

Arguments

G N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a directed acyclic graph. Nonzero entries in matrix *G* indicate the presence of an edge.

Description

Tip For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

`order = graphtopoorder(G)` returns an index vector with the order of the nodes sorted topologically. In topological order, an edge can exist between a source node *u* and a destination node *v*, if and only if *u* appears before *v* in the vector *order*. *G* is an N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a directed acyclic graph (DAG). Nonzero entries in matrix *G* indicate the presence of an edge.

Examples

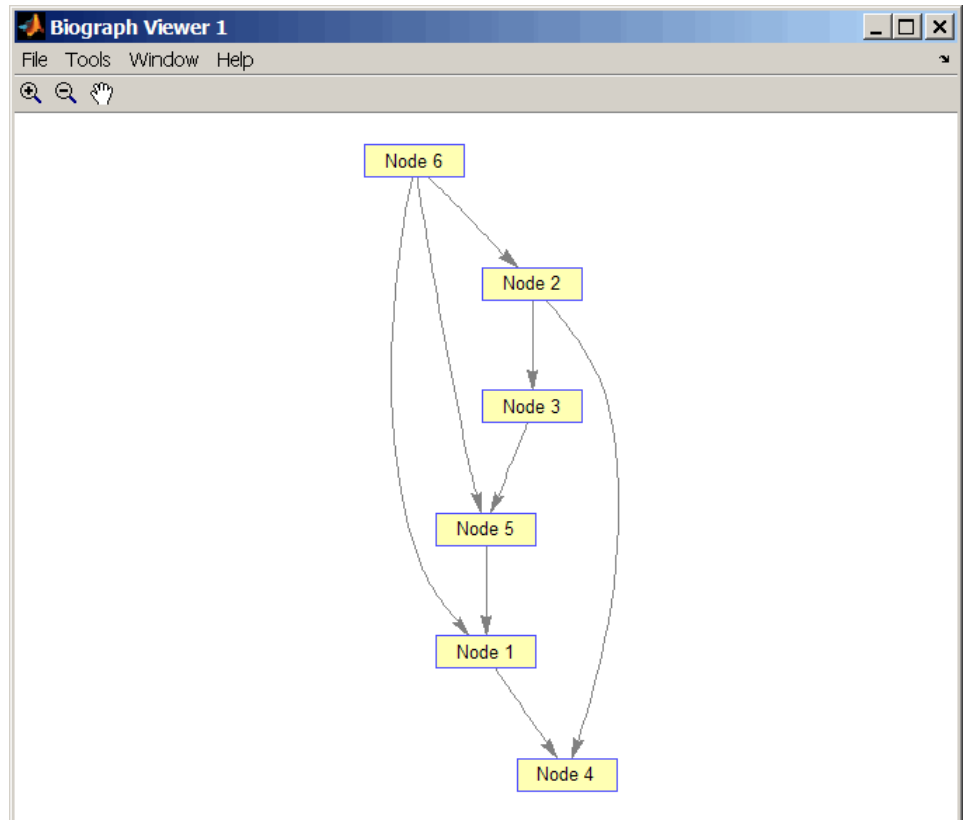
- 1 Create and view a directed acyclic graph (DAG) with six nodes and eight edges.

```
DG = sparse([6 6 6 2 2 3 5 1],[2 5 1 3 4 5 1 4],true,6,6)
```

```
DG =
```

```
(5,1)    1
(6,1)    1
(6,2)    1
(2,3)    1
(1,4)    1
(2,4)    1
(3,5)    1
(6,5)    1
```

```
view(biograph(DG))
```



2 Find the topological order of the DAG.

```
order = graphtopoorder(DG)
```

```
order =
```

```
6 2 3 5 1 4
```

3 Permute the nodes so that they appear ordered in the graph display.

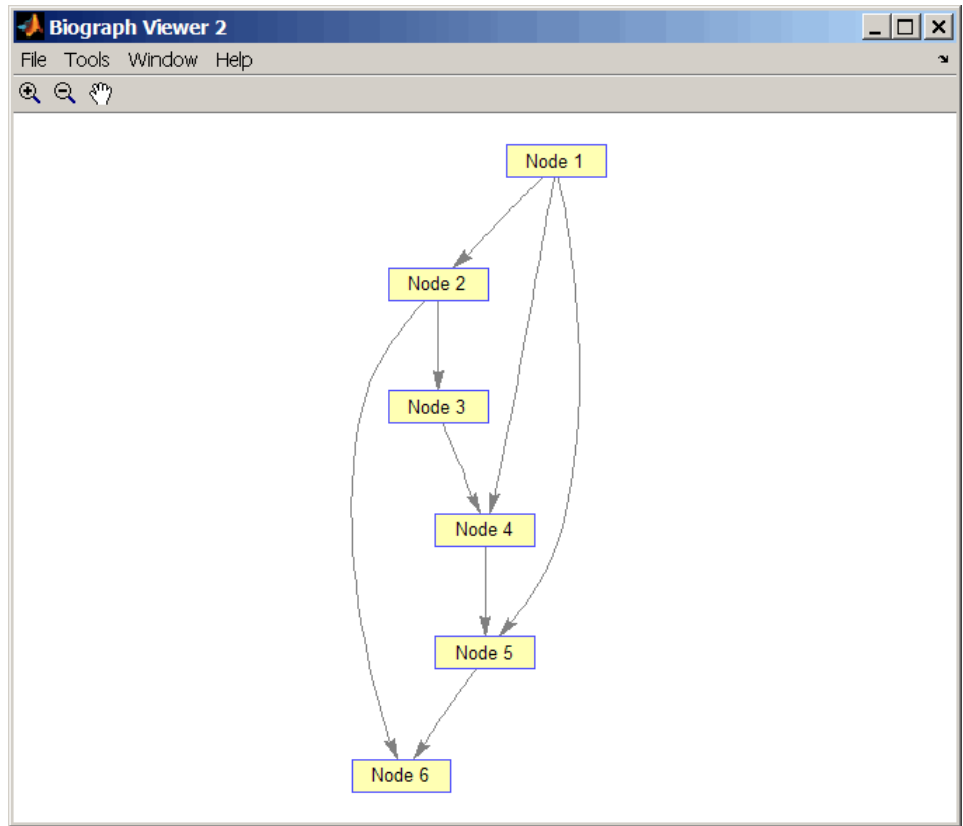
graph_topoorder

```
DG = DG(order,order)
```

```
DG =
```

```
(1,2)      1  
(2,3)      1  
(1,4)      1  
(3,4)      1  
(1,5)      1  
(4,5)      1  
(2,6)      1  
(5,6)      1
```

```
view(bigraph(DG))
```



References

[1] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `graphallshortestpaths`, `graphconncomp`, `graphisdag`, `graphisomorphism`, `graphisspantree`, `graphmaxflow`, `graphminspantree`, `graphpred2path`, `graphshortestpath`, `graphtraverse`

Bioinformatics Toolbox method of `biograph` object: `topoorder`

graphtraverse

Purpose Traverse graph by following adjacent nodes

Syntax

```
[disc, pred, closed] = graphtraverse(G, S)
[...] = graphtraverse(G, S, ...'Depth', DepthValue, ...)
[...] = graphtraverse(G, S, ...'Directed', DirectedValue, ...)
[...] = graphtraverse(G, S, ...'Method', MethodValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>G</i>	N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a directed graph. Nonzero entries in matrix <i>G</i> indicate the presence of an edge.
<i>S</i>	Integer that indicates the source node in graph <i>G</i> .
<i>DepthValue</i>	Integer that indicates a node in graph <i>G</i> that specifies the depth of the search. Default is Inf (infinity).
<i>DirectedValue</i>	Property that indicates whether graph <i>G</i> is directed or undirected. Enter false for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is true.
<i>MethodValue</i>	String that specifies the algorithm used to traverse the graph. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 'BFS' — Breadth-first search. Time complexity is $O(N+E)$, where <i>N</i> and <i>E</i> are number of nodes and edges respectively.• 'DFS' — Default algorithm. Depth-first search. Time complexity is $O(N+E)$, where <i>N</i> and <i>E</i> are number of nodes and edges respectively.

Description

Tip For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

`[disc, pred, closed] = graphtraverse(G, S)` traverses graph *G* starting from the node indicated by integer *S*. *G* is an N-by-N sparse matrix that represents a directed graph. Nonzero entries in matrix *G* indicate the presence of an edge. *disc* is a vector of node indices in the order in which they are discovered. *pred* is a vector of predecessor node indices (listed in the order of the node indices) of the resulting spanning tree. *closed* is a vector of node indices in the order in which they are closed.

`[...] = graphtraverse(G, S, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `graphtraverse` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`[...] = graphtraverse(G, S, ...'Depth', DepthValue, ...)` specifies the depth of the search. *DepthValue* is an integer indicating a node in graph *G*. Default is Inf (infinity).

`[...] = graphtraverse(G, S, ...'Directed', DirectedValue, ...)` indicates whether the graph is directed or undirected. Set *DirectedValue* to false for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is true.

`[...] = graphtraverse(G, S, ...'Method', MethodValue, ...)` lets you specify the algorithm used to traverse the graph. Choices are:

- 'BFS' — Breadth-first search. Time complexity is $O(N+E)$, where *N* and *E* are number of nodes and edges respectively.
- 'DFS' — Default algorithm. Depth-first search. Time complexity is $O(N+E)$, where *N* and *E* are number of nodes and edges respectively.

Examples

- 1 Create a directed graph with 10 nodes and 12 edges.

```
DG = sparse([1 2 3 4 5 5 6 7 8 8 9],...
            [2 4 1 5 3 6 7 9 8 1 10 2],true,10,10)
```

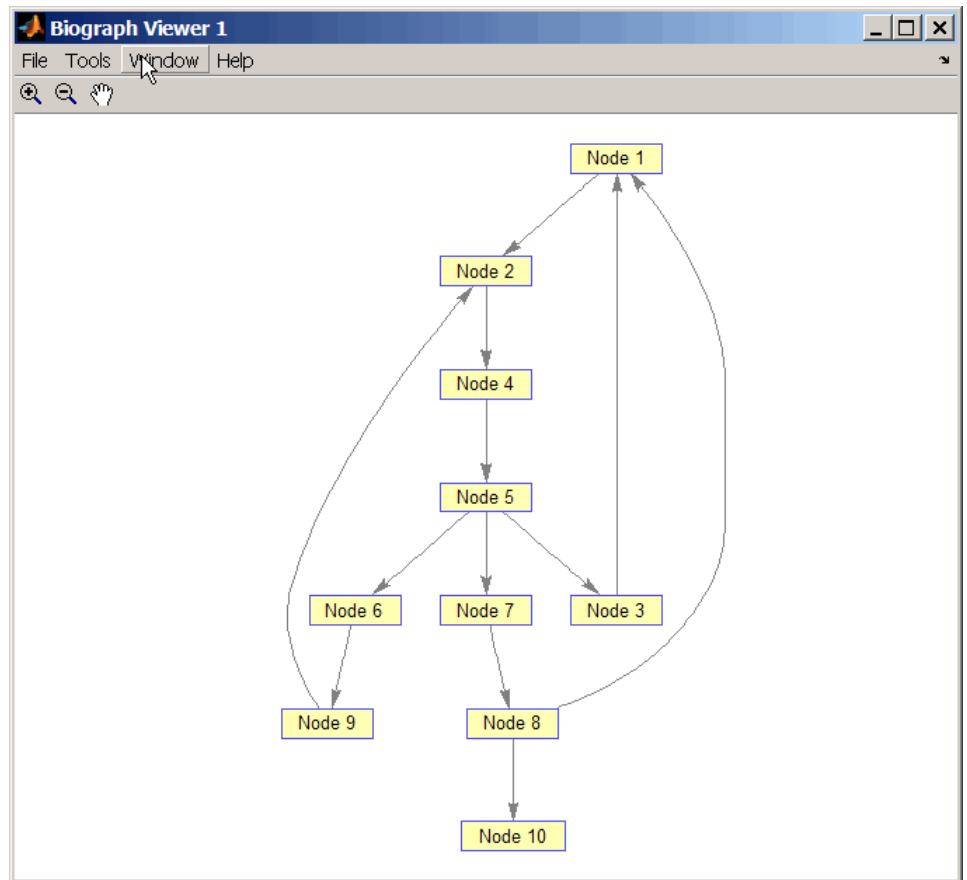
graphtraverse

DG =

(3,1)	1
(8,1)	1
(1,2)	1
(9,2)	1
(5,3)	1
(2,4)	1
(4,5)	1
(5,6)	1
(5,7)	1
(7,8)	1
(6,9)	1
(8,10)	1

h = view(biograph(DG))

Biograph object with 10 nodes and 12 edges.



- 2** Traverse the graph to find the depth-first search (DFS) discovery order starting at node 4.

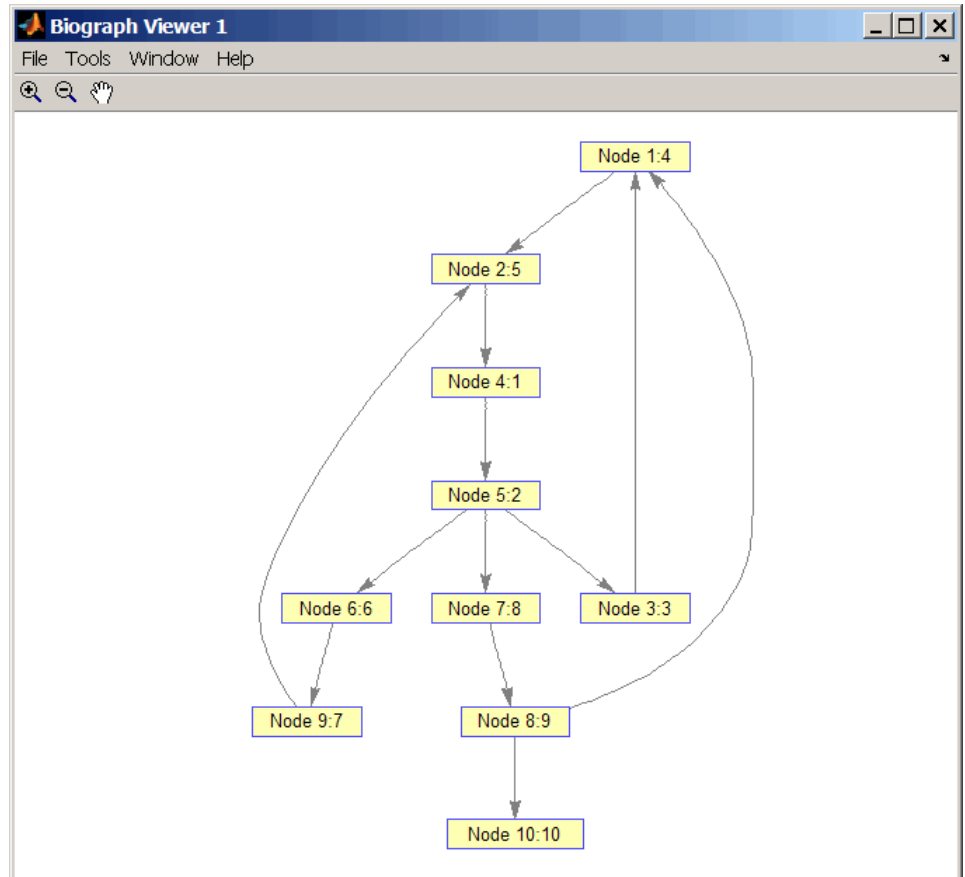
```
order = graphtraverse(DG,4)
```

```
order =
```

```
4 5 3 1 2 6 9 7 8 10
```

3 Label the nodes with the DFS discovery order.

```
for i = 1:10
    h.Nodes(order(i)).Label = ...
    sprintf('%s:%d',h.Nodes(order(i)).ID,i);
end
h.ShowTextInNodes = 'label'
dolayout(h)
```



- 4** Traverse the graph to find the breadth-first search (BFS) discovery order starting at node 4.

```
order = graphtraverse(DG,4, 'Method', 'BFS')
```

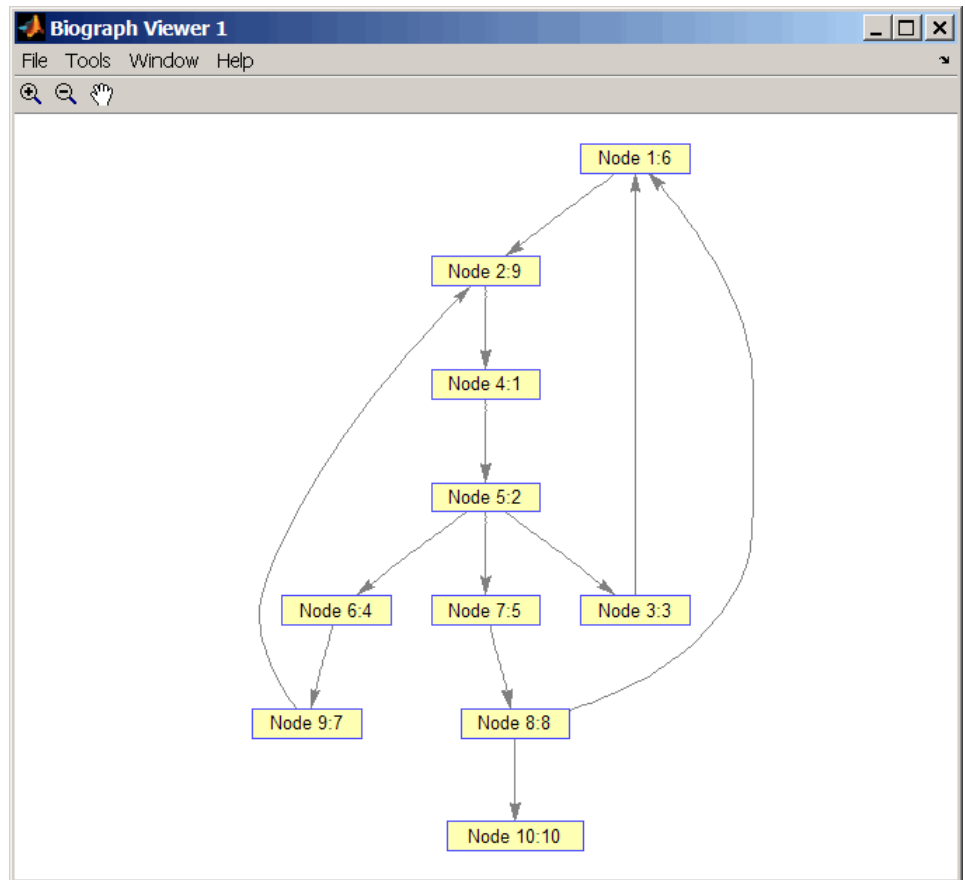
```
order =
```

```
    4    5    3    6    7    1    9    8    2   10
```

- 5** Label the nodes with the BFS discovery order.

```
for i = 1:10
    h.Nodes(order(i)).Label = ...
    sprintf('%s:%d',h.Nodes(order(i)).ID,i);
end
h.ShowTextInNodes = 'label'
dolayout(h)
```

graphtraverse



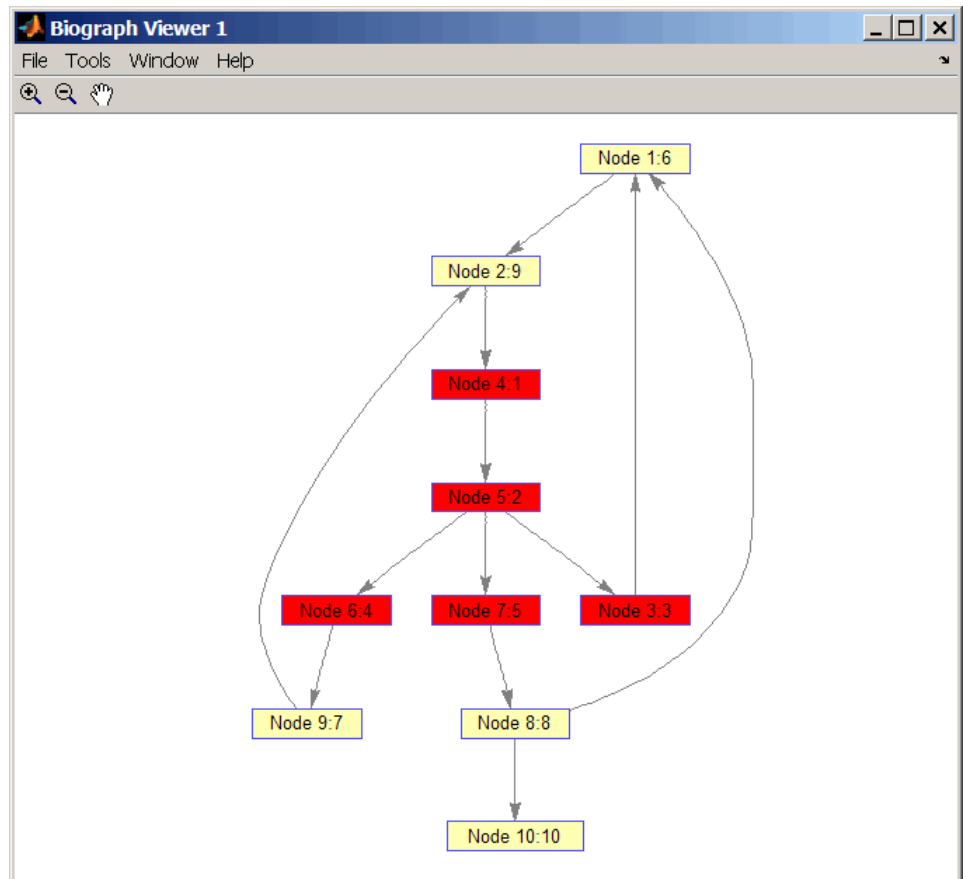
- 6 Find and color nodes that are close to (within two edges of) node 4.

```
node_idx = graphtraverse(DG,4,'depth',2)
```

```
node_idx =
```

```
4 5 3 6 7
```

```
set(h.nodes(node_idx),'Color',[1 0 0])
```



References

- [1] Sedgewick, R., (2002). Algorithms in C++, Part 5 Graph Algorithms (Addison-Wesley).
- [2] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

graphtraverse

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `graphallshortestpaths`,
`graphconncomp`, `graphisdag`, `graphisomorphism`, `graphisspanntree`,
`graphmaxflow`, `graphminspanntree`, `graphpred2path`,
`graphshortestpath`, `graphtopoorder`

Bioinformatics Toolbox method of `biograph` object: `traverse`

Purpose Align query sequence to profile using hidden Markov model alignment

Syntax

```
Alignment = hmmprofalign(Model,Seq)
[Alignment, Score] = hmmprofalign(Model,Seq)
[Score, Alignment, Pointer] = hmmprofalign(Model,Seq)
hmmprofalign(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
hmmprofalign(..., 'ShowScore', ShowScoreValue)
hmmprofalign(..., 'Flanks', FlanksValue)
hmmprofalign(..., 'ScoreFlanks', ScoreFlanksValue)
hmmprofalign(..., 'ScoreNullTransitions',
    ScoreNullTransitionValue)
```

Arguments

<i>Model</i>	Hidden Markov model created with the function <code>hmmprofstruct</code> .
<i>Seq</i>	Amino acid or nucleotide sequence. You can also enter a structure with the field <code>Sequence</code> .
<i>ShowScoreValue</i>	Property to control displaying the scoring space and the winning path. Enter either true or false (default).
<i>FlanksValue</i>	Property to control including the symbols generated by the FLANKING INSERT states in the output sequence. Enter either true or false (default).
<i>ScoreFlanksValue</i>	Property to control including the transition probabilities for the flanking states in the raw score. Enter either true or false (default).
<i>ScoreNullTransValue</i>	Property to control adjusting the raw score using the null model for transitions (<code>Model.NullX</code>). Enter either true or false (default).

Description

Alignment = `hmmprofalign(Model, Seq)` returns the score for the optimal alignment of the query amino acid or nucleotide sequence (*Seq*) to the profile hidden Markov model (*Model*). Scores are computed using log-odd ratios for emission probabilities and log probabilities for state transitions.

`[Alignment, Score] = hmmprofalign(Model, Seq)` returns a string showing the optimal profile alignment.

Uppercase letters and dashes correspond to MATCH and DELETE states respectively (the combined count is equal to the number of states in the model). Lowercase letters are emitted by the INSERT states. For more information about the HMM profile, see `hmmprofstruct`.

`[Score, Alignment, Printer] = hmmprofalign(Model, Seq)` returns a vector of the same length as the profile model with indices pointing to the respective symbols of the query sequence. Null pointers (NaN) mean that such states did not emit a symbol in the aligned sequence because they represent model jumps from the BEGIN state of a MATCH state, model jumps from the from a MATCH state to the END state, or because the alignment passed through DELETE states.

`hmmprofalign(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`hmmprofalign(..., 'ShowScore', ShowScoreValue)`, when *ShowScoreValue* is true, displays the scoring space and the winning path.

`hmmprofalign(..., 'Flanks', FlanksValue)`, when *FlanksValue* is true, includes the symbols generated by the FLANKING INSERT states in the output sequence.

`hmmprofalign(..., 'ScoreFlanks', ScoreFlanksValue)`, when *ScoreFlanksValue* is true, includes the transition probabilities for the flanking states in the raw score.

`hmmprofalign(..., 'ScoreNullTransitions', ScoreNullTransitionValue)`, when *ScoreNullTransitionsValue* is true, adjusts the raw score using the null model for transitions (`Model.NullX`).

Note Multiple target alignment is not supported in this implementation. All the Model.LoopX probabilities are ignored.

Examples

```
load('hmm_model_examples','model_7tm_2') % load a model example
load('hmm_model_examples','sequences') % load a sequence example
SCCR_RABIT=sequences(2).Sequence;
[a,s]=hmmprofalign(model_7tm_2,SCCR_RABIT,'showscore',true)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `gethmmprof`, `hmmprofestimate`, `hmmprofgenerate`, `hmmprofgenerate`, `hmmprofstruct`, `pfamhmmread`, `showhmmprof`, `multialign`, `profalign`

hmmprofestimate

Purpose Estimate profile Hidden Markov Model (HMM) parameters using pseudocounts

Syntax `hmmprofestimate(Model, MultipleAlignment, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue...)`

```
hmmprofestimate(..., 'A', AValue)
hmmprofestimate(..., 'Ax', AxValue)
hmmprofestimate(..., 'BE', BEValue)
hmmprofestimate(..., 'BDx', BDxValue)
```

Arguments

Model	Hidden Markov model created with the function <code>hmmprofstruct</code> .
MultipleAlignment	Array of sequences. Sequences can also be a structured array with the aligned sequences in a field <code>Aligned</code> or <code>Sequences</code> , and the optional names in a field <code>Header</code> or <code>Name</code> .
A	Property to set the pseudocount weight A. Default value is 20.
Ax	Property to set the pseudocount weight Ax. Default value is 20.
BE	Property to set the background symbol emission probabilities. Default values are taken from <code>Model.NullEmission</code> .
BMx	Property to set the background transition probabilities from any MATCH state (<code>[M->M M->I M->D]</code>). Default values are taken from <code>hmmprofstruct</code> .
BDx	Property to set the background transition probabilities from any DELETE state (<code>[D->M D->D]</code>). Default values are taken from <code>hmmprofstruct</code> .

Description

`hmmprofestimate(Model, MultipleAlignment, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue...)` returns a structure with the fields containing the updated estimated parameters of a profile HMM. Symbol emission and state transition probabilities are estimated using the real counts and weighted pseudocounts obtained with the background probabilities. Default weight is $A=20$, the default background symbol emission for match and insert states is taken from `Model.NullEmission`, and the default background transition probabilities are the same as default transition probabilities returned by `hmmprofstruct`.

Model Construction: Multiple aligned sequences should contain uppercase letters and dashes indicating the model MATCH and DELETE states agreeing with `Model.ModelLength`. If model state annotation is missing, but `MultipleAlignment` is space aligned, then a "maximum entropy" criteria is used to select `Model.ModelLength` states.

Note Insert and flank insert transition probabilities are not estimated, but can be modified afterwards using `hmmprofstruct`.

`hmmprofestimate(..., 'A', AValue)` sets the pseudocount weight $A = Avalue$ when estimating the symbol emission probabilities. Default value is 20.

`hmmprofestimate(..., 'Ax', AxValue)` sets the pseudocount weight $Ax = Axvalue$ when estimating the transition probabilities. Default value is 20.

`hmmprofestimate(..., 'BE', BEValue)` sets the background symbol emission probabilities. Default values are taken from `Model.NullEmission`.

`hmmprofestimate(..., 'BMx', BMxValue)` sets the background transition probabilities from any MATCH state ($[M \rightarrow M \ M \rightarrow I \ M \rightarrow D]$). Default values are taken from `hmmprofstruct`.

hmmprofestimate

`hmmprofestimate(..., 'BDx', BDxValue)` sets the background transition probabilities from any DELETE state ([D->M D->D]). Default values are taken from `hmmprofstruct`.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `hmmprofalign`, `hmmprofstruct`, `showhmmprof`

Purpose

Generate random sequence drawn from profile Hidden Markov Model (HMM)

Syntax

```
Sequence = hmmprofgenerate(Model)  
[Sequence, Profptr] = hmmprofgenerate(Model)  
... = hmmprofgenerate(Model, ...'Align', AlignValue, ...)  
... = hmmprofgenerate(Model, ...'Flanks', FlanksValue, ...)  
... = hmmprofgenerate(Model, ...'Signature', SignatureValue,  
...)
```

Arguments

<i>Model</i>	Hidden Markov model created with the <code>hmmprofstruct</code> function.
<i>AlignValue</i>	Property to control using uppercase letters for matches and lowercase letters for inserted letters. Enter either true or false. Default is false.
<i>FlanksValue</i>	Property to control including the symbols generated by the FLANKING INSERT states in the output sequence. Enter either true or false. Default is false.
<i>SignatureValue</i>	Property to control returning the most likely path and symbols. Enter either true or false. Default is false.

Description

`Sequence = hmmprofgenerate(Model)` returns the string *Sequence* showing a sequence of amino acids or nucleotides drawn from the profile *Model*. The length, alphabet, and probabilities of the *Model* are stored in a structure. For more information about this structure, see `hmmprofstruct`.

`[Sequence, Profptr] = hmmprofgenerate(Model)` returns a vector of the same length as the profile model pointing to the respective states in the output sequence. Null pointers (0) mean that such states do not exist in the output sequence, either because they are never touched (i.e., jumps

hmmprofgenerate

from the BEGIN state to MATCH states or from MATCH states to the END state), or because DELETE states are not in the output sequence (not aligned output; see below).

... = hmmprofgenerate(*Model*, ...'*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls `hmmprofgenerate` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

... = `hmmprofgenerate(Model, ...'Align', AlignValue, ...)` if *Align* is true, the output sequence is aligned to the model as follows: uppercase letters and dashes correspond to MATCH and DELETE states respectively (the combined count is equal to the number of states in the model). Lowercase letters are emitted by the INSERT or FLANKING INSERT states. If *AlignValue* is false, the output is a sequence of uppercase symbols. The default value is true.

... = `hmmprofgenerate(Model, ...'Flanks', FlanksValue, ...)` if *Flanks* is true, the output sequence includes the symbols generated by the FLANKING INSERT states. The default value is false.

... = `hmmprofgenerate(Model, ...'Signature', SignatureValue, ...)` if *SignatureValue* is true, returns the most likely path and symbols. The default value is false.

Examples

```
load('hmm_model_examples','model_7tm_2') % load a model example
rand_sequence = hmmprofgenerate(model_7tm_2)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `hmmprofalign`, `hmmprofstruct`, `showhmmprof`

Purpose Concatenate prealigned strings of several sequences to profile Hidden Markow Model (HMM)

Syntax `hmmprofmerge(Sequences)`
`hmmprofmerge(Sequences, Names)`
`hmmprofmerge(Sequences, Names, Scores)`

Arguments

Sequences Array of sequences. *Sequences* can also be a structured array with the aligned sequences in a field *Aligned* or *Sequences*, and the optional names in a field *Header* or *Name*.

Names Names for the sequences. Enter a vector of names.

Scores Pairwise alignment scores from the function `hmmprofalign`. Enter a vector of values with the same length as the number of sequences in *Sequences*.

Description

`hmmprofmerge(Sequences)` displays a set of prealigned sequences to a HMM model profile. The output is aligned corresponding to the HMM states.

- Match states — Uppercase letters
- Insert states — Lowercase letters or asterisks (*)
- Delete states — Dashes

Periods (.) are added at positions corresponding to inserts in other sequences. The input sequences must have the same number of profile states, that is, the joint count of capital letters and dashes must be the same.

`hmmprofmerge(Sequences, Names)` labels the sequences with *Names*.

`hmmprofmerge(Sequences, Names, Scores)` sorts the displayed sequences using *Scores*.

hmmprofmerge

Examples

```
load('hmm_model_examples','model_7tm_2') %load model
load('hmm_model_examples','sequences') %load sequences

for ind =1:length(sequences)
    [scores(ind),sequences(ind).Aligned] =...
        hmmprofalign(model_7tm_2,sequences(ind).Sequence);
end
hmmprofmerge(sequences, scores)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `hmmprofalign`, `hmmprofstruct`

Purpose Create profile Hidden Markov Model (HMM) structure

Syntax

```
Model = hmmprofstruct(Length)
Model = hmmprofstruct(Length, 'Field1', FieldValues1,...)
hmmprofstruct(Model, 'Field1', Field1Values1,...)
```

Arguments

<i>Length</i>	Number of match states in the model.
<i>Model</i>	Hidden Markov model created with the function <code>hmmprofstruct</code> .
<i>Field1</i>	Field name in the structure <i>Model</i> . Enter a name from the table below.

Description

`Model = hmmprofstruct(Length)` returns a structure with the fields containing the required parameters of a profile HMM. *Length* specifies the number of match states in the model. All other mandatory model parameters are initialized to the default values.

`Model = hmmprofstruct(Length, 'Field1', FieldValues1, ...)` creates a profile HMM using the specified fields and parameters. All other mandatory model parameters are initialized to default values.

`hmmprofstruct(Model, 'Field1', Field1Values1, ...)` returns the updated profile HMM with the specified fields and parameters. All other mandatory model parameters are taken from the reference MODEL.

HMM Profile Structure Format

Model parameters fields (mandatory). All probability values are in the [0 1] range.

Field Name	Description
ModelLength	Length of the profile (number of MATCH states)
Alphabet	'AA' or 'NT'. Default is 'AA'.

Field Name	Description
MatchEmission	<p>Symbol emission probabilities in the MATCH states.</p> <p>Size is [ModelLength x AlphaLength]. Defaults to uniform distributions. May accept a structure with residue counts (see aaccount or basecount).</p>
InsertEmission	<p>Symbol emission probabilities in the INSERT state.</p> <p>Size is [ModelLength x AlphaLength]. Defaults to uniform distributions. May accept a structure with residue counts (see aaccount or basecount).</p>
NullEmission	<p>Symbol emission probabilities in the MATCH and INSERT states for the NULL model. NULL model, size is [1 x AlphaLength]. Defaults to a uniform distribution. May accept a structure with residue counts (see aaccount or basecount). The NULL model is used to compute the log-odds ratio at every state and avoid overflow when propagating the probabilities through the model.</p>
BeginX	<p>BEGIN state transition probabilities.</p> <p>Format is</p> <p style="text-align: center;">[B->D1 B->M1 B->M2 B->M3 B->Mend]</p> <p>Notes:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">$\text{sum}(\text{S.BeginX}) = 1$</p> <p>For fragment profiles</p> <p style="text-align: center;">$\text{sum}(\text{S.BeginX}(3:\text{end})) = 0$</p> <p>Default is [0.01 0.99 0 0 . . . 0].</p>

Field Name	Description
MatchX	<p>MATCH state transition probabilities</p> <p>Format is</p> <pre> M1->M2 M2->M3 ... M[end-1]->Mend; M1->I1 M2->I2 ... M[end-1]->I[end-1]; M1->D2 M2->D3 ... M[end-1]->Dend; M1->E M2->E ... M[end-1]->E]</pre> <p>Notes:</p> $\text{sum}(S.\text{MatchX}) = [1 \ 1 \ \dots \ 1]$ <p>For fragment profiles</p> $\text{sum}(S.\text{MatchX}(4, :)) = 0$ <p>Default is <code>repmat([0.998 0.001 0.001 0], profLength-1, 1)</code>.</p>
InsertX	<p>INSERT state transition probabilities</p> <p>Format is</p> <pre> [I1->M2 I2->M3 ... I[end-1]->Mend; [I1->I1 I2->I2 ... I[end-1]->I[end-1]]</pre> <p>Note:</p> $\text{sum}(S.\text{InsertX}) = [1 \ 1 \ \dots \ 1]$ <p>Default is <code>repmat([0.5 0.5], profLength-1, 1)</code>.</p>

hmmprofstruct

Field Name	Description
DeleteX	<p>DELETE state transition probabilities. The format is</p> <pre>[D1->M2 D2->M3 ... D[end-1]->Mend ; [D1->D2 D2->D3 ... D[end-1]->Dend]</pre> <hr/> <p>Note $\text{sum}(\text{S.DeleteX}) = [1 \ 1 \ \dots \ 1]$</p> <hr/> <p>Default is <code>repmat([0.5 0.5],profLength-1,1)</code>.</p>
FlankingInsertX	<p>Flanking insert states (N and C) used for LOCAL profile alignment. The format is</p> <pre>[N->B C->T ; [N->N C->C]</pre> <hr/> <p>Note $\text{sum}(\text{S.FlankingInsertsX}) = [1 \ 1]$</p> <hr/> <p>To force global alignment use</p> <pre>S.FlankingInsertsX = [1 1; 0 0]</pre> <p>Default is <code>[0.01 0.01; 0.99 0.99]</code>.</p>

Field Name	Description
LoopX	<p>Loop states transition probabilities used for multiple hits alignment. The format is</p> <pre>[E->C J->B ; E->J J->J]</pre> <hr/> <p>Note $\text{sum}(S.\text{LoopX}) = [1 \ 1]$</p> <hr/> <p>Default is [0.5 0.01; 0.5 0.99]</p>
NullX	<p>Null transition probabilities used to provide scores with log-odds values also for state transitions. The format is</p> <pre>[G->F ; G->G]</pre> <hr/> <p>Note $\text{sum}(S.\text{NullX}) = 1$</p> <hr/> <p>Default is [0.01; 0.99]</p>

Annotation Fields (Optional)

Name	Model Name
IDNumber	Identification Number
Description	Short description of the model

A profile Markov model is a common statistical tool for modeling structured sequences composed of symbols . These symbols include randomness in both the output (emission of symbols) and the state

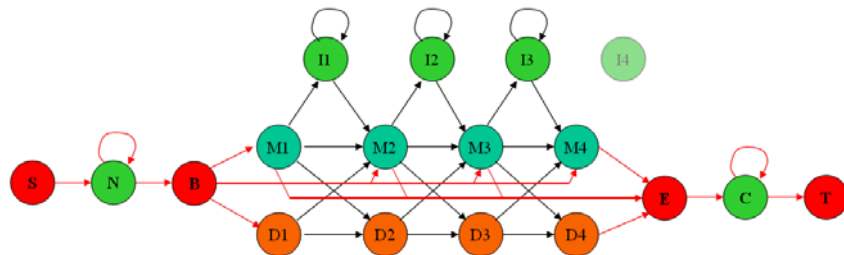
hmmprofstruct

transitions of the process. Markov models are generally represented by state diagrams.

The figure shown below is a state diagram for a HMM profile of length 4. Insert, match, and delete states are in the regular part (middle section).

- Match state means that the target sequence is aligned to the profile at the specific location.
- Delete state represents a gap or symbol absence in the target sequence (also known as a silent state because it does not emit any symbol).
- Insert state represents the excess of one or more symbols in the target sequence that are not included in the profile.

Flanking states (S, N, B, E, C, T) are used for proper modeling of the ends of the sequence, either for global, local or fragment alignment of the profile. S, N, E, and T are silent while N and C are used to insert symbols at the flanks.



Examples

```
hmmprofstruct(100, 'Alphabet', 'AA')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `account`, `basecount`, `gethmmprof`, `hmmprofalign`, `hmmprofestimate`, `hmmprofgenerate`, `hmmprofmerge`, `pfamhmmread`, `showhmmprof`

Purpose Read microarray data from ImaGene Results file

Syntax

```
imagedata = imageneread('File')  
imagedata = imageneread(..., 'CleanColNames',  
CleanColNamesValue, ...)
```

Arguments

File ImaGene Results formatted file. Enter a file name or a path and file name.

CleanColNameValue Property to control creating column names that MATLAB can use as variable names.

Description

imagedata = imageneread('File') reads ImaGene results data from *File* and creates a MATLAB structure *imagedata* containing the following fields:

Field
HeaderAA
Data
Blocks
Rows
Columns
Fields
IDs
ColumnNames

imagerread

Field
Indices
Shape

`imagedata = imagerread(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs, described as follows:

`imagedata = imagerread(..., 'CleanColNames', CleanColNamesValue, ...)`. An ImaGene file may contain column names with spaces and some characters that MATLAB cannot use in MATLAB variable names. If `CleanColNamesValue` is true, `imager` returns, in the field `ColumnNames`, names that are valid MATLAB variable names and names that you can use in functions. By default, `CleanColNamesValue` is false and the field `ColumnNames` may contain characters that are not valid for MATLAB variable names.

The field `Indices` of the structure contains MATLAB indices that you can use for plotting heat maps of the data with the function `image` or `imagesc`.

For more details on the ImaGene format and example data, see the ImaGene User Manual.

ImaGene is a registered trademark of BioDiscovery, Inc.

Examples

- 1 Read in a sample ImaGene Results file. Note, the file `cy3.txt` is not provided with Bioinformatics Toolbox.

```
cy3Data = imagerread('cy3.txt');
```

- 2 Plot the signal mean.

```
mimage(cy3Data, 'Signal Mean');
```

- 3 Read in a sample ImaGene Results file. Note, the file `cy5.txt` is not provided with Bioinformatics Toolbox.

```
cy5Data = imagerread('cy5.txt');
```

- 4 Create a loglog plot of the signal median from two ImaGene Results files.

```
sigMedianCol = find(strcmp('Signal Median',cy3Data.ColumnNames));  
cy3Median = cy3Data.Data(:,sigMedianCol);  
cy5Median = cy5Data.Data(:,sigMedianCol);  
maloglog(cy3Median,cy5Median,'title','Signal Median');
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `gprread`, `maboxplot`, `mimage`, `sptread`

int2aa

Purpose Convert amino acid sequence from integer to letter representation

Syntax
SeqChar = int2aa(*SeqInt*)
SeqChar = int2aa(*SeqInt*, 'Case', *CaseValue*)

Arguments

SeqInt Row vector of integers specifying an amino acid sequence. See the table Mapping Amino Acid Integers to Letters on page 2-352 for valid integers. Integers are arbitrarily assigned to IUB/IUPAC letters.

CaseValue String that specifies the case of the returned character string. Choices are 'upper' (default) or 'lower'.

Return Values

SeqChar Character string of single-letter codes specifying an amino acid sequence.

Mapping Amino Acid Integers to Letters

Amino Acid	Integer	Code
Alanine	1	A
Arginine	2	R
Asparagine	3	N
Aspartic acid (Aspartate)	4	D
Cysteine	5	C
Glutamine	6	Q
Glutamic acid (Glutamate)	7	E
Glycine	8	G

Amino Acid	Integer	Code
Histidine	9	H
Isoleucine	10	I
Leucine	11	L
Lysine	12	K
Methionine	13	M
Phenylalanine	14	F
Proline	15	P
Serine	16	S
Threonine	17	T
Tryptophan	18	W
Tyrosine	19	Y
Valine	20	V
Asparagine or Aspartic acid (Aspartate)	21	B
Glutamine or Glutamic acid (Glutamate)	22	Z
Any amino acid	23	X
Translation stop	24	*
Gap of indeterminate length	25	-
Unknown or any integer not in table	0	?

Description

SeqChar = int2aa(*SeqInt*) converts a 1-by-N array of integers specifying an amino acid sequence to a character string of single-letter codes specifying the same amino acid sequence. See the table Mapping Amino Acid Integers to Letters on page 2-352 for valid integers.

SeqChar = int2aa(*SeqInt*, 'Case', *CaseValue*) specifies the case of the returned character string representing an amino acid sequence. Choices are 'upper' (default) or 'lower'.

int2aa

Examples

Convert an amino acid sequence from integer to letter representation.

```
s = int2aa([13 1 17 11 1 21])
```

```
s =
```

```
MATLAB
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `aa2int`, `aminolookup`, `int2nt`, `nt2int`

Purpose Convert nucleotide sequence from integer to letter representation

Syntax

```
int2nt(SeqNT)
int2nt(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
int2nt(..., 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue)
int2nt(..., 'Unknown', UnknownValue)
int2nt(..., 'Case', CaseValue)
```

Arguments

<i>SeqNT</i>	Nucleotide sequence represented by integers. Enter a vector of integers from the table Mapping Nucleotide Integers to Letters below. The array does not have to be of type integer, but it does have to contain only integer numbers. Integers are arbitrarily assigned to IUB/IUPAC letters.
<i>AlphabetValue</i>	Property to select the nucleotide alphabet. Enter either 'DNA' or 'RNA'.
<i>UnknownValue</i>	Property to select the integer value for the unknown character. Enter a character to map integers 16 or greater to an unknown character. The character must not be one of the nucleotide characters A, T, C, G or the ambiguous nucleotide characters N, R, Y, K, M, S, W, B, D, H, or V. The default character is *.
<i>CaseValue</i>	Property to select the letter case for the nucleotide sequence. Enter either 'upper' (default) or 'lower'.

Mapping Nucleotide Integers to Letters

Base	Code	Base	Code	Base	Code
Adenosine	1—A	T, C (pyrimidine)	6—Y	A, T, G (not C)	12—D
Cytidine	2—C	G, T (keto)	7—K	A, T, C (not G)	13—H
Guanine	3—G	A, C (amino)	8—M	A, G, C (not T)	14—V
Thymidine	4—T	G, C (strong)	9—S	A, T, G, C (any)	15—N
Uridine (if 'Alphabet' = 'RNA')	4—U	A, T (weak)	10—W	Gap of indeterminate length	16 — -
A, G (purine)	5—R	T, G, C (not A)	11—B	Unknown (default)	0 and ≥17—*

Description

`int2nt(SeqNT)` converts a 1-by-N array of integers to a character string using the table Mapping Nucleotide Letters to Integers above.

`int2nt(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`int2nt(..., 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue)` selects the nucleotide alphabet to use. The default value is 'DNA', which uses the symbols A, T, C, and G. If *AlphabetValue* is set to 'RNA', `int2nt` uses the symbols A, C, U, G instead.

`int2nt(..., 'Unknown', UnknownValue)` specifies the character to represent an unknown nucleotide base.

`int2nt(..., 'Case', CaseValue)` selects the output case of the nucleotide string.

Examples

Enter a sequence of integers as a MATLAB vector (space or comma-separated list with square brackets).


```
s = int2nt([1 2 4 3 2 4 1 3 2])
```

```
s =  
    ACTGCTAGC
```

Define a symbol for unknown numbers 16 and greater.

```
si = [1 2 4 20 2 4 40 3 2];  
s = int2nt(si, 'unknown', '#')
```

```
s =  
    ACT#CT#GC
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function `aa2int`, `int2aa`, `nt2int`

isoelectric

Purpose Estimate isoelectric point for amino acid sequence

Syntax

```
pI = isoelectric(SeqAA)  
[pI Charge] = isoelectric(SeqAA)  
isoelectric(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)  
isoelectric(..., 'PKVals', PKValsValue)  
isoelectric(..., 'Charge', ChargeValue)  
isoelectric(..., 'Chart', ChartValue)
```

Arguments

<i>SeqAA</i>	Amino acid sequence. Enter a character string or a vector of integers from the table. Examples: 'ARN' or [1 2 3].
<i>PKValsValue</i>	Property to provide alternative pK values.
<i>ChargeValue</i>	Property to select a specific pH for estimating charge. Enter a number between 0 and 14. The default value is 7.2.
<i>ChartValue</i>	Property to control plotting a graph of charge versus pH. Enter true or false.

Description

pI = isoelectric(*SeqAA*) returns the estimated isoelectric point (*pI*) for an amino acid sequence. The isoelectric point is the pH at which the protein has a net charge of zero

[*pI* *Charge*] = isoelectric(*SeqAA*) returns the estimated isoelectric point (*pI*) for an amino acid sequence and the estimated charge for a given pH (default is typical intracellular pH 7.2).

The estimates are skewed by the underlying assumptions that all amino acids are fully exposed to the solvent, that neighboring peptides have no influence on the pK of any given amino acid, and that the constitutive amino acids, as well as the N- and C-termini, are unmodified. Cysteine

residues participating in disulfide bridges also affect the true pI and are not considered here. By default, `isoelectric` uses the EMBOSS amino acid pK table, or you can substitute other values using the property `PKVals`.

- If the sequence contains ambiguous amino acid characters (b z * -), `isoelectric` ignores the characters and displays a warning message.

Warning: Symbols other than the standard 20 amino acids appear in the sequence.

- If the sequence contains undefined amino acid characters (i j o), `isoelectric` ignores the characters and displays a warning message.

Warning: Sequence contains unknown characters. These will be ignored.

`isoelectric(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`isoelectric(..., 'PKVals', PKValsValue)` uses the alternative pK table stored in the text file `PKValsValue`. For an example of a pK text file, see the file `Emboss.pK`.

```
N_term 8.6
K 10.8
R 12.5
H 6.5
D 3.9
E 4.1
C 8.5
Y 10.1
C_term 3.6
```

`isoelectric(..., 'Charge', ChargeValue)` returns the estimated charge of a sequence for a given pH (`ChargeValue`).

isoelectric

`isoelectric(..., 'Chart', ChartValue)` when *ChartValue* is true, returns a graph plotting the charge of the protein versus the pH of the solvent.

Example

```
% Get a sequence from PDB.
pdbSeq = getpdb('1CIV', 'SequenceOnly', true)
% Estimate its isoelectric point.
isoelectric(pdbSeq)

% Plot the charge against the pH for a short polypeptide sequence.
isoelectric('PQGGGGWQPHGGGWGQPHGGGGWQGGSHSQG', 'CHART', true)

% Get the Rh blood group D antigen from NCBI and calculate
% its charge at pH 7.3 (typical blood pH).
gpSeq = getgenpept('AAB39602')
[pI Charge] = isoelectric(gpSeq, 'Charge', 7.38)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics functions `aaccount`, `molweight`

Purpose Read JCAMP-DX formatted files

Syntax `JCAMPData = jcampread(File)`

Arguments

File JCAMP-DX formatted file (ASCII text file). Enter a file name, a path and file name, or a URL pointing to a file. *File* can also be a MATLAB character array that contains the text of a JCAMP-DX formatted file.

Description

JCAMP-DX is a file format for infrared, NMR, and mass spectrometry data from the Joint Committee on Atomic and Molecular Physical Data (JCAMP). `jcampread` supports reading data from files saved with Versions 4.24 and 5 of the JCAMP-DX format. For more details, see

<http://www.jcamp.org/index.html>

`JCAMPData = jcampread(File)` reads data from a JCAMP-DX formatted file (*File*) and creates a MATLAB structure (*JCAMPData*) containing the following fields:

Field
Title
DataType
Origin
Owner
Blocks
Notes

The `Blocks` field of the structure is an array of structures corresponding to each set of data in the file. These structures have the following fields:

Field
XData
YData
XUnits
YUnits
Notes

Examples

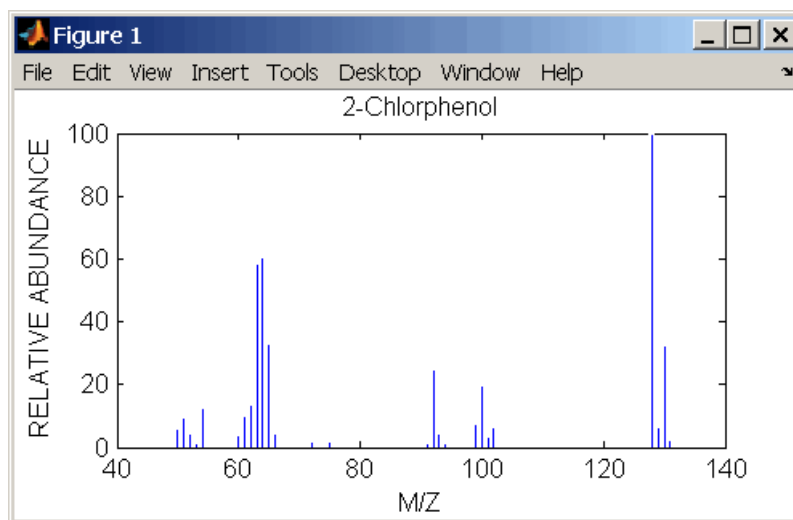
- 1 Download test data in the file `isa_ms1.dx` from

<http://www.jcamp.org/testdata.html/testdata.zip>

- 2 Read a JCAMP-DX file (`isas_ms1.dx`) into MATLAB and plot the mass spectrum.

```
jcampStruct = jcampread('isas_ms1.dx')
data = jcampStruct.Blocks(1);
stem(data.XData,data.YData, '.', 'MarkerEdgeColor','w');
title(jcampStruct.Title);
xlabel(data.XUnits);
ylabel(data.YUnits);
```

A figure window opens with the mass spectrum.

**See Also**

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `mslowess`, `mssgolay`, `msviewer`, `mzxmlread`

joinseq

Purpose Join two sequences to produce shortest supersequence

Syntax `SeqNT3 = joinseq(SeqNT1, SeqNT2)`

Arguments `SeqNT1, SeqNT2` Nucleotide sequences.

Description `SeqNT3 = joinseq(SeqNT1, SeqNT2)` creates a new sequence that is the shortest supersequence of `SeqNT1` and `SeqNT2`. If there is no overlap between the sequences, then `SeqNT2` is concatenated to the end of `SeqNT1`. If the length of the overlap is the same at both ends of the sequence, then the overlap at the end of `SeqNT1` and the start of `SeqNT2` is used to join the sequences.

If `SeqNT1` is a subsequence of `SeqNT2`, then `SeqNT2` is returned as the shortest supersequence and vice versa.

Examples

```
seq1 = 'ACGTAAA';  
seq2 = 'AAATGCA';  
joined = joinseq(seq1,seq2)  
  
joined =  
    ACGTAAATGCA
```

See Also MATLAB functions `cat`, `strcat`, `strfind`

Purpose Classify data using nearest neighbor method

Syntax

```
Class = knnclassify(Sample, Training, Group)
Class = knnclassify(Sample, Training, Group, k)
Class = knnclassify(Sample, Training, Group, k, distance)
Class = knnclassify(Sample, Training, Group, k, distance,
                    rule)
```

Arguments

<i>Sample</i>	Matrix whose rows will be classified into groups. <i>Sample</i> must have the same number of columns as <i>Training</i> .
<i>Training</i>	Matrix used to group the rows in the matrix <i>Sample</i> . <i>Training</i> must have the same number of columns as <i>Sample</i> . Each row of <i>Training</i> belongs to the group whose value is the corresponding entry of <i>Group</i> .
<i>Group</i>	Vector whose distinct values define the grouping of the rows in <i>Training</i> .
<i>k</i>	The number of nearest neighbors used in the classification. Default is 1.

- distance* String to specify the distance metric. Choices are:
- 'euclidean' — Euclidean distance (default)
 - 'cityblock' — Sum of absolute differences
 - 'cosine' — One minus the cosine of the included angle between points (treated as vectors)
 - 'correlation' — One minus the sample correlation between points (treated as sequences of values)
 - 'hamming' — Percentage of bits that differ (only suitable for binary data)
- rule* String to specify the rule used to decide how to classify the sample. Choices are:
- 'nearest' — Majority rule with nearest point tie-break (default)
 - 'random' — Majority rule with random point tie-break
 - 'consensus' — Consensus rule

Description

Class = knnclassify(Sample, Training, Group) classifies the rows of the data matrix *Sample* into groups, based on the grouping of the rows of *Training*. *Sample* and *Training* must be matrices with the same number of columns. *Group* is a vector whose distinct values define the grouping of the rows in *Training*. Each row of *Training* belongs to the group whose value is the corresponding entry of *Group*. *knnclassify* assigns each row of *Sample* to the group for the closest row of *Training*. *Group* can be a numeric vector, a string array, or a cell array of strings. *Training* and *Group* must have the same number of rows. *knnclassify* treats NaNs or empty strings in *Group* as missing values, and ignores the corresponding rows of *Training*. *Class* indicates which group each row of *Sample* has been assigned to, and is of the same type as *Group*.

Class = knnclassify(Sample, Training, Group, k) enables you to specify *k*, the number of nearest neighbors used in the classification. Default is 1.

`Class = knnclassify(Sample, Training, Group, k, distance)`
enables you to specify the distance metric. Choices for *distance* are:

- 'euclidean' Euclidean distance (default)
- 'cityblock' Sum of absolute differences
- 'cosine' One minus the cosine of the included angle between points (treated as vectors)
- 'correlation' One minus the sample correlation between points (treated as sequences of values)
- 'hamming' Percentage of bits that differ (only suitable for binary data)

`Class = knnclassify(Sample, Training, Group, k, distance, rule)` enables you to specify the rule used to decide how to classify the sample. Choices for *rule* are:

- 'nearest' Majority rule with nearest point tie-break (default)
- 'random' Majority rule with random point tie-break
- 'consensus' Consensus rule

The default behavior is to use majority rule. That is, a sample point is assigned to the class the majority of the *k* nearest neighbors are from. Use 'consensus' to require a consensus, as opposed to majority rule. When using the 'consensus' option, points where not all of the *k* nearest neighbors are from the same class are not assigned to one of the classes. Instead the output `Class` for these points is `NaN` for numerical groups or `''` for string named groups. When classifying to more than two groups or when using an even value for *k*, it might be necessary to break a tie in the number of nearest neighbors. Options are 'random', which selects a random tiebreaker, and 'nearest', which uses the nearest neighbor among the tied groups to break the tie. The default behavior is majority rule, with nearest tie-break.

knnclassify

Examples

Classifying Rows

The following example classifies the rows of the matrix sample:

```
sample = [.9 .8;.1 .3;.2 .6]
```

```
sample =  
    0.9000    0.8000  
    0.1000    0.3000  
    0.2000    0.6000
```

```
training=[0 0;.5 .5;1 1]
```

```
training =  
    0    0  
    0.5000    0.5000  
    1.0000    1.0000
```

```
group = [1;2;3]
```

```
group =  
    1  
    2  
    3
```

```
class = knnclassify(sample, training, group)
```

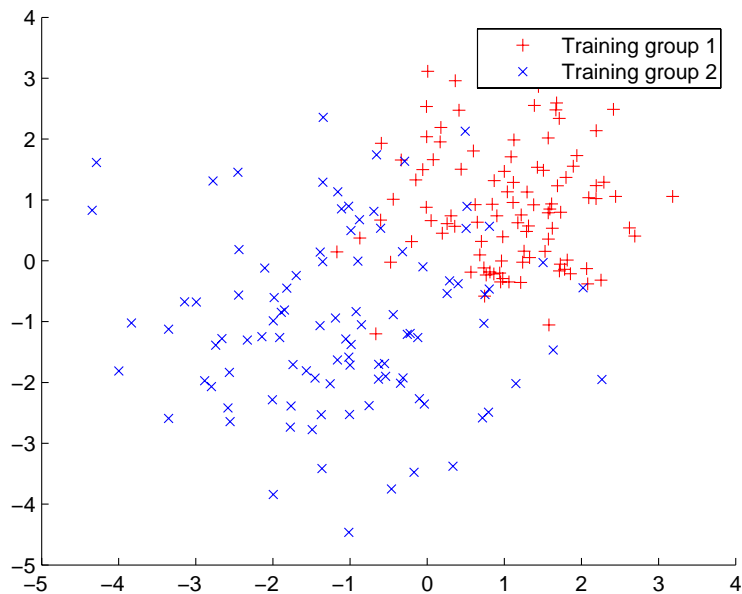
```
class =  
    3  
    1  
    2
```

Row 1 of sample is closest to row 3 of Training, so `class(1) = 3`. Row 2 of sample is closest to row 1 of Training, so `class(2) = 1`. Row 3 of sample is closest to row 2 of Training, so `class(3) = 2`.

Classifying Rows into One of Two Groups

The following example classifies each row of the data in sample into one of the two groups in training. The following commands create the matrix training and the grouping variable group, and plot the rows of training in two groups.

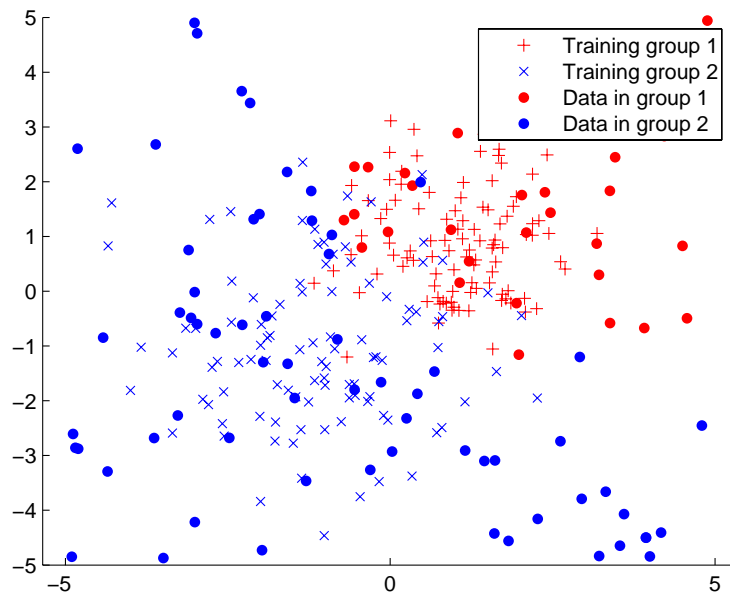
```
training = [mvnrnd([ 1 1], eye(2), 100); ...  
           mvnrnd([-1 -1], 2*eye(2), 100)];  
group = [repmat(1,100,1); repmat(2,100,1)];  
gscatter(training(:,1),training(:,2),group,'rb','+x');  
legend('Training group 1', 'Training group 2');  
hold on;
```



The following commands create the matrix sample, classify its rows into two groups, and plot the result.

knnclassify

```
sample = unifrnd(-5, 5, 100, 2);  
% Classify the sample using the nearest neighbor classification  
c = knnclassify(sample, training, group);  
gscatter(sample(:,1),sample(:,2),c,'mc'); hold on;  
legend('Training group 1','Training group 2', ...  
      'Data in group 1','Data in group 2');  
hold off;
```

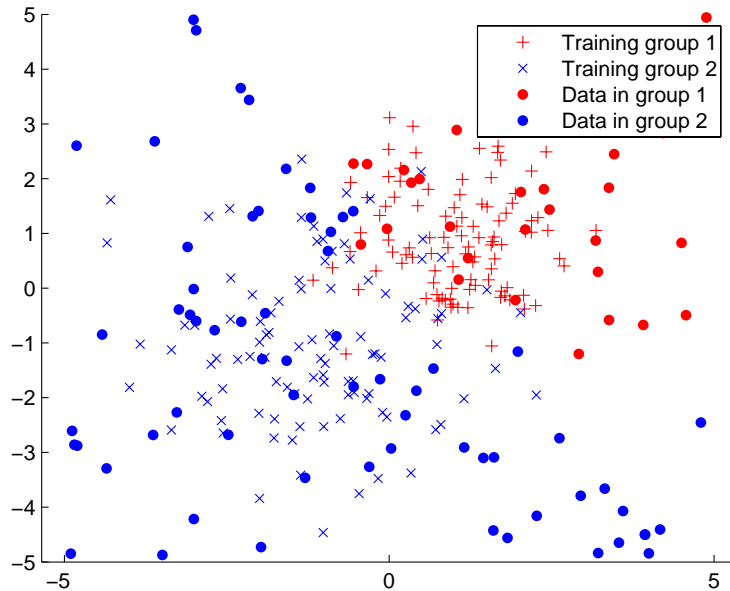


Classifying Rows Using the Three Nearest Neighbors

The following example uses the same data as in Example 2, but classifies the rows of `sample` using three nearest neighbors instead of one.

```
gscatter(training(:,1),training(:,2),group,'rb','x');  
hold on;  
c3 = knnclassify(sample, training, group, 3);
```

```
gscatter(sample(:,1),sample(:,2),c3,'mc','o');  
legend('Training group 1','Training group 2','Data in group 1','Data in group 2');
```



If you compare this plot with the one in Example 2, you see that some of the data points are classified differently using three nearest neighbors.

References

[1] Mitchell T (1997), Machine Learning, McGraw-Hill.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `knnimpute`, `classperf`, `crossvalind`, `svmclassify`, `svmtrain`

Statistics Toolbox functions: `classify`

knnimpute

Purpose Impute missing data using nearest-neighbor method

Syntax

```
knnimpute(Data)
knnimpute(Data, k)
knnimpute(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
knnimpute(..., 'Distance', DistanceValue)
knnimpute(..., 'DistArgs', DistArgsValue)
knnimpute(..., 'Weights', WeightsValues)
knnimpute(..., 'Median', MedianValue)
```

Arguments

Data

k

Description

`knnimpute(Data)` replaces NaNs in *Data* with the corresponding value from the nearest-neighbor column. The nearest-neighbor column is the closest column in Euclidean distance. If the corresponding value from the nearest-neighbor column is also NaN, the next nearest column is used.

`knnimpute(Data, k)` replaces NaNs in *Data* with a weighted mean of the *k* nearest-neighbor columns. The weights are inversely proportional to the distances from the neighboring columns.

`knnimpute(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`knnimpute(..., 'Distance', DistanceValue)` computes nearest-neighbor columns using the distance metric `distfun`. The choices for *DistanceValue* are

'euclidean' Euclidean distance (default).

'seuclidean' Standardized Euclidean distance — each coordinate in the sum of squares is inversely weighted by the sample variance of that coordinate.

'cityblock'	City block distance
'mahalanobis'	Mahalanobis distance
'minkowski'	Minkowski distance with exponent 2
'cosine'	One minus the cosine of the included angle
'correlation'	One minus the sample correlation between observations, treated as sequences of values
'hamming'	Hamming distance — the percentage of coordinates that differ
'jaccard'	One minus the Jaccard coefficient — the percentage of nonzero coordinates that differ
'chebychev'	Chebychev distance (maximum coordinate difference)
function handle	A handle to a distance function, specified using @, for example @distfun

See `pdist` for more details.

`knnimpute(..., 'DistArgs', DistArgsValue)` passes arguments (*DistArgsValue*) to the function `distfun`. *DistArgsValue* can be a single value or a cell array of values.

`knnimpute(..., 'Weights', WeightsValues)` enables you to specify the weights used in the weighted mean calculation. *w* should be a vector of length *k*.

`knnimpute(..., 'Median', MedianValue)` when *MedianValue* is true, uses the median of the *k* nearest neighbors instead of the weighted mean.

Example 1

```
A = [1 2 5;4 5 7;NaN -1 8;7 6 0]
```

```
A =
```

```

     1     2     5
     4     5     7
```

```
NaN   -1   8
    7    6   0
```

Note that $A(3,1) = \text{NaN}$. Because column 2 is the closest column to column 1 in Euclidean distance, `knnimpute` imputes the (3,1) entry of column 1 to be the corresponding entry of column 2, which is -1.

```
knnimpute(A)
```

```
ans =
```

```
    1    2    5
    4    5    7
   -1   -1    8
    7    6    0
```

Example 2

The following example loads the data set `yeastdata` and imputes missing values in the array `yeastvalues`.

```
load yeastdata
% Remove data for empty spots
emptySpots = strcmp('EMPTY',genes);
yeastvalues(emptySpots,:) = [];
genes(emptySpots) = [];
% Impute missing values
imputedValues = knnimpute(yeastvalues);
```

References

- [1] Speed T (2003), *Statistical Analysis of Gene Expression Microarray Data*, Chapman & Hall/CRC.
- [2] Hastie T, Tibshirani R, Sherlock G, Eisen M, Brown P, Botstein D (1999), "Imputing missing data for gene expression arrays", Technical Report, Division of Biostatistics, Stanford University.
- [3] Troyanskaya O, Cantor M, Sherlock G, Brown P, Hastie T, Tibshirani R, Botstein D, Altman R (2001), "Missing value estimation methods for DNA microarrays", *Bioinformatics*, 17(6)520-525.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function `knnclassify`

MATLAB function `isnan`

Statistics Toolbox functions `nanmean`, `nanmedian`, `pdist`

maboxplot

Purpose Box plot for microarray data

Syntax

```
maboxplot(MAData)
maboxplot(MAData, ColumnName)
maboxplot(MAStruct, FieldName)
H = maboxplot(...)
[H, HLines] = maboxplot(...)
maboxplot(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)
maboxplot(..., 'Title', TitleValue, ...)
maboxplot(..., 'Notch', NotchValue, ...)
maboxplot(..., 'Symbol', SymbolValue, ...)
maboxplot(..., 'Orientation', OrientationValue, ...)
maboxplot(..., 'WhiskerLength', WhiskerLengthValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>MAData</i>	A numeric array or a structure containing a field called <i>Data</i> . The values in the columns of <i>MAData</i> will be used to create box plots.
<i>ColumnName</i>	An array of column names corresponding to the data in <i>MAData</i> .
<i>MAStruct</i>	A microarray data structure.
<i>FieldName</i>	A field within the microarray data structure, <i>MAStruct</i> . The values in the field <i>FieldName</i> will be used to create box plots.
<i>TitleValue</i>	A string to use as the title for the plot. The default title is <i>FieldName</i> .
<i>NotchValue</i>	Property to control the type of boxes drawn. Enter either <code>true</code> for notched boxes, or <code>false</code> , for square boxes. Default is <code>false</code> .

<i>OrientationValue</i>	Property to specify the orientation of the box plot. Enter 'Vertical' or 'Horizontal'. Default is 'Horizontal'.
<i>WhiskerLengthValue</i>	Property to specify the maximum length of the whiskers as a function of the interquartile range (IQR). The whisker extends to the most extreme data value within <i>WhiskerLengthValue</i> *IQR of the box. Default = 1.5. If <i>WhiskerLengthValue</i> equals 0, then maboxplot displays all data values outside the box, using the plotting symbol <i>Symbol</i> .

Description

`maboxplot(MAData)` displays a box plot of the values in the columns of data (*MAData*). *MAData* can be a numeric array or a structure containing a field called *Data*.

`maboxplot(MAData, ColumnName)` labels the box plot column names.

`maboxplot(MAStruct, FieldName)` displays a box plot of the values in the field *FieldName* in the microarray data structure *MAStruct*. If *MAStruct* is block based, maboxplot creates a box plot of the values in the field *FieldName* for each block.

`H = maboxplot(...)` returns the handle of the box plot axes.

`[H, HLines] = maboxplot(...)` returns the handles of the lines used to separate the different blocks in the image.

`maboxplot(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs in any order. These property name/value pairs are as follows:

`maboxplot(..., 'Title', TitleValue, ...)` allows you to specify the title of the plot. The default *TitleValue* is *FieldName*.

`maboxplot(..., 'Notch', NotchValue, ...)` if *NotchValue* is true, draws notched boxes. The default is false to show square boxes.

maboxplot

`maboxplot(..., 'Symbol', SymbolValue, ...)` allows you to specify the symbol used for outlier values. The default Symbol is '+'.

`maboxplot(..., 'Orientation', OrientationValue, ...)` allows you to specify the orientation of the box plot. The choices are 'Vertical' and 'Horizontal'. The default is 'Vertical'.

`maboxplot(..., 'WhiskerLength', WhiskerLengthValue, ...)` allows you to specify the whisker length for the box plot. *WhiskerLengthValue* defines the maximum length of the whiskers as a function of the interquartile range (IQR) (default = 1.5). The whisker extends to the most extreme data value within *WhiskerLength**IQR of the box. If *WhiskerLengthValue* equals 0, then `maboxplot` displays all data values outside the box, using the plotting symbol `Symbol`.

Examples

```
load yeastdata
maboxplot(yeastvalues,times);
xlabel('Sample Times');

% Using a structure
geoStruct = getgeodata('GSM1768');
maboxplot(geoStruct);

% For block-based data
madata = gprread('mouse_a1wt.gpr');
maboxplot(madata,'F635 Median');
figure
maboxplot(madata,'F635 Median - B635','TITLE',...
          'Cy5 Channel FG - BG');
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `magetfield`, `maimage`, `mairplot`, `maloglog`, `malowess`, `manorm`, `mavolcanoplot`

Statistics Toolbox function `boxplot`

Purpose Estimate false discovery rate (FDR) of differentially expressed genes from two experimental conditions or phenotypes

Syntax

```
FDR = mafdr(PValues)
[FDR, Q] = mafdr(PValues)
[FDR, Q, Pi0] = mafdr(PValues)
[FDR, Q, Pi0, R2] = mafdr(PValues)
... = mafdr(PValues, ...'BHFDR', BHFDRValue, ...)
... = mafdr(PValues, ...'Lambda', LambdaValue, ...)
... = mafdr(PValues, ...'Method', MethodValue, ...)
... = mafdr(PValues, ...'Showplot', ShowplotValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>PValues</i>	Column vector of p-values for each gene in two microarray data sets, such as returned by <code>mattest</code> .
<i>BHFDRValue</i>	Property to control the use of the linear step-up (LSU) procedure originally introduced by Benjamini and Hochberg, 1995. Choices are true or false (default).

Note If *BHFDRValue* is set to true, the Lambda and Method properties are ignored.

LambdaValue Input that specifies lambda, λ , the tuning parameter used to estimate the true null hypotheses, $\hat{\pi}_0(\lambda)$. *LambdaValue* can be either:

- A single value that is > 0 and < 1 .
- A series of values. Each value must be > 0 and < 1 . There must be at least four values in the series.

Tip The series of values can be expressed by a colon operator with the form `[first:incr:last]`, where *first* is the first value in the series, *incr* is the increment, and *last* is the last value in the series.

Default *LambdaValue* is the series of values `[0.01:0.01:0.95]`.

Note If *LambdaValue* is set to a single value, the Method property is ignored.

MethodValue String that specifies a method to calculate the true null hypothesis, $\hat{\pi}_0(\lambda)$, from the tuning parameter, *LambdaValue*, when *LambdaValue* is a series of values. Choices are:

- bootstrap (default)
- polynomial

ShowplotValue Property to display two plots:

- Plot of the estimated true null hypotheses, $\hat{\pi}_0(\lambda)$, versus the tuning parameter, lambda, λ , with a cubic polynomial fitting curve
- Plot of q-values versus p-values

Choices are true or false (default).

Return Values

FDR Column vector of positive FDR (pFDR) values.

Q Column vector of q-values.

Pi0 Estimated true null hypothesis, $\hat{\pi}_0$.

R2 Square of the correlation coefficient.

Description

FDR = mafdr(*PValues*) computes a positive FDR (pFDR) value for each value in *PValues*, a column vector of p-values for each gene in two microarray data sets, using a procedure introduced by Storey, 2002. *FDR* is a column vector of positive FDR (pFDR) values.

[*FDR*, *Q*] = mafdr(*PValues*) also returns a q-value for each p-value in *PValues*. *Q* is a column vector.

$[FDR, Q, Pi0] = \text{mafdr}(PValues)$ also returns $Pi0$, the estimated true null hypothesis, $\hat{\pi}_0$, if using the procedure introduced by Storey, 2002.

$[FDR, Q, Pi0, R2] = \text{mafdr}(PValues)$ also returns $R2$, the square of the correlation coefficient, if using the procedure introduced by Storey, 2002, and the polynomial method to calculate the true null hypothesis, $\hat{\pi}_0$, from the tuning parameter, λ .

$\dots = \text{mafdr}(PValues, \dots 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, \dots)$ calls mafdr with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

$\dots = \text{mafdr}(PValues, \dots 'BHFDR', BHFDRValue, \dots)$ controls the use of the linear step-up (LSU) procedure originally introduced by Benjamini and Hochberg, 1995, to compute an FDR-adjusted p-value for each value in *PValues*. Choices are true or false (default).

Note If *BHFDRValue* is set to true, the *Lambda* and *Method* properties are ignored.

$\dots = \text{mafdr}(PValues, \dots 'Lambda', LambdaValue, \dots)$ specifies λ , the tuning parameter used to estimate the true null hypotheses, $\hat{\pi}_0(\lambda)$. *LambdaValue* can be either:

- A single value that is > 0 and < 1 .
- A series of values. Each value must be > 0 and < 1 . There must be at least four values in the series.

Tip The series of values can be expressed by a colon operator with the form `[first:incr:last]`, where *first* is the first value in the series, *incr* is the increment, and *last* is the last value in the series.

Default *LambdaValue* is the series of values `[0.01:0.01:0.95]`.

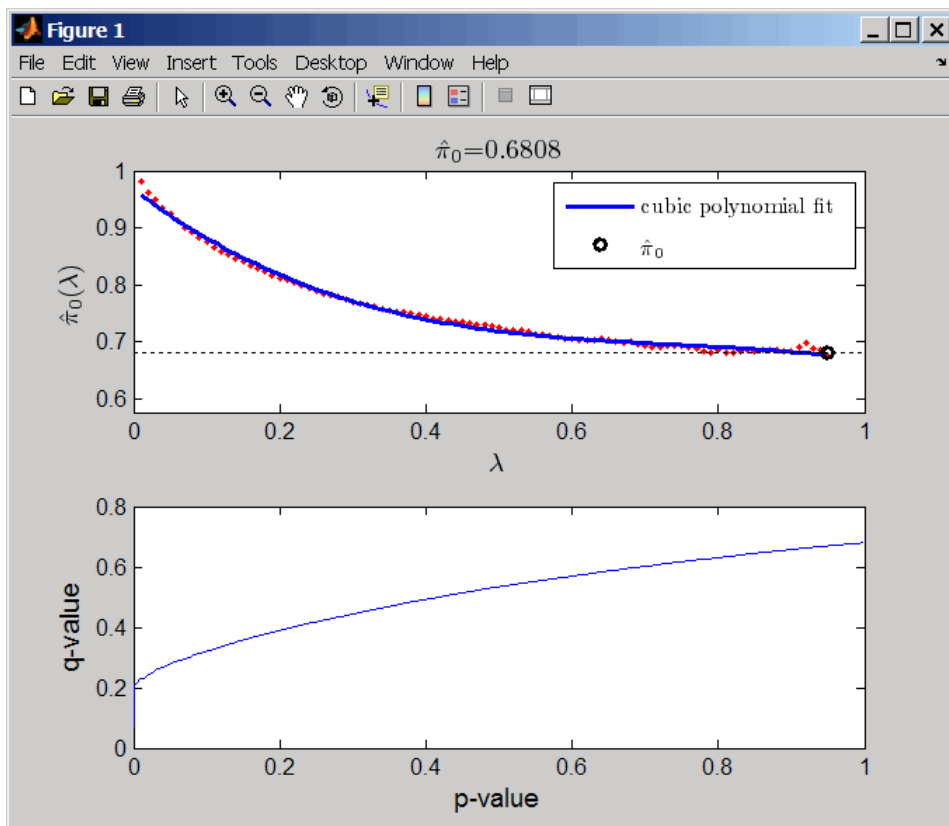
Note If *LambdaValue* is set to a single value, the *Method* property is ignored.

`... = mafdr(PValues, ...'Method', MethodValue, ...)` specifies a method to calculate the true null hypothesis, $\hat{\pi}_0$, from the tuning parameter, *LambdaValue*, when *LambdaValue* is a series of values. Choices are *bootstrap* (default) or *polynomial*.

`... = mafdr(PValues, ...'Showplot', ShowplotValue, ...)` controls the display of two plots:

- Plot of the estimated true null hypotheses, $\hat{\pi}_0(\lambda)$, versus the tuning parameter, *lambda*, with a cubic polynomial fitting curve
- Plot of q-values versus p-values

Choices are *true* or *false* (default).



Examples

- 1 Load the MAT file, included with Bioinformatics Toolbox, that contains Affymetrix data from a prostate cancer study, specifically probe intensity data from Affymetrix HG-U133A GeneChip arrays. The two variables in the MAT file, dependentData and independentData, are two matrices of gene expression values from two experimental conditions.

```
load prostatecancerexpdata
```

- 2 Use the `mattest` function to calculate p-values for the gene expression values in the two matrices.

```
pvalues = mattest(dependentData, independentData, 'permute', true);
```

- 3 Use the `mafdr` function to calculate positive FDR values and q-values for the gene expression values in the two matrices and plot the data.

```
[fdr, q] = mafdr(pvalues, 'showplot', true);
```

The `prostatecancerexpdata.mat` file used in this example contains data from Best et al., 2005.

References

- [1] Best, C.J.M., Gillespie, J.W., Yi, Y., Chandramouli, G.V.R., Perlmutter, M.A., Gathright, Y., Erickson, H.S., Georgevich, L., Tangrea, M.A., Duray, P.H., Gonzalez, S., Velasco, A., Linehan, W.M., Matusik, R.J., Price, D.K., Figg, W.D., Emmert-Buck, M.R., and Chuaqui, R.F. (2005). Molecular alterations in primary prostate cancer after androgen ablation therapy. *Clinical Cancer Research* *11*, 6823–6834.
- [2] Storey, J.D. (2002). A direct approach to false discovery rates. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society* *64*(3), 479–498.
- [3] Storey, J.D., and Tibshirani, R. (2003). Statistical significance for genomewide studies. *Proc Nat Acad Sci* *100*(16), 9440–9445.
- [4] Storey, J.D., Taylor, J.E., and Siegmund, D. (2004). Strong control conservative point estimation and simultaneous conservative consistency of false discovery rates: A unified approach. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society* *66*, 187–205.
- [5] Benjamini, Y., and Hochberg, Y. (1995). Controlling the false discovery rate: A practical and powerful approach to multiple testing. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society* *57*, 289–300.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `gcrma`, `mairplot`, `maloglog`, `mapcaplot`, `mattest`, `mavolcanoplot`, `rmasummary`

magetfield

Purpose Extract data from microarray structure

Syntax `magetfield(MAStruct, FieldName)`

Arguments

MAStruct
FieldName

Description `magetfield(MAStruct, FieldName)` extracts data for a column (*FieldName*) from a microarray structure (*MAStruct*).

The benefit of this function is to hide the details of extracting a column of data from a structure created with one of the microarray reader functions (`gprread`, `agferead`, `sptread`, `imageneread`).

Examples

```
maStruct = gprread('mouse_a1wt.gpr');  
cy3data = magetfield(maStruct, 'F635 Median');  
cy5data = magetfield(maStruct, 'F532 Median');  
mairplot(cy3data, cy5data, 'title', 'R vs G IR plot');
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `agferead`, `gprread`, `imageneread`, `maboxplot`, `mairplot`, `maloglog`, `malowess`, `sptread`

Purpose Spatial image for microarray data

Syntax

```
mimage(X, FieldName)  
H = mimage(...)  
[H, HLines] = mimage(...)  
mimage(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)  
mimage(..., 'Title', TitleValue)  
mimage(..., 'ColorBar', ColorBarValue)  
mimage(..., 'HandleGraphicsPropertyName' PropertyValue)
```

Arguments

<i>X</i>	A microarray data structure.
<i>FieldName</i>	A field in the microarray data structure <i>X</i> .
<i>TitleValue</i>	A string to use as the title for the plot. The default title is <i>FieldName</i> .
<i>ColorBarValue</i>	Property to control displaying a color bar in the figure window. Enter either true or false. The default value is false.

Description

`mimage(X, FieldName)` displays an image of field *FieldName* from microarray data structure *X*. Microarray data can be GenPix Results (GPR) format. After creating the image, click a data point to display the value and ID, if known.

`H = mimage(...)` returns the handle of the image.

`[H, HLines] = mimage(...)` returns the handles of the lines used to separate the different blocks in the image.

`mimage(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`mimage(..., 'Title', TitleValue)` allows you to specify the title of the plot. The default title is *FieldName*.

mimage

`mimage(..., 'ColorBar', ColorBarValue)`, when *ColorBarValue* is true, a color bar is shown. If *ColorBarValue* is false, no color bar is shown. The default is for the color bar to be shown.

`mimage(..., 'HandleGraphicsPropertyName' PropertyValue)` allows you to pass optional Handle Graphics® property name/value pairs to the function. For example, a name/value pair for color could be `mimage(..., 'color' 'r')`.

Examples

```
madata = gprread('mouse_a1wt.gpr');
mimage(madata,'F635 Median');
figure;
mimage(madata,'F635 Median - B635',...
       'Title','Cy5 Channel FG - BG');
colormap hot
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `maboxplot`, `magetfield`, `mairplot`, `maloglog`, `malowess`

MATLAB function: `imagesc`

Purpose Perform rank invariant set normalization on gene expression values from two experimental conditions or phenotypes

Syntax

```
NormDataY = mainvarsetnorm(DataX, DataY)
NormDataY = mainvarsetnorm(..., 'Thresholds',
ThresholdsValue, ...)
NormDataY = mainvarsetnorm(..., 'Exclude',
ExcludeValue, ...)
NormDataY = mainvarsetnorm(..., 'Prctile',
PrctileValue, ...)
NormDataY = mainvarsetnorm(..., 'Iterate',
IterateValue, ...)
NormDataY = mainvarsetnorm(..., 'Method', MethodValue, ...)
NormDataY = mainvarsetnorm(..., 'Span', SpanValue, ...)
NormDataY = mainvarsetnorm(..., 'Showplot', ShowplotValue,
...)
```

Arguments

DataX Vector of gene expression values from a single experimental condition or phenotype, where each row corresponds to a gene. These data points are used as the baseline.

DataY Vector of gene expression values from a single experimental condition or phenotype, where each row corresponds to a gene. These data points will be normalized using the baseline.

ThresholdsValue Property to set the thresholds for the lowest average rank and the highest average rank, which are used to determine the invariant set. The rank invariant set is a set of data points whose proportional rank difference is smaller than a given threshold. The threshold for each data point is determined by interpolating between the threshold for the lowest average rank and the threshold for the highest average rank. Select these two thresholds empirically to limit the spread of the invariant set, but allow enough data points to determine the normalization relationship.

ThresholdsValue is a 1-by-2 vector [*LT*, *HT*], where *LT* is the threshold for the lowest average rank and *HT* is threshold for the highest average rank. Values must be between 0 and 1. Default is [0.03, 0.07].

ExcludeValue Property to filter the invariant set of data points, by excluding the data points whose average rank (between *DataX* and *DataY*) is in the highest *N* ranked averages or lowest *N* ranked averages.

PrctileValue Property to stop the iteration process when the number of data points in the invariant set reaches *N* percent of the total number of input data points. Default is 1.

Note If you do not use this property, the iteration process continues until no more data points are eliminated.

IterateValue Property to control the iteration process for determining the invariant set of data points. Enter true to repeat the process until either no more data points are eliminated, or a predetermined percentage of data points (*StopPrctileValue*) is reached. Enter false to perform only one iteration of the process. Default is true.

Tip Select false for smaller data sets, typically less than 200 data points.

MethodValue Property to select the smoothing method used to normalize the data. Enter 'lowess' or 'runmedian'. Default is 'lowess'.

SpanValue Property to set the window size for the smoothing method. If *SpanValue* is less than 1, the window size is that percentage of the number of data points. If *SpanValue* is equal to or greater than 1, the window size is of size *SpanValue*. Default is 0.05, which corresponds to a window size equal to 5% of the total number of data points in the invariant set.

ShowplotValue Property to control the plotting of a pair of M-A scatter plots (before and after normalization). M is the ratio between *DataX* and *DataY*. A is the average of *DataX* and *DataY*. Enter true to create the pair of M-A scatter plots. Default is false.

Description

$NormDataY = mainvarsetnorm(DataX, DataY)$ normalizes the values in *DataY*, a vector of gene expression values, to a reference vector, *DataX*, using the invariant set method. *NormDataY* is a vector of normalized gene expression values from *DataY*.

mainvarsetnorm

Specifically, `mainvarsetnorm`:

- Determines the proportional rank difference (*prd*) for each pair of ranks, *RankX* and *RankY*, from the two vectors of gene expression values, *DataX* and *DataY*.

$$prd = \text{abs}(\text{RankX} - \text{RankY})$$

- Determines the invariant set of data points by selecting data points whose proportional rank differences (*prd*) are below *threshold*, which is a predetermined threshold for a given data point (defined by the *ThresholdsValue* property). It optionally repeats the process until either no more data points are eliminated, or a predetermined percentage of data points is reached.

The invariant set is data points with a $prd < \text{threshold}$.

- Uses the invariant set of data points to calculate the lowest or running median smoothing curve, which is used to normalize the data in *DataY*.

Note If *DataX* or *DataY* contains NaN values, then *NormDataY* will also contain NaN values at the corresponding positions.

Tip `mainvarsetnorm` is useful for correcting for dye bias in two-color microarray data.

NormDataY = `mainvarsetnorm(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties that use property name/value pairs in any order. These property name/value pairs are as follows:

NormDataY = `mainvarsetnorm(..., 'Thresholds', ThresholdsValue, ...)` sets the thresholds for the lowest average rank and the highest average rank, which are used to determine the invariant set. The rank invariant set is a set of data points whose proportional rank difference is smaller than a given threshold. The threshold for each data point is determined by interpolating between the threshold for the lowest average rank and the threshold for the highest average rank. Select these two thresholds empirically to limit the spread of the invariant set, but allow enough data points to determine the normalization relationship.

ThresholdsValue is a 1-by-2 vector [*LT*, *HT*], where *LT* is the threshold for the lowest average rank and *HT* is threshold for the highest average rank. Values must be between 0 and 1. Default is [0.03, 0.07].

NormDataY = `mainvarsetnorm(..., 'Exclude', ExcludeValue, ...)` filters the invariant set of data points, by excluding the data points whose average rank (between *DataX* and *DataY*) is in the highest *N* ranked averages or lowest *N* ranked averages.

NormDataY = `mainvarsetnorm(..., 'Prctile', PrctileValue, ...)` stops the iteration process when the number of data points in the invariant set reaches *N* percent of the total number of input data points. Default is 1.

Note If you do not use this property, the iteration process continues until no more data points are eliminated.

NormDataY = `mainvarsetnorm(..., 'Iterate', IterateValue, ...)` controls the iteration process for determining the invariant set of data points. When *IterateValue* is true, `mainvarsetnorm` repeats the process until either no more data points are eliminated, or a predetermined percentage of data points (*PrctileValue*) is reached. When *IterateValue* is false, performs only one iteration of the process. Default is true.

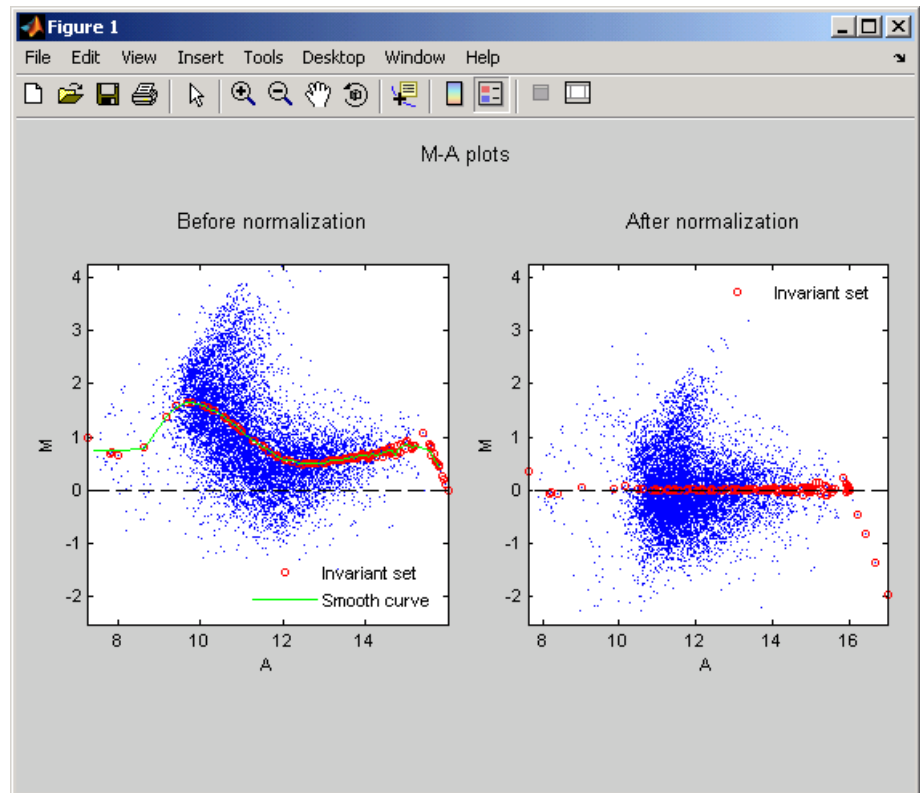
Tip Select false for smaller data sets, typically less than 200 data points.

NormDataY = mainvarsetnorm(..., 'Method', *MethodValue*, ...) selects the smoothing method for normalizing the data. When *MethodValue* is 'lowess', mainvarsetnorm uses the lowess method. When *MethodValue* is 'runmedian', mainvarsetnorm uses the running median method. Default is 'lowess'.

NormDataY = mainvarsetnorm(..., 'Span', *SpanValue*, ...) sets the window size for the smoothing method. If *SpanValue* is less than 1, the window size is that percentage of the number of data points. If *SpanValue* is equal to or greater than 1, the window size is of size *SpanValue*. Default is 0.05, which corresponds to a window size equal to 5% of the total number of data points in the invariant set.

NormDataY = mainvarsetnorm(..., 'Showplot', *ShowplotValue*, ...) determines whether to plot a pair of M-A scatter plots (before and after normalization). M is the ratio between *DataX* and *DataY*. A is the average of *DataX* and *DataY*. When *ShowplotValue* is true, mainvarsetnorm plots the M-A scatter plots. Default is false.

The following example illustrates how mainvarsetnorm can correct for dye bias or scanning differences between two channels of data from a two-color microarray experiment. Under perfect experimental conditions, data points with equal expression values would fall along the $M = 0$ line, which represents a gene expression ratio of 1. However, dye bias caused the measured values in one channel to be higher than the other channel, as seen in the Before Normalization plot. Normalization corrected the variance, as seen in the After Normalization plot.



Examples

The following example extracts data from a GPR file and creates two column vectors of gene expression values from different experimental conditions. It then normalizes one of the data sets.

```
maStruct = gprread('mouse_a1wt.gpr');
cy3data = magetfield(maStruct, 'F635 Median');
cy5data = magetfield(maStruct, 'F532 Median');
Normcy5data = mainvarsetnorm(cy3data, cy5data);
```

References

[1] Tseng, G.C., Oh, Min-Kyu, Rohlin, L., Liao, J.C., and Wong, W.H. (2001) Issues in cDNA microarray analysis: quality filtering, channel

mainvarsetnorm

normalization, models of variations and assessment of gene effects. *Nucleic Acids Research*. 29, 2549-2557.

[2] Hoffmann, R., Seidl, T., and Dugas, M. (2002) Profound effect of normalization on detection of differentially expressed genes in oligonucleotide microarray data analysis. *Genome Biology*. 3(7): research 0033.1-0033.11.

See Also

affyinvarsetnorm, malowess, manorm, quantilenorm

Purpose Create intensity versus ratio scatter plot of microarray data

Syntax

```
mairplot(DataX, DataY)
[Intensity, Ratio] = mairplot(DataX, DataY)
[Intensity, Ratio, H] = mairplot(DataX, DataY)
... = mairplot(..., 'Type', TypeValue, ...)
... = mairplot(..., 'LogTrans', LogTransValue, ...)
... = mairplot(..., 'FactorLines', FactorLinesValue, ...)
... = mairplot(..., 'Title', TitleValue, ...)
... = mairplot(..., 'Labels', LabelsValue, ...)
... = mairplot(..., 'Normalize', NormalizeValue, ...)
... = mairplot(..., 'LowessOptions', LowessOptionsValue, ...)
... = mairplot(..., 'Showplot', ShowplotValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>DataX, DataY</i>	Vectors of gene expression values where each row corresponds to a gene. For example, in a two-color microarray experiment, <i>DataX</i> could be cy3 intensity values and <i>DataY</i> could be cy5 intensity values.
<i>TypeValue</i>	String that specifies the plot type. Choices are 'IR' (plots \log_{10} of the product of the <i>DataX</i> and <i>DataY</i> intensities versus \log_2 of the intensity ratios) or 'MA' (plots $(1/2)\log_2$ of the product of the <i>DataX</i> and <i>DataY</i> intensities versus \log_2 of the intensity ratios). Default is 'IR'.
<i>LogTransValue</i>	Controls the conversion of data in <i>X</i> and <i>Y</i> from natural scale to \log_2 scale. Set <i>LogTransValue</i> to false, when the data is already \log_2 scale. Default is true, which assumes the data is natural scale.

FactorLinesValue Adds lines to the plot showing a factor of N change. Default is 2, which corresponds to a level of 1 and -1 on a \log_2 scale.

Tip You can also change the factor lines interactively, after creating the plot.

TitleValue String that specifies a title for the plot.

LabelsValue Cell array of labels for the data. If labels are defined, then clicking a point on the plot shows the label corresponding to that point.

NormalizeValue Controls the display of lowess normalized ratio values. Enter true to display to lowess normalized ratio values. Default is false.

Tip You can also normalize the data from the MAIR Plot window, after creating the plot.

LowessOptionsValue Cell array of one, two, or three property name/value pairs in any order that affect the lowess normalization. Choices for property name/value pairs are:

- 'Order', *OrderValue*
- 'Robust', *RobustValue*
- 'Span', *SpanValue*

For more information on the preceding property name/value pairs, see malowess.

ShowplotValue Controls the display of the scatter plot. Choices are true (default) or false.

Return Values

<i>Intensity</i>	Vector containing intensity values for the microarray gene expression data, calculated as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • \log_{10} of the product of the <i>DataX</i> and <i>DataY</i> intensities (when <i>Type</i> is 'IR') • $(1/2)\log_2$ of the product of the <i>DataX</i> and <i>DataY</i> intensities (when <i>Type</i> is 'MA')
<i>Ratio</i>	Vector containing ratios of the microarray gene expression data, calculated as $\log_2(\text{DataX}./\text{DataY})$.
<i>H</i>	Handle of the plot.

Description

`mairplot(DataX, DataY)` creates a scatter plot that plots \log_{10} of the product of the *DataX* and *DataY* intensities versus \log_2 of the intensity ratios.

`[Intensity, Ratio] = mairplot(DataX, DataY)` returns the intensity and ratio values. If you set 'Normalize' to true, the returned ratio values are normalized.

`[Intensity, Ratio, H] = mairplot(DataX, DataY)` returns the handle of the plot.

`... = mairplot(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `mairplot` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`... = mairplot(..., 'Type', TypeValue, ...)` specifies the plot type. Choices are 'IR' (plots \log_{10} of the product of the *DataX* and *DataY* intensities versus \log_2 of the intensity ratios) or 'MA' (plots $(1/2)\log_2$ of the product of the *DataX* and *DataY* intensities versus \log_2 of the intensity ratios). Default is 'IR'.

`... = mairplot(..., 'LogTrans', LogTransValue, ...)` controls the conversion of data in X and Y from natural to \log_2 scale. Set *LogTransValue* to false, when the data is already \log_2 scale. Default is true, which assumes the data is natural scale.

`... = mairplot(..., 'FactorLines', FactorLinesValue, ...)` adds lines to the plot showing a factor of N change. Default is 2, which corresponds to a level of 1 and -1 on a \log_2 scale.

Tip You can also change the factor lines interactively, after creating the plot.

`... = mairplot(..., 'Title', TitleValue, ...)` specifies a title for the plot.

`... = mairplot(..., 'Labels', LabelsValue, ...)` specifies a cell array of labels for the data. If labels are defined, then clicking a point on the plot shows the label corresponding to that point.

`... = mairplot(..., 'Normalize', NormalizeValue, ...)` controls the display of lowess normalized ratio values. Enter true to display to lowess normalized ratio values. Default is false.

Tip You can also normalize the data from the MAIR Plot window, after creating the plot.

`... = mairplot(..., 'LowessOptions', LowessOptionsValue, ...)` lets you specify up to three property name/value pairs (in any order) that affect the lowess normalization. Choices for property name/value pairs are:

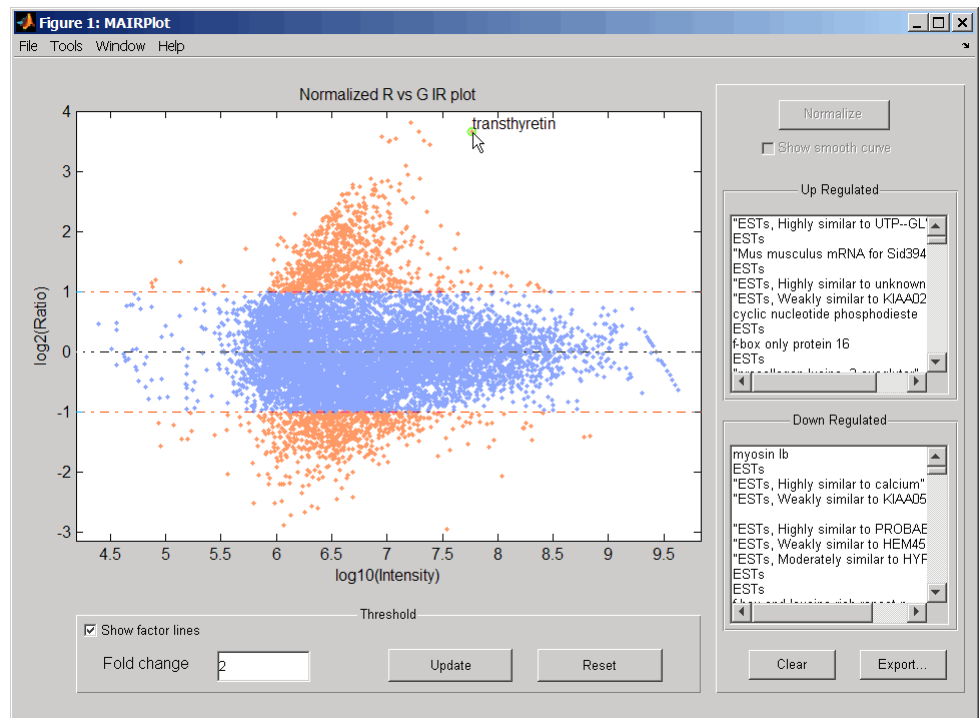
- 'Order', *OrderValue*
- 'Robust', *RobustValue*

- 'Span', *SpanValue*

For more information on the previous three property name/value pairs, see the *malowess* function.

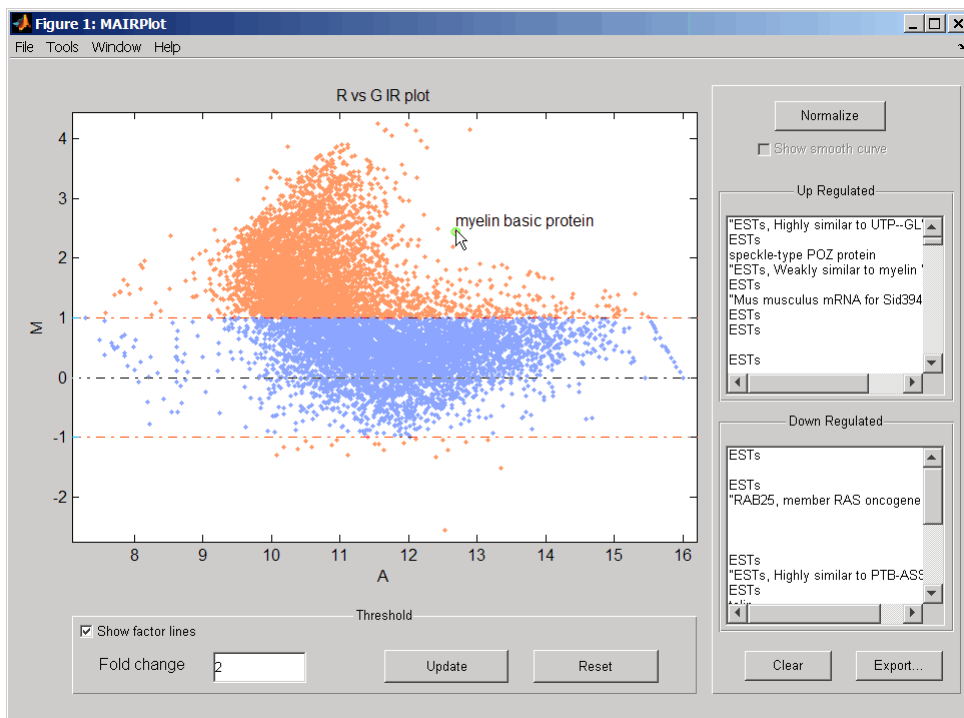
`... = mairplot(..., 'Showplot', ShowplotValue, ...)` controls the display of the scatter plot. Choices are true (default) or false.

Following is an IR plot of normalized data.



Following is an M-A plot of unnormalized data.

mairplot



The intensity versus ratio scatter plot displays the following:

- \log_{10} (Intensity) versus \log_2 (Ratio) scatter plot of genes.
- Two horizontal fold change lines at a fold change level of 2, which corresponds to a ratio of 1 and -1 on a \log_2 (Ratio) scale. (Lines will be at different fold change levels, if you used the 'FactorLines' property.)
- Data points for genes that are considered differentially expressed (outside of the fold change lines) appear in orange.

After you display the intensity versus ratio scatter plot, you can interactively do the following:

- Adjust the horizontal fold change lines by click-dragging one line or entering a value in the **Fold Change** text box, then clicking **Update**.
- Display labels for data points by clicking a data point.
- Select a gene from the **Up Regulated** or **Down Regulated** list to highlight the corresponding data point in the plot. Press and hold **Ctrl** or **Shift** to select multiple genes.
- Zoom the plot by selecting **Tools > Zoom In** or **Tools > Zoom Out**.
- View lists of significantly up-regulated and down-regulated genes, and optionally, export the gene labels and indices to a structure in the MATLAB workspace by clicking **Export**.
- Normalize the data by clicking the **Normalize** button, then selecting whether to show the normalized plot in a separate window. If you show the normalized plot in a separate window, the **Show smooth curve** check box becomes available in the original (unnormalized) plot.

Tip To select different lowess normalization options before normalizing, select **Tools > Set LOWESS Normalization Options**, then select options from the Options dialog box.

Examples

- 1 Use the `gprread` function to create a structure containing microarray data.

```
maStruct = gprread('mouse_a1wt.gpr');
```

- 2 Use the `magetfield` function to extract the green (cy3) and red (cy5) signals from the structure.

mairplot

```
cy3data = magetfield(maStruct, 'F635 Median');  
cy5data = magetfield(maStruct, 'F532 Median');
```

- 3** Create an intensity versus ratio scatter plot of the cy3 and cy5 data. Normalize the data and add a title and labels:

```
mairplot(cy3data, cy5data, 'Normalize', true, ...  
        'Title', 'Normalized R vs G IR plot', ...  
        'Labels', maStruct.Names)
```

- 4** Return intensity values and ratios without displaying the plot.

```
[intensities, ratios] = mairplot(cy3data, cy5data, 'Showplot', false);
```

References

- [1] Quackenbush, J. (2002). Microarray Data Normalization and Transformation. *Nature Genetics Suppl.* 32, 496–501.
- [2] Dudoit, S., Yang, Y.H., Callow, M.J., and Speed, T.P. (2002). Statistical Methods for Identifying Differentially Expressed Genes in Replicated cDNA Microarray Experiments. *Statistica Sinica* 12, 111–139.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `maboxplot`, `magetfield`, `maimage`, `mainvarsetnorm`, `maloglog`, `malowess`, `manorm`, `matteest`, `mavolcanoplot`

Purpose

Create loglog plot of microarray data

Syntax

```
maloglog(X, Y, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue...)
maloglog(..., 'FactorLines', N)
maloglog(..., 'Title', TitleValue)
maloglog(..., 'Labels', LabelsValues)
maloglog(..., 'HandleGraphicsName', HGValue)
H = maloglog(...)
```

Arguments

<i>X</i>	A numeric array of microarray expression values from a single experimental condition.
<i>Y</i>	A numeric array of microarray expression values from a single experimental condition.
<i>N</i>	Property to add two lines to the plot showing a factor of <i>N</i> change.
<i>TitleValue</i>	A string to use as the title for the plot.
<i>LabelsValue</i>	A cell array of labels for the data in <i>X</i> and <i>Y</i> . If you specify <i>LabelsValue</i> , then clicking a data point in the plot shows the label corresponding to that point.

Description

`maloglog(X, Y, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue...)` creates a loglog scatter plot of *X* versus *Y*. *X* and *Y* are numeric arrays of microarray expression values from two different experimental conditions.

`maloglog(..., 'FactorLines', N)` adds two lines to the plot showing a factor of *N* change.

`maloglog(..., 'Title', TitleValue)` allows you to specify a title for the plot.

`maloglog(..., 'Labels', LabelsValues)` allows you to specify a cell array of labels for the data. If *LabelsValues* is defined, then clicking a data point in the plot shows the label corresponding to that point.

`maloglog(..., 'HandleGraphicsName', HGValue)` allows you to pass optional Handle Graphics property name/property value pairs to the function.

maloglog

H = maloglog(...) returns the handle to the plot.

Examples

```
maStruct = gprread('mouse_a1wt.gpr');
Red = magetfield(maStruct,'F635 Median');
Green = magetfield(maStruct,'F532 Median');
maloglog(Red,Green,'title','Red vs Green');
% Add factorlines and labels
figure
maloglog(Red,Green,'title','Red vs Green',...
         'FactorLines',2,'LABELS',maStruct.Names);
% Now create a normalized plot
figure
maloglog(manorm(Red),manorm(Green),'title',...
         'Normalized Red vs Green','FactorLines',2,...
         'LABELS',maStruct.Names);
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `maboxplot`, `magetfield`, `mainvarsetnorm`, `mamage`, `mairplot`, `malowess`, `manorm`, `matteest`, `mavolcanoplot`

MATLAB function `loglog`

Purpose

Smooth microarray data using Lowess method

Syntax

```
YSmooth = malowess(X, Y)
malowess(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
malowess(..., 'Order', OrderValue ...)
malowess(..., 'Robust', RobustValue ...)
malowess(..., 'Span', SpanValue ...)
```

Arguments

<i>X, Y</i>	Scatter data.
<i>OrderValue</i>	Property to select the order of the algorithm. Enter either 1 (linear fit) or 2 (quadratic fit). The default order is 1.
<i>RobustValue</i>	Property to select a robust fit. Enter either true or false.
<i>SpanValue</i>	Property to specify the window size. The default value is 0.05 (5% of total points in <i>X</i>)

Description

YSmooth = malowess(*X*, *Y*) smooths scatter data (*X*, *Y*) using the Lowess smoothing method. The default window size is 5% of the length of *X*.

malowess(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...) defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

malowess(..., 'Order', OrderValue ...) chooses the order of the algorithm. Note that Curve Fitting Toolbox refers to Lowess smoothing of order 2 as Loess smoothing.

malowess(..., 'Robust', RobustValue ...) uses a robust fit when *RobustValue* is set to true. This option can take a long time to calculate.

malowess(..., 'Span', SpanValue ...) modifies the window size for the smoothing function. If *SpanValue* is less than 1, the window size is taken to be a fraction of the number of points in the data. If *SpanValue* is greater than 1, the window is of size *SpanValue*.

Examples

```
maStruct = gprread('mouse_a1wt.gpr');
cy3data = magetfield(maStruct, 'F635 Median');
cy5data = magetfield(maStruct, 'F532 Median');
[x,y] = mairplot(cy3data, cy5data);
drawnow
ysmooth = malowess(x,y);
hold on;
plot(x, ysmooth, 'rx')
ynorm = y - ysmooth;
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `affyinvarsetnorm`, `maboxplot`, `magetfield`, `maimage`, `mainvarsetnorm`, `mairplot`, `maloglog`, `manorm`, `quantilenorm`

Statistics Toolbox function `robustfit`

Purpose

Normalize microarray data

Syntax

```
XNorm = manorm(X)
XNorm = manorm(MAstruct, FieldName)
[XNorm, ColVal] = manorm(...)
manorm(..., 'Method', MethodValue)
manorm(..., 'Extra_Args', Extra_ArgsValue)
manorm(..., 'LogData', LogDataValue)
manorm(..., 'Percentile', PercentileValue)
manorm(..., 'Global', GlobalValue),
manorm(..., 'StructureOutput', StructureOutputValue)
manorm(..., 'NewColumnName', NewColumnNameValue)
```

Description

`XNorm = manorm(X)` scales the values in each column of microarray data (`X`) by dividing by the mean column intensity.

- `X` — Microarray data. Enter a vector or matrix.
- `XNorm` — Normalized microarray data.

`XNorm = manorm(MAstruct, FieldName)` scales the data for a field (`FieldName`) for each block or print-tip by dividing each block by the mean column intensity. The output is a matrix with each column corresponding to the normalized data for each block.

- `MAstruct` — Microarray structure.

`[XNorm, ColVal] = manorm(...)` returns the values used to normalize the data.

`manorm(..., 'Method', MethodValue)` allows you to choose the method for scaling or centering the data. *MethodValue* can be 'Mean' (default), 'Median', 'STD' (standard deviation), 'MAD' (median absolute deviation), or a function handle. If you pass a function handle, then the function should ignore NaNs and must return a single value per column of the input data.

`manorm(..., 'Extra_Args', Extra_ArgsValue)` allows you to pass extra arguments to the function *MethodValue*. *Extra_ArgsValue* must be a cell array.

`manorm(..., 'LogData', LogDataValue)`, when *LogDataValue* is true, works with log ratio data in which case the mean (or *MethodValue*) of each column is subtracted from the values in the columns, instead of dividing the column by the normalizing value.

`manorm(..., 'Percentile', PercentileValue)` only uses the percentile (*PercentileValue*) of the data preventing large outliers from skewing the normalization. If *PercentileValue* is a vector containing two values, then the range from the *PercentileValue(1)* percentile to the *PercentileValue(2)* percentile is used. The default value is 100, that is to use all the data in the data set.

`manorm(..., 'Global', GlobalValue)`, when *GlobalValue* is true, normalizes the values in the data set by the global mean (or *MethodValue*) of the data, as opposed to normalizing each column or block of the data independently.

`manorm(..., 'StructureOutput', StructureOutputValue)`, when *StructureOutputValue* is true, the input data is a structure returns the input structure with an additional data field for the normalized data.

`manorm(..., 'NewColumnName', NewColumnNameValue)`, when using *StructureOutput*, allows you to specify the name of the column that is appended to the list of *ColumnNames* in the structure. The default behavior is to prefix 'Block Normalized' to the *FieldName* string.

Examples

```
maStruct = gprread('mouse_a1wt.gpr');
% Extract some data of interest.
Red = magetfield(maStruct,'F635 Median');
Green = magetfield(maStruct,'F532 Median');
% Create a log-log plot.
maloglog(Red,Green,'factorlines',true)
% Center the data.
normRed = manorm(Red);
```

```
normGreen = manorm(Green);
% Create a log-log plot of the centered data.
figure
maloglog(normRed,normGreen,'title','Normalized','factorlines',true)

% Alternatively, you can work directly with the structure
normRedBs = manorm(maStruct,'F635 Median - B635');
normGreenBs = manorm(maStruct,'F532 Median - B532');
% Create a log-log plot of the centered data. This includes some
% zero values so turn off the warning.
figure
w = warning('off','Bioinfo:maloglog:ZeroValues');
warning('off','Bioinfo:maloglog:NegativeValues');
maloglog(normRedBs,normGreenBs,'title',...
          'Normalized Background-Subtracted Median Values',...
          'factorlines',true)
warning(w);
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `affyinvarsetnorm`, `maboxplot`, `magetfield`, `mainvarsetnorm`, `mairplot`, `maloglog`, `malowess`, `quantilenorm`, `rmasummary`

mapcaplot

Purpose Create Principal Component Analysis plot of microarray data

Syntax `mapcaplot(Data)`
`mapcaplot(Data, Label)`

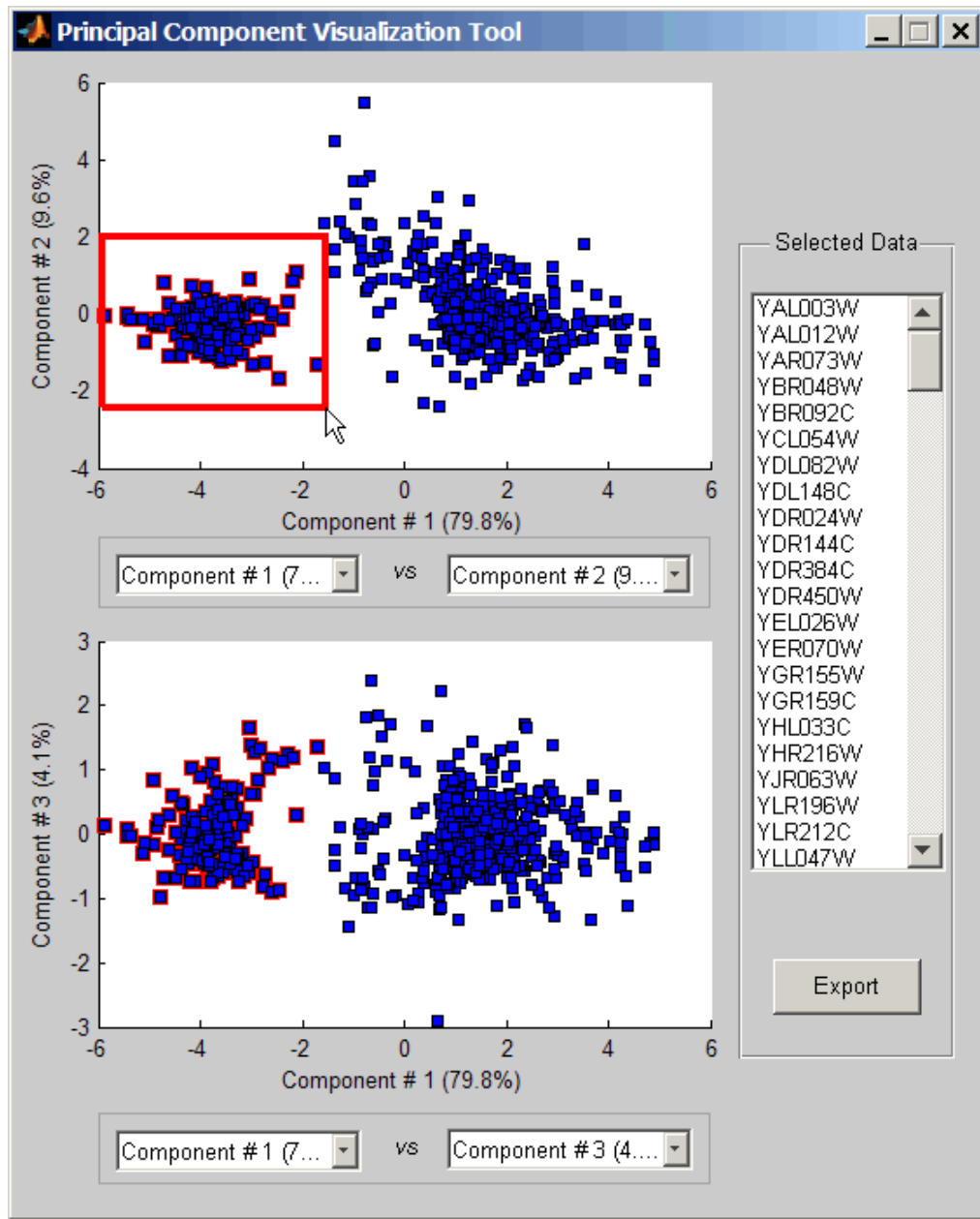
Arguments

Data Microarray expression profile data.

Label Cell array of strings representing labels for the data points.

Description `mapcaplot(Data)` creates 2-D scatter plots of principal components of the array `Data`.

`mapcaplot(Data, Label)` uses the elements of the cell array of strings `Label`, instead of the row numbers, to label the data points.



Once you plot the principal components, you can:

- Select principal components for the x and y axes from the drop-down list boxes below each scatter plot.
- Click a data point to display its label.
- Select a subset of data points by click-dragging a box around them. This will highlight the points in the selected region and the corresponding points in the other axes. The labels of the selected data points appear in the list box.
- Select a label in the list box to highlight the corresponding data point in the plot. Press and hold **Ctrl** or **Shift** to select multiple data points.
- Export the gene labels and indices to a structure in the MATLAB workspace by clicking **Export**.

Examples

```
load filteredyeastdata
mapcaplot(yeastvalues, genes)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `clustergram`, `mattest`, `mavolcanoplot`

Statistics Toolbox function: `princomp`

Purpose Perform two-tailed t-test to evaluate differential expression of genes from two experimental conditions or phenotypes

Syntax

```
PValues = mattest(DataX, DataY)
[PValues, TScores] = mattest(DataX, DataY)
[PValues, TScores, DFs] = mattest(DataX, DataY)
... = mattest(..., 'Permute', PermuteValue, ...)
... = mattest(..., 'Showhist', ShowhistValue, ...)
... = mattest(..., 'Showplot', ShowplotValue, ...)
... = mattest(..., 'Labels', LabelsValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>DataX, DataY</i>	Matrices of gene expression values where each row corresponds to a gene and each column corresponds to a replicate. <i>DataX</i> and <i>DataY</i> must have the same number of rows and are assumed to be normally distributed in each class with equal variances. <i>DataX</i> contains data from one experimental condition and <i>DataY</i> contains data from a different experimental condition. For example, in a two-color microarray experiment, <i>DataX</i> could be cy3 intensity values and <i>DataY</i> could be cy5 intensity values.
<i>PermuteValue</i>	Controls whether permutation tests are run, and if so, how many. Choices are true, false (default), or any integer greater than 2. If set to true, the number of permutations is 1000.
<i>ShowhistValue</i>	Controls the display of histograms of t-score distributions and p-value distributions. Choices are true or false (default).

ShowplotValue Controls the display of a normal t-score quantile plot. Choices are true or false (default). In the t-score quantile plot, data points with t-scores $> (1 - 1/(2N))$ or $< 1/(2N)$ display with red circles. N is the total number of genes.

LabelsValue Cell array of labels (typically gene names or probe set IDs) for each row in *DataX* and *DataY*. The labels display if you click a data point in the t-score quantile plot.

Return Values

PValues Column vector of p-values for each gene in *DataX* and *DataY*.

TScores Column vector of t-scores for each gene in *DataX* and *DataY*.

DFs Column vector containing the degree of freedom for each gene in *DataX* and *DataY*.

Description

PValues = `mattest(DataX, DataY)` compares the gene expression profiles in *DataX* and *DataY* and returns a p-value for each gene. *DataX* and *DataY* are matrices of gene expression values, in which each row corresponds to a gene, and each column corresponds to a replicate. *DataX* contains data from one experimental condition and *DataY* contains data from another experimental condition. *DataX* and *DataY* must have the same number of rows and are assumed to be normally distributed in each class with equal variances. *PValues* is a column vector of p-values for each gene.

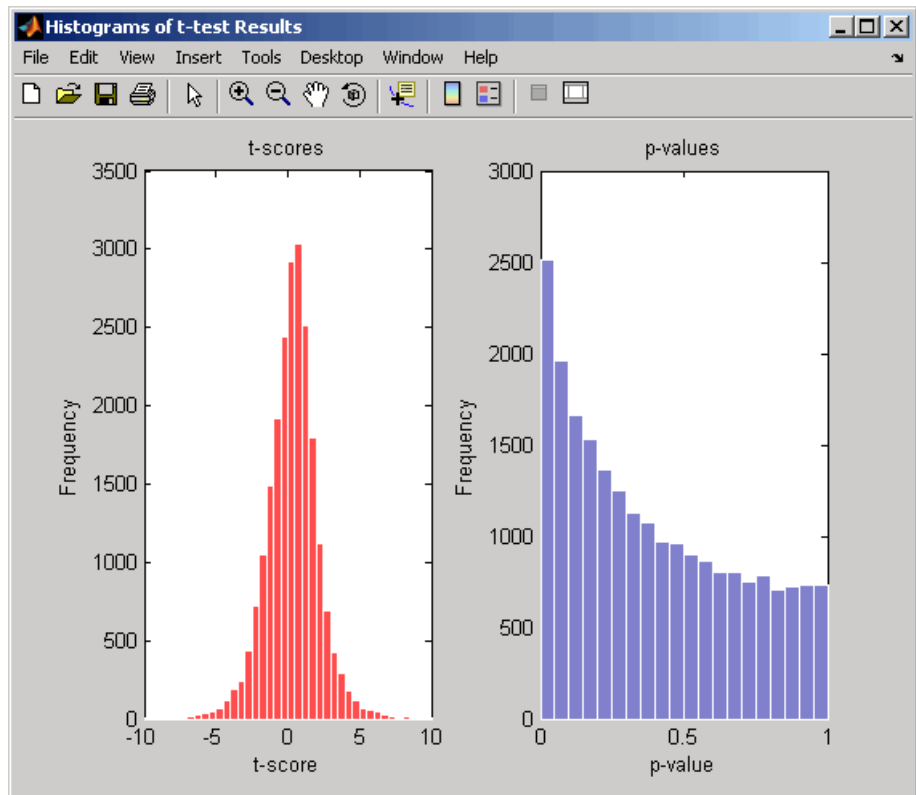
`[PValues, TScores] = mattest(DataX, DataY)` also returns a t-score for each gene in *DataX* and *DataY*. *TScores* is a column vector of t-scores for each gene.

[*PValues*, *TScores*, *DFs*] = `mattest(DataX, DataY)` also returns *DFs*, a column vector containing the degree of freedom for each gene across both data sets, *DataX* and *DataY*.

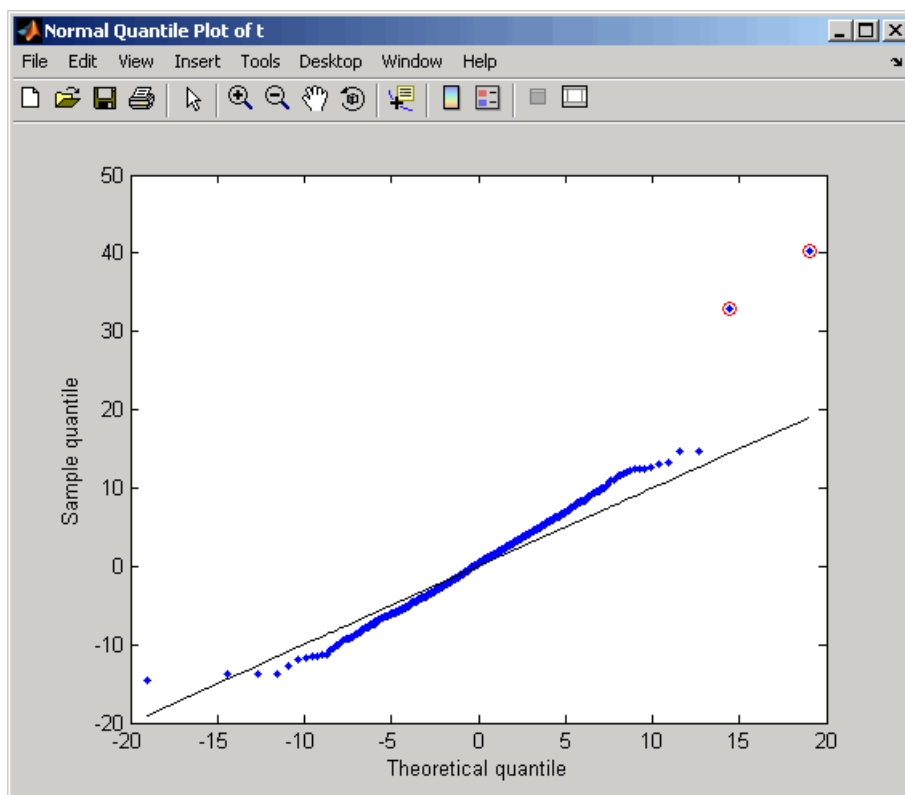
`... = mattest(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `mattest` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`... = mattest(..., 'Permute', PermuteValue, ...)` controls whether permutation tests are run, and if so, how many. *PermuteValue* can be true, false (default), or any integer greater than 2. If set to true, the number of permutations is 1000.

`... = mattest(..., 'Showhist', ShowhistValue, ...)` controls the display of histograms of t-score distributions and p-value distributions. When *ShowhistValue* is true, `mattest` displays histograms. Default is false.



... = `mattest(..., 'Showplot', ShowplotValue, ...)` controls the display of a normal t-score quantile plot. When `ShowplotValue` is true, `mattest` displays a quantile-quantile plot. Default is false. In the t-score quantile plot, the black diagonal line represents the sample quantile being equal to the theoretical quantile. Data points of genes considered to be differentially expressed lie farther away from this line. Specifically, data points with t-scores $> (1 - 1/(2N))$ or $< 1/(2N)$ display with red circles. N is the total number of genes.



`... = mattest(..., 'Labels', LabelsValue, ...)` controls the display of labels when you click a data point in the t-score quantile plot. *LabelsValue* is a cell array of labels (typically gene names or probe set IDs) for each row in *DataX* and *DataY*.

Examples

- 1 Load the MAT file, included with Bioinformatics Toolbox, that contains Affymetrix data from a prostate cancer study, specifically probe intensity data from Affymetrix HG-U133A GeneChip arrays. The two variables in the MAT file, *dependentData* and *independentData*, are two matrices of gene expression values from two experimental conditions.

```
load prostatecancerexpdata
```

- 2** Calculate the p-values and t-scores for the gene expression values in the two matrices and display a normal t-score quantile plot.

```
[pvalues,tcores] = mattest(dependentData, independentData,...  
                          'showplot',true);
```

- 3** Calculate the p-values and t-scores again using permutation tests (1000 permutations) and displaying histograms of t-score distributions and p-value distributions.

```
[pvalues,tcores] = mattest(dependentData,independentData,...  
                          'permute',true,'showhist',true,...  
                          'showplot',true);
```

The prostatecancerexpdata.mat file used in this example contains data from Best et al., 2005.

References

- [1] Huber, W., von Heydebreck, A., Sültmann, H., Poustka, A., and Vingron, M. (2002). Variance stabilization applied to microarray data calibration and to the quantification of differential expression. *Bioinformatics 18 Suppl1*, S96–S104.
- [2] Best, C.J.M., Gillespie, J.W., Yi, Y., Chandramouli, G.V.R., Perlmutter, M.A., Gathright, Y., Erickson, H.S., Georgevich, L., Tangrea, M.A., Duray, P.H., Gonzalez, S., Velasco, A., Linehan, W.M., Matusik, R.J., Price, D.K., Figg, W.D., Emmert-Buck, M.R., and Chuaqui, R.F. (2005). Molecular alterations in primary prostate cancer after androgen ablation therapy. *Clinical Cancer Research 11*, 6823–6834.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: maboxplot, mafdr, mainvarsetnorm, mairplot, maloglog, malowess, manorm, mavolcanoplot, rmasummary

Purpose Create significance versus gene expression ratio (fold change) scatter plot of microarray data

Syntax

```
mavolcanoplot(DataX, DataY, PValues)
SigStructure = mavolcanoplot(DataX, DataY, PValues)
... mavolcanoplot(..., 'Labels', LabelsValue, ...)
... mavolcanoplot(..., 'LogTrans', LogTransValue, ...)
... mavolcanoplot(..., 'PCutoff', PCutoffValue, ...)
... mavolcanoplot(..., 'Foldchange', FoldchangeValue, ...)
```

Arguments

DataX Matrix or vector of gene expression values from a single experimental condition. If *DataX* is a matrix, each row is a gene, each column is a sample, and an average expression value is calculated for each gene.

Note If the values in *DataX* are natural scale, use the `LogTrans` property to convert them to log 2 scale.

DataY Matrix or vector of gene expression values from a single experimental condition. If a matrix, each row is a gene, each column is a sample, and an average expression value is calculated for each gene.

Note If the values in *DataY* are natural scale, use the `LogTrans` property to convert them to log 2 scale.

mavolcanoplot

<i>PValues</i>	Vector of p-values for each gene in data sets from two different experimental conditions.
<i>LabelsValue</i>	Cell array of labels (typically gene names or probe set IDs) for the data. After creating the plot, you can click a data point to display the label associated with it. If you do not provide a <i>LabelsValue</i> , data points are labeled with row numbers from <i>DataX</i> and <i>DataY</i> .
<i>LogTransValue</i>	Property to control the conversion of data in <i>DataX</i> and <i>DataY</i> from natural scale to log 2 scale. Enter true to convert data to log 2 scale, or false. Default is false, which assumes data is already log 2 scale.

PCutoffValue

Lets you specify a cutoff p-value to define data points that are statistically significant. This value is displayed graphically as a horizontal line on the plot. Default is 0.05, which is equivalent to 1.3010 on the $-\log_{10}$ (p-value) scale.

Note You can also change the p-value cutoff interactively after creating the plot.

FoldchangeValue

Lets you specify a ratio fold change to define data points that are differentially expressed. Default is 2, which corresponds to a ratio of 1 and -1 on a \log_2 (ratio) scale.

Note You can also change the fold change interactively after creating the plot.

Description

`mavolcanoplot(DataX, DataY, PValues)` creates a scatter plot of gene expression data, plotting significance versus fold change of gene expression ratios. It uses the average gene expression values from two data sets, *DataX* and *DataY*, for each gene in the data sets. It plots significance as the $-\log_{10}$ (p-value) from the vector, *PValues*. *DataX* and *DataY* can be vectors or matrices.

`SigStructure = mavolcanoplot(DataX, DataY, PValues)` returns a structure containing information for genes that are considered to be both statistically significant (above the p-value cutoff) and significantly differentially expressed (outside of the fold change values). The fields within *SigStructure* are sorted by p-value and include:

- Name
- PCutoff

- FCThreshold
- GeneLabels
- PValues
- FoldChanges

`... mavolcanoplot(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties that use property name/value pairs in any order. These property name/value pairs are as follows:

`... mavolcanoplot(..., 'Labels', LabelsValue, ...)` lets you provide a cell array of labels (typically gene names or probe set IDs) for the data. After creating the plot, you can click a data point to display the label associated with it. If you do not provide a *LabelsValue*, data points are labeled with row numbers from *DataX* and *DataY*.

`... mavolcanoplot(..., 'LogTrans', LogTransValue, ...)` controls the conversion of data from *DataX* and *DataY* to \log_2 scale. When *LogTransValue* is true, `mavolcanoplot` converts data from natural to \log_2 scale. Default is false, which assumes the data is already \log_2 scale.

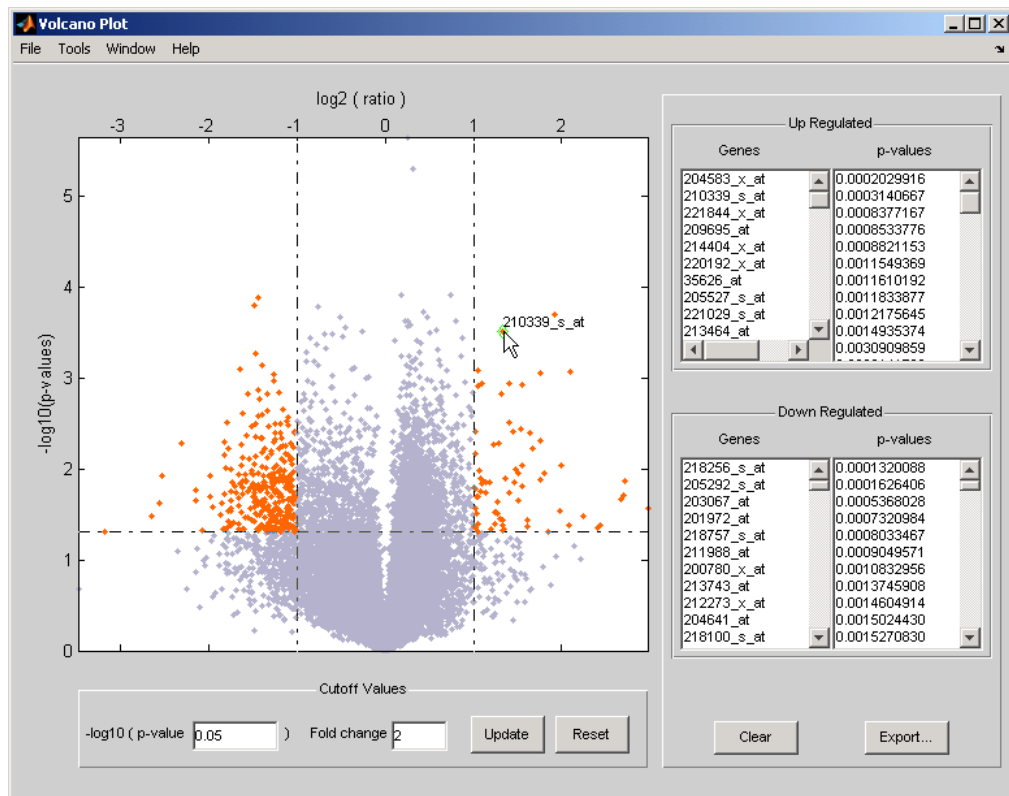
`... mavolcanoplot(..., 'PCutoff', PCutoffValue, ...)` lets you specify a p-value cutoff to define data points that are statistically significant. This value displays graphically as a horizontal line on the plot. Default is 0.05, which is equivalent to 1.3010 on the $-\log_{10}$ (p-value) scale.

Note You can also change the p-value cutoff interactively after creating the plot.

`... mavolcanoplot(..., 'Foldchange', FoldchangeValue, ...)` lets you specify a ratio fold change to define data points that are differentially expressed. Fold changes display graphically as two

vertical lines on the plot. Default is 2, which corresponds to a ratio of 1 and -1 on a \log_2 (ratio) scale.

Note You can also change the fold change interactively after creating the plot.



The volcano plot displays the following:

- $-\log_{10}(\text{p-value})$ versus $\log_2(\text{ratio})$ scatter plot of genes

- Two vertical fold change lines at a fold change level of 2, which corresponds to a ratio of 1 and -1 on a \log_2 (ratio) scale. (Lines will be at different fold change levels, if you used the 'Foldchange' property.)
- One horizontal line at the 0.05 p-value level, which is equivalent to 1.3010 on the $-\log_{10}$ (p-value) scale. (The line will be at a different p-value level, if you used the 'PCutoff' property.)
- Data points for genes that are considered both statistically significant (above the p-value line) and differentially expressed (outside of the fold changes lines) appear in orange.

After you display the volcano scatter plot, you can interactively:

- Adjust the vertical fold change lines by click-dragging one line or entering a value in the **Fold Change** text box.
- Adjust the horizontal p-value cutoff line by click-dragging or entering a value in the **p-value Cutoff** text box.
- Display labels for data points by clicking a data point.
- Select a gene from the **Up Regulated** or **Down Regulated** list to highlight the corresponding data point in the plot. Press and hold **Ctrl** or **Shift** to select multiple genes.
- Zoom the plot by selecting **Tools > Zoom In** or **Tools > Zoom Out**.
- View lists of significantly up-regulated and down-regulated genes and their associated p-values, and optionally, export the labels, p-values, and fold changes to a structure in the MATLAB Workspace by clicking **Export**.

Examples

- 1 Load a MAT file, included with Bioinformatics Toolbox, which contains Affymetrix data variables, including dependentData and

independentData, two matrices of gene expression values from two experimental conditions.

```
load prostatecancerexpdata
```

- 2 Use the `mattest` function to calculate p-values for the gene expression values in the two matrices.

```
pvalues = mattest(dependentData, independentData);
```

- 3 Using the two matrices, the pvalues calculated by `mattest`, and the `probesetIDs` column vector of labels provided, use `mavolcanoplot` to create a significance versus gene expression ratio scatter plot of the microarray data from the two experimental conditions.

```
mavolcanoplot(dependentData, independentData, pvalues,...
'Labels', probesetIDs)
```

The `prostatecancerexpdata.mat` file used in the previous example contains data from Best et al., 2005.

References

- [1] Cui, X., Churchill, G.A. (2003). Statistical tests for differential expression in cDNA microarray experiments. *Genome Biology* 4, 210.
- [2] Best, C.J.M., Gillespie, J.W., Yi, Y., Chandramouli, G.V.R., Perlmutter, M.A., Gathright, Y., Erickson, H.S., Georgevich, L., Tangrea, M.A., Duray, P.H., Gonzalez, S., Velasco, A., Linehan, W.M., Matusik, R.J., Price, D.K., Figg, W.D., Emmert-Buck, M.R., and Chuaqui, R.F. (2005). Molecular alterations in primary prostate cancer after androgen ablation therapy. *Clinical Cancer Research* 11, 6823–6834.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `maboxplot`, `maimage`, `mainvarsetnorm`, `mairplot`, `maloglog`, `malowess`, `manorm`, `mapcaplot`, `mattest`

molweight

Purpose Calculate molecular weight of amino acid sequence

Syntax `molweight(SeqAA)`

Arguments

`SeqAA` Amino acid sequence. Enter a character string or a vector of integers from the Amino Acid Lookup on page 2-56. Examples: 'ARN', [1 2 3]. You can also enter a structure with the field Sequence.

Description `molweight(SeqAA)` calculates the molecular weight for the amino acid sequence `SeqAA`.

Examples

1 Get an amino acid sequence from the NCBI Genpept Database

```
rhodopsin = getgenpept('NP_000530');
```

2 Calculate the molecular weight of the sequence.

```
rhodopsinMW = molweight(rhodopsin)
```

```
rhodopsinMW =
```

```
3.8892e+004
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `aaccount`, `atomiccomp`, `isoelectric`, `proteinplot`

Purpose Display and manipulate 3-D molecule structure

Syntax

```
molviewer  
molviewer(File)  
molviewer(pdbID)  
molviewer(pdbStruct)  
FigureHandle = molviewer(...)
```

Arguments

<i>File</i>	<p>String specifying one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• File name of a file on the MATLAB search path or in the MATLAB Current Directory• Path and file name• URL pointing to a file (URL must begin with a protocol such as http://, ftp://, or file://) <p>The referenced file is a molecule model file, such as a Protein Data Bank (PDB)-formatted file (ASCII text file). Valid file types include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• PDB• MOL (MDL)• SDF• XYZ• SMOL• JVXL• CIF/mmCIF
<i>pdbID</i>	<p>String specifying a unique identifier for a protein structure record in the PDB database.</p> <hr/> <p>Note Each structure in the PDB database is represented by a four-character alphanumeric identifier. For example, 4hbb is the identifier for hemoglobin.</p> <hr/>
<i>pdbStruct</i>	<p>A structure containing a field for each PDB record, such as returned by the <code>getpdb</code> or <code>pdbread</code> function.</p>

Return Values

FigureHandle Figure handle to a Molecule Viewer window.

Description

molviewer opens a blank Molecule Viewer window. You can display 3-D molecular structures by selecting **File > Open**, **File > Load PDB ID**, or **File > Open URL**.

molviewer(*File*) reads the data in a molecule model file, *File*, and opens a Molecule Viewer window displaying the 3-D molecular structure for viewing and manipulation.

molviewer(*pdbID*) retrieves the data for a protein structure record, *pdbID*, from the PDB database and opens a Molecule Viewer window displaying the 3-D molecular structure for viewing and manipulation.

molviewer(*pdbStruct*) reads the data from *pdbStruct*, a structure containing a field for each PDB record, and opens a Molecule Viewer window displaying a 3-D molecular structure for viewing and manipulation.

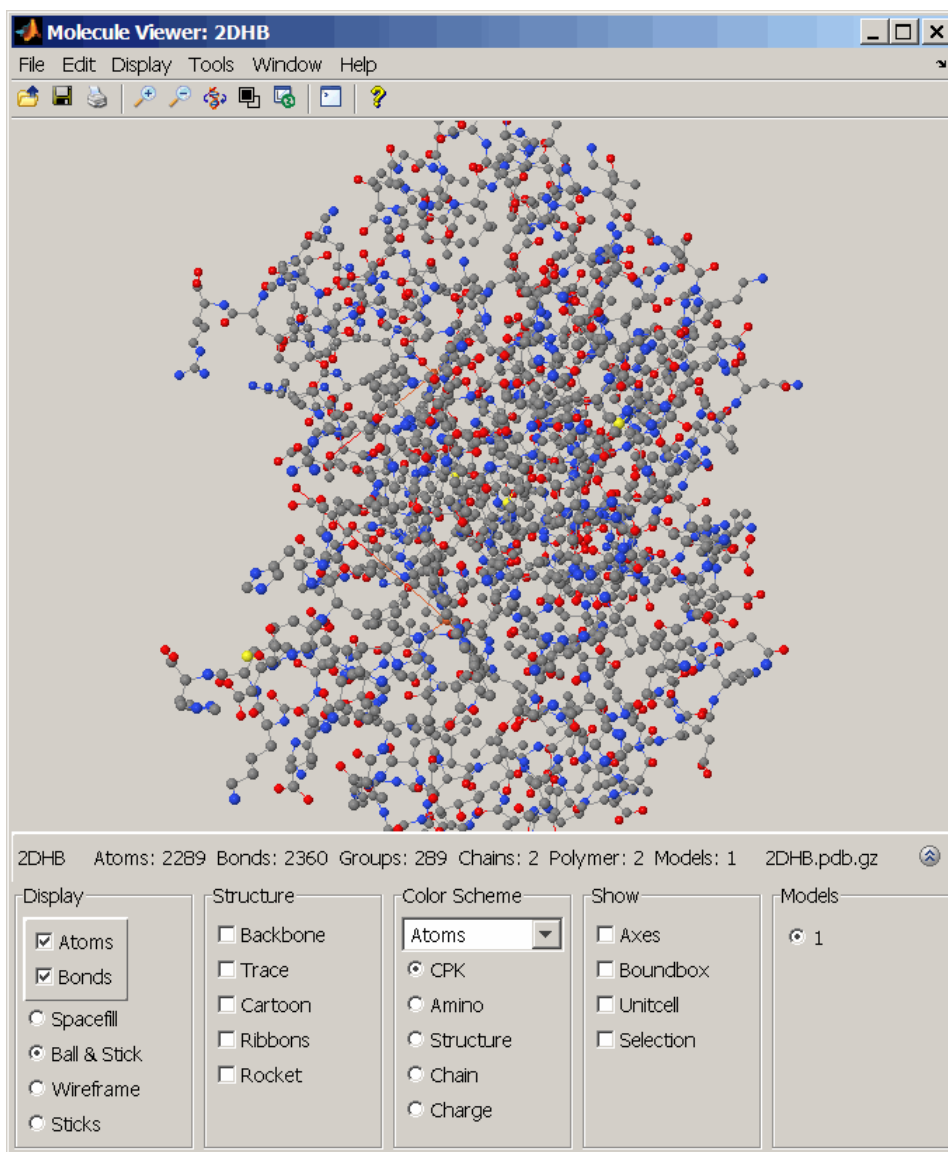
FigureHandle = molviewer(...) returns the figure handle to the Molecule Viewer window.

Tip You can pass the *FigureHandle* to the evalrasmolscript function, which sends RasMol script commands to the Molecule Viewer window.

Tip If you receive any errors related to memory or Java heap space, try increasing your Java heap space as described at:

<http://www.mathworks.com/support/solutions/data/1-18I2C.html>





molviewer

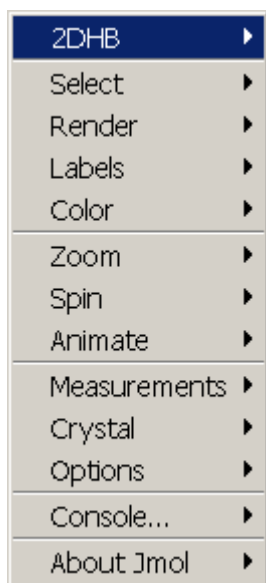



After displaying the 3-D molecule structure, you can:

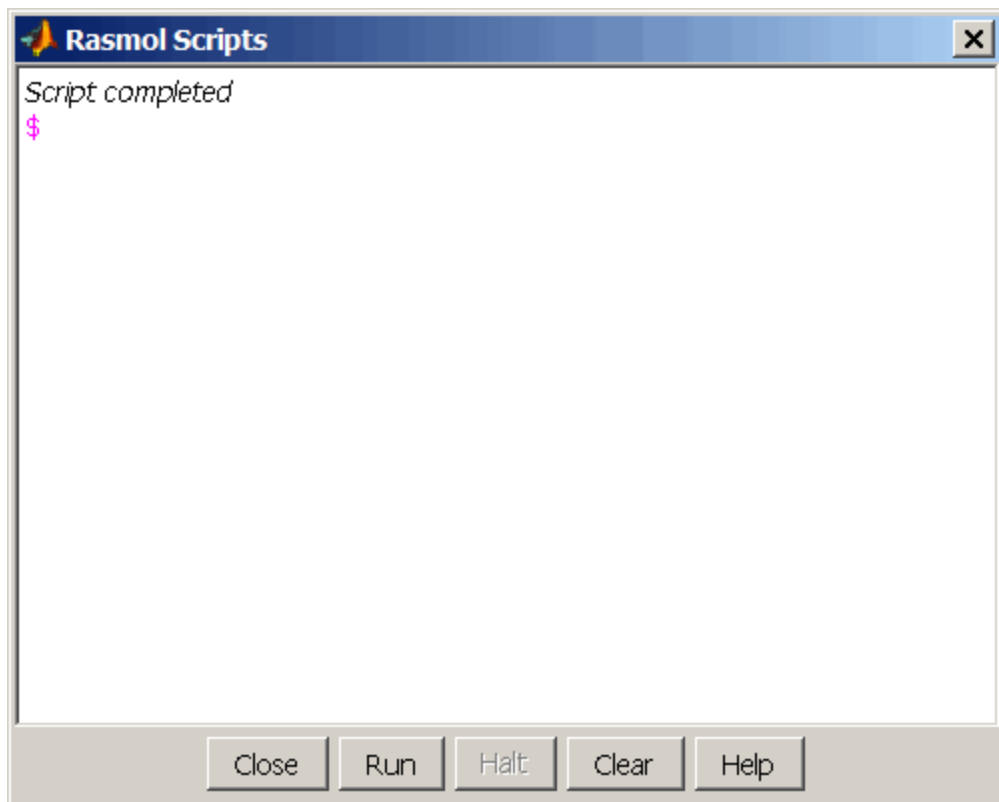
- Click-drag the molecule to spin, rotate, and view it from different angles.
- Hover the mouse over a subcomponent of the molecule to display an identification label for it.
- Zoom the plot by turning the mouse scroll wheel or clicking the following buttons:



- Spin the molecule by clicking .
- Change the background color between black and white by clicking .
- Reset the molecule position by clicking .
- Show or hide the Control Panel by clicking .
- Manipulate and annotate the 3-D structure by selecting options in the Control Panel or by right-clicking to select commands:



- Display the RasMol Scripts console by clicking .



Examples

View the acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin) molecule, whose structural information is contained in the Elsevier MDL molecule file `aspirin.mol`.

```
molviewer('aspirin.mol')
```

View the H5N1 influenza virus hemagglutinin molecule, whose structural information is located at www.rcsb.org/pdb/files/2FK0.pdb.gz.

```
molviewer('http://www.rcsb.org/pdb/files/2FK0.pdb.gz')
```

molviewer

View the molecule with a PDB identifier of 2DHB.

```
molviewer('2DHB')
```

View the molecule with a PDB identifier of 4hbb, and create a figure handle for the molecule viewer.

```
FH = molviewer('4hbb')
```

Use the `getpdb` function to retrieve protein structure data from the PDB database and create a MATLAB structure. Then view the protein molecule.

```
pdbstruct = getpdb('1vqx')  
molviewer(pdbstruct)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `evalrasmolscript`, `getpdb`, `pdbread`, `pdwrite`

Purpose

Align peaks in mass spectrum to reference peaks

Syntax

```

IntensitiesOut = msalign(MZ, Intensities, RefMZ)
... = msalign(..., 'Weights', WeightsValue, ...)
... = msalign(..., 'Range', RangeValue, ...)
... = msalign(..., 'WidthOfPulses',
WidthOfPulsesValue, ...)
... = msalign(..., 'WindowSizeRatio', WindowSizeRatioValue,
...)
... = msalign(..., 'Iterations', IterationsValue, ...)
... = msalign(..., 'GridSteps', GridStepsValue, ...)
... = msalign(..., 'SearchSpace', SearchSpaceValue, ...)
... = msalign(..., 'ShowPlot', ShowPlotValue, ...)
[IntensitiesOut, RefMZOut] = msalign(...,
'Group', GroupValue,
...)
```

Arguments

MZ

Vector of mass/charge (m/z) values for a spectrum or set of spectra. The number of elements in the vector equals n or the number of rows in the matrix *Intensities*.

Intensities

Either of the following:

- Column vector of intensity values for a spectrum, where each row corresponds to an m/z value.
- Matrix of intensity values for a set of mass spectra that share the same m/z range, where each row corresponds to an m/z value, and each column corresponds to a spectrum.

The number of rows equals n or the number of elements in vector *MZ*.

<i>RefMZ</i>	Vector of m/z values of known reference masses in a sample spectrum.
	<hr/> Tip For reference peaks, select compounds that do not undergo structural transformation, such as phosphorylation. Doing so will increase the accuracy of your alignment and allow you to detect compounds that do exhibit structural transformations among the sample spectra. <hr/>
<i>WeightsValue</i>	Vector of positive values, with the same number of elements as <i>RefMZ</i> . The default vector is <code>ones(size(RefMZ))</code> .
<i>RangeValue</i>	Two-element vector, in which the first element is negative and the second element is positive, that specifies the lower and upper limits of a range, in m/z units, relative to each peak. No peak will shift beyond these limits. Default is <code>[-100 100]</code> .
<i>WidthOfPulsesValue</i>	Positive value that specifies the width, in m/z units, for all the Gaussian pulses used to build the correlating synthetic spectrum. The point of the peak where the Gaussian pulse reaches 60.65% of its maximum is set to the width specified by <i>WidthOfPulsesValue</i> . Default is 10.

- WindowSizeRatioValue* Positive value that specifies a scaling factor that determines the size of the window around every alignment peak. The synthetic spectrum is compared to the sample spectrum only within these regions, which saves computation time. The size of the window is given in m/z units by *WidthOfPulsesValue* * *WindowSizeRatioValue*. Default is 2.5, which means at the limits of the window, the Gaussian pulses have a value of 4.39% of their maximum.
- IterationsValue* Positive integer that specifies the number of refining iterations. At every iteration, the search grid is scaled down to improve the estimates. Default is 5.
- GridStepsValue* Positive integer that specifies the number of steps for the search grid. At every iteration, the search area is divided by *GridStepsValue*². Default is 20.
- SearchSpaceValue* String that specifies the type of search space. Choices are:
- 'regular' — Default. Evenly spaced lattice.
 - 'latin' — Random Latin hypercube with *GridStepsValue*² samples.

ShowPlotValue

Controls the display of a plot of an original and aligned spectrum over the reference masses specified by *RefMZ*. Choices are *true*, *false*, or *I*, an integer specifying the index of a spectrum in *Intensities*. If set to *true*, the first spectrum in *Intensities* is plotted. Default is:

- *false* — When return values are specified.
- *true* — When return values are not specified.

GroupValue

Controls the creation of *RefMZOut*, a new vector of m/z values to be used as reference masses for aligning the peaks. This vector is created by adjusting the values in *RefMZ*, based on the sample data from multiple spectra in *Intensities*, such that the overall shifting and scaling of the peaks is minimized. Choices are *true* or *false* (default).

Tip Set *GroupValue* to *true* only if *Intensities* contains data for a large number of spectra, and you are not confident of the m/z values used for your reference peaks in *RefMZ*. Leave *GroupValue* set to *false* if you are confident of the m/z values used for your reference peaks in *RefMZ*.

Return Values*IntensitiesOut*

Either of the following:

- Column vector intensity values for a spectrum, where each row corresponds to an m/z value.
- Matrix of intensity values for a set of mass spectra that share the same mass/charge (m/z) range, where each row corresponds to an m/z value, and each column corresponds to a spectrum.

The intensity values represent a shifting and scaling of the data.

RefMZOut

Vector of m/z values of reference masses, calculated from *RefMZ* and the sample data from multiple spectra in *Intensities*, when *GroupValue* is set to true.

Description

IntensitiesOut = `msalign(MZ, Intensities, RefMZ)` aligns the peaks in a raw mass spectrum or spectra, represented by *Intensities* and *MZ*, to reference peaks, provided by *RefMZ*. First, it creates a synthetic spectrum from the reference peaks using Gaussian pulses centered at the m/z values specified by *RefMZ*. Then, it shifts and scales the m/z scale to find the maximum alignment between the input spectrum or spectra and the synthetic spectrum. (It uses an iterative multiresolution grid search until it finds the best scale and shift factors for each spectrum.) Once the new m/z scale is determined, the corrected spectrum or spectra are created by resampling their intensities at the original m/z values, creating *IntensitiesOut*, a vector or matrix of corrected intensity values. The resampling method preserves the shape of the peaks.

Note The `msalign` function works best with three to five reference peaks (marker masses) that you know will appear in the spectrum. If you use a single reference peak (internal standard), there is a possibility of aligning sample peaks to the incorrect reference peaks as `msalign` both scales and shifts the *MZ* vector. If using a single reference peak, you might need to only shift the *MZ* vector. To do this, use `IntensitiesOut = interp1(MZ, Intensities, MZ - (ReferenceMass - ExperimentalMass))`. For more information, see [Aligning Mass Spectrum with One Reference Peak](#) on page 2-447.

`... = msalign(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `msalign` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`... = msalign(..., 'Weights', WeightsValue, ...)` specifies the relative weight for each mass in *RefMZ*, the vector of reference *m/z* values. *WeightsValue* is a vector of positive values, with the same number of elements as *RefMZ*. The default vector is `ones(size(RefMZ))`, which means each reference peak is weighted equally, so that more intense reference peaks have a greater effect in the alignment algorithm. If you have a less intense reference peak, you can increase its weight to emphasize it more in the alignment algorithm.

`... = msalign(..., 'Range', RangeValue, ...)` specifies the lower and upper limits of the range, in *m/z* units, relative to each peak. No peak will shift beyond these limits. *RangeValue* is a two-element vector, in which the first element is negative and the second element is positive. Default is `[-100 100]`.

Note Use these values to tune the robustness of the algorithm. Ideally, you should keep the range within the maximum expected shift. If you try to correct larger shifts by increasing the limits, you increase the possibility of picking incorrect peaks to align to the reference masses.

`... = msalign(..., 'WidthOfPulses', WidthOfPulsesValue, ...)` specifies the width, in m/z units, for all the Gaussian pulses used to build the correlating synthetic spectrum. The point of the peak where the Gaussian pulse reaches 60.65% of its maximum is set to the width specified by *WidthOfPulsesValue*. Choices are any positive value. Default is 10. *WidthOfPulsesValue* may also be a function handle. The function is evaluated at the respective m/z values and returns a variable width for the pulses. Its evaluation should give reasonable values between 0 and $\max(\text{abs}(\text{Range}))$; otherwise, the function returns an error.

Note Tuning the spread of the Gaussian pulses controls a tradeoff between robustness (wider pulses) and precision (narrower pulses). However, the spread of the pulses is unrelated to the shape of the observed peaks in the spectrum. The purpose of the pulse spread is to drive the optimization algorithm.

`... = msalign(..., 'WindowSizeRatio', WindowSizeRatioValue, ...)` specifies a scaling factor that determines the size of the window around every alignment peak. The synthetic spectrum is compared to the sample spectrum only within these regions, which saves computation time. The size of the window is given in m/z units by *WidthOfPulsesValue* * *WindowSizeRatioValue*. Choices are any positive value. Default is 2.5, which means at the limits of the window, the Gaussian pulses have a value of 4.39% of their maximum.

`... = msalign(..., 'Iterations', IterationsValue, ...)`
specifies the number of refining iterations. At every iteration, the search grid is scaled down to improve the estimates. Choices are any positive integer. Default is 5.

`... = msalign(..., 'GridSteps', GridStepsValue, ...)`
specifies the number of steps for the search grid. At every iteration, the search area is divided by $\textit{GridStepsValue}^2$. Choices are any positive integer. Default is 20.

`... = msalign(..., 'SearchSpace', SearchSpaceValue, ...)`
specifies the type of search space. Choices are:

- 'regular' — Default. Evenly spaced lattice.
- 'latin' — Random Latin hypercube with $\textit{GridStepsValue}^2$ samples.

`... = msalign(..., 'ShowPlot', ShowPlotValue, ...)` controls the display of a plot of an original and aligned spectrum over the reference masses specified by *RefMZ*. Choices are true, false, or *I*, an integer specifying the index of a spectrum in *Intensities*. If set to true, the first spectrum in *Intensities* is plotted. Default is:

- false — When return values are specified.
- true — When return values are not specified.

`[IntensitiesOut, RefMZOut] = msalign(..., 'Group', GroupValue, ...)` controls the creation of *RefMZOut*, a new vector of m/z values to be used as reference masses for aligning the peaks. This vector is created by adjusting the values in *RefMZ*, based on the sample data from multiple spectra in *Intensities*, such that the overall shifting and scaling of the peaks is minimized. Choices are true or false (default).

Tip Set *GroupValue* to true only if *Intensities* contains data for a large number of spectra, and you are not confident of the m/z values used for your reference peaks in *RefMZ*. Leave *GroupValue* set to false if you are confident of the m/z values used for your reference peaks in *RefMZ*.

Examples

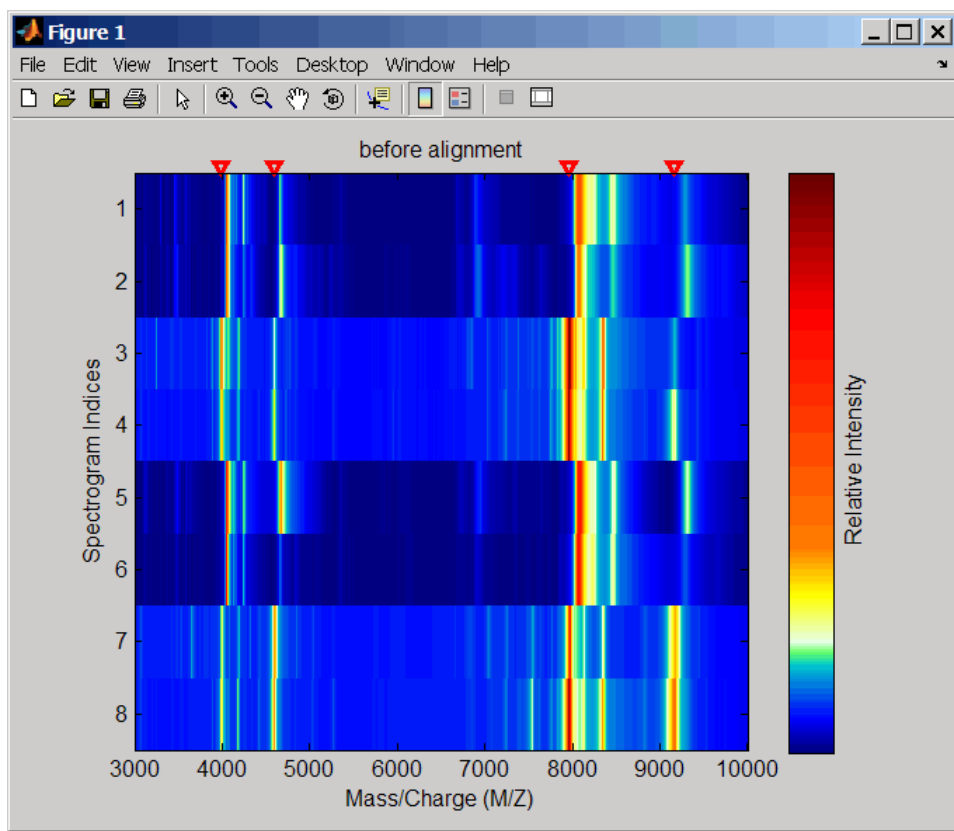
Aligning Mass Spectrum with Three or More Reference Peaks

- 1 Load sample data, reference masses, and parameter data for synthetic peak width.

```
load sample_lo_res
R = [3991.4 4598 7964 9160];
W = [60 100 60 100];
```

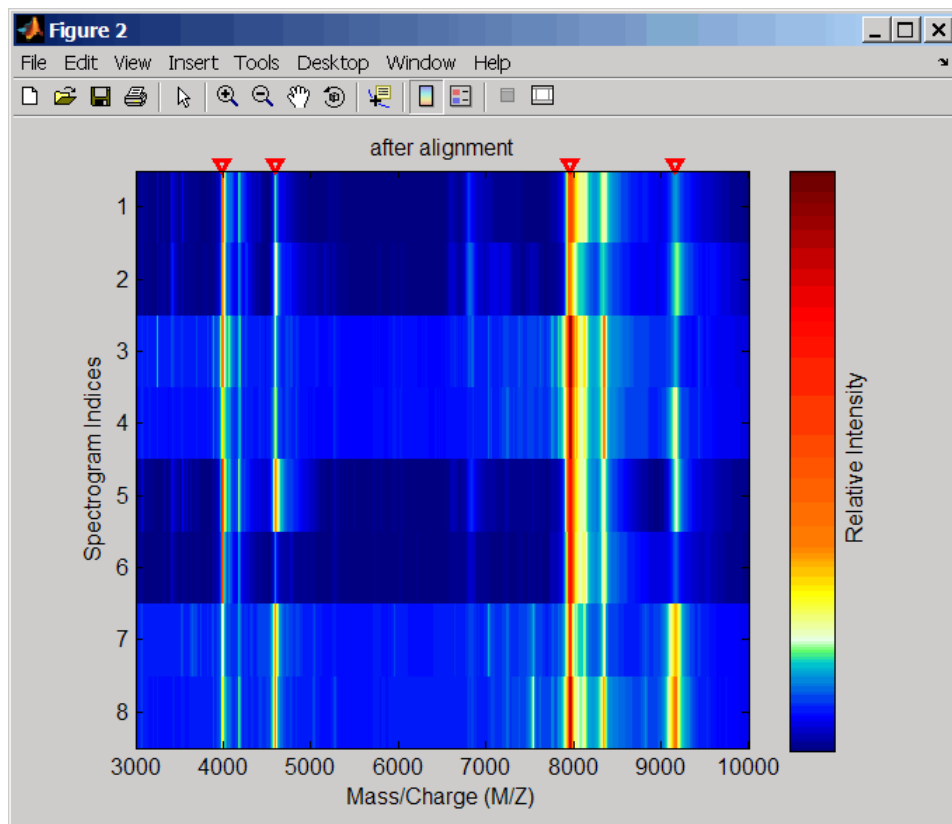
- 2 Display a color image of the mass spectra before alignment.

```
msheatmap(MZ_lo_res,Y_lo_res,'markers',R,'range',[3000 10000])
title('before alignment')
```



- 3** Align spectra with reference masses and display a color image of mass spectra after alignment.

```
YA = msalign(MZ_lo_res,Y_lo_res,R,'weights',W);  
msheatmap(MZ_lo_res,YA,'markers',R,'range',[3000 10000])  
title('after alignment')
```



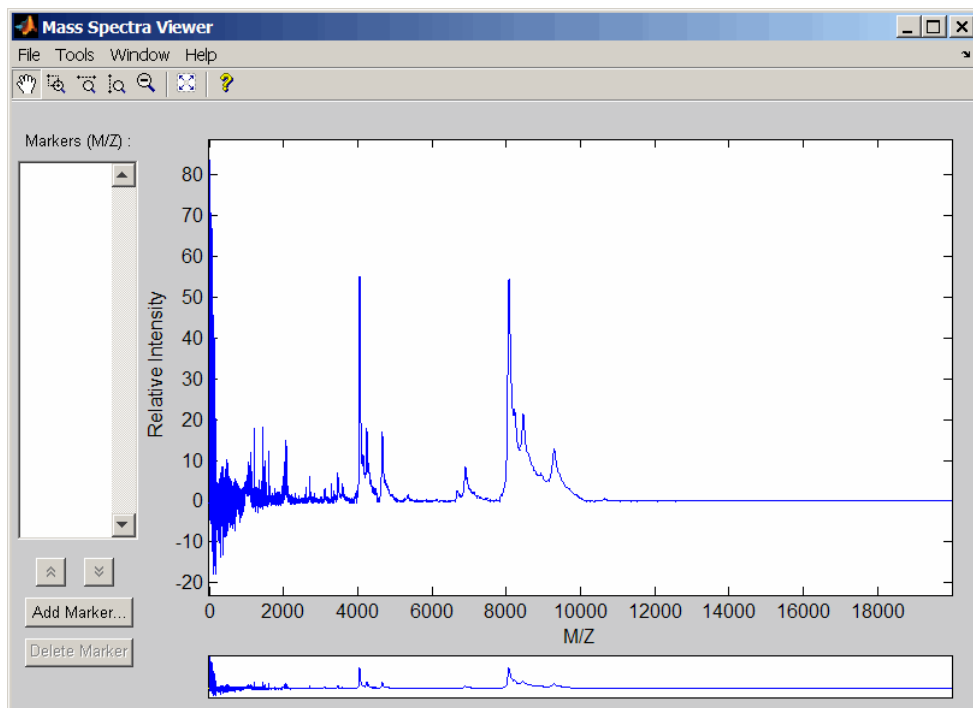
Aligning Mass Spectrum with One Reference Peak


It is not recommended to use the `msalign` function if you have only one reference peak. Instead, use the following procedure, which shifts the `MZ` vector, but does not scale it.

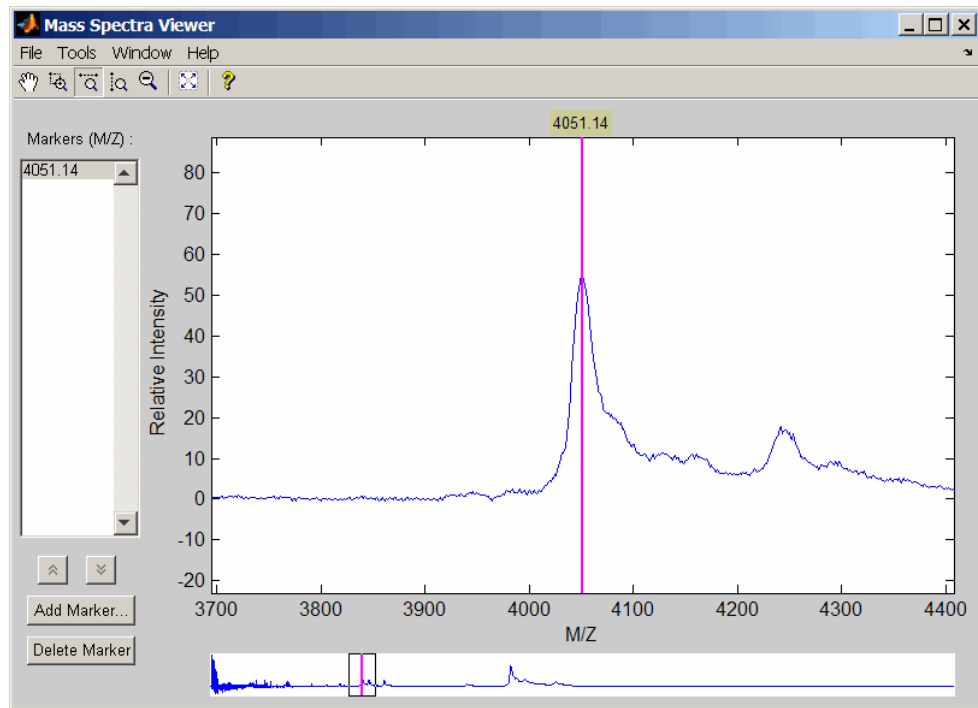
- 1 Load sample data and view the first sample spectrum.

```
load sample_lo_res
MZ = MZ_lo_res;
Y = Y_lo_res(:,1);
```

msviewer(MZ, Y)



- 2 Use the tall peak around 4000 m/z as the reference peak. To determine the reference peak's m/z value, click , and then click-drag to zoom in on the peak. Right-click in the center of the peak, and then click **Add Marker** to label the peak with its m/z value.



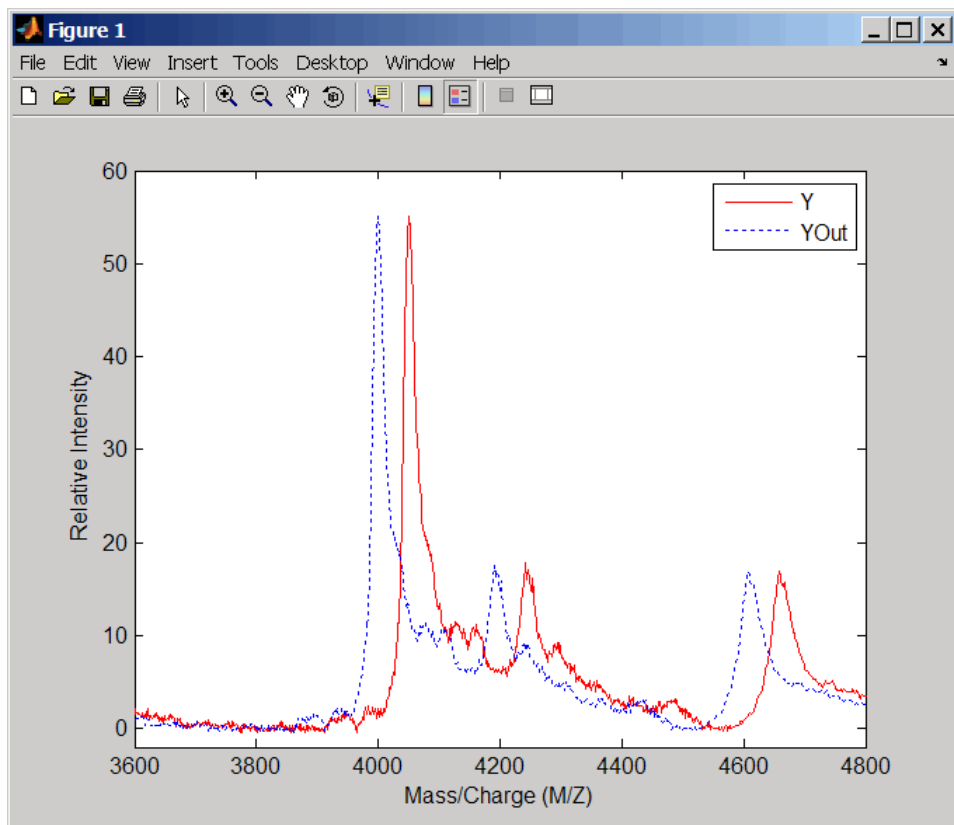
- 3** Shift a spectrum by the difference between RP, the known reference mass of 4000 m/z, and SP, the experimental mass of 4051.14 m/z.

```
RP = 4000;  
SP = 4051.14;  
YOut = interp1(MZ, Y, MZ - (RP - SP));
```

- 4** Plot the original spectrum in red and the shifted spectrum in blue and zoom in on the reference peak.

```
plot(MZ, Y, 'r', MZ, YOut, 'b:');  
xlabel('Mass/Charge (M/Z)');  
ylabel('Relative Intensity');
```

```
legend('Y','YOut')  
axis([3600 4800 -2 60])
```



References

[1] Monchamp, P., Andrade-Cetto, L., Zhang, J.Y., and Henson, R. (2007) Signal Processing Methods for Mass Spectrometry. In Systems Bioinformatics: An Engineering Case-Based Approach, G. Alterovitz and M.F. Ramoni, eds. (Artech House Publishers).

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: msbackadj, msheatmap, mspalign, mspeaks, msresample, msviewer

Purpose

Correct baseline of mass spectrum

Syntax

```
Yout = msbackadj(MZ, Y)
msbackadj(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
msbackadj(..., 'WindowSize', WindowSizeValue)
msbackadj(..., 'StepSize', StepSizeValue)
msbackadj(..., 'RegressionMethod', RegressionMethodValue)
msbackadj(..., 'EstimationMethod', EstimationMethodValue)
msbackadj(..., 'SmoothMethod', SmoothMethodValue)
msbackadj(..., 'QuantileValue', QuantileValueValue)
msbackadj(..., 'PreserveHeights', PreserveHeightsValue)
msbackadj(..., 'ShowPlot', ShowPlotValue)
```

Arguments

<i>MZ</i>	Range of mass/charge ions. Enter a vector with the range of ions in the spectra.
<i>Y</i>	Ion intensity vector with the same length as the mass/charge vector (<i>MZ</i>). <i>Y</i> can also be a matrix with several spectra that share the same mass/charge (<i>MZ</i>) range.

Description

`Yout = msbackadj(MZ, Y)` adjusts the variable baseline of a raw mass spectrum by following three steps:

- 1** Estimates the baseline within multiple shifted windows of width 200 m/z
- 2** Regresses the varying baseline to the window points using a spline approximation
- 3** Adjusts the baseline of the spectrum (*Y*)

`msbackadj(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`msbackadj(..., 'WindowSize', WindowSizeValue)` specifies the width for the shifting window. *WindowSizeValue* can also be a function handler. The function is evaluated at the respective MZ values and returns a variable width for the windows. This option is useful for cases where the resolution of the signal is dissimilar at different regions of the spectrogram. The default value is 200 (baseline point estimated for windows with a width of 200 m/z).

Note The result of this algorithm depends on carefully choosing the window size and the step size. Consider the width of your peaks in the spectrum and the presence of possible drifts. If you have wider peaks towards the end of the spectrum, you may want to use variable parameters.

`msbackadj(..., 'StepSize', StepSizeValue)` specifies the steps for the shifting window. The default value is 200 m/z (baseline point is estimated for windows placed every 200 m/z). *StepSizeValue* may also be a function handle. The function is evaluated at the respective m/z values and returns the distance between adjacent windows.

`msbackadj(..., 'RegressionMethod', RegressionMethodValue)` specifies the method to regress the window estimated points to a soft curve. Enter 'pchip' (shape-preserving piecewise cubic interpolation), 'linear' (linear interpolation), or 'spline' (spline interpolation). The default value is 'pchip'.

`msbackadj(..., 'EstimationMethod', EstimationMethodValue)` specifies the method for finding the likely baseline value in every window. Enter 'quantile' (quantile value is set to 10%) or 'em' (assumes a doubly stochastic model). With em, every sample is the independent and identically distributed (i.i.d.) draw of any of two normal distributed classes (background or peaks). Because the class label is hidden, the distributions are estimated with an Expectation-Maximization algorithm. The ultimate baseline value is the mean of the background class.

`msbackadj(..., 'SmoothMethod', SmoothMethodValue)` specifies the method for smoothing the curve of estimated points and eliminating the effects of possible outliers. Enter 'none', 'lowess' (linear fit), 'loess' (quadratic fit), 'rloess' (robust linear), or 'rloess' (robust quadratic fit). Default value is 'none'.

`msbackadj(..., 'QuantileValue', QuantileValueValue)` specifies the quantile value. The default value is 0.10.

`msbackadj(..., 'PreserveHeights', PreserveHeightsValue)`, when *PreserveHeightsValue* is true, sets the baseline subtraction mode to preserve the height of the tallest peak in the signal. The default value is false and peak heights are not preserved.

`msbackadj(..., 'ShowPlot', ShowPlotValue)` plots the baseline estimated points, the regressed baseline, and the original spectrum. When `msbackadj` is called without output arguments, the spectra are plotted unless *ShowPlotValue* is false. When *ShowPlotValue* is true, only the first spectrum in *Y* is plotted. *ShowPlotValue* can also contain an index to one of the spectra in *Y*.

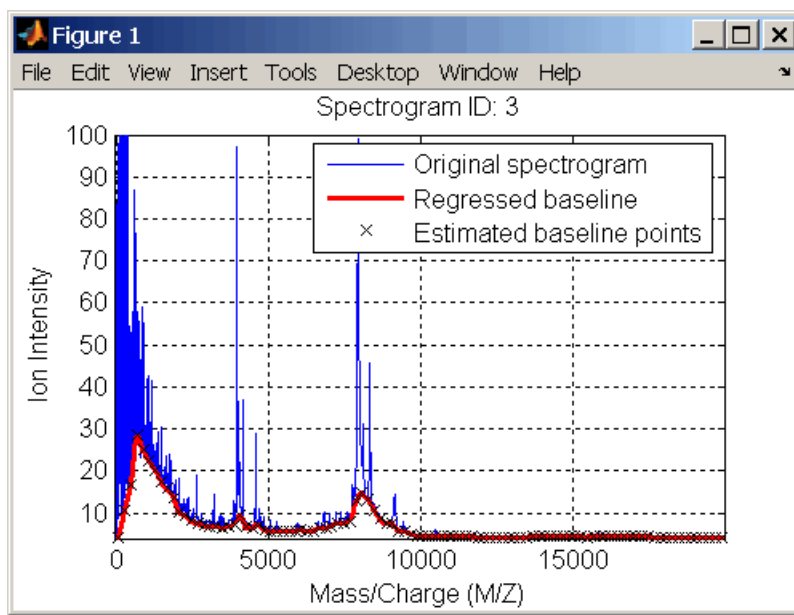
Example

- 1 Load sample data.

```
load sample_lo_res
```

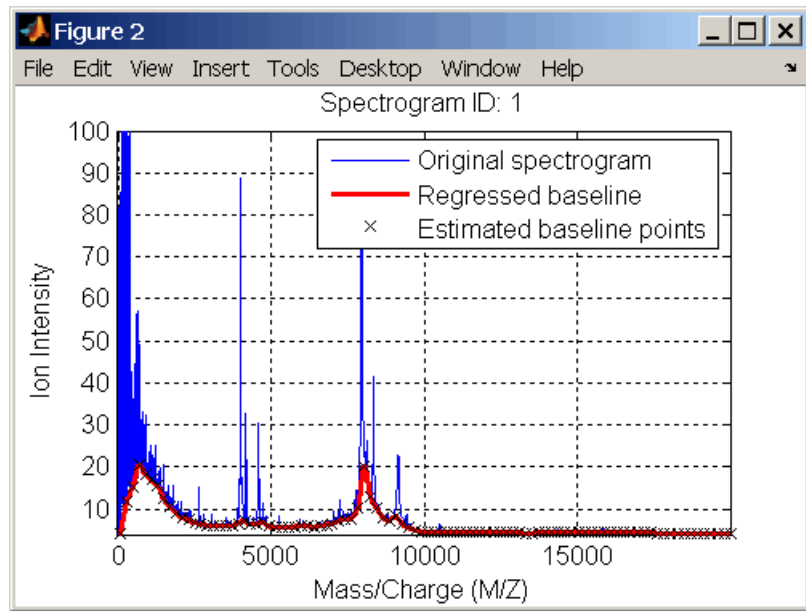
- 2 Adjust the baseline for a group of spectra and show only the third spectrum and its estimated background.

```
YB = msbackadj(MZ_lo_res, Y_lo_res, 'SHOWPLOT', 3);
```



- 3** Plot the estimated baseline for the fourth spectrum in `Y_lo_res` using an anonymous function to describe an `m/z` dependent parameter.

```
wf = @(mz) 200 + .001 .* mz;
msbackadj(MZ_lo_res,Y_lo_res(:,4),'STEPSIZE',wf);
```

**See Also**

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `msalign`, `mslowess`, `msheatmap`, `msnorm`, `mspeaks`, `msresample`, `mssgolay`, `msviewer`

msdotplot

Purpose Plot set of peak lists from LC/MS or GC/MS data set

Syntax
`msdotplot(Peaks, Times)`
`msdotplot(FigHandle, Peaks, Times)`
`msdotplot(..., 'Quantile', QuantileValue)`
`PlotHandle = msdotplot(...)`

Arguments

Peaks Cell array of peak lists, where each element is a two-column matrix with m/z values in the first column and ion intensity values in the second column. Each element corresponds to a spectrum or retention time.

Tip You can use the `mzxml2peaks` function to create the *Peaks* cell array.

Times Vector of retention times associated with an LC/MS or GC/MS data set. The number of elements in *Times* equals the number of elements in the cell array *Peaks*.

Tip You can use the `mzxml2peaks` function to create the *Times* vector.

FigHandle Handle to an open Figure window such as one created by the `msheatmap` function.

QuantileValue Value that specifies a percentage. When peaks are ranked by intensity, only those that rank above this percentage are plotted. Choices are any value ≥ 0 and ≤ 1 . Default is 0. For example, setting *QuantileValue* = 0 plots all peaks, and setting *QuantileValue* = 0.8 plots only the 20% most intense peaks.

Return Values

PlotHandle Handle to the line series object (figure plot).

Description

`msdotplot(Peaks, Times)` plots a set of peak lists from a liquid chromatography/mass spectrometry (LC/MS) or gas chromatography/mass spectrometry (GC/MS) data set represented by *Peaks*, a cell array of peak lists, where each element is a two-column matrix with *m/z* values in the first column and ion intensity values in the second column, and *Times*, a vector of retention times associated with the spectra. *Peaks* and *Times* have the same number of elements. The data is plotted into any existing figure generated by the `msheatmap` function; otherwise, the data is plotted into a new Figure window.

`msdotplot(FigHandle, Peaks, Times)` plots the set of peak lists into the axes contained in an open Figure window with the handle *FigHandle*.

Tip This syntax is useful to overlay a dot plot on top of a heat map of mass spectrometry data created with the `msheatmap` function.

`msdotplot(..., 'Quantile', QuantileValue)` plots only the most intense peaks, specifically those in the percentage above the specified *QuantileValue*. Choices are any value ≥ 0 and ≤ 1 . Default is 0. For example, setting *QuantileValue* = 0 plots all peaks, and setting *QuantileValue* = 0.8 plots only the 20% most intense peaks.

`PlotHandle = msdotplot(...)` returns a handle to the line series object (figure plot). You can use this handle as input to the `get` function to display a list of the plot's properties. You can use this handle as input to the `set` function to change the plot's properties, including showing and hiding points.

Examples

- 1 Load a MAT file, included with Bioinformatics Toolbox, which contains LC/MS data variables, including `peaks` and `ret_time`. `peaks` is a cell array of peak lists, where each element is a two-column

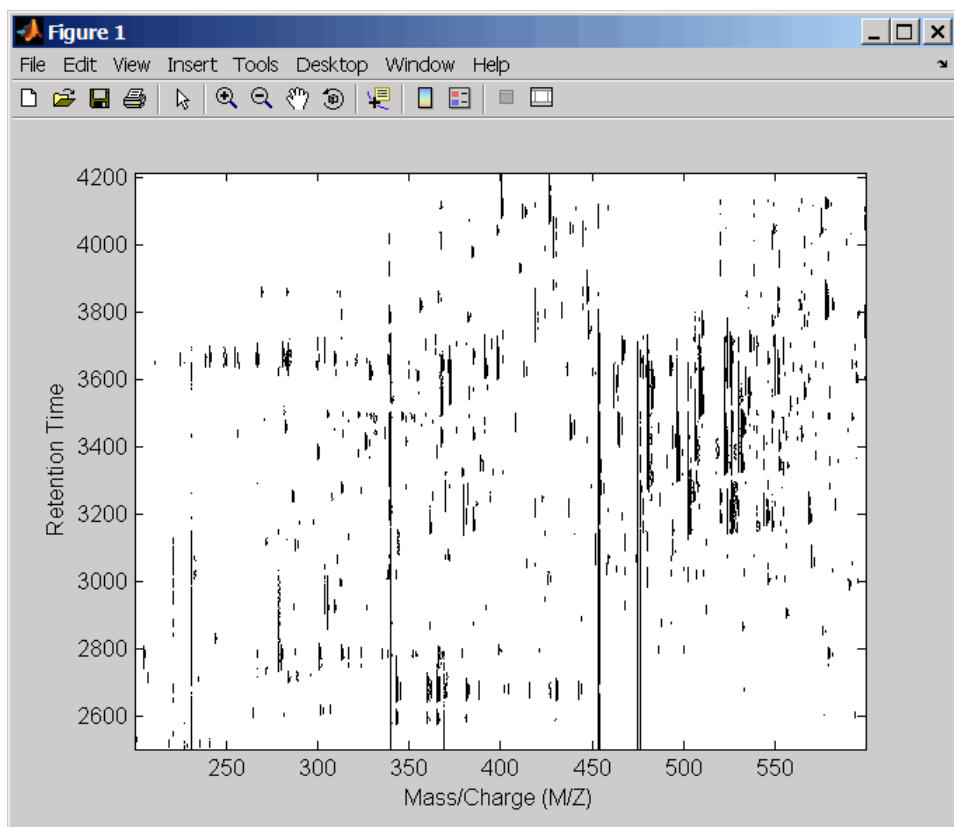
msdotplot

matrix of m/z values and ion intensity values, and each element corresponds to a spectrum or retention time. `ret_time` is a column vector of retention times associated with the LC/MS data set.

```
load lcmsdata
```

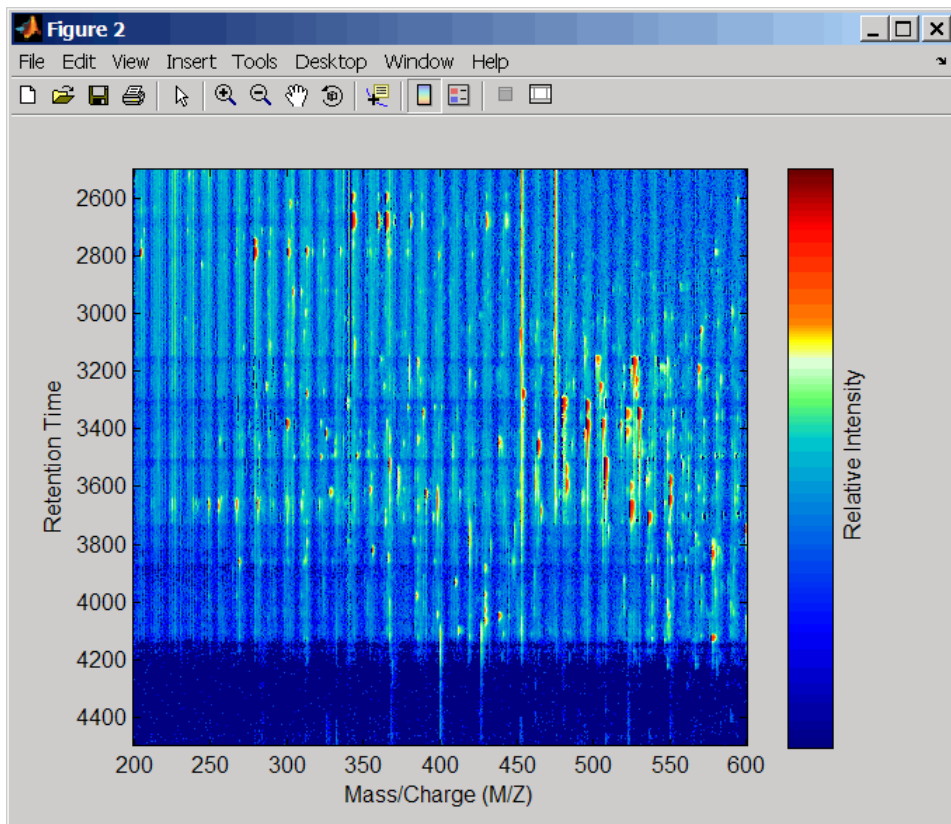
- 2 Create a dot plot with only the 5% most intense peaks.

```
msdotplot(peaks,ret_time,'Quantile',0.95)
```



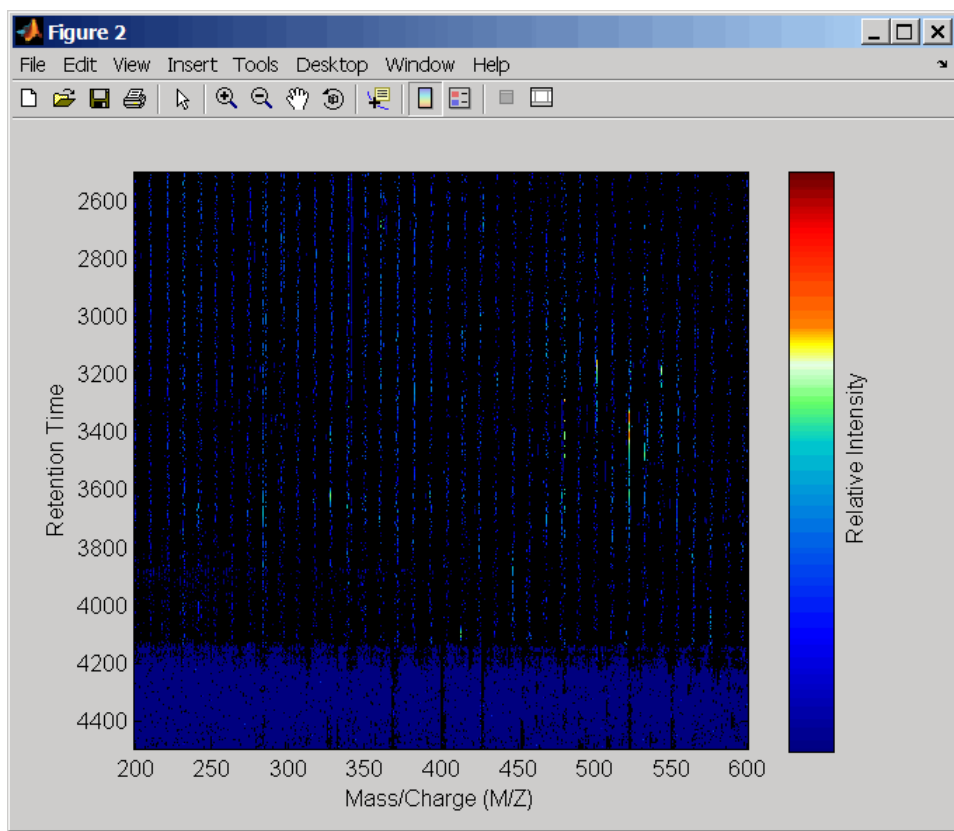
- 3 Resample the data, then create a heat map and a dot plot of the LC/MS data.

```
[MZ,Y] = mspresample(peaks,5000);  
msheatmap(MZ,ret_time,log(Y))
```



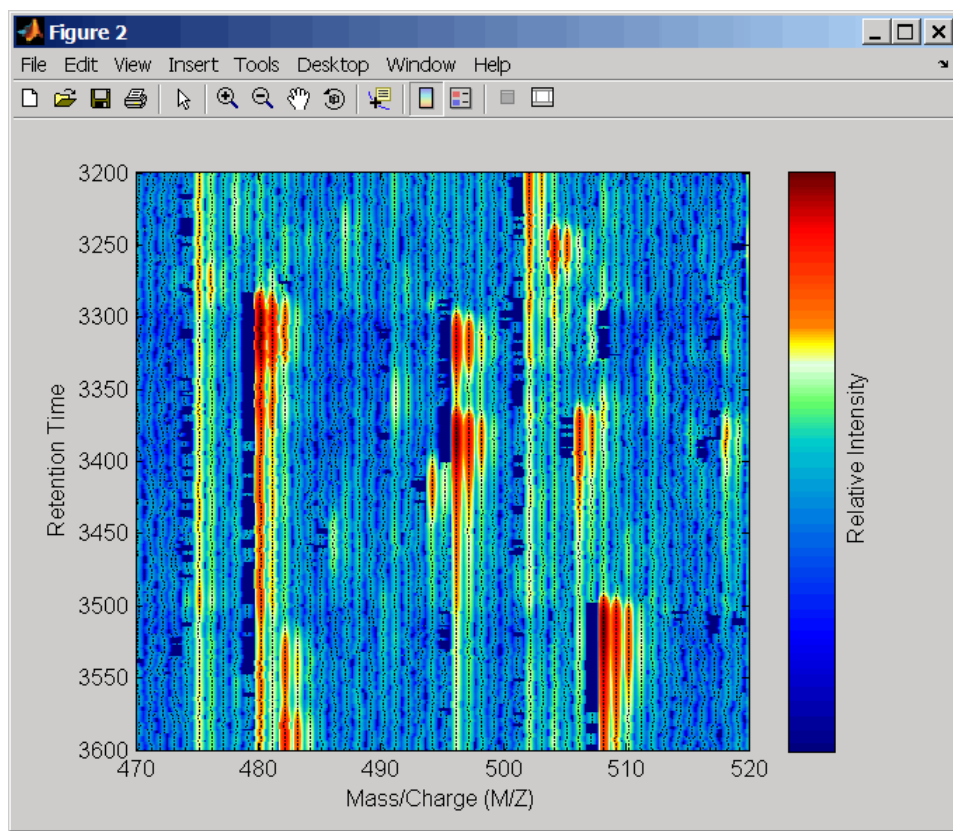
```
msdotplot(peaks,ret_time)
```

msdotplot



4 Zoom in on the heat map to see the detail.

```
axis([470 520 3200 3600])
```


**See Also**

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `msheatmap`, `mssalign`, `mspeaks`, `mssppresample`, `mzxml2peaks`, `mzxmlread`

msheatmap

Purpose Create pseudocolor image of set of mass spectra

Syntax

```
msheatmap(MZ, Intensities)
msheatmap(MZ, Times, Intensities)
msheatmap(..., 'Midpoint', MidpointValue, ...)
msheatmap(..., 'Range', RangeValue, ...)
msheatmap(..., 'Markers', MarkersValue, ...)
msheatmap(..., 'SpecIdx', SpecIdxValue, ...)
msheatmap(..., 'Group', GroupValue, ...)
msheatmap(..., 'Resolution', ResolutionValue, ...)
```

Arguments

MZ Column vector of common mass/charge (m/z) values for a set of spectra. The number of elements in the vector equals the number of rows in the matrix *Intensities*.

Note You can use the `mppresample` function to create the *MZ* vector.

Times Column vector of retention times associated with a liquid chromatography/mass spectrometry (LC/MS) or gas chromatography/mass spectrometry (GC/MS) data set. The number of elements in the vector equals the number of columns in the matrix *Intensities*. The retention times are used to label the y-axis of the heat map.

Tip You can use the `mzxm12peaks` function to create the *Times* vector.

Intensities

Matrix of intensity values for a set of mass spectra that share the same m/z range. Each row corresponds to an m/z value, and each column corresponds to a spectrum or retention time. The number of rows equals the number of elements in vector *MZ*. The number of columns equals the number of elements in vector *Times*.

Note You can use the `mppresample` function to create the *Intensities* matrix.

MidpointValue Value specifying a quantile of the ion intensity values to fall below the midpoint of the color map, meaning they do not represent peaks. msheatmap uses a custom color map where cool colors represent nonpeak regions, white represents the midpoint, and warm colors represent peaks. Choices are any value ≥ 0 and ≤ 1 . Default is:

- 0.99 — For LC/MS or GC/MS data or when input *T* is provided. This means that 1% of the pixels are warm colors and represent peaks.
- 0.95 — For non-LC/MS or non-GC/MS data or when input *T* is not provided. This means that 5% of the pixels are warm colors and represent peaks.

Tip You can also change the midpoint interactively after creating the heat map by right-clicking the color bar, selecting **Interactive Colormap Shift**, and then click-dragging the cursor vertically on the color bar. This technique is useful when comparing multiple heat maps.

RangeValue 1-by-2 vector specifying the m/z range for the x-axis of the heat map. *RangeValue* must be within $[\min(MZ) \ \max(MZ)]$. Default is the full range $[\min(MZ) \ \max(MZ)]$.

MarkersValue Vector of m/z values to mark on the top horizontal axis of the heat map. Default is $[\]$.

SpecIdxValue

Either of the following:

- Vector of values with the same number of elements as columns (spectra) in the matrix *Intensities*.
- Cell array of strings with the same number of elements as columns (spectra) in the matrix *Intensities*.

Each value or string specifies a label for the corresponding spectrum. These values or strings are used to label the *y*-axis of the heat map.

Note If input *Times* is provided, it is assumed that *Intensities* contains LC/MS or GC/MS data, and *SpecIdxValue* is ignored.

GroupValue

Either of the following:

- Vector of values with the same number of elements as rows in the matrix *Intensities*
- Cell array of strings with the same number of elements as rows (spectra) in the matrix *Intensities*

Each value or string specifies a group to which the corresponding spectrum belongs. The spectra are sorted and combined into groups along the *y*-axis in the heat map.

Note If input *Times* is provided, it is assumed that *Intensities* contains LC/MS or GC/MS data, and *GroupValue* is ignored.

ResolutionValue Value specifying the horizontal resolution of the heat map image. Increase this value to enhance details. Decrease this value to reduce memory usage. Default is:

- 0.5 — When *MZ* contains > 2,500 elements.
- 0.05 — When *MZ* contains ≤ 2,500 elements.

Description

`msheatmap(MZ, Intensities)` displays a pseudocolor heat map image of the intensities for the spectra in matrix *Intensities*.

`msheatmap(MZ, Times, Intensities)` displays a pseudocolor heat map image of the intensities for the spectra in matrix *Intensities*, using the retention times in vector *Times* to label the *y*-axis.

`msheatmap(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `msheatmap` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`msheatmap(..., 'Midpoint', MidpointValue, ...)` specifies a quantile of the ion intensity values to fall below the midpoint of the color map, meaning they do not represent peaks. `msheatmap` uses a custom color map where cool colors represent nonpeak regions, white represents the midpoint, and warm colors represent peaks. Choices are any value between 0 and 1. Default is:

- 0.99 — For LC/MS or GC/MS data or when input *T* is provided. This means that 1% of the pixels are warm colors and represent peaks.
- 0.95 — For non-LC/MS or non-GC/MS data or when input *T* is not provided. This means that 5% of the pixels are warm colors and represent peaks.

Tip You can also change the midpoint interactively after creating the heat map by right-clicking the color bar, selecting **Interactive Colormap Shift**, then click-dragging the cursor vertically on the color bar. This technique is useful when comparing multiple heat maps.

`msheatmap(..., 'Range', RangeValue, ...)` specifies the *m/z* range for the *x*-axis of the heat map. *RangeValue* is a 1-by-2 vector that must be within `[min(MZ) max(MZ)]`. Default is the full range `[min(MZ) max(MZ)]`.

`msheatmap(..., 'Markers', MarkersValue, ...)` places markers along the top horizontal axis of the heat map for the *m/z* values specified in the vector *MarkersValue*. Default is `[]`.

`msheatmap(..., 'SpecIdx', SpecIdxValue, ...)` labels the spectra along the *y*-axis in the heat map. The labels are specified by *SpecIdxValue*, a vector of values or cell array of strings. The number of values or strings is the same as the number of columns (spectra) in the matrix *Intensities*. Each value or string specifies a label for the corresponding spectrum.

`msheatmap(..., 'Group', GroupValue, ...)` sorts and combines spectra into groups along the *y*-axis in the heat map. The groups are

specified by *GroupValue*, a vector of values or cell array of strings. The number of values or strings is the same as the number of rows in the matrix *Intensities*. Each value or string specifies a group to which the corresponding spectrum belongs.

`msheatmap(..., 'Resolution', ResolutionValue, ...)` specifies the horizontal resolution of the heat map image. Increase this value to enhance details. Decrease this value to reduce memory usage. Default is:

- 0.5 — When *MZ* contains > 2,500 elements.
- 0.05 — When *MZ* contains ≤ 2,500 elements.

Examples

SELDI-TOF Data

- 1 Load SELDI-TOF sample data.

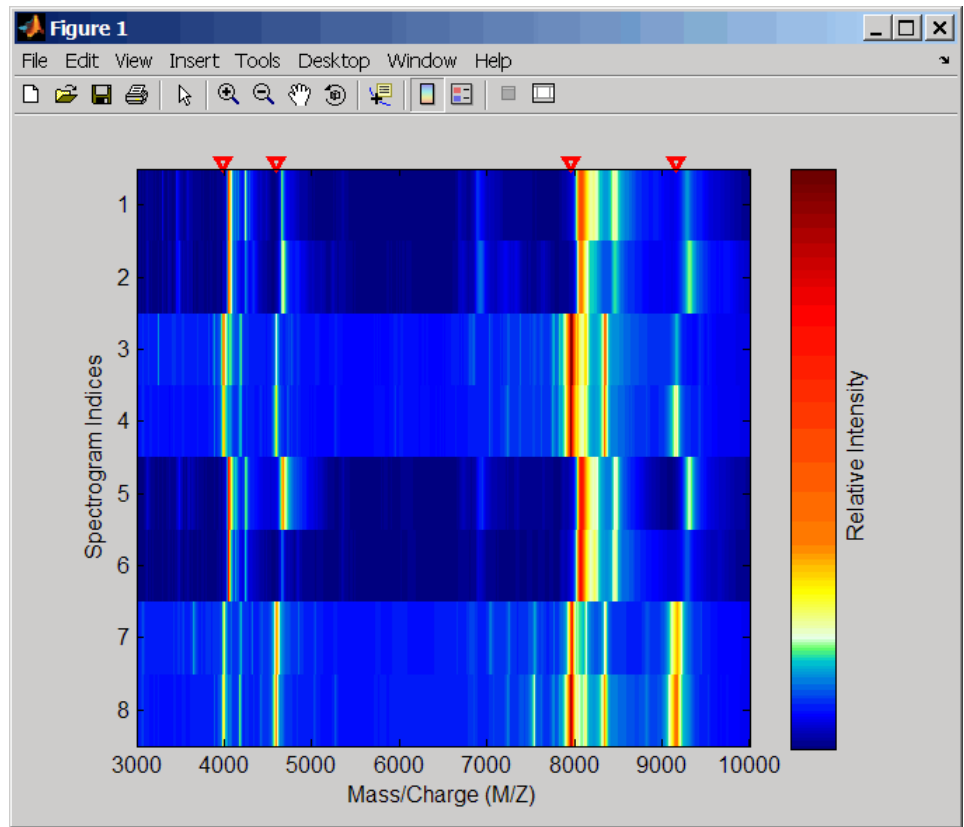
```
load sample_lo_res
```

- 2 Create a vector of four m/z values to mark along the top horizontal axis of the heat map.

```
M = [3991.4 4598 7964 9160];
```

- 3 Display the heat map with m/z markers and a limited m/z range.

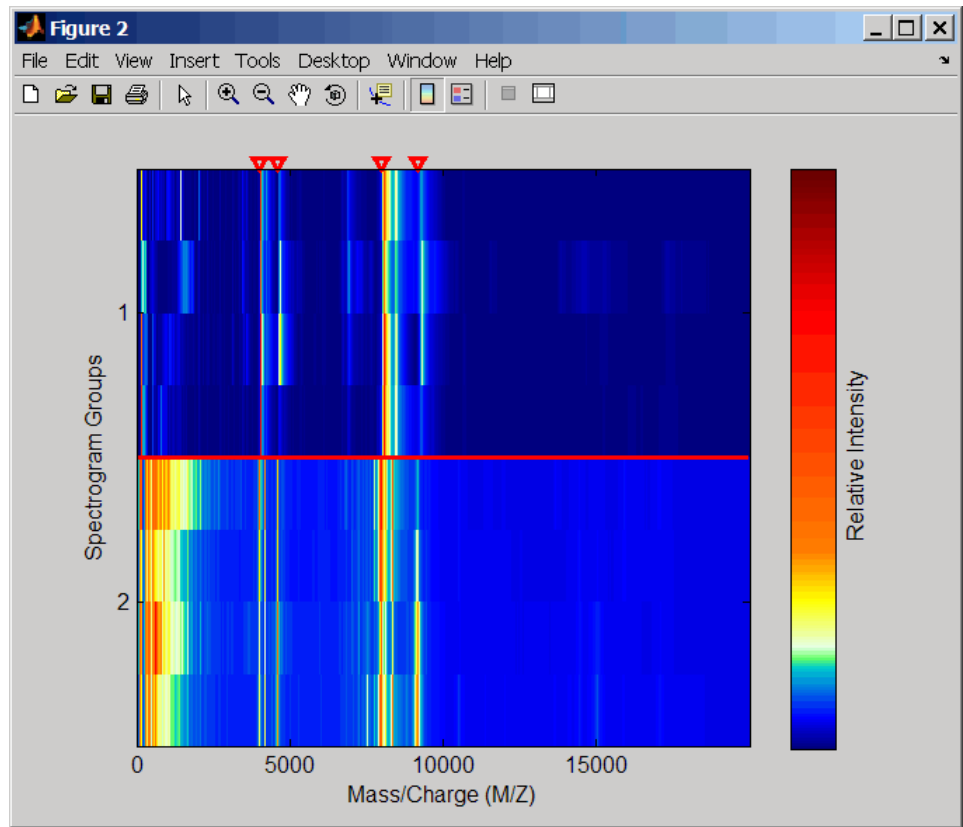
```
msheatmap(MZ_lo_res, Y_lo_res, 'markers', M, 'range', [3000 10000])
```

- 4 Display the heat map again grouping each spectrum into one of two groups.

```
TwoGroups = [1 1 2 2 1 1 2 2];
msheatmap(MZ_lo_res,Y_lo_res,'markers',M,'group',TwoGroups)
```

msheatmap



Liquid Chromatography/Mass Spectrometry (LC/MS) Data

1 Load LC/MS sample data.

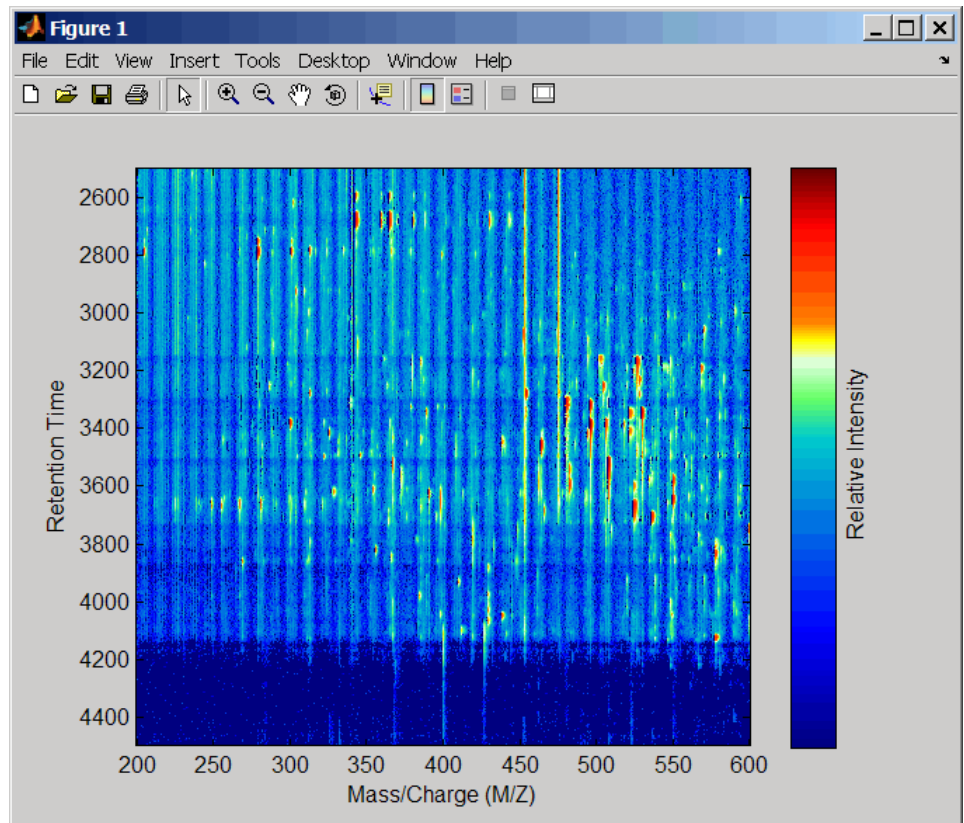
```
load lcmsdata
```

2 Resample the peak lists to create a vector of m/z values and a matrix of intensity values.

```
[MZ, Intensities] = mspresample(peaks, 5000);
```

- 3 Display the heat map showing mass spectra at different retention times.

```
msheatmap(MZ, ret_time, log(Intensities))
```



See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `msalign`, `msbackadj`, `msdotplot`, `mslowess`, `msnorm`, `mspalign`, `msresample`, `mssgolay`, `msviewer`

mslowess

Purpose Smooth mass spectrum using nonparametric method

Syntax

```
Yout = mslowess(MZ, Y, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue...)
mslowess(..., 'Order', OrderValue)
mslowess(..., 'Span', SpanValue)
mslowess(..., 'Kernel', KernelValue)
mslowess(..., 'RobustIterations', RobustIterationsValue)
mslowess(..., 'ShowPlot', ShowPlotValue)
```

Arguments

MZ	Mass/charge vector with the range of ions in the spectra.
Y	Ion intensity vector with the same length as the mass/charge vector (MZ). Y can also be a matrix with several spectra that share the same mass/charge (MZ) range.

Description

`Yout = mslowess(MZ, Y, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue...)` smoothes a mass spectrum (Y) using a locally weighted linear regression (lowess) method with a default span of 10 samples.

Note 1) `mslowess` assumes that a mass/charge vector (MZ) might not be uniformly spaced. Therefore, the sliding window for smoothing is centered using the closest samples in terms of the MZ value and not in terms of the MZ indices.

2) When the vector MZ does not have repeated values or NaNs, the algorithm is approximately twice as fast.

`mslowess(..., 'Order', OrderValue)` specifies the order (*OrderValue*) of the Lowess smoother. Enter 1 (linear polynomial fit or Lowess), 2 (quadratic polynomial fit or Loess), or 0 (equivalent to a weighted local mean estimator and presumably faster because only a

mean computation is performed instead of a least squares regression). The default value is 1.

Note Curve Fitting Toolbox also refers to Lowess smoothing of order 2 as Loess smoothing.

`mslowess(..., 'Span', SpanValue)` specifies the window size for the smoothing kernel. If *SpanValue* is greater than 1, the window is equal to *SpanValue* number of samples independent of the mass/charge vector (MZ). The default value is 10 samples. Higher values will smooth the signal more at the expense of computation time. If *SpanValue* is less than 1, the window size is taken to be a fraction of the number of points in the data. For example, when *SpanValue* is 0.005, the window size is equal to 0.50% of the number of points in MZ.

`mslowess(..., 'Kernel', KernelValue)` selects the function (*KernelValue*) for weighting the observed ion intensities. Samples close to the MZ location being smoothed have the most weight in determining the estimate. Enter

'tricubic' (default)	$(1 - (\text{dist}/\text{dmax}))^3$
'gaussian'	$\exp(-2 * \text{dist}/\text{dmax})$
'linear'	$1 - \text{dist}/\text{dmax}$

`mslowess(..., 'RobustIterations', RobustIterationsValue)` specifies the number of iterations (*RobustValue*) for a robust fit. If *RobustIterationsValue* is 0 (default), no robust fit is performed. For robust smoothing, small residual values at every span are outweighed to improve the new estimate. 1 or 2 robust iterations are usually adequate while, larger values might be computationally expensive.

Note For a uniformly spaced MZ vector, a nonrobust smoothing with Order equal to 0 is equivalent to filtering the signal with the kernel vector.

`mslowess(..., 'ShowPlot', ShowPlotValue)` plots the smoothed spectrum over the original spectrum. When `mslowess` is called without output arguments, the spectra are plotted unless *ShowPlotValue* is false. When *ShowPlotValue* is true, only the first spectrum in *Y* is plotted. *ShowPlotValue* can also contain an index to one of the spectra in *Y*.

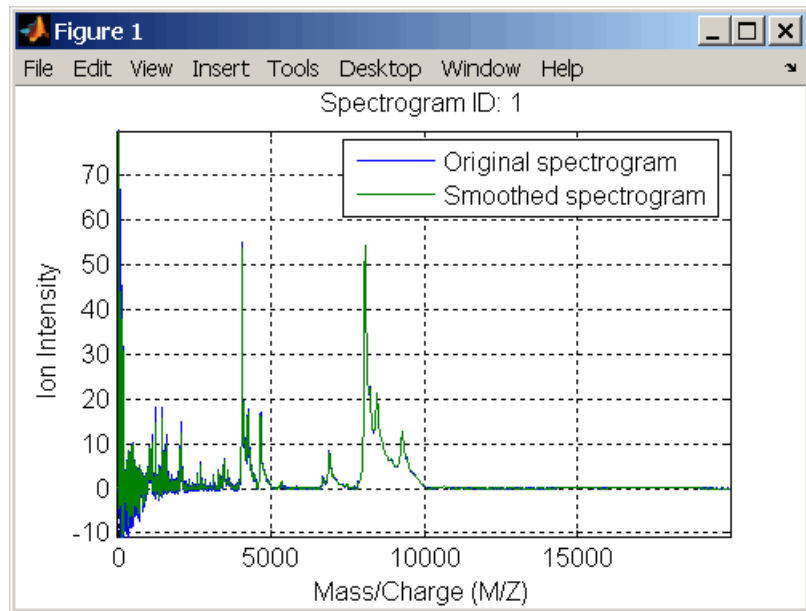
Example

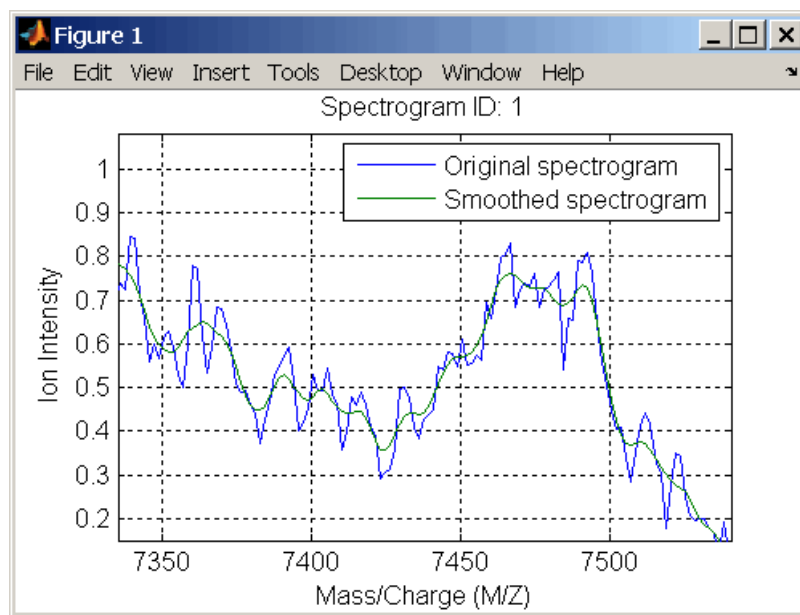
1 Load sample data.

```
load sample_lo_res
```

2 Smooth spectrum and draw figure with unsmoothed and smoothed spectra.

```
YS = mslowess(MZ_lo_res, Y_lo_res(:,1), 'Showplot', true);
```





See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `msalign`, `msbackadj`, `msheatmap`, `msheatmap`, `msnorm`, `mspeaks`, `msresample`, `mssgolay`, `msviewer`

Purpose

Normalize set of mass spectra

Syntax

```
Yout = msnorm(MZ, Y)  
[Yout, NormParameters] = msnorm(...)  
msnorm(MZ, NewY, NormParameters)  
msnorm(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)  
msnorm(..., 'Quantile', QuantileValue)  
msnorm(..., 'Limits', LimitsValue)  
msnorm(..., 'Consensus', ConsensusValue)  
msnorm(..., 'Method', MethodValue)  
msnorm(..., 'Max', MaxValue)
```

Arguments

<i>MZ</i>	Mass/charge vector with the range of ions in the spectra.
<i>Y</i>	Ion intensity vector with the same length as the mass/charge vector (<i>MZ</i>). <i>Y</i> can also be a matrix with several spectra that share the same mass/charge (<i>MZ</i>) range.

Description

Yout = msnorm(*MZ*, *Y*) normalizes a group of mass spectra by standardizing the area under the curve (AUC) to the group median.

[*Yout*, *NormParameters*] = msnorm(...) returns a structure with the parameters to normalize another group of spectra.

msnorm(*MZ*, *NewY*, *NormParameters*) uses the parameter information from a previous normalization (*NormParameters*) to normalize a new set of spectra (*NewY*) with the *MZ* positions and output scale from the previous normalization. *NormParameters* is a structure created by msnorm. If a consensus proportion (*ConsensusValue*) was given in the previous normalization, no new *MZ* positions are selected, and normalization is performed using the same *MZ* positions.

msnorm(..., '*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*,...) defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`msnorm(..., 'Quantile', QuantileValue)` specifies a 1-by-2 vector with the quantile limits for reducing the set of MZ values. For example, when *QuantileValue* is `[0.9 1]`, only the largest 10% of ion intensities in every spectrum are used to compute the AUC. When *QuantileValue* is a scalar, the scalar value represents the lower quantile limit and the upper quantile limit is set to 1. The default value is `[0 1]` (use the whole area under the curve, AUC).

`msnorm(..., 'Limits', LimitsValue)` specifies a 1-by-2 vector with an MZ range for picking normalization points. This parameter is useful to eliminate low-mass noise from the AUC calculation. The default value is `[1, max(MZ)]`.

`msnorm(..., 'Consensus', ConsensusValue)` selects MZ positions with a consensus rule to include an MZ position into the AUC. Its ion intensity must be within the quantile limits of at least part (*ConsensusValue*) of the spectra in *Y*. The same MZ positions are used to normalize all the spectrums. Enter a scalar between 0 and 1.

Use the Consensus property to eliminate low-intensity peaks and noise from the normalization.

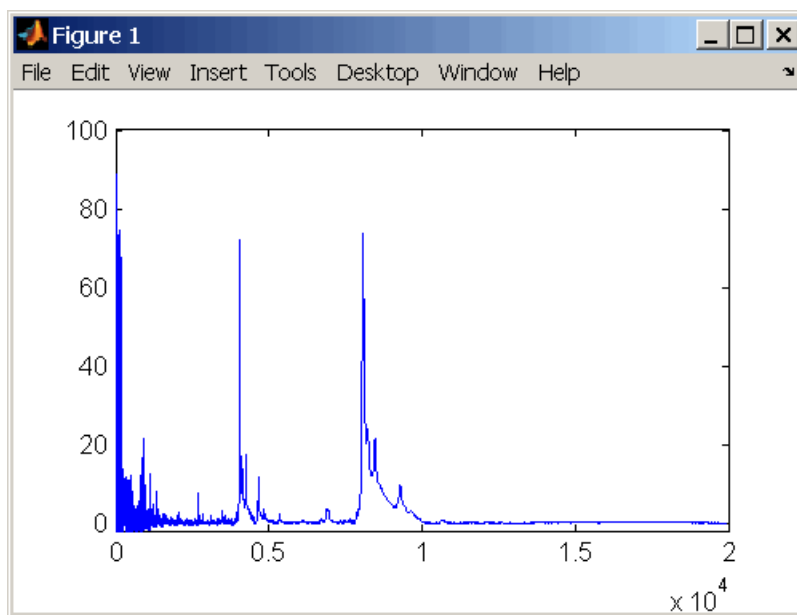
`msnorm(..., 'Method', MethodValue)` selects a method for normalizing the AUC of every spectrum. Enter either 'Median' (default) or 'Mean'.

`msnorm(..., 'Max', MaxValue)`, after individually normalizing every spectrum, scales each spectrum to an overall maximum intensity (Max). Max is a scalar. if omitted, no postscaling is performed. If *QuantileValue* is `[1 1]`, then a single point (peak height of the tallest peak) is normalized to Max.

Example 1

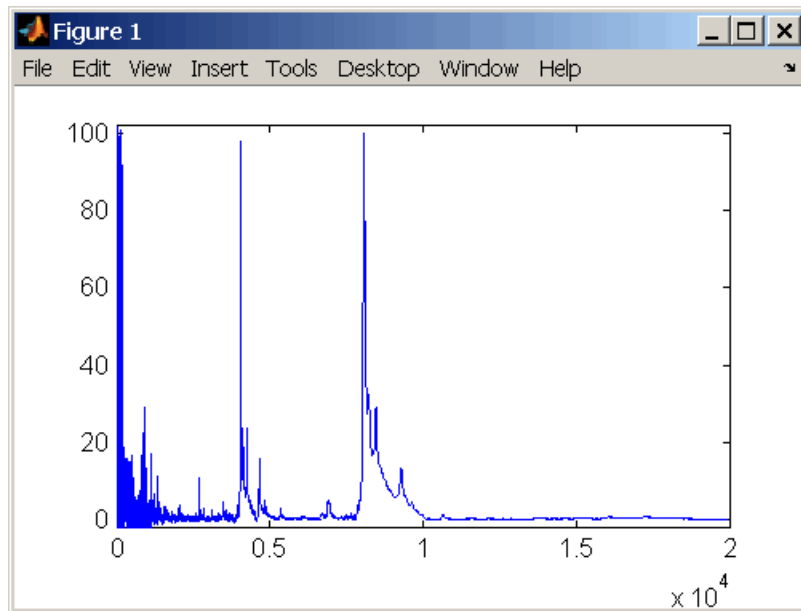
1 Load sample data and plot one of the spectra.

```
load sample_lo_res;
Y = Y_lo_res(:, [1 2 5 6]);
MZ = MZ_lo_res;
plot(MZ, Y(:, 4));
```



- 2 Normalize the AUC of every spectrum to its median, eliminating low-mass noise, and post-rescaling such that the maximum intensity is 100.

```
Y1 = msnorm(MZ,Y,'Limits',[1000 inf],'Max',100);  
plot(MZ, Y1(:, 4));
```



- 3 Normalize the ion intensity of every spectrum to the maximum intensity of the single highest peak from any of the spectra in the range above 100 m/z.

```
Y2 = msnorm(MZ,Y,'QUANTILE',[1 1],'LIMITS',[1000 inf]);
```

Example 2

- 1 Select MZ regions where the intensities are within the third quartile in at least 90% of the spectrograms.

```
[Y3,S] = msnorm(MZ,Y,'Quantile',[0.5 0.75],'Consensus',0.9);
```

- 2 Use the same MZ regions to normalize another set of spectrograms.

```
Y4 = msnorm(MZ,Y,S);
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `msalign`, `msbackadj`, `msheatmap`, `mslowess`, `msresample`, `mssgolay`, `msviewer`

Purpose

Align mass spectra from multiple peak lists from LC/MS or GC/MS data set

Syntax

```
[CMZ, AlignedPeaks] = malign(Peaks)
[CMZ, AlignedPeaks] = malign(Peaks, ...'Quantile',
QuantileValue, ...)
[CMZ, AlignedPeaks] = malign(Peaks,
... 'EstimationMethod',
EstimationMethodValue, ...)
[CMZ, AlignedPeaks] = malign(Peaks,
... 'CorrectionMethod',
CorrectionMethodValue, ...)
```

Arguments

Peaks

Cell array of peak lists from a liquid chromatography/mass spectrometry (LC/MS) or gas chromatography/mass spectrometry (GC/MS) data set. Each element in the cell array is a two-column matrix with m/z values in the first column and ion intensity values in the second column. Each element corresponds to a spectrum or retention time.

Note You can use the `mzxml2peaks` function or the `mspeaks` function to create the *Peaks* cell array.

QuantileValue

Value that determines which peaks are selected by the estimation method to create *CMZ*, the vector of common m/z values. Choices are any value ≥ 0 and ≤ 1 . Default is 0.95.

EstimationMethodValue String specifying the method to estimate *CMZ*, the vector of common mass/charge (m/z) values. Choices are:

- histogram — Default method. Peak locations are clustered using a kernel density estimation approach. The peak ion intensity is used as a weighting factor. The center of all the clusters conform to the *CMZ* vector.
- regression — Takes a sample of the distances between observed significant peaks and regresses the inter-peak distance to create the *CMZ* vector with similar inter-element distances.

CorrectionMethodValue String specifying the method to align each peak list to the *CMZ* vector. Choices are:

- nearest-neighbor — Default method. For each common peak in the *CMZ* vector, its counterpart in each peak list is the peak that is closest to the common peak's m/z value.
- shortest-path — For each common peak in the *CMZ* vector, its counterpart in each peak list is selected using the shortest path algorithm.

Return Values

<i>CMZ</i>	Vector of common mass/charge (m/z) values estimated by the <i>malign</i> function.
<i>AlignedPeaks</i>	Cell array of peak lists, with the same form as <i>Peaks</i> , but with corrected m/z values in the first column of each matrix.

Description

`[CMZ, AlignedPeaks] = mspalign(Peaks)` aligns mass spectra from multiple peak lists (centroided data), by first estimating *CMZ*, a vector of common mass/charge (m/z) values estimated by considering the peaks in all spectra in *Peaks*, a cell array of peak lists, where each element corresponds to a spectrum or retention time. It then aligns the peaks in each spectrum to the values in *CMZ*, creating *AlignedPeaks*, a cell array of aligned peak lists.

`[CMZ, AlignedPeaks] = mspalign(Peaks, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `mspalign` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`[CMZ, AlignedPeaks] = mspalign(Peaks, ...'Quantile', QuantileValue, ...)` determines which peaks are selected by the estimation method to create *CMZ*, the vector of common m/z values. Choices are a scalar between 0 and 1. Default is 0.95.

`[CMZ, AlignedPeaks] = mspalign(Peaks, ...'EstimationMethod', EstimationMethodValue, ...)` specifies the method used to estimate *CMZ*, the vector of common mass/charge (m/z) values. Choices are:

- `histogram` — Default method. Peak locations are clustered using a kernel density estimation approach. The peak ion intensity is used as a weighting factor. The center of all the clusters conform to the *CMZ* vector.
- `regression` — Takes a sample of the distances between observed significant peaks and regresses the inter-peak distance to create the *CMZ* vector with similar inter-element distances.

`[CMZ, AlignedPeaks] = mspalign(Peaks, ...'CorrectionMethod', CorrectionMethodValue, ...)` specifies the method used to align each peak list to the *CMZ* vector. Choices are:

- `nearest-neighbor` — Default method. For each common peak in the *CMZ* vector, its counterpart in each peak list is the peak that is closest to the common peak's *m/z* value.
- `shortest-path` — For each common peak in the *CMZ* vector, its counterpart in each peak list is selected using the shortest path algorithm.

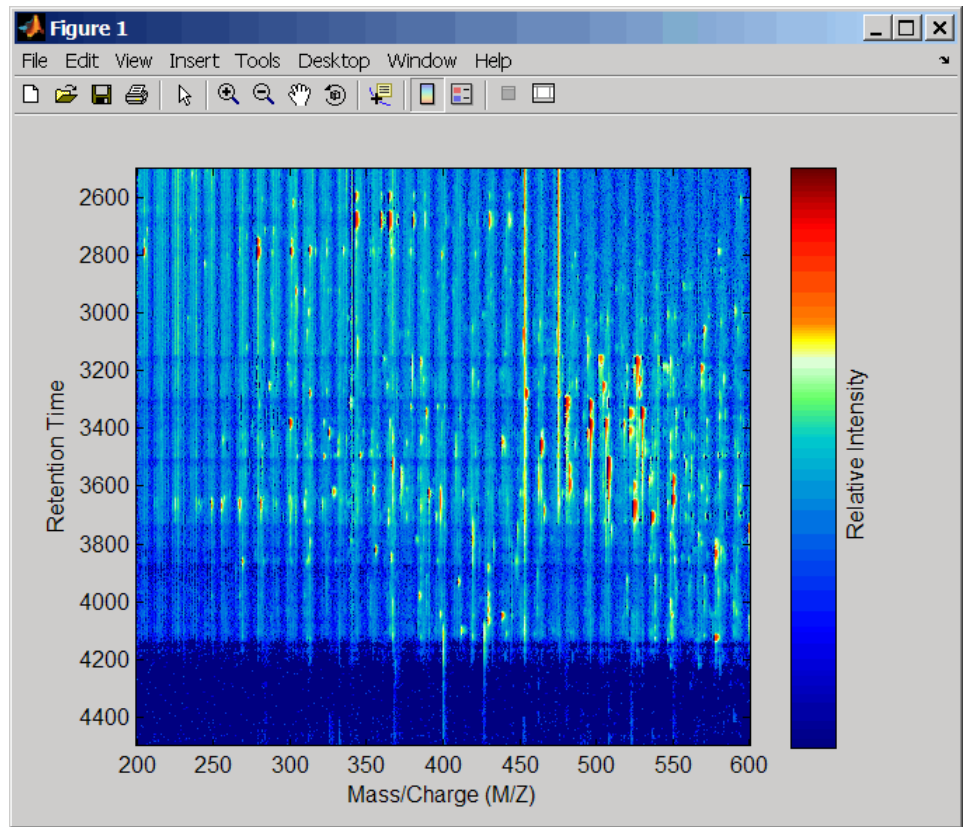
Examples

- 1 Load a MAT file, included with Bioinformatics Toolbox, which contains liquid chromatography/mass spectrometry (LC/MS) data variables, including `peaks` and `ret_time`. `peaks` is a cell array of peak lists, where each element is a two-column matrix of *m/z* values and ion intensity values, and each element corresponds to a spectrum or retention time. `ret_time` is a column vector of retention times associated with the LC/MS data set.

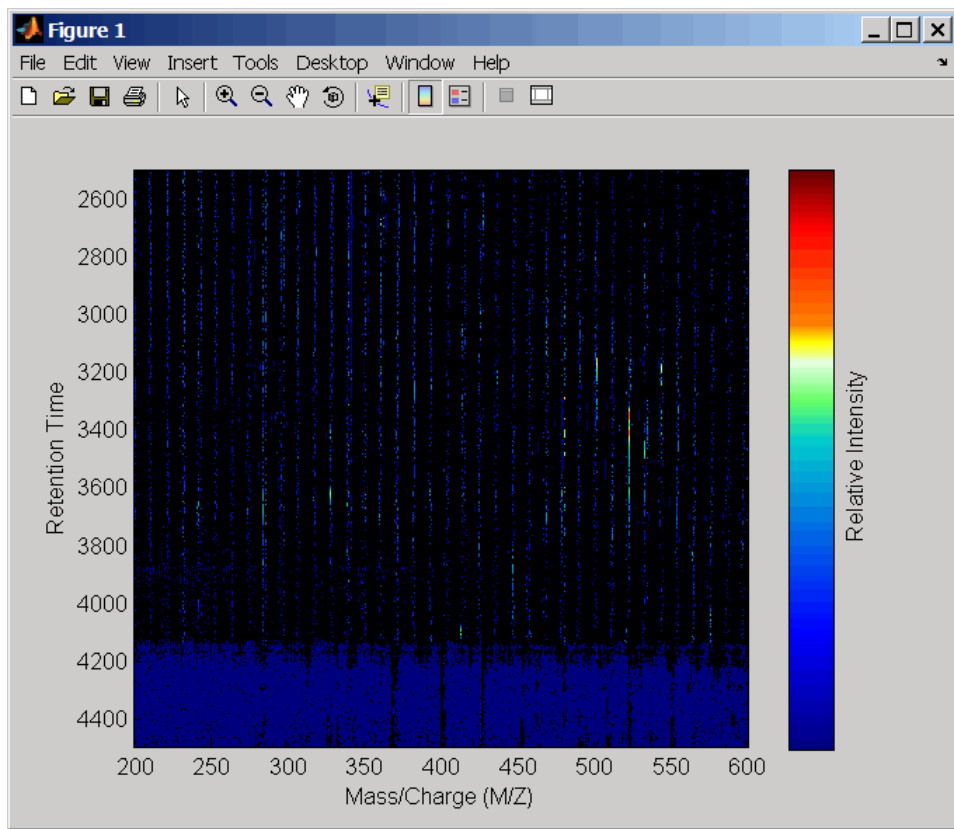
```
load lcmsdata
```

- 2 Resample the unaligned data and display it in a heat map and dot plot.

```
[MZ,Y] = mspresample(peaks,5000);  
msheatmap(MZ,ret_time,log(Y))
```

```
msdotplot(peaks,ret_time)
```

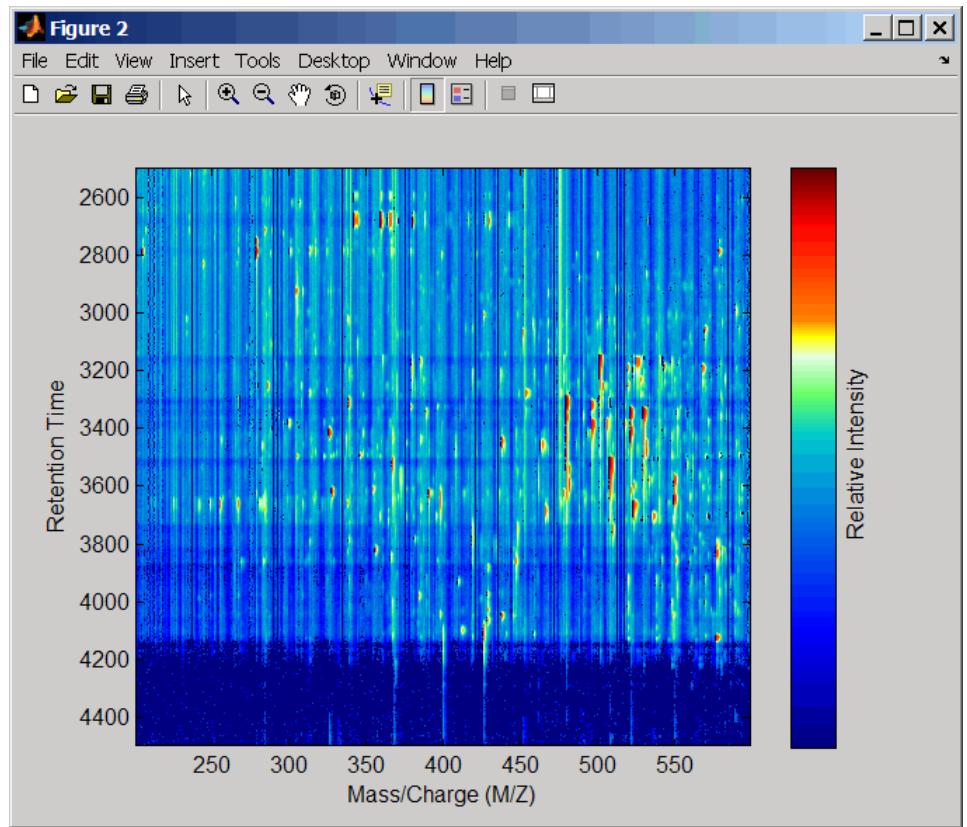


- 3 Align the peak lists from the mass spectra using the default estimation and correction methods.

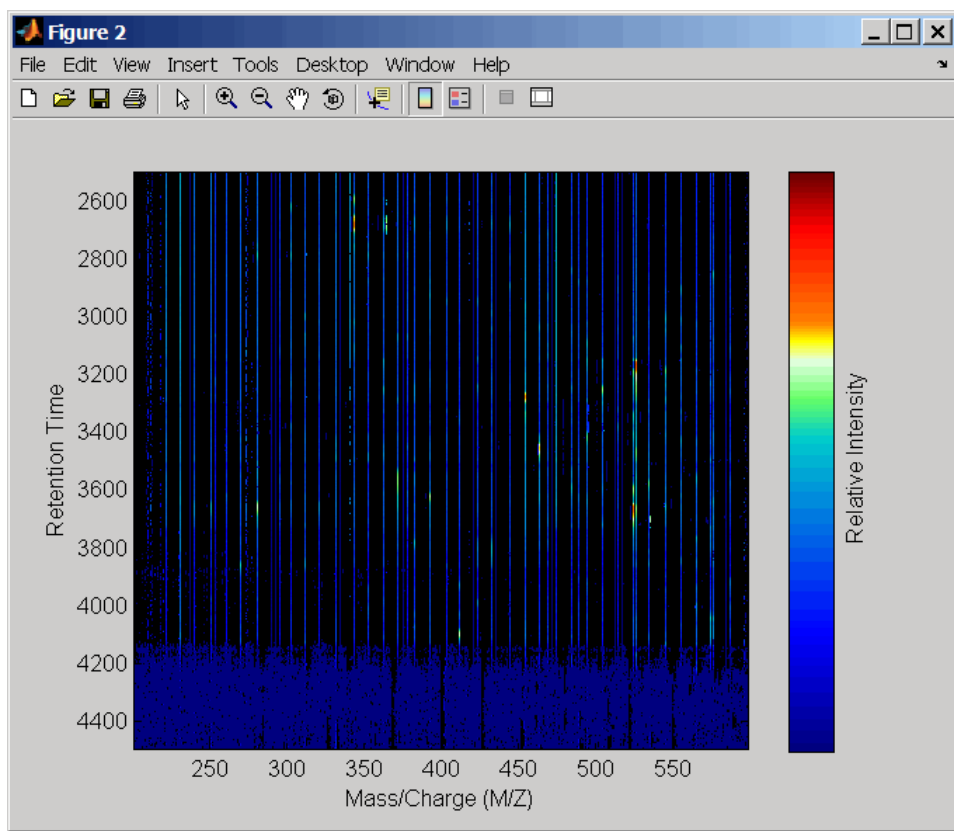
```
[CMZ, aligned_peaks] = mspalign(peaks);
```

- 4 Resample the unaligned data and display it in a heat map and dot plot.

```
[MZ2,Y2] = mspresample(aligned_peaks,5000);  
msheatmap(MZ2,ret_time,log(Y2))
```

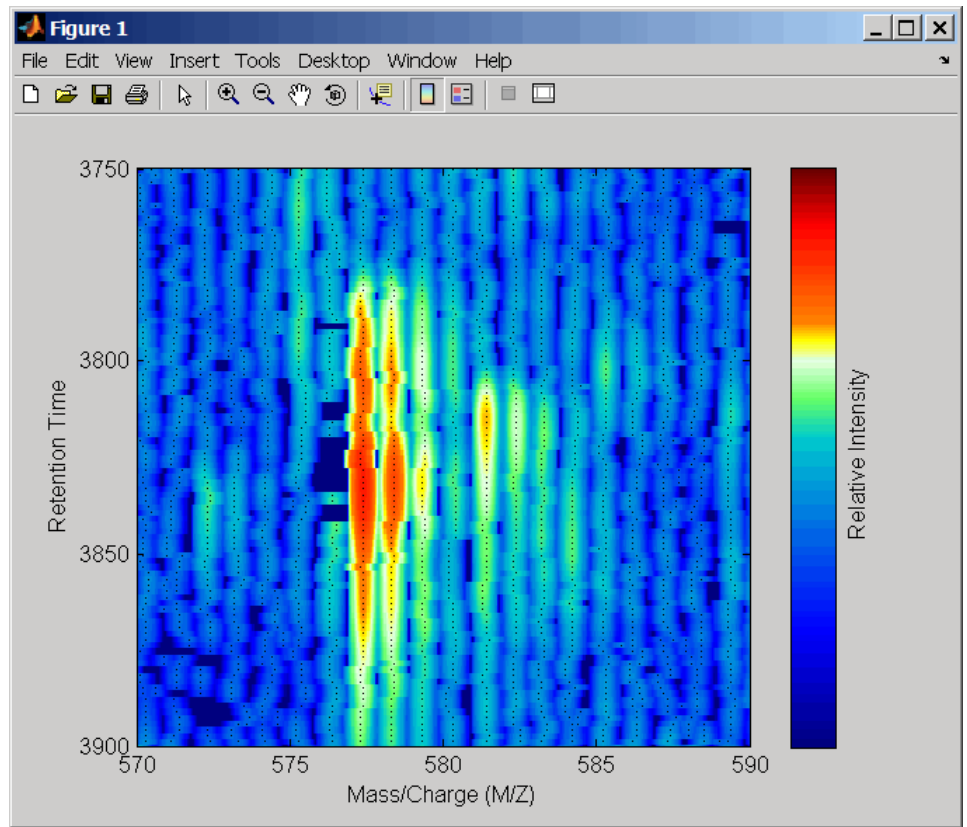


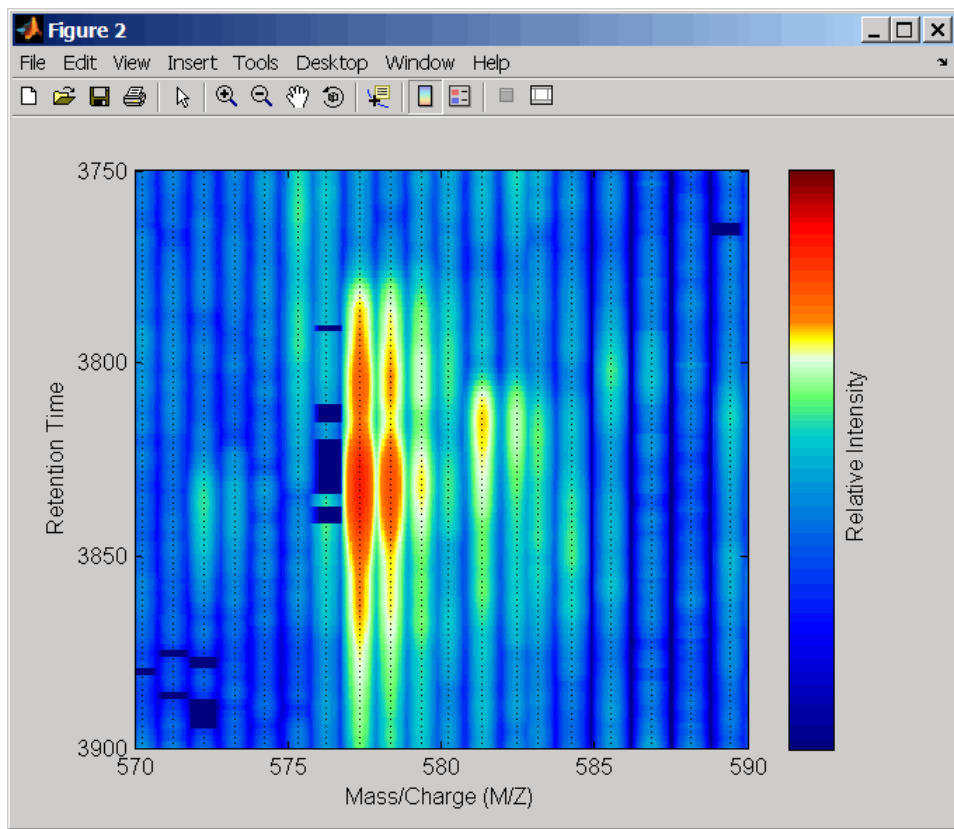
```
msdotplot(aligned_peaks,ret_time)
```



- 5 Link the axes of the two heat plots and zoom in to observe the detail.

```
linkaxes(findobj(0,'Tag','MSHeatMap'))  
axis([570 590 3750 3900])
```





References

- [1] Jeffries, N. (2005) Algorithms for alignment of mass spectrometry proteomic data. *Bioinformatics* 21:14, 3066–3073.
- [2] Purvine, S., Kolker, N., and Kolker, E. (2004) Spectral Quality Assessment for High-Throughput Tandem Mass Spectrometry Proteomics. *OMICS: A Journal of Integrative Biology* 8:3, 255–265.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `msalign`, `msdotplot`, `msheatmap`, `mspeaks`, `msppresample`, `mzxml2peaks`

Purpose

Convert raw mass spectrometry data to peak list (centroided data)

Syntax

```
Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities)
Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities, ...'Base', BaseValue, ...)
Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities, ...'Levels', LevelsValue,
    ...)
Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities, ...'NoiseEstimator',
    NoiseEstimatorValue, ...)
Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities, ...'Multiplier',
    MultiplierValue, ...)
Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities, ...'Denoising',
    DenoisingValue, ...)
Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities, ...'PeakLocation',
    PeakLocationValue, ...)
Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities, ...'FWHH_Filter',
    FWHH_FilterValue, ...)
Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities,
    ...'OverSegmentation_Filter',
    OverSegmentation_FilterValue, ...)
Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities, ...'Height_Filter',
    Height_FilterValue, ...)
Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities, ...'ShowPlot',
    ShowPlotValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>MZ</i>	Vector of mass/charge (m/z) values for a set of spectra. The number of elements in the vector equals n or the number of rows in matrix <i>Intensities</i> .
<i>Intensities</i>	Matrix of intensity values for a set of mass spectra that share the same mass/charge (m/z) range. Each row corresponds to an m/z value, and each column corresponds to a spectrum or retention time. The number of rows equals n or the number of elements in vector <i>MZ</i> .
<i>BaseValue</i>	An integer between 2 and 20 that specifies the wavelet base. Default is 4.
<i>LevelsValue</i>	An integer between 1 and 12 that specifies the number of levels for the wavelet decomposition. Default is 10.

NoiseEstimatorValue

String or scalar that specifies the method to estimate the threshold, T , to filter out noisy components in the first high-band decomposition (y_h). Choices are:

- `mad` — Default. Median absolute deviation, which calculates $T = \text{sqrt}(2 * \log(n)) * \text{mad}(y_h) / 0.6745$, where n = the number of rows in the *Intensities* matrix.
- `std` — Standard deviation, which calculates $T = \text{std}(y_h)$.
- A positive real value.

MultiplierValue

A positive real value that specifies the threshold multiplier constant. Default is 1.0.

DenoisingValue

Controls the use of wavelet denoising to smooth the signal. Choices are `true` (default) or `false`.

Note If your data has previously been smoothed, for example, with the `mslowess` or `mssgolay` function, it is not necessary to use wavelet denoising. Set this property to `false`.

<i>PeakLocationValue</i>	Value that specifies the proportion of the peak height that selects the points used to compute the centroid mass of the respective peak. The value must be ≥ 0 and ≤ 1 . Default is 1.0.
<i>FWHH_FilterValue</i>	Positive real value that specifies the minimum full width at half height (FWHH), in m/z units, for reported peaks. Peaks with FWHH below this value are not included in the output list <i>Peaks</i> . Default is 0.
<i>OverSegmentation_FilterValue</i>	Positive real value that specifies the minimum distance, in m/z units, between neighboring peaks. When the signal is not smoothed appropriately, multiple maxima can appear to represent the same peak. By increasing this filter value, oversegmented peaks are joined into a single peak. Default is 0.

Height_FilterValue Positive real value that specifies the minimum height for reported peaks. Default is 0.

ShowPlotValue Controls the display of a plot of the original and the smoothed signal, with the peaks included in the output matrix *Peaks* marked. Choices are `true`, `false`, or `I`, an integer specifying the index of a spectrum in *Intensities*. If set to `true`, the first spectrum in *Intensities* is plotted. Default is:

- `false` — When return values are specified.
- `true` — When return values are not specified.

Return Values

Peaks Two-column matrix where each row corresponds to a peak. The first column contains mass/charge (m/z) values, and the second column contains ion intensity values.

Description

Peaks = `mspeaks(MZ, Intensities)` finds relevant peaks in raw mass spectrometry data, and creates *Peaks*, a two-column matrix, containing the m/z value and ion intensity for each peak.

`mspeaks` finds peaks by first smoothing the signal using undecimated wavelet transform with Daubechies coefficients, then assigning peak locations, and lastly, eliminating peaks that do not satisfy specified criteria.

Peaks = `mspeaks(MZ, Intensities, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `mspeaks` with optional properties that

use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

Peaks = mspeaks(*MZ*, *Intensities*, ...'Base', *BaseValue*, ...) specifies the wavelet base. *BaseValue* must be an integer between 2 and 20. Default is 4.

Peaks = mspeaks(*MZ*, *Intensities*, ...'Levels', *LevelsValue*, ...) specifies the number of levels for the wavelet decomposition. *LevelsValue* must be an integer between 1 and 12. Default is 10.

Peaks = mspeaks(*MZ*, *Intensities*, ...'NoiseEstimator', *NoiseEstimatorValue*, ...) specifies the method to estimate the threshold, T , to filter out noisy components in the first high-band decomposition (y_h). Choices are:

- mad — Default. Median absolute deviation, which calculates $T = \sqrt{2 \cdot \log(n)} \cdot \text{mad}(y_h) / 0.6745$, where n = the number of rows in the *Intensities* matrix.
- std — Standard deviation, which calculates $T = \text{std}(y_h)$.
- A positive real value.

Peaks = mspeaks(*MZ*, *Intensities*, ...'Multiplier', *MultiplierValue*, ...) specifies the threshold multiplier constant. *MultiplierValue* must be a positive real value. Default is 1.0.

Peaks = mspeaks(*MZ*, *Intensities*, ...'Denoising', *DenoisingValue*, ...) controls the use of wavelet denoising to smooth the signal. Choices are true (default) or false.

Note If your data has previously been smoothed, for example, with the `mslowess` or `mssgolay` function, it is not necessary to use wavelet denoising. Set this property to `false`.

`Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities, ...'PeakLocation', PeakLocationValue, ...)` specifies the proportion of the peak height that selects the points used to compute the centroid mass of the respective peak. `PeakLocationValue` must be a value ≥ 0 and ≤ 1 . Default is 1.0.

Note When `PeakLocationValue = 1.0`, the peak location is exactly at the maximum of the peak, while when `PeakLocationValue = 0`, the peak location is computed with all the points from the closest minimum to the left of the peak to the closest minimum to the right of the peak.

`Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities, ...'FWHH_Filter', FWHH_FilterValue, ...)` specifies the minimum full width at half height (FWHH), in m/z units, for reported peaks. Peaks with FWHH below this value are not included in the output list `Peaks`. `FWHH_FilterValue` must be a positive real value. Default is 0.

`Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities, ...'OverSegmentation_Filter', OverSegmentation_FilterValue, ...)` specifies the minimum distance, in m/z units, between neighboring peaks. When the signal is not smoothed appropriately, multiple maxima can appear to represent the same peak. By increasing this filter value, oversegmented peaks are joined into a single peak. `OverSegmentation_FilterValue` must be a positive real value. Default is 0.

`Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities, ...'Height_Filter', Height_FilterValue, ...)` specifies the minimum height for reported

peaks. Peaks with heights below this value are not included in the output list *Peaks*. *Height_FilterValue* must be a positive real value. Default is 0.

Peaks = mspeaks(MZ, Intensities, ... 'ShowPlot', ShowPlotValue, ...) controls the display of a plot of the original and the smoothed signal, with the peaks included in the output matrix *Peaks* marked. Choices are true, false, or *I*, an integer specifying the index of a spectrum in *Intensities*. If set to true, the first spectrum in *Intensities* is plotted. Default is:

- false — When return values are specified.
- true — When return values are not specified.

Examples

- 1 Load a MAT file, included with Bioinformatics Toolbox, which contains mass spectrometry data variables, including *MZ_lo_res*, a vector of m/z values for a set of spectra, and *Y_lo_res*, a matrix of intensity values for a set of mass spectra that share the same m/z range.

```
load sample_lo_res
```

- 2 Adjust the baseline of the eight spectra stored in *Y_lo_res*.

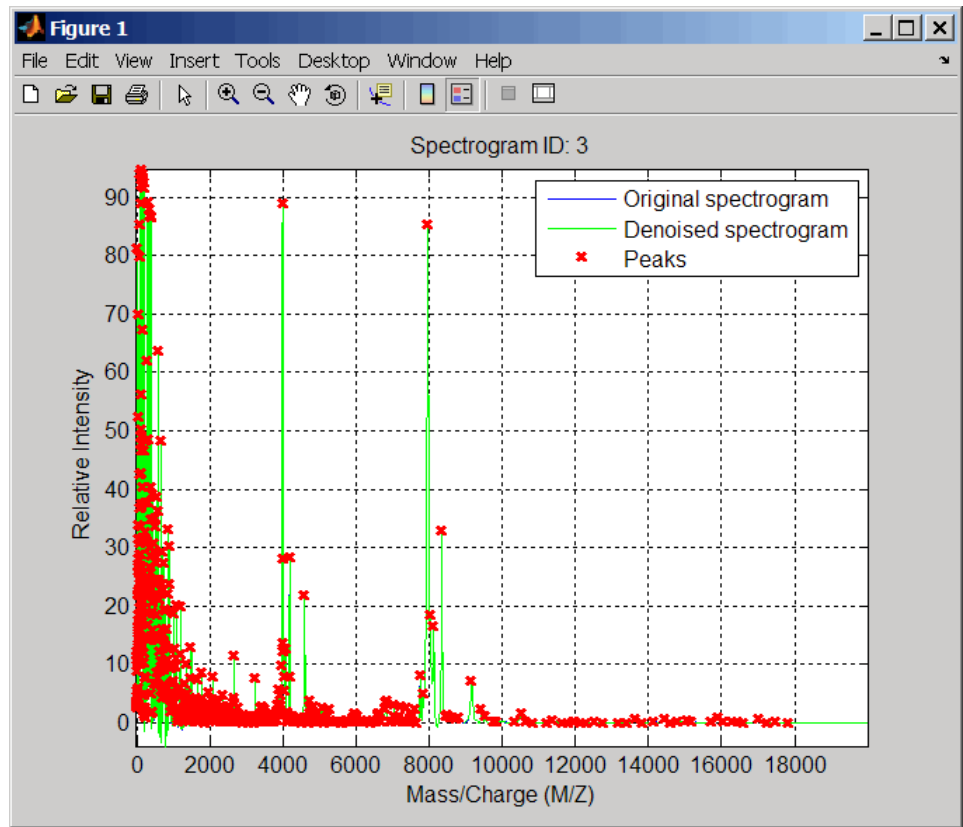
```
YB = msbackadj(MZ_lo_res, Y_lo_res);
```

- 3 Convert the raw mass spectrometry data to a peak list by finding the relevant peaks in each spectrum.

```
P = mspeaks(MZ_lo_res, YB);
```

- 4 Plot the third spectrum in *YB*, the matrix of baseline-corrected intensity values, with the detected peaks marked.

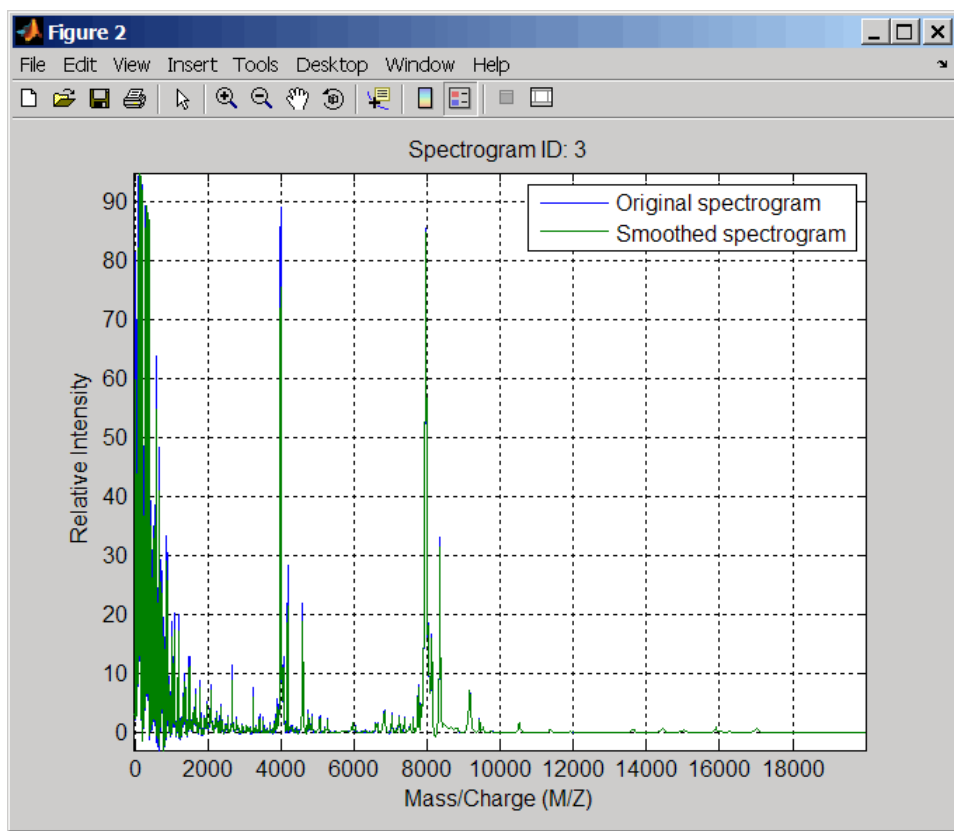
```
P = mspeaks(MZ_lo_res, YB, 'SHOWPLOT', 3);
```



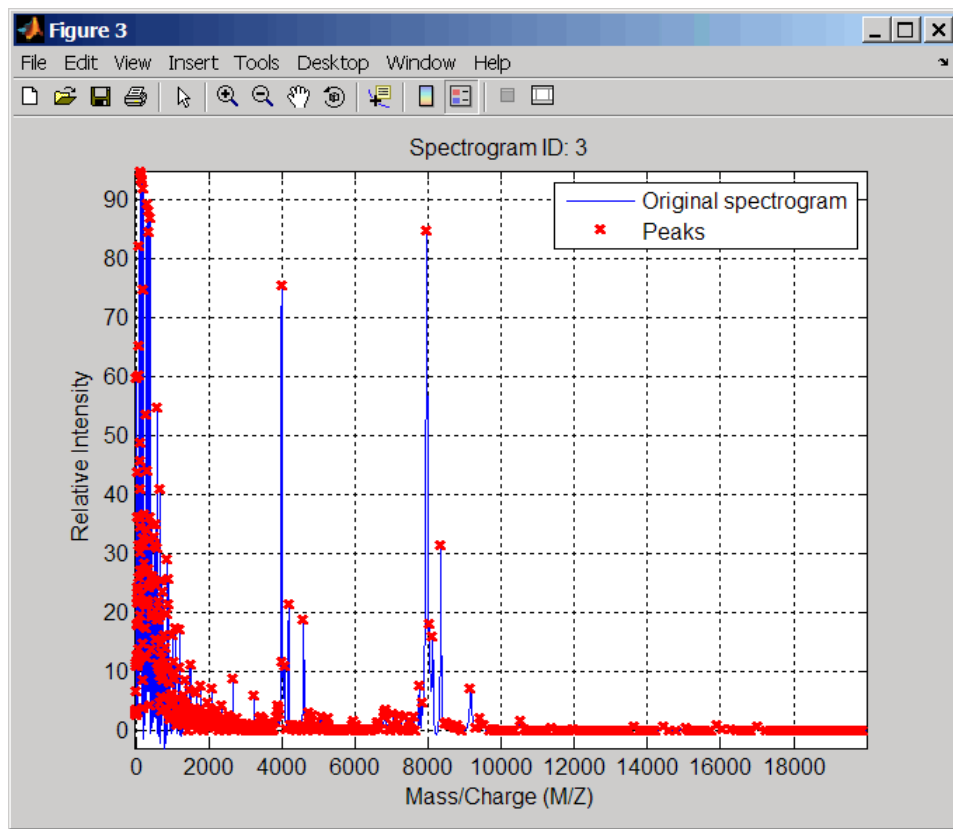
- 5 Smooth the signal using the `mslowess` function. Then convert the smoothed data to a peak list by finding relevant peaks and plot the third spectrum.

```
YS = mslowess(MZ_lo_res,YB,'SHOWPLOT',3);
```

mspeaks

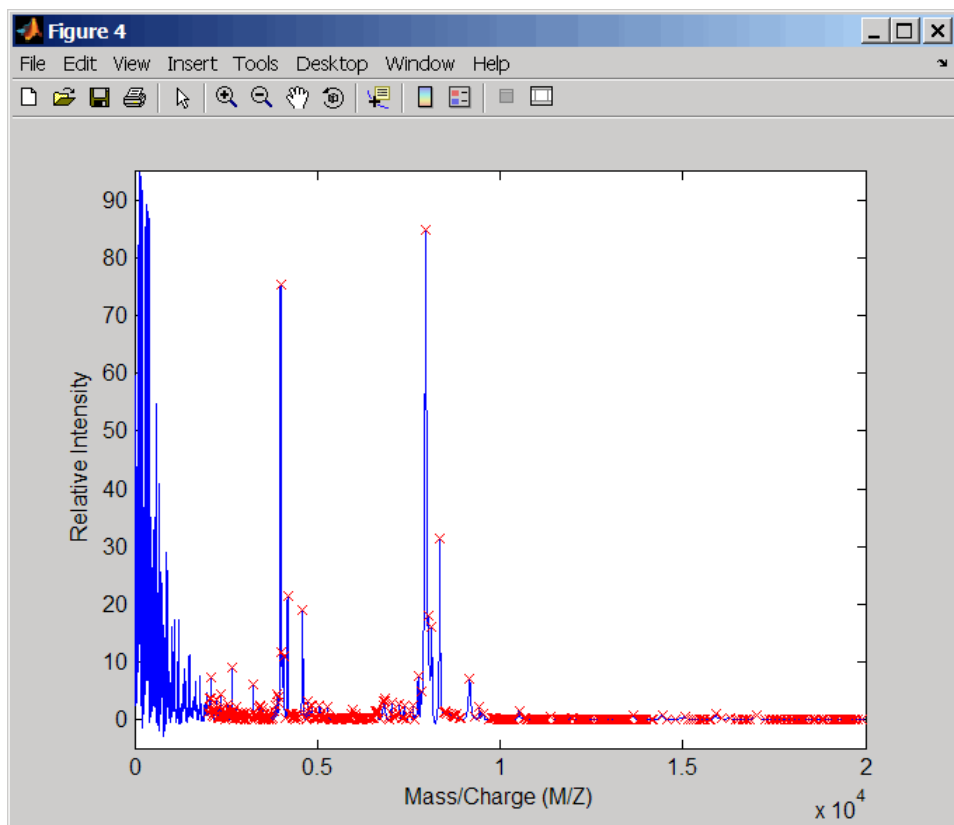


```
P = mspeaks(MZ_lo_res,YS,'DENOISING',false,'SHOWPLOT',3);
```

- 6 Use the `cellfun` function to remove all peaks with m/z values less than 2000 from the eight peaks lists in output P. Then plot the peaks of the third spectrum (in red) over its smoothed signal (in blue).

```
Q = cellfun(@(p) p(p(:,1)>2000,:),P,'UniformOutput',false);
figure
plot(MZ_lo_res,YS(:,3),'b',Q{3}(:,1),Q{3}(:,2),'rx')
xlabel('Mass/Charge (M/Z)')
ylabel('Relative Intensity')
axis([0 20000 -5 95])
```



References

- [1] Morris, J.S., Coombes, K.R., Koomen, J., Baggerly, K.A., and Kobayash, R. (2005) Feature extraction and quantification for mass spectrometry in biomedical applications using the mean spectrum. *Bioinformatics* 21:9, 1764–1775.
- [2] Yasui, Y., Pepe, M., Thompson, M.L., Adam, B.L., Wright, G.L., Qu, Y., Potter, J.D., Winget, M., Thornquist, M., and Feng, Z. (2003) A data-analytic strategy for protein biomarker discovery: profiling of

high-dimensional proteomic data for cancer detection. *Biostatistics* 4:3, 449–463.

[3] Donoho, D.L., and Johnstone, I.M. (1995) Adapting to unknown smoothness via wavelet shrinkage. *J. Am. Statist. Asso.* 90, 1200–1224.

[4] Strang, G., and Nguyen, T. (1996) *Wavelets and Filter Banks* (Wellesley: Cambridge Press).

[5] Coombes, K.R., Tsavachidis, S., Morris, J.S., Baggerly, K.A., Hung, M.C., and Kuerer, H.M. (2005) Improved peak detection and quantification of mass spectrometry data acquired from surface-enhanced laser desorption and ionization by denoising spectra with the undecimated discrete wavelet transform. *Proteomics* 5(16), 4107–4117.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `msbackadj`, `msdotplot`, `mslowess`, `mssalign`, `msspresample`, `mssgolay`

msppresample

Purpose Resample mass spectrometry signal while preserving peaks

Syntax

```
[MZ, Intensities] = msppresample(Peaks, N)
[MZ, Intensities] = msppresample(Peaks, N,
... 'Range', RangeValue, ...)
[MZ, Intensities] = msppresample(Peaks, N, ... 'FWHH',
FWHHValue, ...)
[MZ, Intensities] = msppresample(Peaks, N, ... 'ShowPlot',
ShowPlotValue, ...)
```

Arguments

Peaks Either of the following:

- Two-column matrix, where the first column contains mass/charge (m/z) values and the second column contains ion intensity values.
- Cell array of peak lists, where each element is a two-column matrix of m/z values and ion intensity values, and each element corresponds to a spectrum or retention time.

Note You can use the `mzxm12peaks` function or the `mspeaks` function to create the *Peaks* matrix or cell array.

N Integer specifying the number of equally spaced points (m/z values) in the resampled signal.

RangeValue 1-by-2 vector specifying the minimum and maximum m/z values for the output matrix *Intensities*. *RangeValue* must be within $[\min(inputMZ) \max(inputMZ)]$, where *inputMZ* is the concatenated m/z values from the input *Peaks*. Default is the full range $[\min(inputMZ) \max(inputMZ)]$.

FWHHValue Value that specifies the full width at half height (FWHH) in m/z units. The FWHH is used to convert each peak to a Gaussian shaped curve. Default is $\text{median}(\text{diff}(\text{inputMZ}))/2$, where *inputMZ* is the concatenated m/z values from the input *Peaks*. The default is a rough approximation of resolution observed in the input data, *Peaks*.

Tip To ensure that the resolution of the peaks is preserved, set *FWHHValue* to half the distance between the two peaks of interest that are closest to each other.

ShowPlotValue Controls the display of a plot of an original and resampled spectrum. Choices are true, false, or *I*, an integer specifying the index of a spectrum in *Intensities*. If set to true, the first spectrum in *Intensities* is plotted. Default is:

- false — When return values are specified.
- true — When return values are not specified.

Return Values

MZ Vector of equally spaced, common mass/charge (m/z) values for a set of spectra. The number of elements in the vector equals *N* or the number of rows in matrix *Intensities*.

Intensities Matrix of reconstructed intensity values for a set of mass spectra that share the same mass/charge (m/z) range. Each row corresponds to an m/z value, and each column corresponds to a spectrum or retention time. The number of rows equals *N* or the number of elements in vector *MZ*.

Description

`[MZ, Intensities] = msppresample(Peaks, N)` resamples *Peaks*, a mass spectrometry peak list, by converting centroided peaks to a semicontinuous, raw signal that preserves peak information. The resampled signal has *N* equally spaced points. Output *MZ* is a vector of *N* elements specifying the equally spaced, common m/z values for the spectra. Output *Intensities* is a matrix of reconstructed intensity values for a set of mass spectra that share the same m/z range. Each row corresponds to an m/z value, and each column corresponds to a spectrum or retention time. The number of rows equals *N*.

`msppresample` uses a Gaussian kernel to reconstruct the signal. The ion intensity at any given m/z value is taken from the maximum intensity of any contributing (overlapping) peaks.

Tip `msppresample` is useful to prepare a set of spectra for imaging functions such as `msheatmap` and preprocessing functions such as `msbackadj` and `msnorm`.

`[MZ, Intensities] = msppresample(Peaks, N, ... 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `msppresample` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`[MZ, Intensities] = msppresample(Peaks, N, ... 'Range', RangeValue, ...)` specifies an m/z range for the output matrix *Intensities* using the minimum and maximum m/z values specified in the 1-by-2 vector *RangeValue*. *RangeValue* must be within `[min(inputMZ) max(inputMZ)]`, where *inputMZ* is the concatenated m/z values from the input *Peaks*. Default is the full range `[min(inputMZ) max(inputMZ)]`

`[MZ, Intensities] = msppresample(Peaks, N, ... 'FWHH', FWHHValue, ...)` sets the full width at half height (FWHH) in m/z units. The FWHH is used to convert each peak

to a Gaussian shaped curve. Default is `median(diff(inputMZ))/2`, where `inputMZ` is the concatenated m/z values from the input `Peaks`. The default is a rough approximation of resolution observed in the input data, `Peaks`.

Tip To ensure that the resolution of the peaks is preserved, set `FWHHValue` to half the distance between the two peaks of interest that are closest to each other.

`[MZ, Intensities] = msppresample(Peaks, N, ... 'ShowPlot', ShowPlotValue, ...)` controls the display of a plot of an original and resampled spectrum. Choices are `true`, `false`, or `I`, an integer specifying the index of a spectrum in `Intensities`. If set to `true`, the first spectrum in `Intensities` is plotted. Default is:

- `false` — When return values are specified.
- `true` — When return values are not specified.

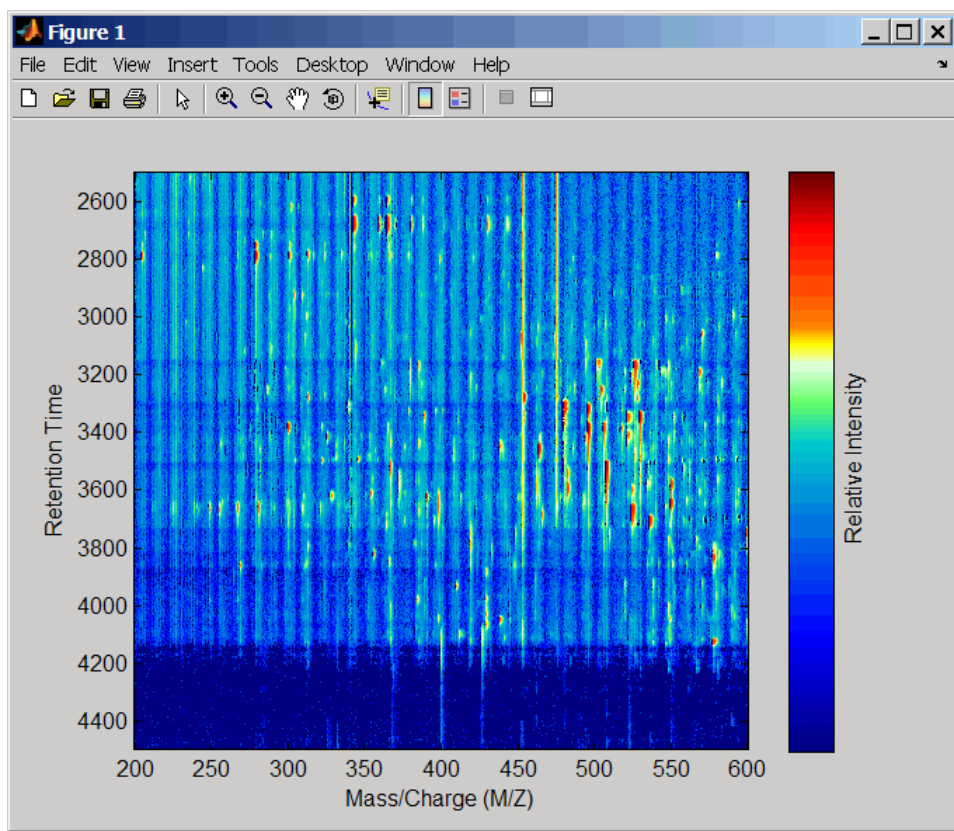
Examples

- 1 Load a MAT file, included with Bioinformatics Toolbox, which contains liquid chromatography/mass spectrometry (LC/MS) data variables, including `peaks`, a cell array of peak lists, where each element is a two-column matrix of m/z values and ion intensity values, and each element corresponds to a spectrum or retention time.

```
load lcmsdata
```

- 2 Resample the data, specifying 5000 m/z values in the resampled signal. Then create a heat map of the LC/MS data.

```
[MZ,Y] = msppresample(peaks,5000);  
msheatmap(MZ,ret_time,log(Y))
```

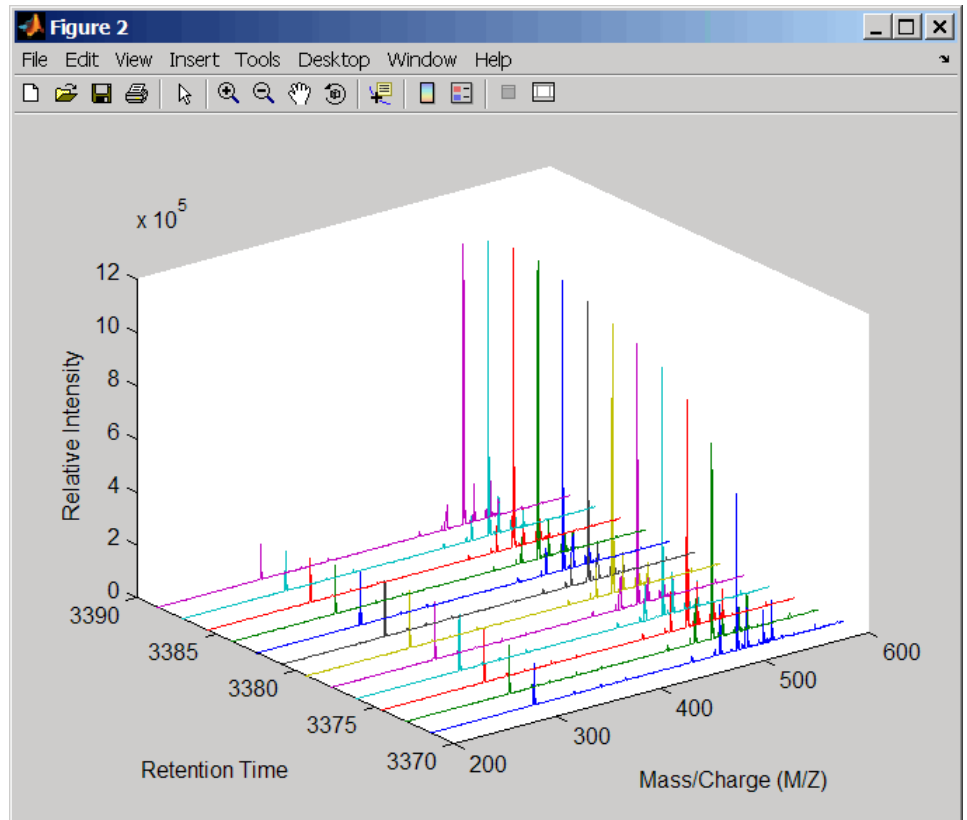


3 Plot the reconstructed profile spectra between two retention times.

```
figure
t1 = 3370;
t2 = 3390;
h = find(ret_time>t1 & ret_time<t2);
[MZ,Y] = msppresample(peaks(h),10000);
plot3(repmat(MZ,1,numel(h)),repmat(ret_time(h)',10000,1),Y)
xlabel('Mass/Charge (M/Z)')
ylabel('Retention Time')
```

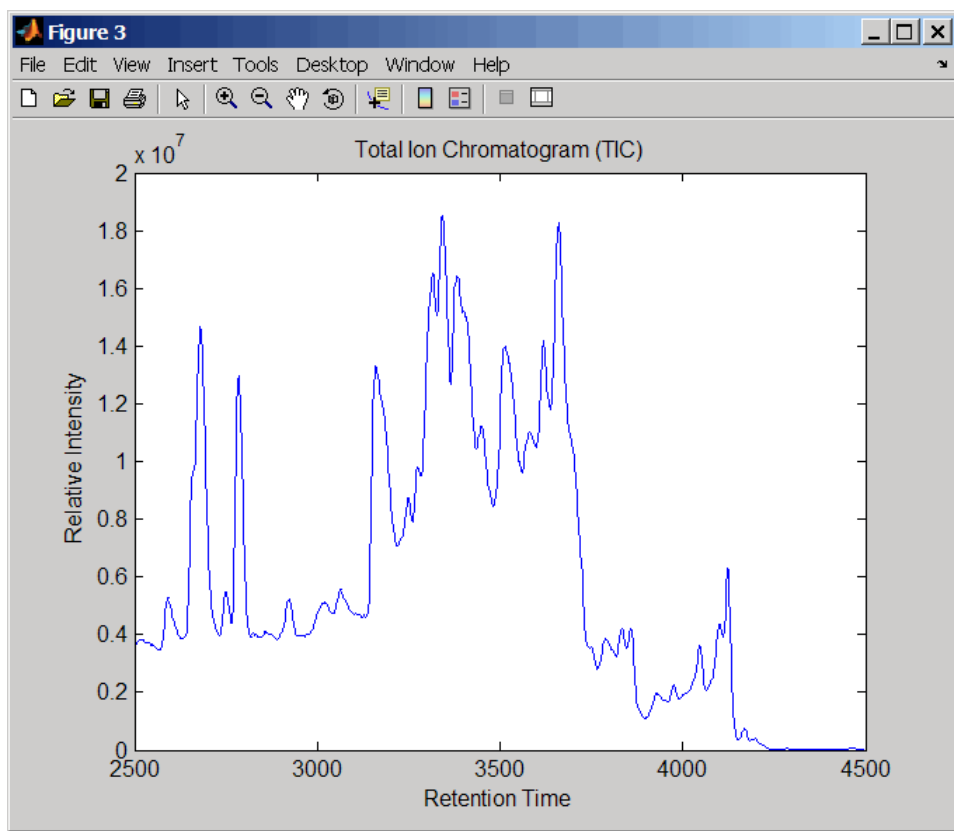


```
zlabel('Relative Intensity')
```



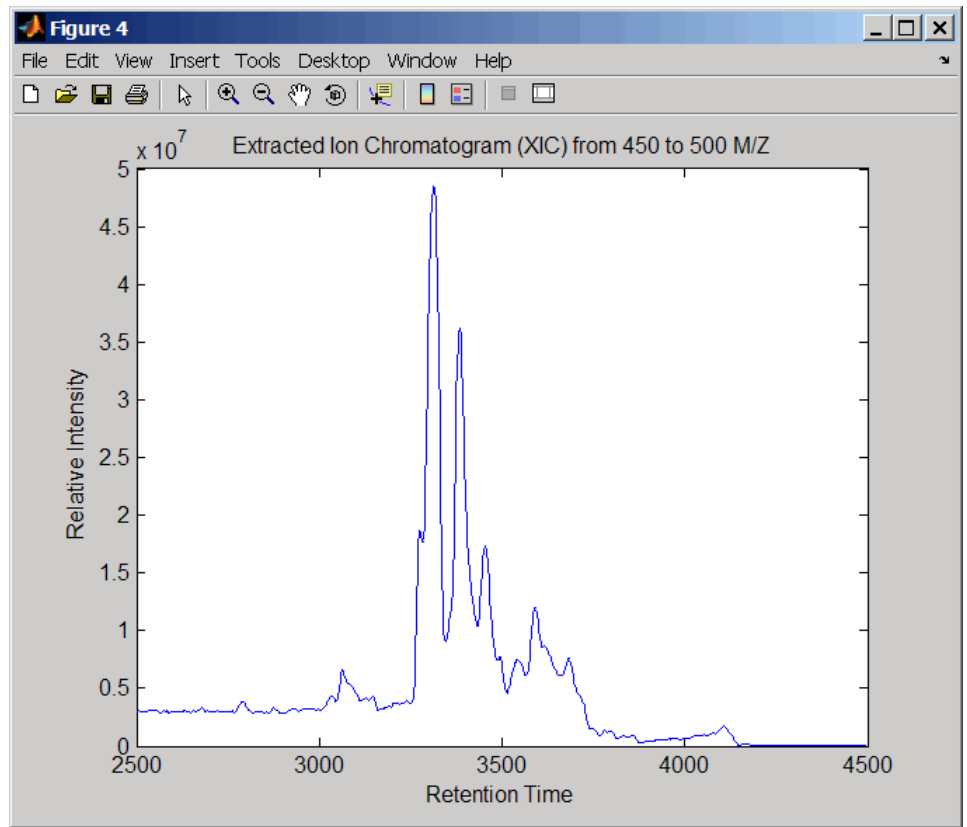
4 Resample the data to plot the Total Ion Chromatogram (TIC).

```
figure
[MZ,Y] = msppresample(peaks,5000);
plot(ret_time,sum(Y))
title('Total Ion Chromatogram (TIC)')
xlabel('Retention Time')
ylabel('Relative Intensity')
```



- 5 Resample the data to plot the Extracted Ion Chromatogram (XIC) in the 450 to 500 m/z range.

```
figure
[MZ,Y] = msppresample(peaks,5000,'Range',[450 500]);
plot(ret_time,sum(Y))
title('Extracted Ion Chromatogram (XIC) from 450 to 500 M/Z')
xlabel('Retention Time')
ylabel('Relative Intensity')
```

**See Also**

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: msdotplot, mspeaks, mspalign, msresample, mzxml2peaks, mzxmlread

msresample

Purpose Resample mass spectrometry signal

Syntax

```
[MZout, Yout] = msresample(MZ, Y, N)
msresample(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
msresample(..., 'Uniform', UniformValue)
msresample(..., 'Range', RangeValue)
msresample(..., 'Missing', MissingValue)
msresample(..., 'Window', WindowValue)
msresample(..., 'Cutoff', CutoffValue)
msresample(..., 'ShowPlot', ShowPlotValue)
```

Arguments

<i>MZ</i>	Mass/charge vector with the range of ions in the spectra.
<i>Y</i>	Ion intensity vector with the same length as the mass/charge vector (<i>MZ</i>). <i>Y</i> can also be a matrix with several spectra that share the same mass/charge (<i>MZ</i>) range.
<i>N</i>	Total number of samples.

Description

`[MZout, Yout] = msresample(MZ, Y, N)` resamples a raw mass spectrum (*Y*). The output spectrum will have *N* samples with a spacing that increases linearly within the range $[\min(MZ) \ \max(MZ)]$. *MZ* can be a linear or a quadratic function of its index. When input arguments are set such that down-sampling takes place, `msresample` applies a lowpass filter before resampling to minimize aliasing.

For the antialias filter, `msresample` uses a linear-phase FIR filter with a least-squares error minimization. The cu-off frequency is set by the largest down-sampling ratio when comparing the same regions in the *MZ* and *MZout* vectors.

Note `msresample` is particularly useful when you have spectra with different mass/charge vectors and you want to match the scales.

`msresample(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`msresample(..., 'Uniform', UniformValue)`, when *UniformValue* is true, forces the vector *MZ* to be uniformly spaced. The default value is false.

`msresample(..., 'Range', RangeValue)` specifies a 1-by-2 vector with the mass/charge range for the output spectrum (*Yout*). *RangeValue* must be within $[\min(MZ) \max(MZ)]$. The default value is the full range $[\min(MZ) \max(MZ)]$.

`msresample(..., 'Missing', MissingValue)`, when *MissingValue* is true, analyzes the mass/charge vector (*MZ*) for dropped samples. The default value is false. If the down-sample factor is large, checking for dropped samples might not be worth the extra computing time. Dropped samples can only be recovered if the original *MZ* values follow a linear or a quadratic function of the *MZ* vector index.

`msresample(..., 'Window', WindowValue)` specifies the window used when calculating parameters for the lowpass filter. Enter 'Flattop', 'Blackman', 'Hamming', or 'Hanning'. The default value is 'Flattop'.

`msresample(..., 'Cutoff', CutoffValue)` specifies the cutoff frequency. Enter a scalar value between 0 and 1 (Nyquist frequency or half the sampling frequency). By default, `msresample` estimates the cutoff value by inspecting the mass/charge vectors (*MZ*, *MZout*). However, the cutoff frequency might be underestimated if *MZ* has anomalies.

`msresample(..., 'ShowPlot', ShowPlotValue)` plots the original and the resampled spectrum. When `msresample` is called without output arguments, the spectra are plotted unless *ShowPlotValue* is false. When *ShowPlotValue* is true, only the first spectrum in *Y* is plotted. *ShowPlotValue* can also contain an index to one of the spectra in *Y*.

Examples

- 1 Load mass spectrometry data and extract m/z and intensity value vectors

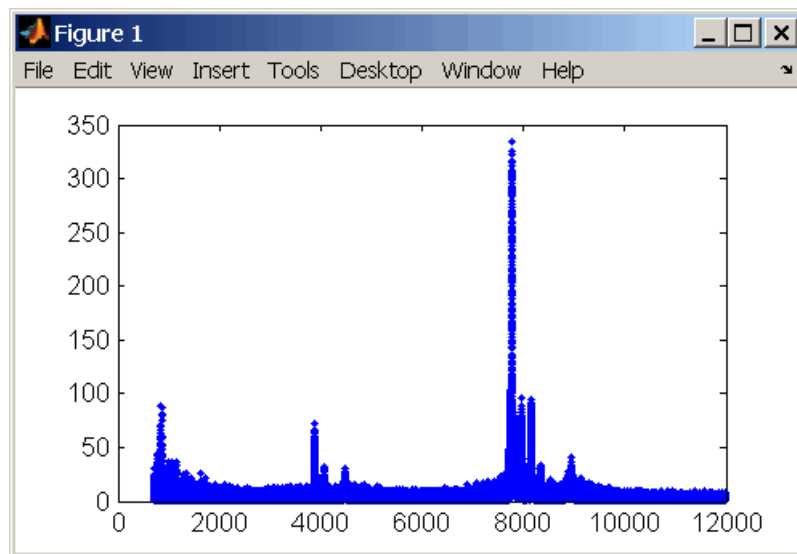
msresample

```
load sample_hi_res;  
mz = MZ_hi_res;  
y = Y_hi_res;
```

2 Plot original data to a lower resolution.

```
plot(mz, y, '.')
```

MATLAB draws a figure.



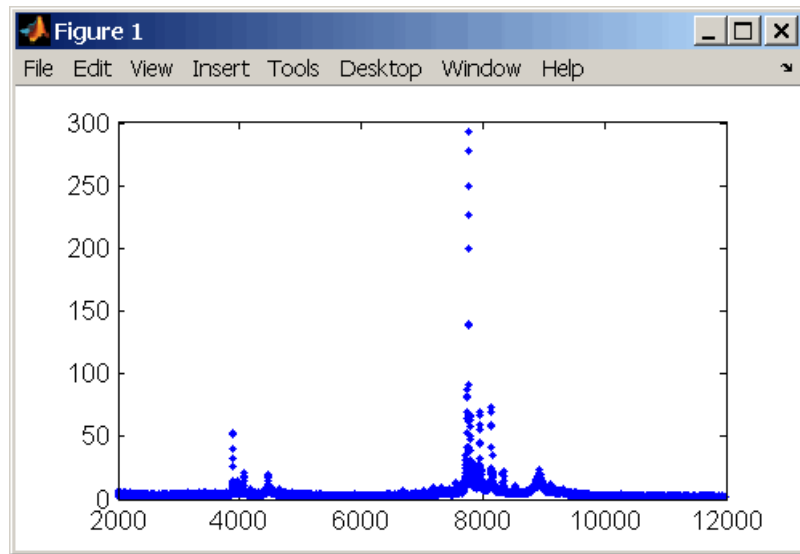
3 Resample data

```
[mz1,y1] = msresample(mz, y, 10000, 'range',[2000 max(mz)]);
```

4 Plot resampled data

```
plot(mz1,y1, '.')
```

MATLAB draws a figure with the down sampled data.



See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `msalign`, `msbackadj`, `msheatmap`, `mslowess`, `msnorm`, `msspresample`, `mssgolay`, `msviewer`

mssgolay

Purpose Smooth mass spectrum with least-squares polynomial

Syntax

```
Yout = mssgolay(MZ, Y)  
mssgolay(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)  
mssgolay(..., 'Span', SpanValue)  
mssgolay(..., 'Degree', DegreeValue)  
mssgolay(..., 'ShowPlot', ShowPlotValue)
```

Arguments

<i>MZ</i>	Mass/charge vector with the range of ions in the spectra.
<i>Y</i>	Ion intensity vector with the same length as the mass/charge vector (<i>MZ</i>). <i>Y</i> can also be a matrix with several spectra that share the same mass/charge (<i>MZ</i>) range.

Description

Yout = mssgolay(*MZ*, *Y*) smoothes a raw mass spectrum (*Y*) using a least squares digital polynomial filter (Savitzky and Golay filters). The default span or frame is 15 samples.

mssgolay(..., '*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*,...) defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

mssgolay(..., '*Span*', *SpanValue*) modifies the frame size for the smoothing function. If *SpanValue* is greater than 1, the window is the size of *SpanValue* in samples independent of the *MZ* vector. Higher values will smooth the signal more with an increase in computation time. If *SpanValue* is less than 1, the window size is a fraction of the number of points in the data (*MZ*). For example, if *SpanValue* is 0.05, the window size is equal to 5% of the number of points in *MZ*.

Note 1) The original algorithm by Savitzky and Golay assumes a uniformly spaced mass/charge vector (MZ), while `mssgolay` also allows one that is not uniformly spaced. Therefore, the sliding frame for smoothing is centered using the closest samples in terms of the MZ value and not in terms of the MZ index.

2) When the vector MZ does not have repeated values or NaNs, the algorithm is approximately twice as fast.

3) When the vector MZ is evenly spaced, the least-squares fitting is performed once so that the spectrum is filtered with the same coefficients, and the speed of the algorithm increases considerably.

4) If the vector MZ is evenly spaced and `SpanValue` is even, `Span` is incremented by 1 to include both edge samples in the frame.

`mssgolay(..., 'Degree', DegreeValue)` specifies the degree of the polynomial (*DegreeValue*) fitted to the points in the moving frame. The default value is 2. *DegreeValue* must be smaller than *SpanValue*.

`mssgolay(..., 'ShowPlot', ShowPlotValue)` plots smoothed spectra over the original. When `mssgolay` is called without output arguments, the spectra are plotted unless *ShowPlotValue* is false. When *ShowPlotValue* is true, only the first spectrum in *Y* is plotted. *ShowPlotValue* can also contain an index to one of the spectra in *Y*.

Examples

```
load sample_lo_res
YS = mssgolay(MZ_low_res, Y_low_res(:,1));
plot(MZ,[Y(:,1) YS])
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `msalign`, `msbackadj`, `msheatmap`, `mslowess`, `msnorm`, `mspeaks`, `msresample`, `msviewer`

msviewer

Purpose Explore mass spectrum or set of mass spectra

Syntax
`msviewer(MZ, Y)`
`msviewer(..., 'Markers', MarkersValue)`
`msviewer(..., 'Group', GroupValue)`

Arguments

MZ	Mass/charge vector with the range of ions in the spectra.
Y	Ion intensity vector with the same length as the mass/charge vector (MZ). Y can also be a matrix with several spectra that share the same mass/charge (MZ) range.

Description

`msviewer(MZ, Y)` creates a GUI to display and explore a mass spectrum (Y).

`msviewer(..., 'Markers', MarkersValue)` specifies a list of marker positions from the mass/charge vector (MZ) for exploration and easy navigation. Enter a column vector with MZ values.

`msviewer(..., 'Group', GroupValue)` specifies a class label for every spectrum with a different color for every class. Enter a column vector of size [numSpectra x 1] with integers. The default value is [numSpectra].

MSViewer GUI features include the following:

- Plot mass spectra. The spectra are plotted with different colors according to their class labels.
- An overview displays a full spectrum, and a box indicates the region that is currently displayed in the main window.
- Five different zoom in options, one zoom out option, and a reset view option resize the spectrum.
- Add/focus/move/delete marker operations

- Import/Export markers from/to MATLAB workspace
- Print and preview the spectra plot
- Print the spectra plot to a MATLAB figure window

MSViewer has five components:

- Menu bar: **File**, **Tools**, **Window**, and **Help**
- Toolbar: Zoom XY, Zoom X, Zoom Y, Reset view, Zoom out, and Help
- Main window: display the spectra
- Overview window: display the overview of a full spectrum (the average of all spectra in display)
- Marker control panel: a list of markers, Add marker, Delete marker, up and down buttons

Examples

- 1 Load and plot sample data

```
load sample_lo_res
msviewer(MZ_lo_res, Y_lo_res)
```

- 2 Add a marker by pointing to a mass peak, right-clicking, and then clicking **Add Marker**.

- 3 From the **File** menu, select

- **Import Markers from Workspace** — Opens the Import Markers From MATLAB Workspace dialog. The dialog should display a list of double Mx1 or 1xM variables. If the selected variable is out of range, the viewer displays an error message
- **Export Markers to Workspace** — Opens the Export Markers to MATLAB Workspace dialog. You can enter a variable name for the markers. All markers are saved. If there is no marker available, this menu item should be disabled.

- **Print to Figure** — Prints the spectra plot in the main display to a MATLAB figure window
- 4** From the **Tools** menu, click
- **Add Marker** — Opens the Add Marker dialog. Enter an m/z marker.
 - **Delete Marker** — Removes the currently selected m/z marker from the **Markers** (m/z) list.
 - **Next Marker** or **Previous Marker** — Moves the selection up and down the **Markers** (m/z) list.
 - **Zoom XY, Zoom X, Zoom Y, or Zoom Out** — Changes the cursor from an arrow to crosshairs. Left-click and drag a rectangle box over an area and then release the mouse button. The display zooms the area covered by the box.
- 5** Move the cursor to the range window at the bottom. Click and drag the view box to a new location.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `msalign`, `msbackadj`, `mslowess`, `msnorm`, `msheatmap`, `msresample`, `mssgolay`

Purpose

Align multiple sequences using progressive method

Syntax

```
SeqsMultiAligned = multialign(Seqs)
SeqsMultiAligned = multialign(Seqs, Tree)
multialign(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)
multialign(..., 'Weights', WeightsValue)
multialign(..., 'ScoringMatrix', ScoringMatrixValue)
multialign(..., 'SMInterp', SMInterpValue)
multialign(..., 'GapOpen', GapOpenValue)
multialign(..., 'ExtendGap', ExtendGapValue)
multialign(..., 'DelayCutoff', DelayCutoffValue)
multialign(..., 'JobManager', JobManagerValue)
multialign(..., 'WaitInQueue', WaitInQueueValue)
multialign(..., 'Verbose', VerboseValue)
multialign(..., 'ExistingGapAdjust',
ExistingGapAdjustValue)
multialign(..., 'TerminalGapAdjust',
TerminalGapAdjustValue)
```

Arguments

Seqs

Vector of structures with the fields 'Sequence' for the residues and 'Header' or 'Name' for the labels.

Seqs may also be a cell array of strings or a char array.

SeqsMultiAligned

Vector of structures (same as *Seqs*) but with the field 'Sequence' updated with the alignment.

When *Seqs* is a cell or char array, *SeqsMultiAligned* is a char array with the output alignment following the same order as the input.

multialign

<i>Tree</i>	Phylogenetic tree calculated with either of the functions <code>seqlinkage</code> or <code>seqneighjoin</code> .
<i>WeightsValue</i>	Property to select the sequence weighting method. Enter either 'THG' (default) or 'equal'.
<i>ScoringMatrixValue</i>	Property to select or specify the scoring matrix. Enter an [MxM] matrix or [MxMxN] array of matrixes withN user-defined scoring matrices. <i>ScoringMatrixValue</i> may also be a cell array of strings with matrix names. The default is the BLOSUM80 to BLOSUM30 series for amino acids or a fixed matrix NUC44 for nucleotides. When passing your own series of scoring matrices make sure all of them share the same scale.
<i>SMInterpValue</i>	Property to specify whether linear interpolation of the scoring matrices is on or off. When false, scoring matrix is assigned to a fixed range depending on the distances between the two profiles (or sequences) being aligned. Default is true.
<i>GapOpenValue</i>	Scalar or a function specified using @. If you enter a function, <code>multialign</code> passes four values to the function: the average score for two matched residues (<code>sm</code>), the average score for two mismatched residues (<code>sx</code>), and, the length of both profiles or sequences (<code>len1</code> , <code>len2</code>). Default is <code>@(sm,sx,len1,len2) 5*sm</code> .

<i>ExtendGapValue</i>	Scalar or a function specified using @. IF you enter a function, <code>multialign</code> passes four values to the function: the average score for two matched residues (<code>sm</code>), the average score for two mismatched residues (<code>sx</code>), and the length of both profiles or sequences (<code>len1</code> , <code>len2</code>). Default is <code>@(sm,sx,len1,len2) sm/4</code> .
<i>DelayCutoffValue</i>	Property to specify the threshold delay of divergent sequences. The default is unity where sequences with the closest sequence farther than the median distance are delayed.
<i>JobManagerValue</i>	JobManager object representing an available distributed MATLAB resource. Enter a jobmanager object returned by the Distributed Computing Toolbox function <code>findResource</code> .
<i>WaitInQueueValue</i>	Property to control waiting for a distributed MATLAB resource to be available. Enter either <code>true</code> or <code>false</code> . The default value is <code>false</code> .
<i>VerboseValue</i>	Property to control displaying the sequences with sequence information. Default value is <code>false</code> .
<i>ExistingGagAdjustValue</i>	Property to control automatic adjustment based on existing gaps. Default value is <code>true</code> .
<i>TerminalGapAdjustValue</i>	Property to adjust the penalty for opening a gap at the ends of the sequence. Default value is <code>false</code> .

Description

SeqsMultiAligned = `multialign(Seqs)` performs a progressive multiple alignment for a set of sequences (*Seqs*). Pair-wise distances between sequences are computed after pair-wise alignment with the Gonnet scoring matrix and then by counting the proportion of sites at which each pair of sequences are different (ignoring gaps). The guide tree is calculated by the neighbor-joining method assuming equal variance and independence of evolutionary distance estimates.

SeqsMultiAligned = `multialign(Seqs, Tree)` uses a tree (*Tree*) as a guide for the progressive alignment. The sequences (*Seqs*) should have the same order as the leaves in the tree (*Tree*) or use a field ('Header' or 'Name') to identify the sequences.

`multialign(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` enters optional arguments as property name/value pairs.

`multialign(..., 'Weights', WeightsValue)` selects the sequence weighting method. Weights emphasize highly divergent sequences by scaling the scoring matrix and gap penalties. Closer sequences receive smaller weights.

Values of the property Weights:

- 'THG'(default) — Thompson-Higgins-Gibson method using the phylogenetic tree branch distances weighted by their thickness.
- 'equal' — Assigns same weight to every sequence.

`multialign(..., 'ScoringMatrix', ScoringMatrixValue)` selects the scoring matrix (*ScoringMatrixValue*) for the progressive alignment. Match and mismatch scores are interpolated from the series of scoring matrices by considering the distances between the two profiles or sequences being aligned. The first matrix corresponds to the smallest distance and the last matrix to the largest distance. Intermediate distances are calculated using linear interpolation.

`multialign(..., 'SMInterp', SMInterpValue)`, when *SMInterpValue* is false, turns off the linear interpolation of the scoring matrices. Instead, each supplied scoring matrix is assigned to

a fixed range depending on the distances between the two profiles or sequences being aligned.

`multialign(..., 'GapOpen', GapOpenValue)` specifies the initial penalty for opening a gap.

`multialign(..., 'ExtendGap', ExtendGapValue)` specifies the initial penalty for extending a gap.

`multialign(..., 'DelayCutoff', DelayCutoffValue)` specifies a threshold to delay the alignment of divergent sequences whose closest neighbor is farther than

$(\textit{DelayCutoffValue}) * (\text{median patristic distance between sequences})$

`multialign(..., 'JobManager', JobManagerValue)` distributes pair-wise alignments into a cluster of computers using Distributed Computing Toolbox.

`multialign(..., 'WaitInQueue', WaitInQueueValue)` when *WaitInQueueValue* is true, waits in the job manager queue for an available worker. When *WaitInQueueValue* is false (default) and there are no workers immediately available, `multialign` errors out. Use this property with Distributed Computing Toolbox and the `multialign` property `WaitInQueue`.

`multialign(..., 'Verbose', VerboseValue)`, when *VerboseValue* is true, turns on verbosity.

The remaining input optional arguments are analogous to the function `profalign` and are used through every step of the progressive alignment of profiles.

`multialign(..., 'ExistingGapAdjust', ExistingGapAdjustValue)`, if *ExistingGapAdjustValue* is false, turns off the automatic adjustment based on existing gaps of the position-specific penalties for opening a gap.

When *ExistingGapAdjustValue* is true, for every profile position, `profalign` proportionally lowers the penalty for opening a gap toward

multialign

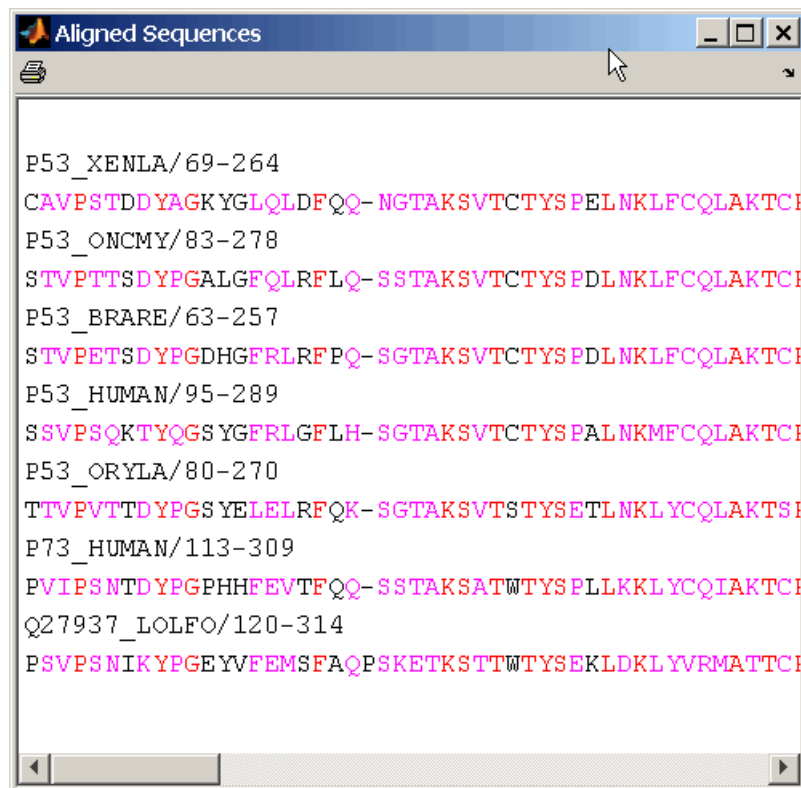
the penalty of extending a gap based on the proportion of gaps found in the contiguous symbols and on the weight of the input profile.

`multialign(..., 'TerminalGapAdjust', TerminalGapAdjustValue)`, when *TerminalGapAdjustValue* is true, adjusts the penalty for opening a gap at the ends of the sequence to be equal to the penalty for extending a gap.

Example 1

1 Align seven cellular tumor antigen p53 sequences.

```
p53 = fastaread('p53samples.txt')
ma = multialign(p53, 'verbose', true)
showalignment(ma)
```



2 Use an UPGMA phylogenetic tree instead as a guiding tree.

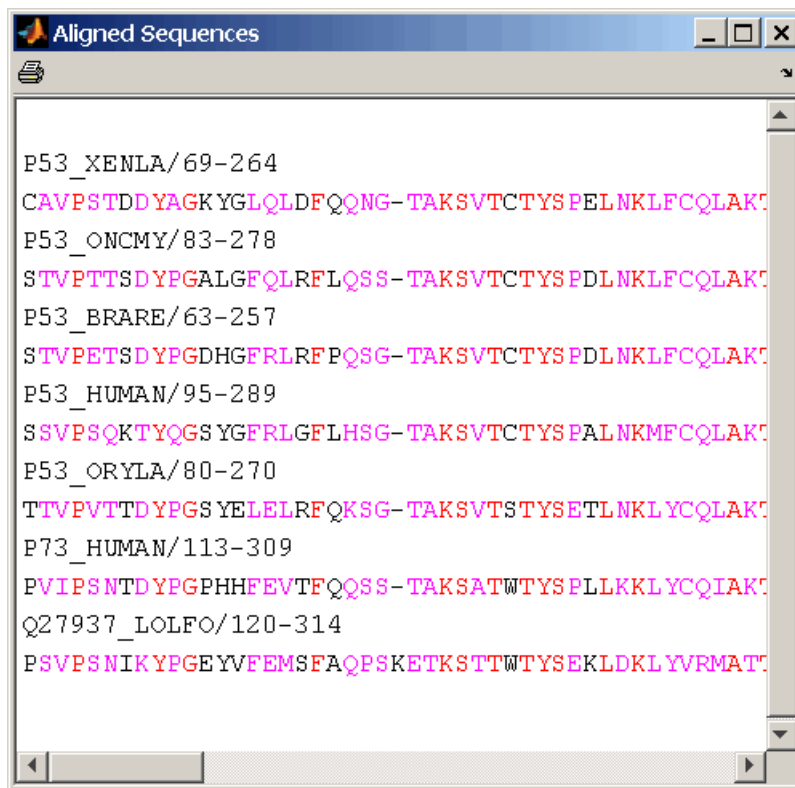
```
dist = seqpdist(p53, 'ScoringMatrix', gonnet);
tree = seqlinkage(dist, 'UPGMA', p53)
```

Phylogenetic tree object with 7 leaves (6 branches)

3 Score the progressive alignment with the PAM family.

```
ma = multialign(p53, tree, 'ScoringMatrix', ...
               {'pam150', 'pam200', 'pam250'})
showalignment(ma)
```

multialign



Example 2

- 1 Enter an array of sequences.

```
seqs = {'CACGTAACATCTC', 'ACGACGTAACATCTTCT', 'AAACGTAACATCTCGC'};
```

- 2 Promote terminations with gaps in the alignment.

```
multialign(seqs, 'terminalGapAdjust', true)
```

```
ans =
--CACGTAACATCTC--
ACGACGTAACATCTTCT
-AAACGTAACATCTCGC
```

3 Compare alignment without termination gap adjustment.

```
multialign(seqs)
```

```
ans =  
CA - -CGTAACATCT - -C  
ACGACGTAACATCTTCT  
AA-ACGTAACATCTCGC
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `hmmprofalign`, `multialignread`, `nwalign`, `profalign`, `seqprofile`, `seqconsensus`, `seqneighjoin`, `showalignment`

multialignread

Purpose Read multiple-sequence alignment file

Syntax

```
S = multialignread(File)  
[Headers, Sequences] = multialignread(File)  
multialignread(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)  
multialignread(..., 'IgnoreGaps', IgnoreGapsValue)
```

Arguments

File Multiple sequence alignment file (ASCII text file). Enter a file name, a path and file name, or a URL pointing to a file. *File* can also be a MATLAB character array that contains the text of a multiple sequence alignment file. You can read common multiple alignment file types, such as ClustalW (.aln) and GCG (.msf).

IgnoreGapsValue Property to control removing gap symbols.

Description

`S = multialignread(File)` reads a multiple sequence alignment file. The file contains multiple sequence lines that start with a sequence header followed by an optional number (not used by `multialignread`) and a section of the sequence. The multiple sequences are broken into blocks with the same number of blocks for every sequence. (For an example, type `open aagag.aln`.) The output `S` is a structure array where `S.Header` contains the header information and `S.Sequence` contains the amino acid or nucleotide sequences.

`[Headers, Sequences] = multialignread(File)` reads the file into separate variables `Headers` and `Sequences`.

`multialignread(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`multialignread(..., 'IgnoreGaps', IgnoreGapsValue)`, when *IgnoreGapsValue* is true, removes any gap symbol ('-' or '.') from the sequences. Default is false.

Examples

Read a multiple sequence alignment of the gag polyprotein for several HIV strains.

```
gagaa = multialignread('aagag.aln')
```

```
gagaa =
```

```
1x16 struct array with fields:
```

```
Header
```

```
Sequence
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `fastaread`, `gethmmalignment`, `multialign`, `seqconsensus`, `seqdisp`, `seqprofile`

multialignviewer

Purpose Open viewer for multiple sequence alignments

Syntax
`multialignviewer(Alignment)`
`multialignviewer(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)`
`multialignviewer(..., 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue)`

Description The multialignviewer is an interactive graphical user interface (GUI) for viewing multiple sequence alignments.

`multialignviewer(Alignment)` loads a group of previously multiple aligned sequences into the viewer. *Alignment* is a structure with a field *Sequence*, a character array, or a file name.

`multialignviewer(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`multialignviewer(..., 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue)` specifies the alphabet type for the sequences. *AlphabetValue* can be 'AA' for amino acids or 'NT' for nucleotides. The default value is 'AA'. If *AlphabetValue* is not specified, multialignviewer guesses the alphabet type.

Examples `multialignviewer('aagag.aln')`

See Also Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `fastaread`, `gethmmalignment`, `multialign`, `multialignread`, `seqtool`

Purpose Convert mzXML structure to peak list

Syntax

```
[Peaks, Times] = mzxml2peaks(mzXMLStruct)
[Peaks, Times] = mzxml2peaks(mzXMLStruct,
'Levels', LevelsValue)
```

Arguments

mzXMLStruct mzXML structure, such as one created by the `mzxmlread` function. *mzXMLStruct* includes the following fields:

- scan
- offset
- mzXML

LevelsValue Positive integer or vector of integers that specifies the level(s) of spectra in *mzXMLStruct* to convert, assuming the spectra are from tandem MS data sets. Default is 1, which converts only the first-level spectra, that is spectra containing precursor ions. Setting *LevelsValue* to 2 converts only the second-level spectra, which are the fragment spectra (created from a precursor ion).

Return Values

<i>Peaks</i>	Either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Two-column matrix, where the first column contains mass/charge (m/z) values and the second column contains ion intensity values.• Cell array of peak lists, where each element is a two-column matrix of m/z values and ion intensity values, and each element corresponds to a spectrum or retention time.
<i>Times</i>	Vector of retention times associated with a liquid chromatography/mass spectrometry (LC/MS) or gas chromatography/mass spectrometry (GC/MS) data set. The number of elements in <i>Times</i> equals the number of elements in <i>Peaks</i> .

Description

`[Peaks, Times] = mzxml2peaks(mzXMLStruct)` extracts peak information from *mzXMLStruct*, an mzXML structure, and creates *Peaks*, a cell array of matrices containing mass/charge (m/z) values and ion intensity values, and *Times*, a vector of retention times associated with a liquid chromatography/mass spectrometry (LC/MS) or gas chromatography/mass spectrometry (GC/MS) data set.

`[Peaks, Times] = mzxml2peaks(mzXMLStruct, 'Levels', LevelsValue)` specifies the level(s) of the spectra in *mzXMLStruct* to convert, assuming the spectra are from tandem MS data sets. Default is 1, which converts only the first-level spectra, that is spectra containing precursor ions. Setting *LevelsValue* to 2 converts only the second-level spectra, which are the fragment spectra (created from a precursor ion).

Examples

- 1 Use the `mzxmlread` function to read an mzXML file into MATLAB as structure. Then extract the peak information of only the first-level ions from the structure.

```
mzxml_struct = mzxmlread('results.mzxml');  
[peaks,time] = mzxml2peaks(mzxml_struct);
```

Note The file `results.mzxml` is not provided. Sample mzXML files can be found at

<http://sashimi.sourceforge.net/repository.html>

2 Create a dotplot of the LC/MS data.

```
msdotplot(peaks,time)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `msdotplot`, `mssalign`, `mssppresample`, `mzxmlread`

mzxmlread

Purpose Read mzXML file into MATLAB as structure

Syntax `mzXMLStruct = mzxmlread(File)`

Arguments

<i>File</i>	String containing a file name, or a path and file name, of an mzXML file that conforms to the mzXML 2.1 specification or earlier specifications.
-------------	--

If you specify only a file name, that file must be on the MATLAB search path or in the current directory.

Return Values

<i>mzXMLStruct</i>	MATLAB structure containing information from an mzXML file. It includes the following fields:
--------------------	---

- `scan` — Structure array containing the data pertaining to each individual scan, such as mass spectrometry level, total ion current, polarity, precursor mass (when it applies), and the spectrum data.
- `index` — Structure containing indices to the positions of scan elements in the XML document.
- `mzXML` — Structure containing:
 - Information in the root element of the mzXML schema, such as instrument details, experiment details, and preprocessing method
 - URLs pointing to schemas for the individual scans
 - Indexing approach
 - Digital signature calculated for the current instance of the document

Description

`mzXMLStruct = mzxmlread(File)` reads an mzXML file, *File*, and then creates a MATLAB structure, *mzXMLStruct*.

File can be a file name, or a path and file name, of an mzXML file. The file must conform to the mzXML 2.1 specification or earlier specifications. You can view the mzXML 2.1 specification at:

http://sashimi.sourceforge.net/schema_revision/mzXML_2.1/Doc/mzXML_2.1_tutorial.pdf

mzXMLStruct includes the following fields.

Field	Description
scan	Structure array containing the data pertaining to each individual scan, such as mass spectrometry level, total ion current, polarity, precursor mass (when it applies), and the spectrum data.
index	Structure containing indices to the positions of scan elements in the XML document.
mzXML	Structure containing: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Information in the root element of the mzXML schema, such as instrument details, experiment details, and preprocessing method• URLs pointing to schemas for the individual scans• Indexing approach• Digital signature calculated for the current instance of the document

mzxmlread

Tip If you receive any errors related to memory or Java heap space, try increasing your Java heap space as described at:

<http://www.mathworks.com/support/solutions/data/1-18I2C.html>

Examples

```
out = mzxmlread('results.mzxml');
% view a scan
m = out.scan(1).peaks.mz(1:2:end);
z = out.scan(1).peaks.mz(2:2:end);
bar(m,z)
```

Note The file `results.mzxml` is not provided. Sample mzXML files can be found at:

- Open Proteomics Database
 - Peptide Atlas Repository at the Institute for Systems Biology (ISB)
 - The Sashimi Project
-

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `jcampread`, `mzxml2peaks`

MATLAB function: `xmlread`

Purpose Count number of n-mers in nucleotide or amino acid sequence

Syntax `nmercount(Seq, Length)`
`nmercount(Seq, Length, C)`

Arguments

Seq Nucleotide or amino acid sequence. Enter a character string or a structure with the field `Sequence`.

Length Length of n-mer to count. Enter an integer.

Description

`nmercount(Seq, Length)` counts the number of n-mers or patterns of a specific length in a sequence.

`nmercount(Seq, Length, C)` returns only the n-nmers with cardinality at least *C*.

Examples

Count the number of n-mers in an amino acid sequence and display the first six rows in the cell array.

```
S = getgenpept('AAA59174', 'SequenceOnly', true)
nmers = nmercount(S,4);
nmers(1:6,:)
```

```
ans =
    'apes'    [2]
    'dfrd'    [2]
    'eslk'    [2]
    'frdl'    [2]
    'gnys'    [2]
    'lkel'    [2]
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `basecount`, `codoncount`, `dimercount`

nt2aa

Purpose

Convert nucleotide sequence to amino acid sequence

Syntax

```
SeqAA = nt2aa(SeqNT)
SeqAA = nt2aa(..., 'Frame', FrameValue, ...)
SeqAA = nt2aa(..., 'GeneticCode', GeneticCodeValue, ...)
SeqAA = nt2aa(..., 'AlternativeStartCodons',
               AlternativeStartCodonsValue, ...)
```


Arguments

SeqNT

Either of the following:

- String specifying a nucleotide sequence
- MATLAB structure containing the field *Sequence*

Valid characters include:

- A
- C
- G
- T
- U
- hyphen (-)

Note Hyphens are valid only if the codon to which it belongs represents a gap, that is, the codon contains all hyphens.
Example: ACT---TGA

Tip Do not use a sequence with hyphens if you specify 'all' for *FrameValue*.

FrameValue

Property to specify a reading frame. Choices are 1, 2, 3, or 'all'. Default is 1.

If *FrameValue* is 'all', then *SeqAA* is a 3-by-1 cell array.

GeneticCodeValue Property to specify a genetic code. Enter a Code Number or a string with a Code Name from the tableGenetic Code on page 2-542. If you use a Code Name, you can truncate it to the first two characters. Default is 1 or Standard.

AlternativeStartCodonsValue Property to control the translation of alternative codons. Choices are true or false. Default is true.

Genetic Code

Code Number	Code Name
1	Standard
2	Vertebrate Mitochondrial
3	Yeast Mitochondrial
4	Mold, Protozoan, Coelenterate Mitochondrial, and Mycoplasma/Spiroplasma
5	Invertebrate Mitochondrial
6	Ciliate, Dasycladacean, and Hexamita Nuclear
9	Echinoderm Mitochondrial
10	Euplotid Nuclear
11	Bacterial and Plant Plastid
12	Alternative Yeast Nuclear
13	Ascidian Mitochondrial
14	Flatworm Mitochondrial
15	Blepharisma Nuclear

Code Number	Code Name
16	Chlorophycean Mitochondrial
21	Trematode Mitochondrial
22	Scenedesmus Obliquus Mitochondrial
23	Thraustochytrium Mitochondrial

Return Values

SeqAA String specifying an amino acid sequence.

Description

SeqAA = nt2aa(*SeqNT*) converts a nucleotide sequence to an amino acid sequence using the standard genetic code.

SeqAA = nt2aa(*SeqNT*, ...'*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls nt2aa with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

SeqAA = nt2aa(..., 'Frame', *FrameValue*, ...) converts a nucleotide sequence for a specific reading frame to an amino acid sequence. Choices are 1, 2, 3, or 'all'. Default is 1. If *FrameValue* is 'all', then output *SeqAA* is a 3-by-1 cell array.

SeqAA = nt2aa(..., 'GeneticCode', *GeneticCodeValue*, ...) converts a nucleotide sequence to an amino acid sequence using a specific genetic code.

SeqAA = nt2aa(..., 'AlternativeStartCodons', *AlternativeStartCodonsValue*, ...) controls the translation of alternative start codons. By default, *AlternativeStartCodonsValue* is set to true, and if the first codon of a sequence is a known alternative start codon, the codon is translated to methionine.

If this option is set to false, then an alternative start codon at the start of a sequence is translated to its corresponding amino acid in the genetic code that you specify, which might not necessarily be methionine. For example, in the human mitochondrial genetic code, AUA and AUU are known to be alternative start codons.

For more details of alternative start codons, see

www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Taxonomy/Utils/wprintgc.cgi?mode=t#SG1

Examples

The following example converts the gene ND1 on the human mitochondria genome to an amino acid sequence.

```
mitochondria = getgenbank('NC_001807', 'SequenceOnly', true)
ND1gene = mitochondria (3308:4264)
protein1 = nt2aa(ND1gene, 'GeneticCode', 2)
protein2 = getgenpept('NP_536843', 'SequenceOnly', true)
```

The following example converts the gene ND2 on the human mitochondria genome to an amino acid sequence. In this case, the first codon is ATT, which is translated to M, while the following ATT codons are converted to I. If you set 'AlternativeStartCodons' to false, then the first codon ATT is translated to I, the corresponding amino acid in the Vertebrate Mitochondrial genetic code.

```
mitochondria = getgenbank('NC_001807', 'SequenceOnly', true)
ND2gene = mitochondria (4471:5514)
protein1 = nt2aa(ND2gene, 'GeneticCode', 2)
protein2 = getgenpept('NP_536844', 'SequenceOnly', true)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: aa2int, aminolookup, baselookup, codonbias, dn ds, dn dsml, geneticcode, revgeneticcode, seqtool

Purpose Convert nucleotide sequence from letter to integer representation

Syntax

```
SeqInt = nt2int(SeqChar, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue)
nt2int(..., 'Unknown', UnknownValue)
nt2int(..., 'ACGTOnly', ACGTOnlyValue)
```

Arguments

<i>SeqChar</i>	Nucleotide sequence represented with letters. Enter a character string from the table Mapping Nucleotide Letters to Integers below. Integers are arbitrarily assigned to IUB/IUPAC letters. If the property <i>ACGTOnly</i> is true, you can only enter the characters A, C, T, G, and U.
<i>UnknownValue</i>	Property to select the integer for unknown characters. Enter an integer. Maximum value is 255. Default value is 0.
<i>ACGTOnlyValue</i>	Property to control the use of ambiguous nucleotides. Enter either true or false. Default value is false.

Mapping Nucleotide Letters to Integers

Base	Code	Base	Code	Base	Code
Adenosine	A—1	T, C (pyrimidine)	Y—6	A, T, G (not C)	D—12
Cytidine	C—2	G, T (keto)	K—7	A, T, C (not G)	H—13
Guanine	G—3	A, C (amino)	M—8	A, G, C (not T)	V—14
Thymidine	T—4	G, C (strong)	S—9	A, T, G, C (any)	N—15

Base	Code	Base	Code	Base	Code
Uridine	U—4	A, T (weak)	W—10	Gap of indeterminate length	- —16
A, G (purine)	R—5	T, G, C (not A)	B—11	Unknown (default)	*—0 and ≥17

Description

`SeqInt = nt2int(SeqChar, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue)` converts a character string of nucleotides to a 1-by-N array of integers using the table Mapping Nucleotide Letters to Integers above. Unknown characters (characters not in the table) are mapped to 0. Gaps represented with hyphens are mapped to 16.

`nt2int(..., 'Unknown', UnknownValue)` defines the number used to represent unknown nucleotides. The default value is 0.

`nt2int(..., 'ACGTONly', ACGTONlyValue)` if `ACGTONly` is true, the ambiguous nucleotide characters (N, R, Y, K, M, S, W, B, D, H, and V) are represented by the unknown nucleotide number.

Examples

Convert a nucleotide sequence with letters to integers.

```
s = nt2int('ACTGCTAGC')
```

```
s =
```

```
    1    2    4    3    2    4    1    3    2
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `aa2int`, `baselookup`, `int2aa`, `int2nt`

Purpose

Plot density of nucleotides along sequence

Syntax

```
Density = ntdensity(SeqNT, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue)
ntdensity(..., 'Window', WindowValue)
[Density, HighCG] = ntdensity(..., 'CGThreshold',
    CGThresholdValue)
```

Description

ntdensity(SeqNT) plots the density of nucleotides A, T, C, G in sequence SeqNT.

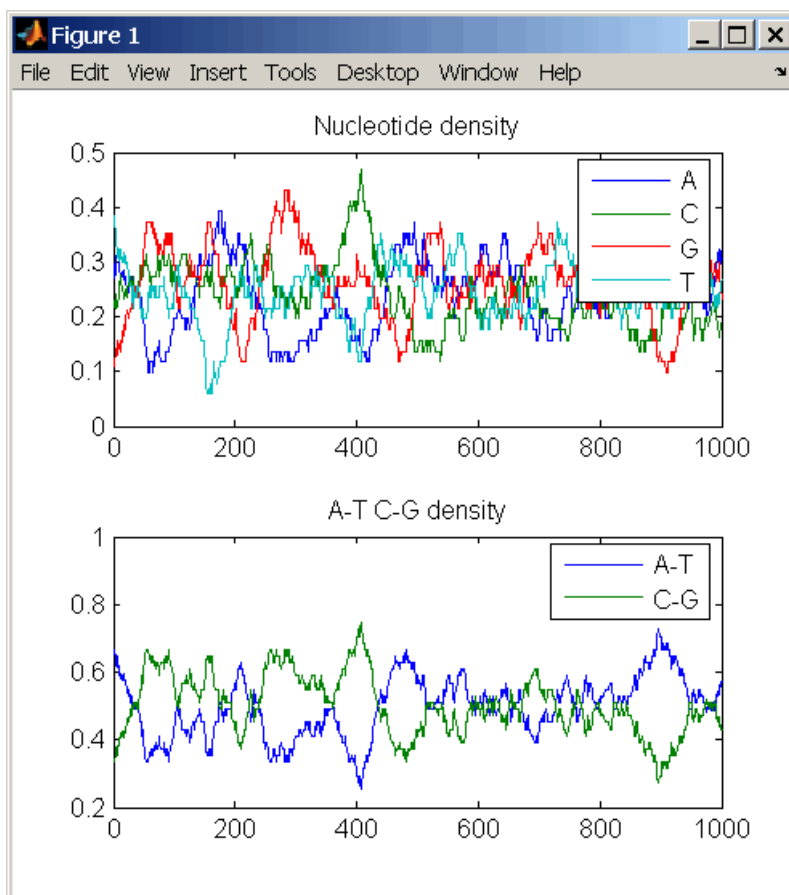
Density = ntdensity(SeqNT, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue) returns a MATLAB structure with the density of nucleotides A, C, G, and T.

ntdensity(..., 'Window', WindowValue) uses a window of length Window for the density calculation. The default value is length(SeqNT)/20.

[Density, HighCG] = ntdensity(..., 'CGThreshold', CGThresholdValue) returns indices for regions where the CG content of SeqNT is greater than CGThreshold. The default value for CGThreshold is 5.

Examples

```
s = randseq(1000, 'alphabet', 'dna');
ntdensity(s)
```



See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `basecount`, `codoncount`, `cpgisland`, `dimercount`

MATLAB function `filter`

Purpose	NUC44 scoring matrix for nucleotide sequences
Syntax	<pre>ScoringMatrix = nuc44 [ScoringMatrix, MatrixInfo] = nuc44</pre>
Description	<p><i>ScoringMatrix</i> = nuc44 returns the scoring matrix. The nuc44 scoring matrix uses ambiguous nucleotide codes and probabilities rounded to the nearest integer.</p> <p>Scale = 0.277316</p> <p>Expected score = -1.7495024, Entropy = 0.5164710 bits</p> <p>Lowest score = -4, Highest score = 5</p> <p>Order: A C G T R Y K M S W B D H V N</p> <p>[<i>ScoringMatrix</i>, <i>MatrixInfo</i>] = nuc44 returns a structure with information about the matrix with fields Name and Order.</p>

num2goid

Purpose Convert numbers to Gene Ontology IDs

Syntax `GOIDs = num2goid(X)`

Description `GOIDs = num2goid(X)` converts the numbers in *X* to strings with Gene Ontology IDs. IDs are a 7-digit number preceded by the prefix 'GO: '.

Examples Get the Gene Ontology IDs of the following numbers.

```
t = [5575 5622 5623 5737 5840 30529 43226 43228 ...  
     43229 43232 43234];  
ids = num2goid(t)
```

See Also Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `geneont` (object constructor), `goannotread`
Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of `geneont` object: `getancestors`, `getdescendants`, `getmatrix`, `getrelatives`

Purpose

Globally align two sequences using Needleman-Wunsch algorithm

Syntax

```
Score = nwalgn(Seq1,Seq2)
[Score, Alignment] = nwalgn(Seq1,Seq2)
[Score, Alignment, Start] = nwalgn(Seq1,Seq2)
... = nwalgn(Seq1,Seq2, ...'Alphabet', AlphabetValue, ...)
... = nwalgn(Seq1,Seq2, ...'ScoringMatrix',
    ScoringMatrixValue, ...)
... = nwalgn(Seq1,Seq2, ...'Scale', ScaleValue, ...)
... = nwalgn(Seq1,Seq2, ...'GapOpen', GapOpenValue, ...)
... = nwalgn(Seq1,Seq2, ...'ExtendGap',
    ExtendGapValue, ...)
... = nwalgn(Seq1,Seq2, ...'Showscore',
    ShowscoreValue, ...)
```

Arguments

Seq1, Seq2

Amino acid or nucleotide sequences. Enter any of the following:

- Character string of letters representing amino acids or nucleotides, such as returned by `int2aa` or `int2nt`
- Vector of integers representing amino acids or nucleotides, such as returned by `aa2int` or `nt2int`
- Structure containing a Sequence field

Tip For help with letter and integer representations of amino acids and nucleotides, see Amino Acid Lookup on page 2-56 or Nucleotide Lookup Table on page 2-66.

AlphabetValue

String specifying the type of sequence. Choices are 'AA' (default) or 'NT'.

ScoringMatrixValue String specifying the scoring matrix to use for the global alignment. Choices for amino acid sequences are:

- 'PAM40'
- 'PAM250'
- 'DAYHOFF'
- 'GONNET'
- 'BLOSUM30' increasing by 5 up to 'BLOSUM90'
- 'BLOSUM62'
- 'BLOSUM100'

Default is:

- 'BLOSUM50' (when *AlphabetValue* equals 'AA')
- 'NUC44' (when *AlphabetValue* equals 'NT')

Note All of the above scoring matrices have a built-in scale factor that returns *Score* in bits.

ScaleValue Positive value that specifies the scale factor used to return *Score* in arbitrary units other than bits. For example, if you enter $\log(2)$ for *ScaleValue*, then *nwalign* returns *Score* in nats.

GapOpenValue Positive integer specifying the penalty for opening a gap in the alignment. Default is 8.

<i>ExtendGapValue</i>	Positive integer specifying the penalty for extending a gap. Default is equal to <i>GapOpenValue</i> .
<i>ShowscoreValue</i>	Controls the display of the scoring space and the winning path of the alignment. Choices are true or false (default).

Return Values

<i>Score</i>	Optimal global alignment score in bits.
<i>Alignment</i>	3-by-N character array showing the two sequences, <i>Seq1</i> and <i>Seq2</i> , in the first and third rows, and symbols representing the optimal global alignment for them in the second row.
<i>Start</i>	2-by-1 vector of indices indicating the starting point in each sequence for the alignment. Because this is a global alignment, <i>Start</i> is always [1;1].

Description

Score = `nwalgn(Seq1,Seq2)` returns the optimal global alignment score in bits. The scale factor used to calculate the score is provided by the scoring matrix.

`[Score, Alignment]` = `nwalgn(Seq1,Seq2)` returns a 3-by-N character array showing the two sequences, *Seq1* and *Seq2*, in the first and third rows, and symbols representing the optimal global alignment for them in the second row. The symbol | indicates amino acids or nucleotides that match exactly. The symbol : indicates amino acids or nucleotides that are related as defined by the scoring matrix (nonmatches with a zero or positive scoring matrix value).

`[Score, Alignment, Start]` = `nwalgn(Seq1,Seq2)` returns a 2-by-1 vector of indices indicating the starting point in each sequence for the alignment. Because this is a global alignment, *Start* is always [1;1].

nwalign

... = nwalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...) calls nwalign with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

... = nwalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'Alphabet', AlphabetValue, ...) specifies the type of sequences. Choices are 'AA' (default) or 'NT'.

... = nwalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'ScoringMatrix', ScoringMatrixValue, ...) specifies the scoring matrix to use for the global alignment. Default is:

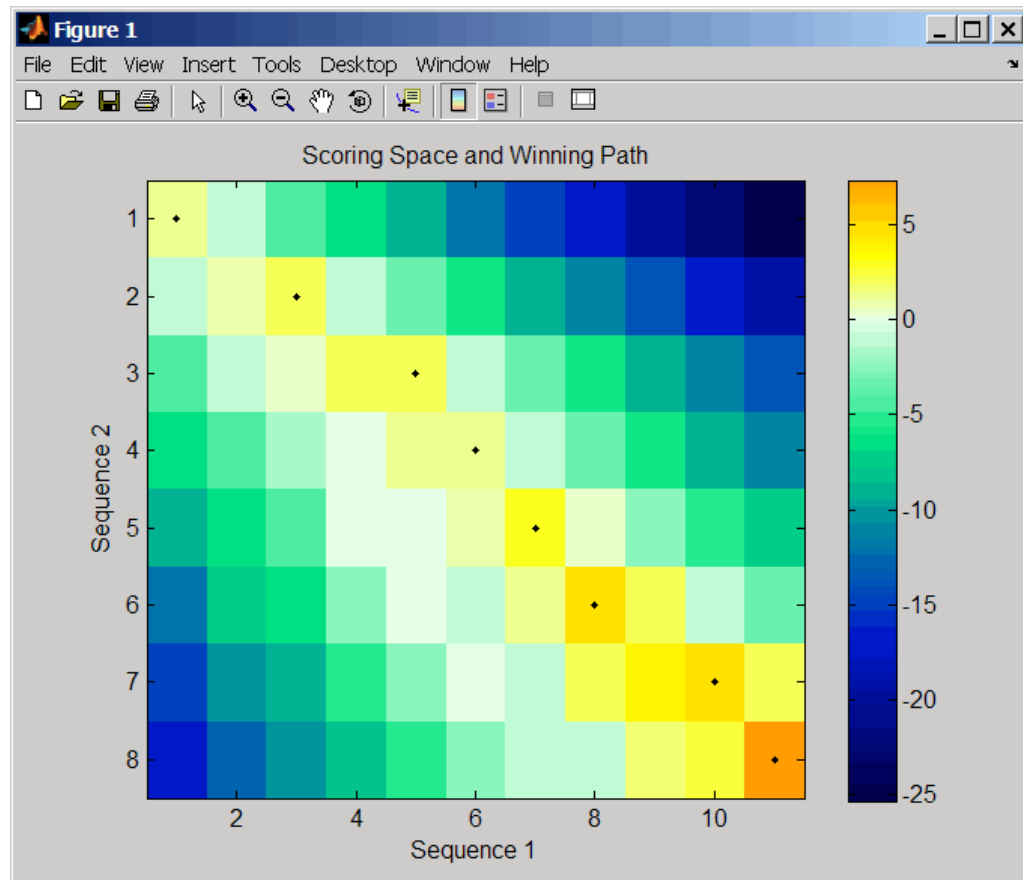
- 'BLOSUM50' (when *AlphabetValue* equals 'AA')
- 'NUC44' (when *AlphabetValue* equals 'NT')

... = nwalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'Scale', ScaleValue, ...) specifies the scale factor used to return *Score* in arbitrary units other than bits. Choices are any positive value.

... = nwalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'GapOpen', GapOpenValue, ...) specifies the penalty for opening a gap in the alignment. Choices are any positive integer. Default is 8.

... = nwalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'ExtendGap', ExtendGapValue, ...) specifies the penalty for extending a gap in the alignment. Choices are any positive integer. Default is equal to *GapOpenValue*.

... = nwalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'Showscore', ShowscoreValue, ...) controls the display of the scoring space and winning path of the alignment. Choices are true or false (default)



The scoring space is a heat map displaying the best scores for all the partial alignments of two sequences. The color of each (n_1, n_2) coordinate in the scoring space represents the best score for the pairing of subsequences $\text{Seq1}(1:n_1)$ and $\text{Seq2}(1:n_2)$, where n_1 is a position in Seq1 and n_2 is a position in Seq2 . The best score for a pairing of specific subsequences is determined by scoring all possible alignments of the subsequences by summing matches and gap penalties.

The winning path is represented by black dots in the scoring space and represents the pairing of positions in the optimal global alignment. The color of the last point (lower right) of the winning path represents the optimal global alignment score for the two sequences and is the *Score* output returned by `nwalign`.

Tip The scoring space visually indicates if there are potential alternate winning paths, which is useful when aligning sequences with big gaps. Visual patterns in the scoring space can also indicate a possible sequence rearrangement.

Examples

- 1 Globally align two amino acid sequences using the BLOSUM50 (default) scoring matrix and the default values for the `GapOpen` and `ExtendGap` properties. Return the optimal global alignment score in bits and the alignment character array.

```
[Score, Alignment] = nwalign('VSPAGMASGYD','IPGKASYD')

Score =

    7.3333

Alignment =

VSPAGMASGYD
: | | | | |
I-P-GKAS-YD
```

- 2 Globally align two amino acid sequences specifying the PAM250 scoring matrix and a gap open penalty of 5.

```
[Score, Alignment] = nwalign('IGRHRYHIGG','SRYIGRG',...
                             'scoringmatrix','pam250',...
                             'gapopen',5)
```


Score =

2.3333

Alignment =

```
IGRHRHYHIG-G
:  ||  ||  |
-S--RY-IGRG
```

- 3** Globally align two amino acid sequences returning the *Score* in nat units (nats) by specifying a scale factor of $\log(2)$.

```
[Score, Alignment] = nwalgn('HEAGAWGHEE', 'PAWHEAE', 'Scale', log(2))
```

Score =

0.2310

Alignment =

```
HEAGAWGHE-E
  ||  ||  |
--P-AW-HEAE
```

References

[1] Durbin, R., Eddy, S., Krogh, A., and Mitchison, G. (1998). Biological Sequence Analysis (Cambridge University Press).

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `blosum`, `multialign`, `nt2aa`, `pam`, `profalign`, `seqdotplot`, `showalignment`, `swalign`

Purpose

Calculate sequence properties of DNA oligonucleotide

Syntax

```
SeqProperties = oligoprop(SeqNT)
SeqProperties = oligoprop(SeqNT, ...'Salt', SaltValue, ...)
SeqProperties = oligoprop(SeqNT, ...'Temp', TempValue, ...)
SeqProperties = oligoprop(SeqNT, ...'Primerconc',
    PrimerconcValue, ...)
SeqProperties = oligoprop(SeqNT, ...'HPBase', HPBaseValue,
    ...)
SeqProperties = oligoprop(SeqNT, ...'HPLoop', HPLoopValue,
    ...)
SeqProperties = oligoprop(SeqNT, ...'Dimerlength',
    DimerlengthValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>SeqNT</i>	DNA oligonucleotide sequence represented by any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Character string containing the letters A, C, G, T, or N• Vector of integers containing the integers 1, 2, 3, 4, or 15• Structure containing a Sequence field that contains a nucleotide sequence
<i>SaltValue</i>	Value that specifies a salt concentration in moles/liter for melting temperature calculations. Default is 0.05 moles/liter.
<i>TempValue</i>	Value that specifies the temperature in degrees Celsius for nearest-neighbor calculations of free energy. Default is 25 degrees Celsius.
<i>PrimerconcValue</i>	Value that specifies the concentration in moles/liter for melting temperature calculations. Default is 50e-6 moles/liter.

- HPBaseValue* Value that specifies the minimum number of paired bases that form the neck of the hairpin. Default is 4 base pairs.
- HPLoopValue* Value that specifies the minimum number of bases that form the loop of a hairpin. Default is 2 bases.
- DimerlengthValue* Value that specifies the minimum number of aligned bases between the sequence and its reverse. Default is 4 bases.

Return Values

- SeqProperties* Structure containing the sequence properties for a DNA oligonucleotide.

Description

SeqProperties = oligoprop(*SeqNT*) returns the sequence properties for a DNA oligonucleotide as a structure with the following fields:

Field	Description
GC	Percent GC content for the DNA oligonucleotide. Ambiguous N characters in <i>SeqNT</i> are considered to potentially be any nucleotide. If <i>SeqNT</i> contains ambiguous N characters, GC is the midpoint value, and its uncertainty is expressed by GCdelta.
GCdelta	The difference between GC (midpoint value) and either the maximum or minimum value GC could assume. The maximum and minimum values are calculated by assuming all N characters are G/C or not G/C, respectively. Therefore, GCdelta defines the possible range of GC content.

Field	Description
Hairpins	H-by-length (<i>SeqNT</i>) matrix of characters displaying all potential hairpin structures for the sequence <i>SeqNT</i> . Each row is a potential hairpin structure of the sequence, with the hairpin forming nucleotides designated by capital letters. H is the number of potential hairpin structures for the sequence. Ambiguous N characters in <i>SeqNT</i> are considered to potentially complement any nucleotide.
Dimers	D-by-length (<i>SeqNT</i>) matrix of characters displaying all potential dimers for the sequence <i>SeqNT</i> . Each row is a potential dimer of the sequence, with the self-dimerizing nucleotides designated by capital letters. D is the number of potential dimers for the sequence. Ambiguous N characters in <i>SeqNT</i> are considered to potentially complement any nucleotide.
MolWeight	Molecular weight of the DNA oligonucleotide. Ambiguous N characters in <i>SeqNT</i> are considered to potentially be any nucleotide. If <i>SeqNT</i> contains ambiguous N characters, MolWeight is the midpoint value, and its uncertainty is expressed by MolWeightdelta.
MolWeightdelta	The difference between MolWeight (midpoint value) and either the maximum or minimum value MolWeight could assume. The maximum and minimum values are calculated by assuming all N characters are G or C, respectively. Therefore, MolWeightdelta defines the possible range of molecular weight for <i>SeqNT</i> .

Field	Description
Tm	<p>A vector with melting temperature values, in degrees Celsius, calculated by six different methods, listed in the following order:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Basic (Marmur et al., 1962)• Salt adjusted (Howley et al., 1979)• Nearest-neighbor (Breslauer et al., 1986)• Nearest-neighbor (SantaLucia Jr. et al., 1996)• Nearest-neighbor (SantaLucia Jr., 1998)• Nearest-neighbor (Sugimoto et al., 1996) <p>Ambiguous N characters in <i>SeqNT</i> are considered to potentially be any nucleotide. If <i>SeqNT</i> contains ambiguous N characters, Tm is the midpoint value, and its uncertainty is expressed by Tmdelta.</p>
Tmdelta	<p>A vector containing the differences between Tm (midpoint value) and either the maximum or minimum value Tm could assume for each of the six methods. Therefore, Tmdelta defines the possible range of melting temperatures for <i>SeqNT</i>.</p>

Field	Description
Thermo	<p>4-by-3 matrix of thermodynamic calculations. The rows correspond to nearest-neighbor parameters from:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Breslauer et al., 1986 • SantaLucia Jr. et al., 1996 • SantaLucia Jr., 1998 • Sugimoto et al., 1996 <p>The columns correspond to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • delta H — Enthalpy in kilocalories per mole, kcal/mol • delta S — Entropy in calories per mole-degrees Kelvin, cal/(K)(mol) • delta G — Free energy in kilocalories per mole, kcal/mol <p>Ambiguous N characters in <i>SeqNT</i> are considered to potentially be any nucleotide. If <i>SeqNT</i> contains ambiguous N characters, <i>Thermo</i> is the midpoint value, and its uncertainty is expressed by <i>Thermodelta</i>.</p>
Thermodelta	<p>4-by-3 matrix containing the differences between <i>Thermo</i> (midpoint value) and either the maximum or minimum value <i>Thermo</i> could assume for each calculation and method. Therefore, <i>Thermodelta</i> defines the possible range of thermodynamic values for <i>SeqNT</i>.</p>

SeqProperties = oligoprop(*SeqNT*, ...'*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls oligoprop with optional properties that

use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

SeqProperties = oligoprop(*SeqNT*, ...'Salt', *SaltValue*, ...) specifies a salt concentration in moles/liter for melting temperature calculations. Default is 0.05 moles/liter.

SeqProperties = oligoprop(*SeqNT*, ...'Temp', *TempValue*, ...) specifies the temperature in degrees Celsius for nearest-neighbor calculations of free energy. Default is 25 degrees Celsius.

SeqProperties = oligoprop(*SeqNT*, ...'Primerconc', *PrimerconcValue*, ...) specifies the concentration in moles/liter for melting temperatures. Default is 50e-6 moles/liter.

SeqProperties = oligoprop(*SeqNT*, ...'HPBase', *HPBaseValue*, ...) specifies the minimum number of paired bases that form the neck of the hairpin. Default is 4 base pairs.

SeqProperties = oligoprop(*SeqNT*, ...'HPLoop', *HPLoopValue*, ...) specifies the minimum number of bases that form the loop of a hairpin. Default is 2 bases.

SeqProperties = oligoprop(*SeqNT*, ...'Dimerlength', *DimerlengthValue*, ...) specifies the minimum number of aligned bases between the sequence and its reverse. Default is 4 bases.

Examples

Calculating Properties for a DNA Sequence

- 1 Create a random sequence.

```
seq = randseq(25)
```

```
seq =
```

```
TAGCTTCATCGTTGACTTCTACTAA
```

- 2 Calculate sequence properties of the sequence.

```
S1 = oligoprop(seq)

S1 =

          GC: 36
      GCAlpha: 0
    Hairpins: [0x25 char]
        Dimers: 'tAGCTtcacgcttgacttctactaa'
      MolWeight: 7.5820e+003
MolWeightAlpha: 0
          Tm: [52.7640 60.8629 62.2493 55.2870 54.0293 61.0614]
      TmAlpha: [0 0 0 0 0 0]
        Thermo: [4x3 double]
    ThermoAlpha: [4x3 double]
```

3 List the thermodynamic calculations for the sequence.

```
S1.Thermo

ans =

-178.5000 -477.5700 -36.1125
-182.1000 -497.8000 -33.6809
-190.2000 -522.9000 -34.2974
-191.9000 -516.9000 -37.7863
```

Calculating Properties for a DNA Sequence with Ambiguous Characters

1 Calculate sequence properties of the sequence ACGTAGAGGACGTN.

```
S2 = oligoprop('ACGTAGAGGACGTN')

S2 =

          GC: 53.5714
      GCAlpha: 3.5714
    Hairpins: 'ACGTagaggACGTn'
```



```
Dimers: [3x14 char]
MolWeight: 4.3329e+003
MolWeightAlpha: 20.0150
Tm: [38.8357 42.2958 57.7880 52.4180 49.9633 55.1330]
TmAlpha: [1.4643 1.4643 10.3885 3.4633 0.2829 3.8074]
Thermo: [4x3 double]
ThermoAlpha: [4x3 double]
```

2 List the potential dimers for the sequence.

S2.Dimers

ans =

```
ACGTagaggacgtn
ACGTagaggACGTn
acgtagagGACGTN
```

References

- [1] Breslauer, K.J., Frank, R., Blöcker, H., and Marky, L.A. (1986). Predicting DNA duplex stability from the base sequence. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Science USA* 83, 3746–3750.
- [2] Chen, S.H., Lin, C.Y., Cho, C.S., Lo, C.Z., and Hsiung, C.A. (2003). Primer Design Assistant (PDA): A web-based primer design tool. *Nucleic Acids Research* 31(13), 3751–3754.
- [3] Howley, P.M., Israel, M.A., Law, M., and Martin, M.A. (1979). A rapid method for detecting and mapping homology between heterologous DNAs. Evaluation of polyomavirus genomes. *The Journal of Biological Chemistry* 254(11), 4876–4883.
- [4] Marmur, J., and Doty, P. (1962). Determination of the base composition of deoxyribonucleic acid from its thermal denaturation temperature. *Journal Molecular Biology* 5, 109–118.

[5] Panjkovich, A., and Melo, F. (2005). Comparison of different melting temperature calculation methods for short DNA sequences. *Bioinformatics* 21(6), 711–722.

[6] SantaLucia Jr., J., Allawi, H.T., and Seneviratne, P.A. (1996). Improved Nearest-Neighbor Parameters for Predicting DNA Duplex Stability. *Biochemistry* 35, 3555–3562.

[7] SantaLucia Jr., J. (1998). A unified view of polymer, dumbbell, and oligonucleotide DNA nearest-neighbor thermodynamics. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Science USA* 95, 1460–1465.

[8] Sugimoto, N., Nakano, S., Yoneyama, M., and Honda, K. (1996). Improved thermodynamic parameters and helix initiation factor to predict stability of DNA duplexes. *Nucleic Acids Research* 24(22), 4501–4505.

[9] <http://www.basic.northwestern.edu/biotools/oligocalc.html> for weight calculations.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `isoelectric`, `molweight`, `ntdensity`, `palindromes`, `randseq`

Purpose Determine optimal leaf ordering for hierarchical binary cluster tree

Syntax

```
Order = optimalleaforder(Tree, Dist)
Order = optimalleaforder(Tree, Dist, ...'Criteria',
CriteriaValue, ...)
Order = optimalleaforder(Tree, Dist, ...'Transformation',
TransformationValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>Tree</i>	Hierarchical binary cluster tree represented by an $(M - 1)$ -by-3 matrix, created by the linkage function, where M is the number of leaves.
<i>Dist</i>	Distance matrix, such as that created by the <code>pdist</code> function.

optimalleaforder

CriteriaValue String that specifies the optimization criteria. Choices are:

- `adjacent` (default) — Minimizes the sum of distances between adjacent leaves.
- `group` — Minimizes the sum of distances between every leaf and all other leaves in the adjacent cluster.

TransformationValue Either of the following:

- String that specifies the algorithm to transform the distances in *Dist* into similarity values. Choices are:
 - `linear` (default) — Similarity = $\max(\text{all distances}) - \text{distance}$
 - `quadratic` — Similarity = $(\max(\text{all distances}) - \text{distance})^2$
 - `inverse` — Similarity = $1/\text{distance}$
- A function handle created using `@` to a function that transforms the distances in *Dist* into similarity values. The function is typically a monotonic decreasing function within the range of the distance values. The function must accept a vector input and return a vector of the same size.

Return Values

Order Optimal leaf ordering for the hierarchical binary cluster tree represented by *Tree*.

Description

Order = `optimalleaforder(Tree, Dist)` returns the optimal leaf ordering for the hierarchical binary cluster tree represented by *Tree*, an $(M - 1)$ -by-3 matrix, created by the linkage function, where M is the number of leaves. Optimal leaf ordering of a binary tree maximizes the

similarity between adjacent elements (clusters or leaves) by flipping tree branches, but without dividing the clusters. The input *Dist* is a distance matrix, such as that created by the `pdist` function.

`Order = optimalleaforder(Tree, Dist, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `optimalleaforder` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`Order = optimalleaforder(Tree, Dist, ...'Criteria', CriteriaValue, ...)` specifies the optimization criteria.

`Order = optimalleaforder(Tree, Dist, ...'Transformation', TransformationValue, ...)` specifies the algorithm to transform the distances in *Dist* into similarity values. The transformation is necessary because `optimalleaforder` maximizes the similarity between adjacent elements, which is comparable to minimizing the sum of distances between adjacent elements.

Examples

- 1 Use the `rand` function to create a 10-by-2 matrix of random values.

```
X = rand(10,2);
```

- 2 Use the `pdist` function to create a distance matrix containing the city block distances between the pairs of objects in matrix *X*.

```
Dist = pdist(X,'cityblock');
```

- 3 Use the `linkage` function to create a matrix, *Tree*, that represents a hierarchical binary cluster tree, from the distance matrix, *Dist*.

```
Tree = linkage(Dist,'average');
```

- 4 Use the `optimalleaforder` function to determine the optimal leaf ordering for the hierarchical binary cluster tree represented by *Tree*, using the distance matrix *Dist*.

```
order = optimalleaforder(Tree,Dist)
```

optimalleaforder

References

[1] Bar-Joseph, Z., Gifford, D.K., and Jaakkola, T.S. (2001). Fast optimal leaf ordering for hierarchical clustering. *Bioinformatics* 17, Suppl 1:S22–9. PMID: 11472989.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function: `clustergram`

Statistics Toolbox functions: `linkage`, `pdist`

Purpose Find palindromes in sequence

Syntax

```
[Position, Length] = palindromes(SeqNT, 'PropertyName',  
    PropertyValue)  
[Position, Length, Pal] = palindromes(SeqNT)  
palindromes(..., 'Length', LengthValue)  
palindromes(..., 'Complement', ComplementValue)
```

Description

[Position, Length] = palindromes(SeqNT, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue) finds all palindromes in sequence SeqNT with a length greater than or equal to 6, and returns the starting indices, Position, and the lengths of the palindromes, Length.

[Position, Length, Pal] = palindromes(SeqNT) also returns a cell array Pal of the palindromes.

palindromes(..., 'Length', LengthValue) finds all palindromes longer than or equal to Length. The default value is 6.

palindromes(..., 'Complement', ComplementValue) finds complementary palindromes if Complement is true, that is, where the elements match their complementary pairs A-T(or U) and C-G instead of an exact nucleotide match.

Examples

```
[p,l,s] = palindromes('GCTAGTAACGTATATATAAT')
```

```
p =  
    11  
    12  
l =  
     7  
     7  
s =  
    'TATATAT'  
    'ATATATA'
```

```
[pc,lc,sc] = palindromes('GCTAGTAACGTATATATAAT',...  
    'Complement',true);
```

palindromes

Find the palindromes in a random nucleotide sequence.

```
a = randseq(100)

a =
TAGCTTCATCGTTGACTTCTACTAA
AAGCAAGCTCCTGAGTAGCTGGCCA
AGCGAGCTTGCTTGTGCCCGGCTGC
GGCGTTGTATCCTGAATACGCCAT

[pos,len,pal]=palindromes(a)

pos =
    74
len =
     6
pal =
'GCGGCG'
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `seqrcomplement`, `seqshowwords`
MATLAB functions `regexp`, `strfind`

Purpose

PAM scoring matrix

Syntax

```
ScoringMatrix = pam(N, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue)
[ScoringMatrix, MatrixInfo] = pam(N)
ScoringMatrix = pam(..., 'Extended', 'ExtendedValue')
ScoringMatrix = pam(..., 'Order', 'OrderValue')
```

Arguments

N	Enter values 10:10:500. The default ordering of the output is A R N D C Q E G H I L K M F P S T W Y V B Z X *. Entering a larger value for N to allow sequence alignments with larger evolutionary distances.
Extended	Property to add ambiguous characters to the scoring matrix. Enter either true or false. Default is false.
Order	Property to control the order of amino acids in the scoring matrix. Enter a string with at least the 20 standard amino acids.

Description

ScoringMatrix = pam(N, 'PropertyName', *PropertyValue*) returns a PAM scoring matrix for amino acid sequences.

[*ScoringMatrix*, *MatrixInfo*] = pam(N) returns a structure with information about the PAM matrix. The fields in the structure are Name, Scale, Entropy, Expected, and Order.

ScoringMatrix = pam(..., 'Extended', '*ExtendedValue*') if *Extended* is true, returns a scoring matrix with the 20 amino acid characters, the ambiguous characters, and stop character (B, Z, X, *), . If *Extended* is false, only the standard 20 amino acids are included in the matrix.

ScoringMatrix = pam(..., 'Order', '*OrderValue*') returns a PAM matrix ordered by the amino acid sequence in *Order*. If *Order* does not contain the extended characters B, Z, X, and *, then these characters are not returned.

PAM50 substitution matrix in 1/2 bit units, Expected score = -3.70,
Entropy = 2.00 bits, Lowest score = -13, Highest score = 13.

PAM250 substitution matrix in 1/3 bit units, Expected score = -0.844,
Entropy = 0.354 bits, Lowest score = -8, Highest score = 17.

Examples

Get the PAM matrix with N = 50.

```
PAM50 = pam(50)
```

```
PAM250 = pam(250, 'Order', 'CSTPAGNDEQHRKMILVFYW')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `blosum`, `dayhoff`, `gonnet`, `nalign`,
`swalign`

Purpose Visualize intermolecular distances in Protein Data Bank (PDB) file

Syntax

```
pdbdistplot('PDBid')  
pdbdistplot('PDBid', Distance)
```

Arguments

PDBid	Unique identifier for a protein structure record. Each structure in the PDB is represented by a 4-character alphanumeric identifier. For example, 4hbb is the identification code for hemoglobin.
Distance	Threshold distance in Angstroms shown on a spy plot. Default value is 7.

Description

pdbdistplot displays the distances between atoms and amino acids in a PDB structure.

pdbdistplot('PDBid') retrieves the entry PDBid from the Protein Data Bank (PDB) database and creates a heat map showing interatom distances and a spy plot showing the residues where the minimum distances apart are less than 7 Angstroms. PDBid can also be the name of a variable or a file containing a PDB MATLAB structure.

pdbdistplot('PDBid', Distance) specifies the threshold distance shown on a spy plot.

Examples

Show spy plot at 7 Angstroms of the protein cytochrome C from albacore tuna.

```
pdbdistplot('5CYT');
```

Now take a look at 10 Angstroms.

```
pdbdistplot('5CYT',10);
```

pdbdistplot

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `getpdb`, `molviewer`, `pdbread`, `proteinplot`, `ramachandran`

Purpose Read data from Protein Data Bank (PDB) file

Syntax `PDBStruct = pdbread(File)`
`PDBStruct = pdbread(File, 'ModelNum', ModelNumValue)`

Arguments

<i>File</i>	Either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • String specifying a file name, a path and file name, or a URL pointing to a file. The referenced file is a Protein Data Bank (PDB)-formatted file (ASCII text file). If you specify only a file name, that file must be on the MATLAB search path or in the MATLAB Current Directory. • MATLAB character array that contains the text of a PDB-formatted file.
<i>ModelNumValue</i>	Positive integer specifying a model in a PDB-formatted file.

Return Values *PDBStruct* MATLAB structure containing a field for each PDB record.

Description The Protein Data Bank (PDB) database is an archive of experimentally determined 3-D biological macromolecular structure data. For more information about the PDB format, see:

http://www.rcsb.org/pdb/file_formats/pdb/pdbguide2.2/guide2.2_frame.html

PDBStruct = `pdbread(File)` reads the data from PDB-formatted text file *File* and stores the data in the MATLAB structure, *PDBStruct*, which contains a field for each PDB record. The following table summarizes

the possible PDB records and the corresponding fields in the MATLAB structure *PDBStruct*:

PDB Database Record	Field in the MATLAB Structure
HEADER	Header
OBSLTE	Obsolete
TITLE	Title
CAVEAT	Caveat
COMPND	Compound
SOURCE	Source
KEYWDS	Keywords
EXPDTA	ExperimentData
AUTHOR	Authors
REV DAT	RevisionDate
SPRSDE	Superseded
JRNL	Journal
REMARK 1	Remark1
REMARK <i>N</i>	Remark <i>n</i>
Note <i>N</i> equals 2 through 999.	Note <i>n</i> equals 2 through 999.
DBREF	DBReferences
SEQADV	SequenceConflicts
SEQRES	Sequence
FTNOTE	Footnote
MODRES	ModifiedResidues

PDB Database Record	Field in the MATLAB Structure
HET	Heterogen
HETNAM	HeterogenName
HETSYN	HeterogenSynonym
FORMUL	Formula
HELIX	Helix
SHEET	Sheet
TURN	Turn
SSBOND	SSBond
LINK	Link
HYDBND	HydrogenBond
SLTBRG	SaltBridge
CISPEP	CISPeptides
SITE	Site
CRYST1	Cryst1
ORIGXn	OriginX
SCALEn	Scale
MTRIXn	Matrix
TVECT	TranslationVector
MODEL	Model
ATOM	Atom
SIGATM	AtomSD
ANISOU	AnisotropicTemp
SIGUIJ	AnisotropicTempSD
TER	Terminal

PDB Database Record	Field in the MATLAB Structure
HETATM	HeterogenAtom
CONECT	Connectivity

PDBStruct = `pdbread(File, 'ModelNum', ModelNumValue)` reads only the model specified by *ModelNumValue* from the PDB-formatted text file *File* and stores the data in the MATLAB structure *PDBStruct*. If *ModelNumValue* does not correspond to an existing mode number in *File*, then `pdbread` reads the coordinate information of all the models.

The Sequence Field

The Sequence field is also a structure containing sequence information in the following subfields:

- NumOfResidues
- ChainID
- ResidueNames — Contains the three-letter codes for the sequence residues.
- Sequence — Contains the single-letter codes for the sequence residues.

Note If the sequence has modified residues, then the ResidueNames subfield might not correspond to the standard three-letter amino acid codes. In this case, the Sequence subfield will contain the modified residue code in the position corresponding to the modified residue. The modified residue code is provided in the ModifiedResidues field.

The Model Field

The Model field is also a structure or an array of structures containing coordinate information. If the MATLAB structure contains one model, the Model field is a structure containing coordinate information for that model. If the MATLAB structure contains multiple models, the Model

field is an array of structures containing coordinate information for each model. The Model field contains the following subfields:

- Atom
- AtomSD
- AnisotropicTemp
- AnisotropicTempSD
- Terminal
- HeterogenAtom

The Atom Field

The Atom field is also an array of structures containing the following subfields:

- AtomSerNo
- AtomName
- altLoc
- resName
- chainID
- resSeq
- iCode
- X
- Y
- Z
- occupancy
- tempFactor
- segID
- element

- charge
- AtomNameStruct — Contains three subfields: chemSymbol, remoteInd, and branch.

Examples

- 1 Use the `getpdb` function to retrieve structure information from the Protein Data Bank (PDB) for the nicotinic receptor protein with identifier 1abt, and then save the data to the PDB-formatted file `nicotinic_receptor.pdb` in the MATLAB Current Directory.

```
getpdb('1abt', 'ToFile', 'nicotinic_receptor.pdb');
```

- 2 Read the data from the `nicotinic_receptor.pdb` file into a MATLAB structure `pdbstruct`.

```
pdbstruct = pdbread('nicotinic_receptor.pdb');
```

- 3 Read only the second model from the `nicotinic_receptor.pdb` file into a MATLAB structure `pdbstruct_Model12`.

```
pdbstruct_Model12 = pdbread('nicotinic_receptor.pdb', 'ModelNum', 2);
```

- 4 View the atomic coordinate information in the model fields of both MATLAB structures `pdbstruct` and `pdbstruct_Model12`.

```
pdbstruct.Model
```

```
ans =
```

```
1x4 struct array with fields:
```

```
MDLSerNo
```

```
Atom
```

```
Terminal
```

```
pdbstruct_Model12.Model
```

```
ans =
```

```
MDLSerNo: 2
```

```
Atom: [1x1205 struct]  
Terminal: [1x2 struct]
```

- 5 Read the data from an URL into a MATLAB structure, `gf1_pdbstruct`.

```
gf1_pdbstruct = pdbread('http://www.rcsb.org/pdb/files/1gf1.pdb')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `genpeptread`, `getpdb`, `molviewer`, `pdbdistplot`, `pdbrwrite`

pdbwrite

Purpose Write to file using Protein Data Bank (PDB) format

Syntax
`pdbwrite(File, PDBStruct)`
`PDBArray = pdbwrite(File, PDBStruct)`

Arguments

<i>File</i>	String specifying either a file name or a path and file name for saving the PDB-formatted data. If you specify only a file name, the file is saved to the MATLAB Current Directory.
-------------	---

Tip After you save the MATLAB structure to a local PDB-formatted file, you can use the `molviewer` function to display and manipulate a 3-D image of the structure.

<i>PDBStruct</i>	MATLAB structure containing 3-D protein structure coordinate data, created initially by using the <code>getpdb</code> or <code>pdbread</code> functions.
------------------	--

Note You can edit this structure to modify its 3-D protein structure data. The coordinate information is stored in the `Model` field of *PDBStruct*.

Return Values	<i>PDBArray</i>	Character array in which each row corresponds to a line in a PDB record.
----------------------	-----------------	--

Description `pdbwrite(File, PDBStruct)` writes the contents of the MATLAB structure *PDBStruct* to a PDB-formatted file (ASCII text file) whose path and file name are specified by *File*. In the output file, *File*, the

atom serial numbers are preserved. The atomic coordinate records are ordered according to their atom serial numbers.

Tip After you save the MATLAB structure to a local PDB-formatted file, you can use the `molviewer` function to display and manipulate a 3-D image of the structure.

`PDBArray = pdbwrite(File, PDBStruct)` saves the formatted PDB record, converted from the contents of the MATLAB structure `PDBStruct`, to `PDBArray`, a character array in which each row corresponds to a line in a PDB record.

Note You can edit `PDBStruct` to modify its 3-D protein structure data. The coordinate information is stored in the `Model` field of `PDBStruct`.

Examples

- 1 Use the `getpdb` function to retrieve structure information from the Protein Data Bank (PDB) for the green fluorescent protein with identifier 1GFL, and store the data in the MATLAB structure `gflstruct`.

```
gflstruct = getpdb('1GFL');
```

- 2 Find the *x*-coordinate of the first atom.

```
gflstruct.Model.Atom(1).X
```

```
ans =
```

```
-14.0930
```

- 3 Edit the *x*-coordinate of the first atom.

```
gflstruct.Model.Atom(1).X = -18;
```

Note Do not add or remove any Atom fields, because the `pdbwrite` function does not allow the number of elements in the structure to change.

- 4 Write the modified MATLAB structure `gflstruct` to a new PDB-formatted file `modified_gfl.pdb` in the `Work` directory on your C drive.

```
pdbwrite('c:\work\modified_gfl.pdb', gflstruct);
```

- 5 Use the `pdbread` function to read the modified PDB file into a MATLAB structure, then confirm that the *x*-coordinate of the first atom has changed.

```
modified_gflstruct = pdbread('c:\work\modified_gfl.pdb')
modified_gflstruct.Model.Atom(1).X
```

```
ans =
```

```
-18
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `getpdb`, `molviewer`, `pdbread`

Purpose Read data from PFAM-HMM file

Syntax `Data = pfamhmmread('File')`

Arguments *File* PFAM-HMM formatted file. Enter a file name, a path and file name, or a URL pointing to a file. *File* can also be a MATLAB character array that contains the text of a PFAM-HMM file.

Description `pfamhmmread` reads data from a PFAM-HMM formatted file (file saved with the function `gethmmprof`) and creates a MATLAB structure.

`Data = pfamhmmread('File')` reads from *File* a Hidden Markov Model described by the PFAM format, and converts it to the MATLAB structure `Data`, containing fields corresponding to annotations and parameters of the model. For more information about the model structure format, see `hmmprofstruct`. *File* can also be a URL or a MATLAB cell array that contains the text of a PFAM formatted file.

`pfamhmmread` is based on the HMMER 2.0 file formats.

Examples `pfamhmmread('pf00002.ls')`

```
site='http://www.sanger.ac.uk/';
```

```
pfamhmmread([site 'cgi-bin/Pfam/download_hmm.pl?mode=ls&id=7tm_2'])
```

See Also Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `gethmmalignment`, `gethmmprof`, `hmmprofalign`, `hmmprofstruct`, `showhmmprof`

phytree

Purpose Create phytree object

Syntax

```
Tree = phytree(B)
Tree = phytree(B, D)
Tree = phytree(B, C)
Tree = phytree(BC)
Tree = phytree(..., N)
Tree = phytree
```

Arguments

- B* Numeric array of size [NUMBRANCHES X 2] in which every row represents a branch of the tree. It contains two pointers to the branch or leaf nodes, which are its children.
- C* Column vector with distances for every branch.
- D* Column vector with distances from every node to their parent branch.
- BC* Combined matrix with pointers to branches or leaves, and distances of branches.
- N* Cell array with the names of leaves and branches.

Description

Tree = `phytree(B)` creates an ultrametric phylogenetic tree object. In an ultrametric phylogenetic tree object, all leaves are the same distance from the root.

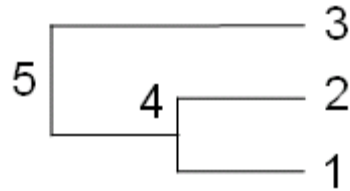
B is a numeric array of size [NUMBRANCHES X 2] in which every row represents a branch of the tree and it contains two pointers to the branch or leaf nodes, which are its children.

Leaf nodes are numbered from 1 to NUMLEAVES and branch nodes are numbered from NUMLEAVES + 1 to NUMLEAVES + NUMBRANCHES. Note that because only binary trees are allowed, NUMLEAVES = NUMBRANCHES + 1.

Branches are defined in chronological order (for example, $B(i, :) > \text{NUMLEAVES} + i$). As a consequence, the first row can only have pointers to leaves, and the last row must represent the root branch. Parent-child

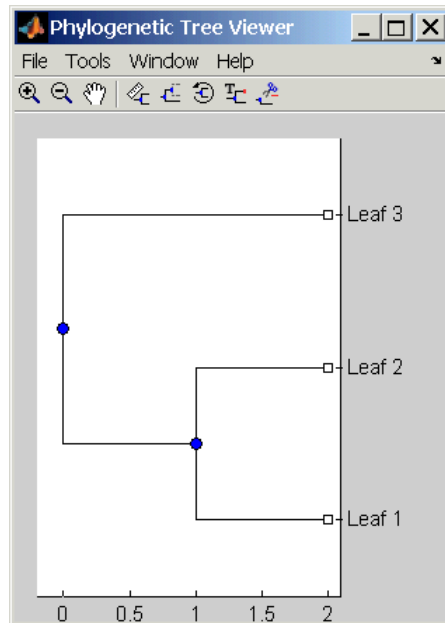
distances are set to 1, unless the child is a leaf and to satisfy the ultrametric condition of the tree its distance is increased.

Given a tree with three leaves and two branches as an example.



In the MATLAB Command Window, type

```
B = [1 2 ; 3 4]
tree = phytree(B)
view(tree)
```



Tree = `phytree(B, D)` creates an additive (ultrametric or nonultrametric) phylogenetic tree object with branch distances defined by *D*. *D* is a numeric array of size [NUMNODES X 1] with the distances of every child node (leaf or branch) to its parent branch equal to NUMNODES = NUMLEAVES + NUMBRANCHES. The last distance in *D* is the distance of the root node and is meaningless.

```
b = [1 2 ; 3 4 ]; d = [1 2 1.5 1 0]
view(phytree(b,d))
```

Tree = `phytree(B, C)` creates an ultrametric phylogenetic tree object with distances between branches and leaves defined by *C*. *C* is a numeric array of size [NUMBRANCHES X 1], which contains the distance from each branch to the leaves. In ultrametric trees, all of the leaves are at the same location (same distance to the root).

```
b = [1 2 ; 3 4]; c = [1 4]'
view(phytree(b,c))
```

Tree = `phytree(BC)` creates an ultrametric phylogenetic binary tree object with branch pointers in `BC(:, [1 2])` and branch coordinates in `BC(:,3)`. Same as `phytree(B,C)`.

Tree = `phytree(..., N)` specifies the names for the leaves and/or the branches. *N* is a cell of strings. If `NUMEL(N)==NUMLEAVES`, then the names are assigned chronologically to the leaves. If `NUMEL(N)==NUMBRANCHES`, the names are assigned to the branch nodes. If `NUMEL(N)==NUMLEAVES + NUMBRANCHES`, all the nodes are named. Unassigned names default to 'Leaf #' and/or 'Branch #' as required.

Tree = `phytree` creates an empty phylogenetic tree object.

Examples

Create a phylogenetic tree for a set of multiply aligned sequences.

```
Sequences = multialignread('aagag.aln')
distances = seqpdist(Sequences)
tree = seqlinkage(distances)
phytreetool(tree)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `phytreeread`, `phytreetool`, `phytreewrite`, `seqlinkage`, `seqneighjoin`, `seqpdist`

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `phytree` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of `phytree` object: `get`, `getbyname`, `getcanonical`, `getmatrix`, `getnewickstr`, `pdist`, `plot`, `prune`, `reroot`, `select`, `subtree`, `view`, `weights`

phytreeread

Purpose Read phylogenetic tree file

Syntax `Tree = phytreeread(File)`

Arguments

File Newick-formatted tree files (ASCII text file). Enter a file name, a path and file name, or a URL pointing to a file. *File* can also be a MATLAB character array that contains the text for a file.

Tree phytree object created with the function `phytree`.

Description

`Tree = phytreeread(File)` reads a Newick formatted tree file and returns a `phytree` object in the MATLAB workspace with data from the file.

The NEWICK tree format can be found at

<http://evolution.genetics.washington.edu/phylip/newicktree.html>

Note This implementation only allows binary trees. Non-binary trees are translated into a binary tree with extra branches of length 0.

Examples

```
tr = phytreeread('pf00002.tree')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `phytree` (object constructor), `gethmmtree`, `phytreetool`, `phytreewrite`

Purpose View, edit, and explore phylogenetic tree data

Syntax `phytreetool(Tree)`
`phytreetool(File)`

Arguments

Tree Phytree object created with the functions `phytree` or `phytreeread`.

File Newick or ClustalW tree formatted file (ASCII text file) with phylogenetic tree data. Enter a file name, a path and file name, or a URL pointing to a file. *File* can also be a MATLAB character array that contains the text for a Newick file.

Description

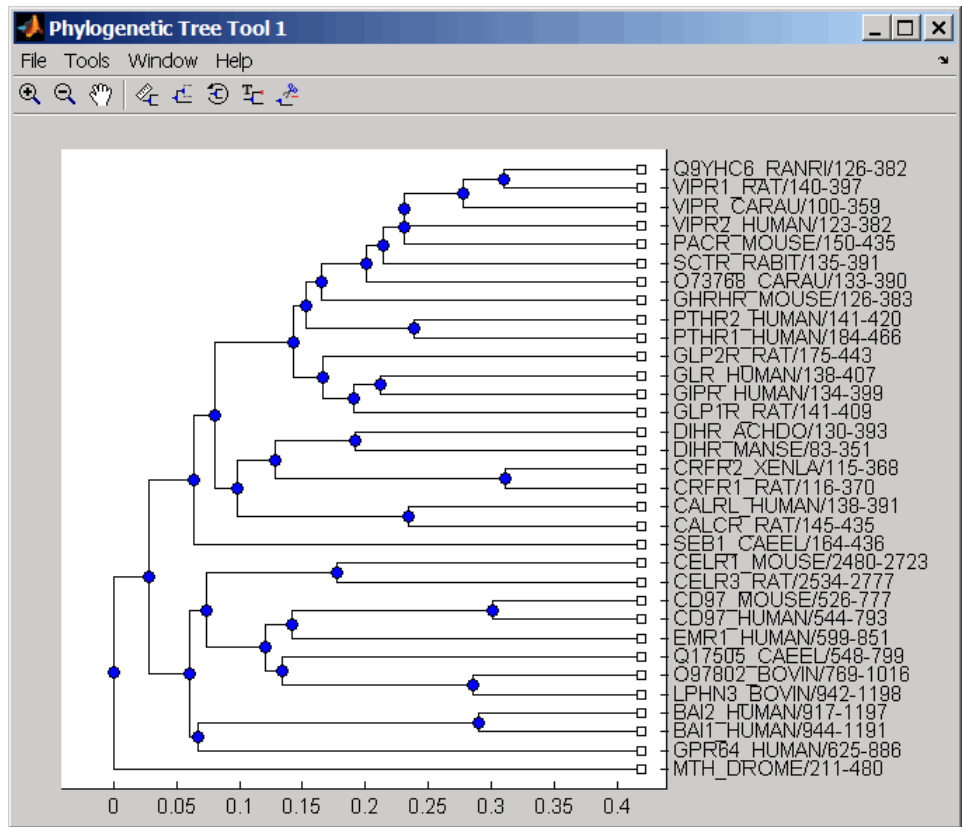
`phytreetool` is an interactive GUI that allows you to view, edit, and explore phylogenetic tree data. This GUI allows branch pruning, reordering, renaming, and distance exploring. It can also open or save Newick formatted files.

`phytreetool(Tree)` loads data from a phytree object in the MATLAB workspace into the GUI.

`phytreetool(File)` loads data from a Newick formatted file into the GUI.

Examples

```
tr= phytreeread('pf00002.tree')  
phytreetool(tr)
```



See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `phytree` (object constructor), `phytreeread`, `phytreewrite`

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of `phytree` object: `plot`, `view`

Purpose Write phylogenetic tree object to Newick-formatted file

Syntax `phytreewrite('File', Tree)`
`phytreewrite(Tree)`

Arguments

File Newick-formatted file. Enter either a file name or a path and file name supported by your operating system (ASCII text file).

Tree Phylogenetic tree object, either created with `phytree` (object constructor function) or imported using the `phytreeread` function.

Description

`phytreewrite('File', Tree)` copies the contents of a `phytree` object from the MATLAB workspace to a file. Data in the file uses the Newick format for describing trees.

The Newick tree format can be found at

<http://evolution.genetics.washington.edu/phylip/newicktree.html>

`phytreewrite(Tree)` opens the Save Phylogenetic Tree As dialog box for you to enter or select a file name.

Examples

Read tree data from a Newick-formatted file.

```
tr = phytreeread('pf00002.tree')
```

Remove all the mouse proteins

```
ind = getbyname(tr,'mouse');  
tr = prune(tr,ind);
```

phytreewrite

```
view(tr)
```

Write pruned tree data to a file.

```
phytreewrite('newtree.tree', tr)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `phytree` (object constructor), `phytreeread`, `phytreetool`, `seqlinkage`

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `phytree` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of `phytree` object: `getnewickstr`

Purpose	Create table of probe set library information	
Syntax	<i>ProbeInfo</i> = probelibraryinfo(<i>CELStruct</i> , <i>CDFStruct</i>)	
Arguments	<i>CELStruct</i>	Structure created by the <i>affyread</i> function from an Affymetrix CEL file.
	<i>CDFStruct</i>	Structure created by the <i>affyread</i> function from an Affymetrix CDF library file associated with the CEL file.
Return Values	<i>ProbeInfo</i>	<p>Three-column matrix with the same number of rows as the <i>Probes</i> field of the <i>CELStruct</i>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Column 1 — Probe set ID/name to which the probe belongs. (Probes that do not belong to a probe set in the CDF library file have probe set ID/name equal to 0.) • Column 2 — Contains the probe pair number. • Column 3 — Indicates if the probe is a perfect match (1) or mismatch (-1) probe.
	Description	<i>ProbeInfo</i> = probelibraryinfo(<i>CELStruct</i> , <i>CDFStruct</i>) creates a table of information linking the probe data from <i>CELStruct</i> , a structure created from an Affymetrix CEL file, with probe set information from <i>CDFStruct</i> , a structure created from an Affymetrix CDF file.

Note Affymetrix probe pair indexing is 0-based, while MATLAB indexing is 1-based. The output from *probelibraryinfo* is 1-based.

Examples

The following example uses a sample CEL file and the CDF library file from the *E. coli* Antisense Genome array, which you can download from:

```
http://www.affymetrix.com/support/technical/sample\_data/demo\_data.affx
```

After you download the demo data, you will need the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool to extract the CEL file from a DTT file. You can download the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool from:

```
http://www.affymetrix.com/products/software/specific/dtt.affx
```

The following example assumes that the `Ecoli-antisense-121502.CEL` file is stored on the MATLAB search path or in the current directory. It also assumes that the associated CDF library file, `Ecoli_ASv2.CDF`, is stored at `D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\Ecoli`.

- 1 Read the contents of a CEL file into a MATLAB structure.

```
celStruct = affyread('Ecoli-antisense-121502.CEL');
```

- 2 Read the contents of a CDF file into a MATLAB structure.

```
cdfStruct = affyread('D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\Ecoli\Ecoli_ASv2.CDF');
```

- 3 Extract probe set library information.

```
ProbeInfo = probelibraryinfo(celStruct, cdfStruct);
```

- 4 Determine the probe set to which the 1104th probe belongs.

```
cdfStruct.ProbeSets(ProbeInfo(1104,1)).Name
```

```
ans =
```

```
thrA_b0002_at
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `affyread`, `celintensityread`, `probesetlink`, `probesetlookup`, `probesetplot`, `probesetvalues`

Purpose

Display probe set information on NetAffx Web site

Syntax

```
probesetlink(AffyStruct, PS)
URL = probesetlink(AffyStruct, PS)
probesetlink(AffyStruct, PS, ...'Source', SourceValue, ...)
probesetlink(AffyStruct, PS, ...'Browser',
BrowserValue, ...)
URL = probesetlink(AffyStruct, PS, ...'NoDisplay',
NoDisplayValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>AffyStruct</i>	Structure created by the affyread function from an Affymetrix CHP file or an Affymetrix CDF library file.
<i>PS</i>	Probe set index or the probe set ID/name.
<i>SourceValue</i>	Controls the linking to the data source (for example, GenBank or Flybase) for the probe set (instead of linking to the NetAffx Web site). Choices are true or false (default).

Note This property requires the GIN library file associated with the CHP or CDF file to be located in the same directory as the CDF library file.

<i>BrowserValue</i>	Controls the display of the probe set information in your system's default Web browser. Choices are true or false (default).
<i>NoDisplayValue</i>	Controls the return of <i>URL</i> without opening a Web browser. Choices are true or false (default).

Return Values

<i>URL</i>	URL for the probe set information.
------------	------------------------------------

probesetlink

Description

`probesetlink(AffyStruct, PS)` opens a Web Browser window displaying information on the NetAffx Web site about a probe set specified by *PS*, a probe set index or the probe set ID/name, and *AffyStruct*, a structure created from an Affymetrix CHP file or Affymetrix CDF library file.

URL = `probesetlink(AffyStruct, PS)` also returns the URL (linking to the NetAffx Web site) for the probe set information.

`probesetlink(AffyStruct, PS, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `probesetlink` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`probesetlink(AffyStruct, PS, ...'Source', SourceValue, ...)` controls the linking to the data source (for example, GenBank or Flybase) for the probe set (instead of linking to the NetAffx Web site). Choices are true or false (default).

Note The 'Source' property requires the GIN library file associated with the CHP or CDF file to be located in the same directory as the CDF library file.

`probesetlink(AffyStruct, PS, ...'Browser', BrowserValue, ...)` controls the display of the probe set information in your system's default Web browser. Choices are true or false (default).

URL = `probesetlink(AffyStruct, PS, ...'NoDisplay', NoDisplayValue, ...)` controls the return of the URL without opening a Web browser. Choices are true or false (default).

Note The NetAffx Web site requires you to register and provide a user name and password.

Examples

The following example uses a sample CHP file and the CDF library file from the *E. coli* Antisense Genome array, which you can download from:

```
http://www.affymetrix.com/support/technical/sample\_data/demo\_data.affx
```

After you download the demo data, you will need the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool to extract the CHP file from a DTT file. You can download the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool from:

```
http://www.affymetrix.com/products/software/specific/dtt.affx
```

The following example assumes that the `Ecoli-antisense-121502.CHP` file is stored on the MATLAB search path or in the current directory. It also assumes that the associated CDF library file, `Ecoli_ASv2.CDF`, is stored at `D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\Ecoli`.

- 1 Read the contents of a CHP file into a MATLAB structure.

```
chpStruct = affyread('Ecoli-antisense-121502.CHP',...  
                   'D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\Ecoli');
```

- 2 Display information from the NetAffx Web site for the `argG_b3172_at` probe set.

```
probesetlink(chpStruct, 'argG_b3172_at')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `affyread`, `celintensityread`, `probelibraryinfo`, `probesetlookup`, `probesetplot`, `probesetvalues`

probesetlookup

Purpose Look up information for probe set

Syntax *PSStruct* = probesetlookup(*AffyStruct*, *ID*)

Arguments

AffyStruct Structure created by the *affyread* function from an Affymetrix CHP file or an Affymetrix CDF library file for expression assays.

ID Probe set ID/name or gene ID.

Return Values

PSStruct Structure containing the following fields for a probe set:

- Identifier — Gene ID associated with the probe set
- ProbeSetName — Probe set ID/name
- CDFIndex — Index into the CDF structure for the probe set
- GINIndex — Index into the GIN structure for the probe set
- Description — Description of the probe set
- Source — Source(s) of the probe set
- SourceURL — Source URL(s) for the probe set

Description *PSStruct* = probesetlookup(*AffyStruct*, *ID*) returns a structure containing information for a probe set specified by ID, a probe set ID/name or gene ID, and by *AffyStruct*, a structure created from an Affymetrix CHP file or Affymetrix CDF library file for expression assays.

Note This function works with CHP files and CDF files for expression assays only. It requires that the GIN library file associated with the CHP file or CDF file to be located in the same directory as the CDF library file.

Examples

The following example uses the CDF library file from the *E. coli* Antisense Genome array, which you can download from:

```
http://www.affymetrix.com/support/technical/sample_data/demo_data.affx
```

The following example assumes that the `Ecoli_ASv2.CDF` library file is stored at `D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\Ecoli`.

- 1 Read the contents of a CDF library file into a MATLAB structure.

```
cdfStruct = affyread('D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\Ecoli\Ecoli_ASv2.CDF');
```

- 2 Look up the gene ID (Identifier) associated with the `argG_b3172_at` probe set.

```
probesetlookup(cdfStruct, 'argG_b3172_at')
```

```
ans =
```

```

Identifier: '3315278'
ProbeSetName: 'argG_b3172_at'
CDFIndex: 5213
GINIndex: 3074
Description: [1x82 char]
Source: 'NCBI EColi Genome'
SourceURL: [1x74 char]
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `affyread`, `celintensityread`, `probelibraryinfo`, `probesetlink`, `probesetplot`, `probesetvalues`, `rmabackadj`

probesetplot

Purpose Plot Affymetrix probe set intensity values

Syntax

```
probesetplot(CELStruct, CDFStruct, PS)
probesetplot(CELStruct, CDFStruct, PS, ...'GeneName',
GeneNameValue, ...)
probesetplot(CELStruct, CDFStruct, PS, ...'Field',
FieldValue, ...)
probesetplot(CELStruct, CDFStruct, PS, ...'ShowStats',
ShowStatsValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>CELStruct</i>	Structure created by the affyread function from an Affymetrix CEL file.
<i>CDFStruct</i>	Structure created by the affyread function from an Affymetrix CDF library file associated with the CEL file.
<i>PS</i>	Probe set index or the probe set ID/name.
<i>GeneNameValue</i>	Controls whether the probe set name or the gene name is used for the title of the plot. Choices are true or false (default).

Note The 'GeneName' property requires the GIN library file associated with the CEL and CDF files to be located in the same directory as the CDF library file from which *CDFStruct* was created.

<i>FieldValue</i>	String specifying the type of data to plot. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 'Intensity' (default) • 'StdDev' • 'Background' • 'Pixels' • 'Outlier'
<i>ShowStatsValue</i>	Controls whether the mean and standard deviation lines are included in the plot. Choices are true or false (default).

Description

`probesetplot(CELStruct, CDFStruct, PS)` plots the PM (perfect match) and MM (mismatch) intensity values for a specified probe set. *CELStruct* is a structure created by the `affyread` function from an Affymetrix CEL file. *CDFStruct* is a structure created by the `affyread` function from an Affymetrix CDF library file associated with the CEL file. *PS* is the probe set index or the probe set ID/name.

Note MATLAB uses 1-based indexing for probe set numbers, while the Affymetrix CDF file uses 0-based indexing for probe set numbers. For example, `CDFStruct.ProbeSets(1)` has a `ProbeSetNumber` of 0 in the `ProbePairs` field.

`probesetplot(CELStruct, CDFStruct, PS, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `probesetplot` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

probesetplot

`probesetplot(CELStruct, CDFStruct, PS, ...'GeneName', GeneNameValue, ...)` controls whether the probe set name or the gene name is used for the title of the plot. Choices are true or false (default).

Note The 'GeneName' property requires the GIN library file associated with the CEL and CDF files to be located in the same directory as the CDF library file from which *CDFStruct* was created.

`probesetplot(CELStruct, CDFStruct, PS, ...'Field', FieldValue, ...)` specifies the type of data to plot. Choices are:

- 'Intensity' (default)
- 'StdDev'
- 'Background'
- 'Pixels'
- 'Outlier'

`probesetplot(CELStruct, CDFStruct, PS, ...'ShowStats', ShowStatsValue, ...)` controls whether the mean and standard deviation lines are included in the plot. Choices are true or false (default).

Examples

The following example use a sample CEL file and the CDF library file from the *E. coli* Antisense Genome array, which you can download from:

http://www.affymetrix.com/support/technical/sample_data/demo_data.affx

After you download the demo data, you will need the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool to extract the CEL file from a DTT file. You can download the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool from:

<http://www.affymetrix.com/products/software/specific/dtt.affx>

The following example assumes that the `Ecoli-antisense-121502.CEL` file is stored on the MATLAB search path or in the current directory. It also assumes that the associated CDF library file, `Ecoli_ASv2.CDF`, is stored at `D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\Ecoli`.

- 1 Read the contents of a CEL file into a MATLAB structure.

```
celStruct = affyread('Ecoli-antisense-121502.CEL');
```

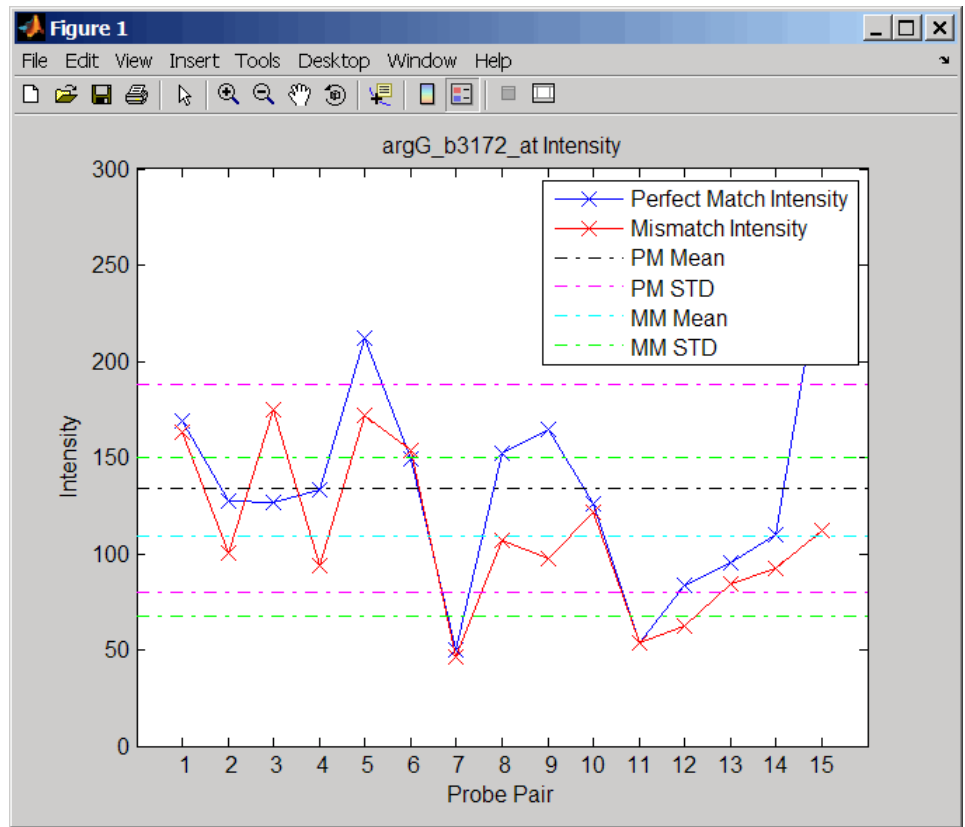
- 2 Read the contents of a CDF file into a MATLAB structure.

```
cdfStruct = affyread('D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\Ecoli\Ecoli_ASv2.CDF');
```

- 3 Plot the PM and MM intensity values of the `argG_b3172_at` probe set, including the mean and standard deviation.

```
probesetplot(celStruct, cdfStruct, 'argG_b3172_at', 'showstats', true)
```

probesetplot



See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `affyread`, `celintensityread`, `probesetlink`, `probesetlookup`, `probesetvalues`

Purpose Create table of Affymetrix probe set intensity values

Syntax `PSValues = probesetvalues(CELStruct, CDFStruct, PS)`

Arguments

<i>CELStruct</i>	Structure created by the <code>affyread</code> function from an Affymetrix CEL file.
<i>CDFStruct</i>	Structure created by the <code>affyread</code> function from an Affymetrix CDF library file associated with the CEL file.
<i>PS</i>	Probe set index or the probe set ID/name.

Return Values *PSValues* Eighteen-column matrix with one row for each probe pair in the probe set.

Description `PSValues = probesetvalues(CELStruct, CDFStruct, PS)` creates a table of intensity values for *PS*, a probe set, from the probe-level data in *CELStruct*, a structure created by the `affyread` function from an Affymetrix CEL file. *PS* is a probe set index or probe set ID/name from *CDFStruct*, a structure created by the `affyread` function from an Affymetrix CDF library file associated with the CEL file. *PSValues* is an eighteen-column matrix with one row for each probe pair in the probe set. The columns correspond to the following fields.

Column	Field
1	'ProbeSetNumber'
2	'ProbePairNumber'
3	'UseProbePair'
4	'Background'
5	'PMPosX'

probesetvalues

Column	Field
6	'PMPosY'
7	'PMIntensity'
8	'PMStdDev'
9	'PMPixels'
10	'PMOutlier'
11	'PMMasked'
12	'MMPosX'
13	'MMPosY'
14	'MMIntensity'
15	'MMStdDev'
16	'MMPixels'
17	'MMOutlier'
18	'MMMMasked'

Note The 'UseProbePair' field is for backward compatibility only and is not currently used.

Note MATLAB uses 1-based indexing for probe set numbers, while the Affymetrix CDF file uses 0-based indexing for probe set numbers. For example, `CDFStruct.ProbeSets(1)` has a `ProbeSetNumber` of 0 in the `ProbePairs` field.

Examples

The following example uses a sample CEL file and the CDF library file from the *E. coli* Antisense Genome array, which you can download from:

http://www.affymetrix.com/support/technical/sample_data/demo_data.affx

After you download the demo data, you will need the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool to extract the CEL file from a DTT file. You can download the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool from:

<http://www.affymetrix.com/products/software/specific/dtt.affx>

The following example assumes that the `Ecoli-antisense-121502.CEL` file is stored on the MATLAB search path or in the current directory. It also assumes that the associated CDF library file, `Ecoli_ASv2.CDF`, is stored at `D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\Ecoli`.

- 1 Read the contents of a CEL file into a MATLAB structure.

```
celStruct = affyread('Ecoli-antisense-121502.CEL');
```

- 2 Read the contents of a CDF file into a MATLAB structure.

```
cdfStruct = affyread('D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\Ecoli\Ecoli_ASv2.CDF');
```

- 3 Create a table of intensity values for the `argG_b3172_at` probe set.

```
psvals = probesetvalues(celStruct, cdfStruct, 'argG_b3172_at');
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `affyread`, `celintensityread`, `probelibraryinfo`, `probesetlink`, `probesetlookup`, `probesetplot`, `rmabackadj`

profalign

Purpose Align two profiles using Needleman-Wunsch global alignment

Syntax

```
Prof = profalign(Prof1, Prof2)
[Prof, H1, H2] = profalign(Prof1, Prof2)
profalign(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
profalign(..., 'ScoringMatrix', ScoringMatrixValue)
profalign(..., 'GapOpen', {G1Value, G2Value})
profalign(..., 'ExtendGap', {E1Value, E2Value})
profalign(..., 'ExistingGapAdjust', ExistingGapAdjustValue)
profalign(..., 'TerminalGapAdjust', TerminalGapAdjustValue)
profalign(..., 'ShowScore', ShowScoreValue)
```

Description *Prof* = `profalign(Prof1, Prof2)` returns a new profile (*Prof*) for the optimal global alignment of two profiles (*Prof1*, *Prof2*). The profiles (*Prof1*, *Prof2*) are numeric arrays of size [(4 or 5 or 20 or 21) x Profile Length] with counts or weighted profiles. Weighted profiles are used to down-weight similar sequences and up-weight divergent sequences. The output profile is a numeric matrix of size [(5 or 21) x New Profile Length] where the last row represents gaps. Original gaps in the input profiles are preserved. The output profile is the result of adding the aligned columns of the input profiles.

`[Prof, H1, H2] = profalign(Prof1, Prof2)` returns pointers that indicate how to rearrange the columns of the original profiles into the new profile.

`profalign(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`profalign(..., 'ScoringMatrix', ScoringMatrixValue)` defines the scoring matrix (*ScoringMatrixValue*) to be used for the alignment. The default is 'BLOSUM50' for amino acids or 'NUC44' for nucleotide sequences.

`profalign(..., 'GapOpen', {G1Value, G2Value})` sets the penalties for opening a gap in the first and second profiles respectively. *G1Value* and *G2Value* can be either scalars or vectors. When using a vector, the number of elements is one more than the length of the input profile. Every element indicates the position specific penalty for opening a gap

between two consecutive symbols in the sequence. The first and the last elements are the gap penalties used at the ends of the sequence. The default gap open penalties are {10,10}.

`profalign(..., 'ExtendGap', {E1Value, E2Value})` sets the penalties for extending a gap in the first and second profile respectively. *E1Value* and *E2Value* can be either scalars or vectors. When using a vector, the number of elements is one more than the length of the input profile. Every element indicates the position specific penalty for extending a gap between two consecutive symbols in the sequence. The first and the last elements are the gap penalties used at the ends of the sequence. If `ExtendGap` is not specified, then extensions to gaps are scored with the same value as `GapOpen`.

`profalign(..., 'ExistingGapAdjust', ExistingGapAdjustValue)`, if *ExistingGapAdjustValue* is false, turns off the automatic adjustment based on existing gaps of the position-specific penalties for opening a gap. When *ExistingGapAdjustValue* is true, for every profile position, `profalign` proportionally lowers the penalty for opening a gap toward the penalty of extending a gap based on the proportion of gaps found in the contiguous symbols and on the weight of the input profile.

`profalign(..., 'TerminalGapAdjust', TerminalGapAdjustValue)`, when *TerminalGapAdjustValue* is true, adjusts the penalty for opening a gap at the ends of the sequence to be equal to the penalty for extending a gap. Default is false.

`profalign(..., 'ShowScore', ShowScoreValue)`, when *ShowScoreValue* is true, displays the scoring space and the winning path.

Examples

1 Read in sequences and create profiles.

```
ma1 = ['RGTANCDMQDA'; 'RGTAHCDMQDA'; 'RRRAPCDL-DA'];
ma2 = ['RGTHCDLADAT'; 'RGTACDMADAA'];
p1 = seqprofile(ma1, 'gaps', 'all', 'counts', true);
p2 = seqprofile(ma2, 'counts', true);
```

- 2** Merge two profiles into a single one by aligning them.

```
p = proalign(p1,p2);  
seqlogo(p)
```

- 3** Use the output pointers to generate the multiple alignment.

```
[p, h1, h2] = proalign(p1,p2);  
ma = repmat('-',5,12);  
ma(1:3,h1) = ma1;  
ma(4:5,h2) = ma2;  
disp(ma)
```

- 4** Increase the gap penalty before cysteine in the second profile.

```
gapVec = 10 + [p2(aa2int('C'),:) 0] * 10  
p3 = proalign(p1,p2,'gapopen',{10,gapVec});  
seqlogo(p3)
```

- 5** Add a new sequence to a profile without inserting new gaps into the profile.

```
gapVec = [0 inf(1,11) 0];  
p4 = proalign(p3,seqprofile('PLHFMSVLWDVQQWP'),...  
              'gapopen',{gapVec,10});  
seqlogo(p4)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `hmmproalign`, `multialign`, `nwalign`, `seqprofile`, `seqconsensus`

Purpose Characteristics for amino acid sequences

Syntax `proteinplot (SeqAA)`

Arguments

`SeqAA` Amino acid sequence or a structure with a field `Sequence` containing an amino acid sequence.

Description

`proteinplot (SeqAA)` loads an amino acid sequence into the protein plot GUI. `proteinplot` is a tool for analyzing a single amino acid sequence. You can use the results from `proteinplot` to compare the properties of several amino acid sequences. It displays smoothed line plots of various properties such as the hydrophobicity of the amino acids in the sequence.

Importing Sequences into proteinplot

1 In the MATLAB Command Window, type

```
proteinplot(Seq_AA)
```

The `proteinplot` interface opens and the sequence `Seq_AA` is shown in the **Sequence** text box.

2 Alternatively, type or paste an amino acid sequence into the **Sequence** text box.

You can import a sequence with the Import dialog box:

1 Click the **Import Sequence** button. The Import dialog box opens.

2 From the **Import From** list, select a variable in the MATLAB workspace, ASCII text file, FASTA formatted file, GenPept formatted file, or accession number in the GenPept database.

Information About the Properties

You can also access information about the properties from the **Help** menu.

- 1 From the **Help** menu, click **References**. The Help Browser opens with a list of properties and references.
- 2 Scroll down to locate the property you are interested in studying.

Working with Properties

When you click on a property a smoothed plot of the property values along the sequence will be displayed. Multiple properties can be selected from the list by holding down Shift or Ctrl while selecting properties. When two properties are selected, the plots are displayed using a PLOTYY-style layout, with one y -axis on the left and one on the right. For all other selections, a single y -axis is displayed. When displaying one or two properties, the y values displayed are the actual property values. When three or more properties are displayed, the values are normalized to the range 0-1.

You can add your own property values by clicking on the Add button next to the property list. This will open up a dialog that allows you to specify the values for each of the amino acids. The Display Text box allows you to specify the text that will be displayed in the selection box on the main proteinplot window. You can also save the property values to an m-file for future use by typing a file name into the Filename box.

The Terminal Selection boxes allow you to choose to plot only part of the sequence. By default all of the sequence is plotted. The default smoothing method is an unweighted linear moving average with a window length of five residues. You can change this using the "Configuration Values" dialog from the Edit menu. The dialog allows you to select the window length from 5 to 29 residues. You can modify the shape of the smoothing window by changing the edge weighting factor. And you can choose the smoothing function to be a linear moving average, an exponential moving average or a linear Lowess smoothing.

The File menu allows you to Import a sequence, save the plot that you have created to a FIG file, you can export the data values in the figure to a workspace variable or to a MAT file, you can export the figure to a normal figure window for customizing, and you can print the figure.

The Edit menu allows you to create a new property, to reset the property values to the default values, and to modify the smoothing parameters with the Configuration Values menu item.

The View menu allows you to turn the toolbar on and off, and to add a legend to the plot.

The Tools menu allows you to zoom in and zoom out of the plot, to view Data Statistics such as mean, minimum and maximum values of the plot, and to normalize the values of the plot from 0 to 1.

The Help menu allows you to view this document and to see the references for the sequence properties built into proteinplot

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `aaccount`, `atomiccomp`, `molviewer`, `molweight`, `pdbdistplot`, `seqtool`

MATLAB function: `plotyy`

proteinpropplot

Purpose

Plot properties of amino acid sequence

Syntax

```
proteinpropplot (SeqAA)
proteinpropplot(SeqAA, ...'PropertyTitle',
  PropertyTitleValue, ...)
proteinpropplot(SeqAA, ...'Startat', StartatValue, ...)
proteinpropplot(SeqAA, ...'Endat', EndatValue, ...)
proteinpropplot(SeqAA, ...'Smoothing', SmoothingValue, ...)
proteinpropplot(SeqAA, ...'EdgeWeight',
  EdgeWeightValue, ...)
proteinpropplot(SeqAA, ...'WindowLength',
  WindowLengthValue,
  ...)
```

Arguments

- SeqAA* Amino acid sequence. Enter any of the following:
- Character string of letters representing an amino acid
 - Vector of integers representing an amino acid, such as returned by `aa2int`
 - Structure containing a `Sequence` field that contains an amino acid sequence, such as returned by `getembl`, `getgenpept`, or `getpdb`

PropertyTitleValue String that specifies the property to plot. Default is `Hydrophobicity (Kyte & Doolittle)`. To display a list of properties to plot, enter an empty string for *PropertyTitleValue*. For example, type:

```
proteinpropplot(sequence, 'propertytitle', '')
```

Tip To access references for the properties, view the `proteinpropplot` m-file.

StartatValue Integer that specifies the starting point for the plot from the N-terminal end of the amino acid sequence *SeqAA*. Default is 1.

EndatValue Integer that specifies the ending point for the plot from the N-terminal end of the amino acid sequence *SeqAA*. Default is `length(SeqAA)`.

SmoothingValue String that specifies the smoothing method. Choices are:

- `linear` (default)
- `exponential`
- `lowess`

proteinpropplot

- EdgeWeightValue* Value that specifies the edge weight used for linear and exponential smoothing methods. Decreasing this value emphasizes peaks in the plot. Choices are any value ≥ 0 and ≤ 1 . Default is 1.
- WindowLengthValue* Integer that specifies the window length for the smoothing method. Increasing this value gives a smoother plot that shows less detail. Default is 11.

Description

proteinpropplot (*SeqAA*) displays a plot of the hydrophobicity (Kyte and Doolittle, 1982) of the residues in sequence *SeqAA*.

proteinpropplot(*SeqAA*, ... '*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls proteinpropplot with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

proteinpropplot(*SeqAA*, ... '*PropertyTitle*', *PropertyTitleValue*, ...) specifies a property to plot for the amino acid sequence *SeqAA*. Default is Hydrophobicity (Kyte & Doolittle). To display a list of possible properties to plot, enter an empty string for *PropertyTitleValue*. For example, type:

```
proteinpropplot(sequence, 'propertytitle', '')
```

Tip To access references for the properties, view the proteinpropplot m-file.

proteinpropplot(*SeqAA*, ... '*Startat*', *StartatValue*, ...) specifies the starting point for the plot from the N-terminal end of the amino acid sequence *SeqAA*. Default is 1.

`proteinpropplot(SeqAA, ...'Endat', EndatValue, ...)` specifies the ending point for the plot from the N-terminal end of the amino acid sequence `SeqAA`. Default is `length(SeqAA)`.

`proteinpropplot(SeqAA, ...'Smoothing', SmoothingValue, ...)` specifies the smoothing method. Choices are:

- linear (default)
- exponential
- lowess

`proteinpropplot(SeqAA, ...'EdgeWeight', EdgeWeightValue, ...)` specifies the edge weight used for linear and exponential smoothing methods. Decreasing this value emphasizes peaks in the plot. Choices are any value ≥ 0 and ≤ 1 . Default is 1.

`proteinpropplot(SeqAA, ...'WindowLength', WindowLengthValue, ...)` specifies the window length for the smoothing method. Increasing this value gives a smoother plot that shows less detail. Default is 11.

Examples

Plotting Hydrophobicity

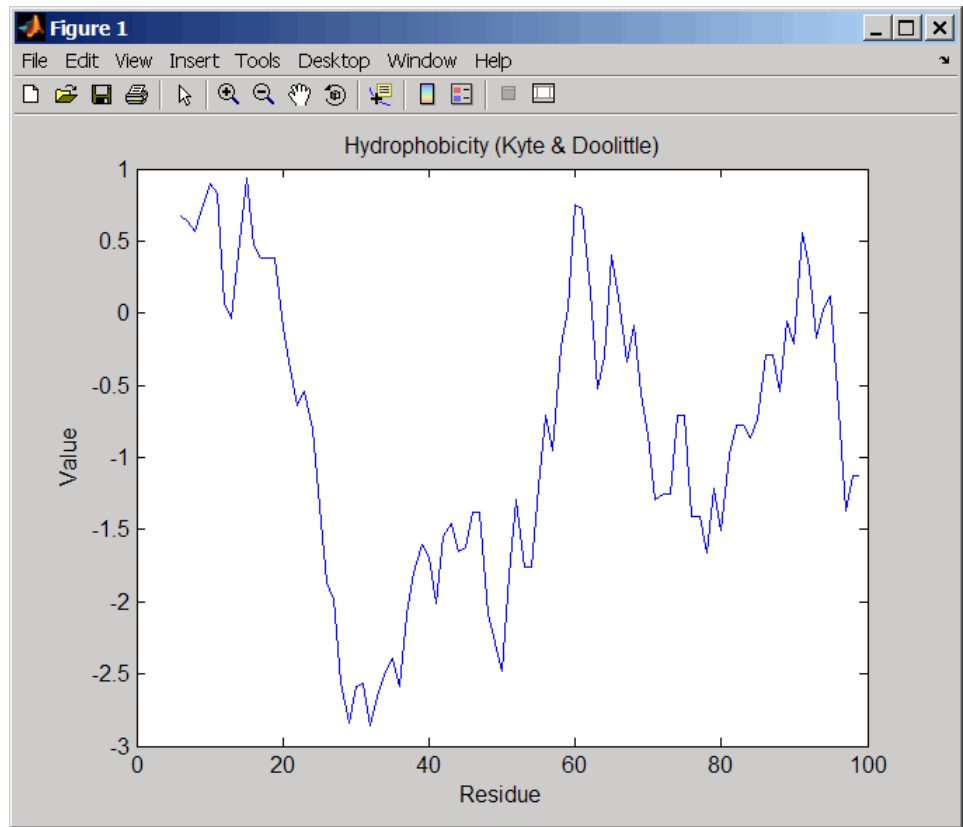
- 1 Use the `getpdb` function to retrieve a protein sequence.

```
prion = getpdb('1HJM', 'SEQUENCEONLY', true);
```

- 2 Plot the hydrophobicity (Kyte and Doolittle, 1982) of the residues in the sequence.

```
proteinpropplot(prion)
```

proteinpropplot



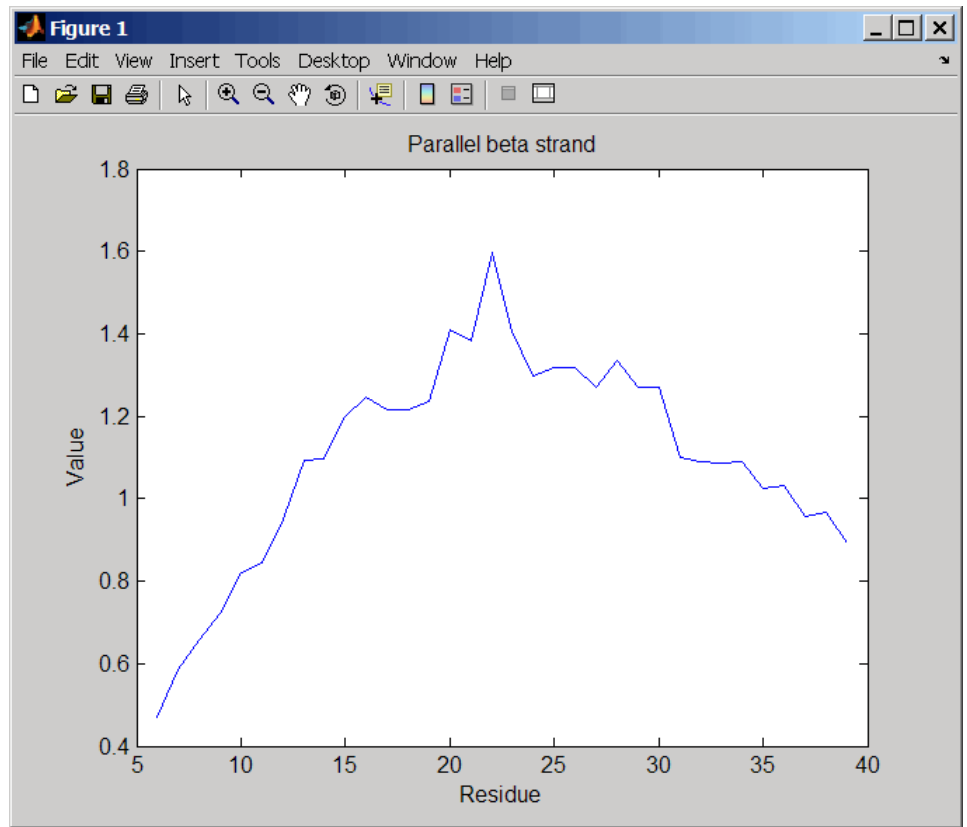
Plotting Parallel Beta Strand

1 Use the `getgenpept` function to retrieve a protein sequence.

```
s = getgenpept('aad50640');
```

2 Plot the conformational preference for parallel beta strand for the residues in the sequence.

```
proteinpropplot(s,'propertytitle','Parallel beta strand')
```



References

[1] Kyte, J., and Doolittle, R.F. (1982). A simple method for displaying the hydrophatic character of a protein. *J Mol Biol* *157(1)*, 105–132.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `account`, `atomiccomp`, `molviewer`, `molweight`, `pbdbdistplot`, `proteinplot`, `ramachandran`, `seqtool`

MATLAB function: `plotyy`

quantilenorm

Purpose Quantile normalization over multiple arrays

Syntax
NormData = quantilenorm(*Data*)
NormData = quantilenorm(...,'MEDIAN', true)
NormData = quantilenorm(...,'DISPLAY', true)

Description *NormData* = quantilenorm(*Data*), where the columns of *Data* correspond to separate chips, normalizes the distributions of the values in each column.

Note If *Data* contains NaN values, then *NormData* will also contain NaN values at the corresponding positions.

NormData = quantilenorm(...,'MEDIAN', true) takes the median of the ranked values instead of the mean.

NormData = quantilenorm(...,'DISPLAY', true) plots the distributions of the columns and of the normalized data.

Examples

```
load yeastdata
normYeastValues = quantilenorm(yeastvalues,'display',1);
```

See Also malowess, manorm, rmabackadj, rmasummary

Purpose Draw Ramachandran plot for Protein Data Bank (PDB) data

Syntax

```
ramachandran('PDBid')
ramachandran('File')
ramachandran(PDBData)
Angles = ramachandran(...)
[Angles, Handle] = ramachandran(...)
```

Arguments

PDBid Unique identifier for a protein structure record. Each structure in the PDB is represented by a 4-character alphanumeric identifier. For example, 4hbb is the identification code for hemoglobin.

File Protein Data Bank (PDB) formatted file (ASCII text file). Enter a file name, a path and file name, or a URL pointing to a file. *File* can also be a MATLAB character array that contains the text for a PDB file.

PDBData MATLAB structure with PDB formatted data.

Description

ramachandran generates a plot of the torsion angle PHI (torsion angle between the 'C-N-CA-C' atoms) and the torsion angle PSI (torsion angle between the 'N-CA-C-N' atoms) of the protein sequence.

ramachandran('PDBid') generates the Ramachandran plot for the protein with PDB code ID.

ramachandran('File') generates the Ramachandran plot for protein stored in the PDB file *File*.

ramachandran(PDBData) generates the Ramachandran plot for the protein stored in the structure PDBData, where PDBData is a MATLAB structure obtained by using pdbread or getpdb.

Angles = ramachandran(...) returns an array of the torsion angles PHI, PSI, and OMEGA for the residue sequence.

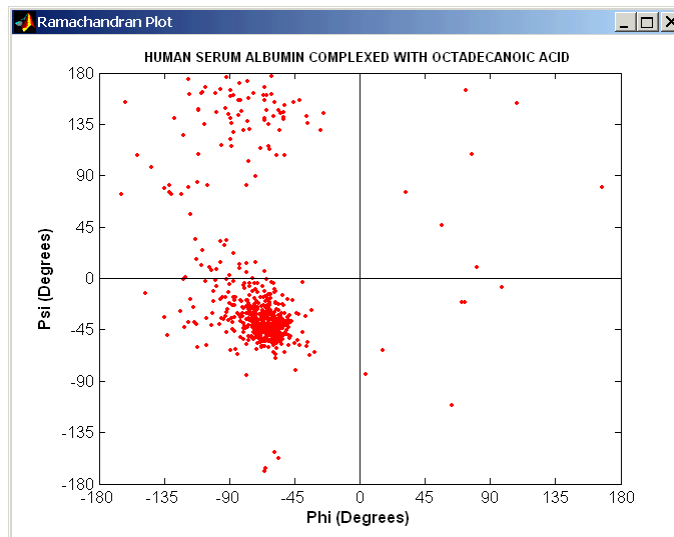
[Angles, Handle] = ramachandran(...) returns a handle to the plot.

ramachandran

Examples

Generate the Ramachandran plot for the human serum albumin complexed with octadecanoic acid.

```
ramachandran('1E7I')
```



See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `getpdb`, `molviewer`, `pdbdistplot`, `pdbread`

Purpose Generate randomized subset of features

Syntax

```
[IDX, Z] = randfeatures(X, Group, 'PropertyName',
    PropertyValue...)
randfeatures(..., 'Classifier', C)
randfeatures(..., 'ClassOptions', CO)
randfeatures(..., 'PerformanceThreshold', PT)
randfeatures(..., 'ConfidenceThreshold', CT)
randfeatures(..., 'SubsetSize', SS)
randfeatures(..., 'PoolSize', PS)
randfeatures(..., 'NumberOfIndices', N)
randfeatures(..., 'CrossNorm', CN)
randfeatures(..., 'Verbose', VerboseValue)
```

Description

[IDX, Z] = randfeatures(X, Group, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue...) performs a randomized subset feature search reinforced by classification. randfeatures randomly generates subsets of features used to classify the samples. Every subset is evaluated with the apparent error. Only the best subsets are kept, and they are joined into a single final pool. The cardinality for every feature in the pool gives the measurement of the significance.

X contains the training samples. Every column of X is an observed vector. Group contains the class labels. Group can be a numeric vector or a cell array of strings; numel(Group) must be the same as the number of columns in X, and numel(unique(Group)) must be greater than or equal to 2. Z is the classification significance for every feature. IDX contains the indices after sorting Z; i.e., the first one points to the most significant feature.

randfeatures(..., 'Classifier', C) sets the classifier. Options are

```
'da'    (default)  Discriminant analysis
'knn'   K nearest neighbors
```

randfeatures(..., 'ClassOptions', CO) is a cell with extra options for the selected classifier. Defaults are

randfeatures

{5, 'correlation', 'consensus'} for KNN and {'linear'} for DA. See `knnclassify` and `classify` for more information.

`randfeatures(..., 'PerformanceThreshold', PT)` sets the correct classification threshold used to pick the subsets included in the final pool. Default is 0.8 (80%).

`randfeatures(..., 'ConfidenceThreshold', CT)` uses the posterior probability of the discriminant analysis to invalidate classified subvectors with low confidence. This option is only valid when Classifier is 'da'. Using it has the same effect as using 'consensus' in KNN; i.e., it makes the selection of approved subsets very stringent. Default is $0.95.^{(\text{number of classes})}$.

`randfeatures(..., 'SubsetSize', SS)` sets the number of features considered in every subset. Default is 20.

`randfeatures(..., 'PoolSize', PS)` sets the targeted number of accepted subsets for the final pool. Default is 1000.

`randfeatures(..., 'NumberOfIndices', N)` sets the number of output indices in IDX. Default is the same as the number of features.

`randfeatures(..., 'CrossNorm', CN)` applies independent normalization across the observations for every feature. Cross-normalization ensures comparability among different features, although it is not always necessary because the selected classifier properties might already account for this. Options are

'none' (default)	Intensities are not cross-normalized.
'meanvar'	$x_{\text{new}} = (x - \text{mean}(x)) / \text{std}(x)$
'softmax'	$x_{\text{new}} = (1 + \exp((\text{mean}(x) - x) / \text{std}(x)))^{-1}$
'minmax'	$x_{\text{new}} = (x - \min(x)) / (\max(x) - \min(x))$

`randfeatures(..., 'Verbose', VerboseValue)`, when Verbose is true, turns off verbosity. Default is true.

Examples

Find a reduced set of genes that is sufficient for classification of all the cancer types in the t-matrix NCI60 data set. Load sample data.


```
load NCI60tmatrix
```

Select features.

```
I = randfeatures(X, GROUP, 'SubsetSize', 15, 'Classifier', 'da');
```

Test features with a linear discriminant classifier.

```
C = classify(X(I(1:25),:)', X(I(1:25),:)', GROUP);  
cp = classperf(GROUP, C);  
cp.CorrectRate
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `classperf`, `crossvalind`, `knnclassify`, `rankfeatures`, `svmclassify`

Statistics Toolbox function: `classify`

randseq

Purpose Generate random sequence from finite alphabet

Syntax

```
Seq = randseq(SeqLength)
Seq = randseq(SeqLength, ...'Alphabet', AlphabetValue, ...)
Seq = randseq(SeqLength, ...'Weights', WeightsValue, ...)
Seq = randseq(SeqLength, ...'FromStructure',
    FromStructureValue, ...)
Seq = randseq(SeqLength, ...'Case', CaseValue, ...)
Seq = randseq(SeqLength, ...'DataType', DataTypeValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>SeqLength</i>	Number of amino acids or nucleotides in random sequence .
<i>AlphabetValue</i>	Property to select the alphabet for the sequence. Enter 'dna'(default), 'rna', or 'amino'.
<i>WeightsValue</i>	Property to specify a weighted random sequence.
<i>FromStructureValue</i>	Property to specify a weighted random sequence using output structures from the functions from basecount, dimercount, codoncount, or aaccount.
<i>CaseValue</i>	Property to select the case of letters in a sequence whenAlphabet is 'char'. Values are 'upper' (default) or 'lower'.
<i>DataTypeValue</i>	Property to select the data type for a sequence. Values are 'char'(default) for letter sequences, and 'uint8' or 'double' for numeric sequences. Creates a sequence as an array of <i>DataType</i> .

Description *Seq = randseq(SeqLength)* creates a random sequence with a length specified by *SeqLength*.

`Seq = randseq(SeqLength, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `randseq` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`Seq = randseq(SeqLength, ...'Alphabet', AlphabetValue, ...)` generates a sequence from a specific alphabet.

`Seq = randseq(SeqLength, ...'Weights', WeightsValue, ...)` creates a weighted random sequence where the *i*th letter of the sequence alphabet is selected with weight $W(i)$. The weight vector is usually a probability vector or a frequency count vector. Note that the *i*th element of the nucleotide alphabet is given by `int2nt(i)`, and the *i*th element of the amino acid alphabet is given by `int2aa(i)`.

`Seq = randseq(SeqLength, ...'FromStructure', FromStructureValue, ...)` creates a weighted random sequence with weights given by the output structure from `basecount`, `dimercount`, `codoncount`, or `aaccount`.

`Seq = randseq(SeqLength, ...'Case', CaseValue, ...)` specifies the case for a letter sequence.

`Seq = randseq(SeqLength, ...'DataType', DataTypeValue, ...)` specifies the data type for the sequence array.

Examples

Generate a random DNA sequence.

```
randseq(20)

ans =
TAGCTGGCCAAGCGAGCTTG
```

Generate a random RNA sequence.

```
randseq(20, 'alphabet', 'rna')

ans =
```

randseq

```
GCUGCGGCGGUUGUAUCCUG
```

Generate a random protein sequence.

```
randseq(20, 'alphabet', 'amino')
```

```
ans =
```

```
DYKMCLYEFGMFGHFTGHKK
```

See Also

Statistics Toolbox functions: `hmmgenerate`, `randsample`

MATLAB functions: `rand`, `randperm`

Purpose

Rank key features by class separability criteria

Syntax

```
[IDX, Z] = rankfeatures(X, Group)
[IDX, Z] = rankfeatures(X, Group, ...'Criterion',
CriterionValue, ...)
[IDX, Z] = rankfeatures(X, Group, ...'CCWeighting', ALPHA,
...)
[IDX, Z] = rankfeatures(X, Group, ...'NWeighting',
BETA, ...)
[IDX, Z] = rankfeatures(X, Group, ...'NumberOfIndices', N,
...)
[IDX, Z] = rankfeatures(X, Group, ...'CrossNorm', CN, ...)
```

Description

[*IDX*, *Z*] = rankfeatures(*X*, *Group*) ranks the features in *X* using an independent evaluation criterion for binary classification. *X* is a matrix where every column is an observed vector and the number of rows corresponds to the original number of features. *Group* contains the class labels.

IDX is the list of indices to the rows in *X* with the most significant features. *Z* is the absolute value of the criterion used (see below).

Group can be a numeric vector or a cell array of strings; numel(*Group*) is the same as the number of columns in *X*, and numel(unique(*Group*)) is equal to 2.

[*IDX*, *Z*] = rankfeatures(*X*, *Group*, ...'*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls rankfeatures with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

[*IDX*, *Z*] = rankfeatures(*X*, *Group*, ...'*Criterion*', *CriterionValue*, ...) sets the criterion used to assess the significance of every feature for separating two labeled groups. Choices are:

rankfeatures

- 'ttest' (default) — Absolute value two-sample t-test with pooled variance estimate.
- 'entropy' — Relative entropy, also known as Kullback-Liebr distance or divergence.
- 'brattacharyya' — Minimum attainable classification error or Chernoff bound.
- 'roc' — Area between the empirical receiver operating characteristic (ROC) curve and the random classifier slope.
- 'wilcoxon' — Absolute value of the u-statistic of a two-sample unpaired Wilcoxon test, also known as Mann-Whitney.

Note 'ttest', 'entropy', and 'brattacharyya' assume normal distributed classes while 'roc' and 'wilcoxon' are nonparametric tests. All tests are feature independent.

`[IDX, Z] = rankfeatures(X, Group, ...'CCWeighting', ALPHA, ...)` uses correlation information to outweigh the Z value of potential features using $Z * (1 - ALPHA * (RHO))$, where RHO is the average of the absolute values of the cross-correlation coefficient between the candidate feature and all previously selected features. ALPHA sets the weighting factor. It is a scalar value between 0 and 1. When ALPHA is 0 (default) potential features are not weighted. A large value of RHO (close to 1) outweighs the significance statistic; this means that features that are highly correlated with the features already picked are less likely to be included in the output list.

`[IDX, Z] = rankfeatures(X, Group, ...'NWeighting', BETA, ...)` uses regional information to outweigh the Z value of potential features using $Z * (1 - \exp(-(DIST/BETA).^2))$, where DIST is the distance (in rows) between the candidate feature and previously selected features. BETA sets the weighting factor. It is greater than or equal to 0. When BETA is 0 (default) potential features are not weighted. A small DIST (close to 0) outweighs the significance statistics of only

close features. This means that features that are close to already picked features are less likely to be included in the output list. This option is useful for extracting features from time series with temporal correlation.

BETA can also be a function of the feature location, specified using @ or an anonymous function. In both cases rankfeatures passes the row position of the feature to BETA() and expects back a value greater than or equal to 0.

Note You can use 'CCWeighting' and 'NWeighting' together.

[*IDX*, *Z*] = rankfeatures(*X*, *Group*, ... 'NumberOfIndices', *N*, ...) sets the number of output indices in *IDX*. Default is the same as the number of features when *ALPHA* and *BETA* are 0, or 20 otherwise.

[*IDX*, *Z*] = rankfeatures(*X*, *Group*, ... 'CrossNorm', *CN*, ...) applies independent normalization across the observations for every feature. Cross-normalization ensures comparability among different features, although it is not always necessary because the selected criterion might already account for this. Choices are:

- 'none' (default) — Intensities are not cross-normalized.
- 'meanvar' — $x_{\text{new}} = (x - \text{mean}(x)) / \text{std}(x)$
- 'softmax' — $x_{\text{new}} = (1 + \exp((\text{mean}(x) - x) / \text{std}(x)))^{-1}$
- 'minmax' — $x_{\text{new}} = (x - \min(x)) / (\max(x) - \min(x))$

Examples

- 1 Find a reduced set of genes that is sufficient for differentiating breast cancer cells from all other types of cancer in the t-matrix NCI60 data set. Load sample data.

```
load NCI60tmatrix
```

- 2 Get a logical index vector to the breast cancer cells.

```
BC = GROUP == 8;
```

3 Select features.

```
I = rankfeatures(X,BC,'NumberOfIndices',12);
```

4 Test features with a linear discriminant classifier.

```
C = classify(X(I,:)',X(I,:)',double(BC));  
cp = classperf(BC,C);  
cp.CorrectRate
```

```
ans =
```

```
1
```

5 Use cross-correlation weighting to further reduce the required number of genes.

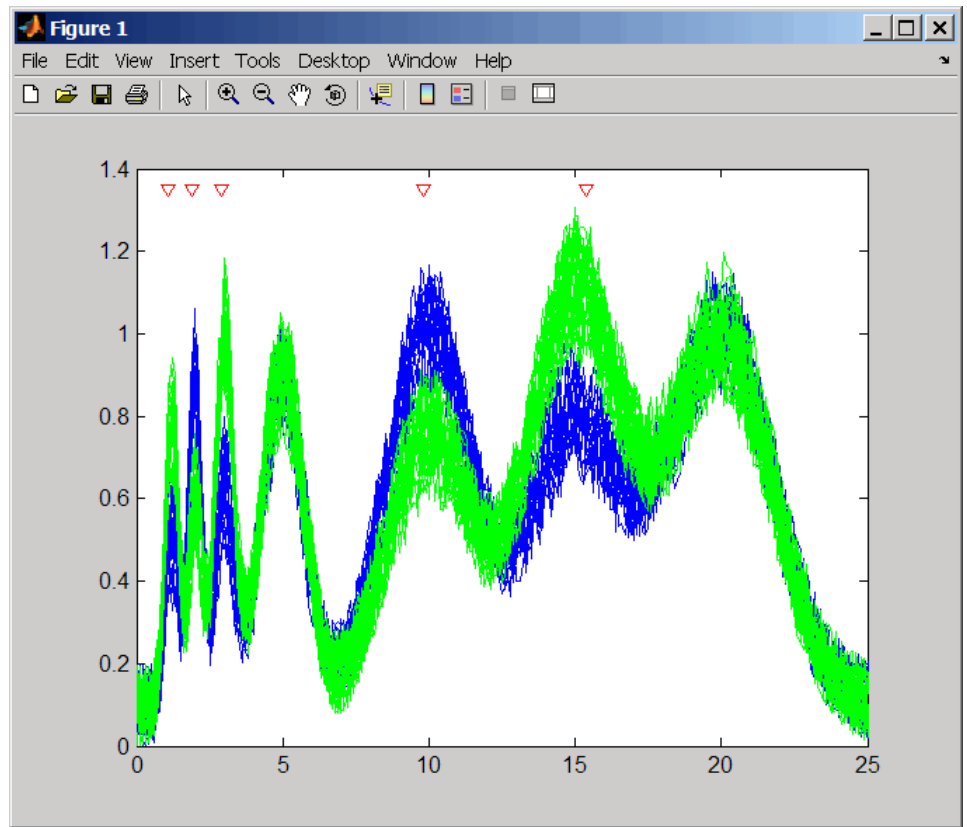
```
I = rankfeatures(X,BC,'CCWeighting',0.7,'NumberOfIndices',8);  
C = classify(X(I,:)',X(I,:)',double(BC));  
cp = classperf(BC,C);  
cp.CorrectRate
```

```
ans =
```

```
1
```

6 Find the discriminant peaks of two groups of signals with Gaussian pulses modulated by two different sources.

```
load GaussianPulses  
f = rankfeatures(y',grp,'NWeighting',@(x) x/10+5,'NumberOfIndices',5);  
plot(t,y(grp==1,:), 'b',t,y(grp==2,:), 'g',t(f),1.35,'vr')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `classperf`, `crossvalind`, `randfeatures`, `svmclassify`

Statistics Toolbox function: `classify`

rebasecuts

Purpose Find restriction enzymes that cut protein sequence

Syntax
`[Enzymes, Sites] = rebasecuts(SeqNT)`
`rebasecuts(SeqNT, Group)`
`rebasecuts(SeqNT, [Q, R])`
`rebasecuts(SeqNT, S)`

Arguments

<i>SeqNT</i>	Nucleotide sequence.
<i>Enzymes</i>	Cell array with the names of restriction enzymes from REBASE Version 412.
<i>Sites</i>	Vector of cut sites with the base number before every cut relative to the sequence.
<i>Group</i>	Cell array with the names of valid restriction enzymes.
<i>Q, R, S</i>	Base positions.

Description

`[Enzymes, Sites] = rebasecuts(SeqNT)` finds all the restriction enzymes that cut a nucleotide sequence (*SeqNT*).

`rebasecuts(SeqNT, Group)` limits the search to a specified list of enzymes (*Group*).

`rebasecuts(SeqNT, [Q, R])` limits the search to those enzymes that cut after a specified base position (*Q*) and before a specified base position (*R*) relative to the sequence.

`rebasecuts(SeqNT, S)` limits the search to those enzymes that cut just after a specified base position (*S*).

REBASE, the Restriction Enzyme Database, is a collection of information about restriction enzymes and related proteins. For more information about REBASE, see

<http://rebase.neb.com/rebase/rebase.html>

Example

- 1 Enter a nucleotide sequence.

```
seq = 'AGAGGGGTACGCGCTCTGAAAAGCGGGAACCTCGTGGCGCTTTATTAA'
```

- 2 Look for all possible cleavage sites in the sequence seq.

```
[enzymes sites] = rebasecuts(seq)
```

- 3 Find where restriction enzymes CfoI and Tru9I cut the sequence.

```
[enzymes sites] = rebasecuts(seq, {'CfoI','Tru9I'})
```

- 4 Search for any possible enzymes that cut after base 7.

```
enzymes = rebasecuts(seq, 7)
```

- 5 Get the subset of enzymes that cut between base 11 and 37.

```
enzymes = rebasecuts(seq, [11 37])
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `cleave`, `restrict`, `seq2regexp`, `seqshowwords`

MATLAB function: `regexp`

redgreencmap

Purpose Create red and green color map

Syntax `redgreencmap(Length)`
`redgreencmap(..., 'Interpolation', InterpolationValue, ...)`

Arguments

Length Length of the color map. Enter either 256 or 64. Default is the length of the color map of the current figure.

InterpolationValue Property that lets you set the algorithm for color interpolation. Choices are:

- 'linear'
- 'quadratic'
- 'cubic'
- 'sigmoid' (default)

Note The sigmoid interpolation is tanh.

Description

`redgreencmap(Length)` returns an *Length*-by-3 matrix containing a red and green color map. Low values are bright green, values in the center of the map are black, and high values are red. Enter either 256 or 64 for *Length*. If *Length* is empty, the length of the map will be the same as the length of the color map of the current figure.

`redgreencmap(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties that use property name/value pairs in any order. These property name/value pairs are as follows:

`redgreencmap(..., 'Interpolation', InterpolationValue, ...)` lets you set the algorithm for color interpolation. Choices are:

- 'linear'

- 'quadratic'
- 'cubic'
- 'sigmoid' (default)

Note The sigmoid interpolation is tanh.

Examples

Reset the color map of the current figure.

```
pd =gprread('mouse_a1pd.gpr')
mimage(pd,'F635 Median')
colormap(redgreencmap)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function: `clustergram`

MATLAB functions: `colormap`, `colormapeditor`

restrict

Purpose Split nucleotide sequence at restriction site

Syntax

```
Fragments = restrict(SeqNT, Enzyme)  
Fragments = restrict(SeqNT, Pattern, Position)  
[Fragments, CuttingSites] = restrict(...)  
[Fragments, CuttingSites, Lengths] = restrict(...)  
... = restrict(..., 'PartialDigest', PartialDigestValue)
```

Arguments

<i>SeqNT</i>	Nucleotide sequence. Enter either a character string with the characters A, T, G, C, and ambiguous characters R, Y, K, M, S, W, B, D, H, V, N, or a vector of integers. You can also enter a structure with the field <i>Sequence</i> .
<i>Enzyme</i>	Enter the name of a restriction enzyme from REBASE Version 412.
<i>Pattern</i>	Enter a short nucleotide pattern. Pattern can be a regular expression.
<i>Position</i>	Defines the position on <i>Pattern</i> where the sequence is cut. <i>Position</i> =0 corresponds to the 5' end of the <i>Pattern</i> .
<i>PartialDigestValue</i>	Property to specify a probability for partial digestion. Enter a value from 0 to 1.

Description

Fragments = restrict(*SeqNT*, *Enzyme*) cuts a sequence (*SeqNT*) into fragments at the restriction sites of a restriction enzyme (*Enzyme*). The returned values are stored in a cell array of sequences (*Fragments*).

Fragments = restrict(*SeqNT*, *Pattern*, *Position*) cuts a sequence (*SeqNT*) into fragments at restriction sites specified by a nucleotide pattern (*Pattern*).

[*Fragments*, *CuttingSites*] = restrict(...) returns a numeric vector with the indices representing the cutting sites. A 0 (zero) is added to the list so numel(*Fragments*)==numel(*CuttingSites*). You

can use `CuttingSites+1` to point to the first base of every fragment respective to the original sequence.

`[Fragments, CuttingSites, Lengths] = restrict(...)` returns a numeric vector with the lengths of every fragment.

`... = restrict(..., 'PartialDigest', PartialDigestValue)` simulates a partial digest where each restriction site in the sequence has a probability (*PartialDigestValue*) of being cut.

REBASE, the restriction enzyme database, is a collection of information about restriction enzymes and related proteins. For more information about REBASE or to search REBASE for the name of a restriction enzyme, go to the REBASE Web site at

<http://rebase.neb.com/rebase/rebase.html>

Examples

- 1 Enter a nucleotide sequence.

```
Seq = 'AGAGGGGTACGCGCTCTGAAAAGCGGGAACCTCGTGGCGCTTTATTAA';
```

- 2 Use the recognition pattern (sequence) GCGC with the point of cleavage at position 3 to cleave a nucleotide sequence.

```
fragmentsPattern = restrict(Seq, 'GCGC', 3)
```

```
fragmentsPattern =
  'AGAGGGGTACGCG'
  'CTCTGAAAAGCGGGAACCTCGTGGCG'
  'CTTTATTAA'
```

- 3 Use the restriction enzyme HspAI (recognition sequence GCGC with the point of cleavage at position 1) to cleave a nucleotide sequence.

```
fragmentsEnzyme = restrict(Seq, 'HspAI')
```

```
fragmentsEnzyme =
  'AGAGGGGTACG'
  'CGCTCTGAAAAGCGGGAACCTCGTGG'
  'CGCTTTATTAA'
```

restrict

- 4 Use a regular expression for the enzyme pattern.

```
fragmentsRegExp = restrict(Seq,'GCG[ ^C]',3)

fragmentsRegExp =

    'AGAGGGGTACGCGCTCTGAAAAGCG'
    'GGAACCTCGTGGCGCTTTATTAA'
```

- 5 Capture the cutting sites and fragment lengths with the fragments.

```
[fragments, cut_sites, lengths] = restrict(Seq,'HspAI')

fragments =
    'AGAGGGGTACG'
    'CGCTCTGAAAAGCGGGAACCTCGTGG'
    'CGCTTTATTAA'

cut_sites =
    0
    11
    37

lengths =
    11
    26
    11
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `cleave`, `rebasecuts`, `seq2regexp`, `seqshowwords`

MATLAB function: `regexp`

Purpose Reverse mapping for genetic code

Syntax

```
map = revgeneticcode
revgeneticcode(GeneticCode)
revgeneticcode(..., 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue, ...)
revgeneticcode(..., 'ThreeLetterCodes',
ThreeLetterCodesValue,
...)
```

Arguments

<i>GeneticCode</i>	Genetic code for translating nucleotide codons to amino acids. Enter a code number or code name from the table . If you use a code name, you can truncate the name to the first two characters of the name.
<i>AlphabetValue</i>	Property to select the nucleotide alphabet. Enter either 'dna' or 'rna'. The default value is 'dna'.
<i>ThreeLetterCodesValue</i>	Property to select one- or three-letter amino acid codes. Enter true for three-letter codes or false for one-letter codes.

Genetic Code

Code Number	Code Name
1	Standard
2	Vertebrate Mitochondrial
3	Yeast Mitochondrial
4	Mold, Protozoan, Coelenterate Mitochondrial, and Mycoplasma/Spiroplasma
5	Invertebrate Mitochondrial

revgeneticcode

Code Number	Code Name
6	Ciliate, Dasycladacean, and Hexamita Nuclear
9	Echinoderm Mitochondrial
10	Euplotid Nuclear
11	Bacterial and Plant Plastid
12	Alternative Yeast Nuclear
13	Ascidian Mitochondrial
14	Flatworm Mitochondrial
15	Blepharisma Nuclear
16	Chlorophycean Mitochondrial
21	Trematode Mitochondrial
22	Scenedesmus Obliquus Mitochondrial
23	Thraustochytrium Mitochondrial

Description

`map = revgeneticcode` returns a structure containing the reverse mapping for the standard genetic code.

`revgeneticcode(GeneticCode)` returns a structure containing the reverse mapping for an alternate genetic code.

`revgeneticcode(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `revgeneticcode` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`revgeneticcode(..., 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue, ...)` defines the nucleotide alphabet to use in the map.

`revgeneticcode(..., 'ThreeLetterCodes', ThreeLetterCodesValue, ...)` returns the mapping structure with

three-letter amino acid codes as field names instead of the default single-letter codes if ThreeLetterCodes is true.

Examples

```
molcode = revgeneticcode(4, 'Alphabet', 'rna');
wormcode = revgeneticcode('Flatworm Mitochondrial', ...
                          'ThreeLetterCodes', true);
```

```
map = revgeneticcode
```

```
map =
```

```
Name: 'Standard'
A: { 'GCT' 'GCC' 'GCA' 'GCG' }
R: { 'CGT' 'CGC' 'CGA' 'CGG' 'AGA' 'AGG' }
N: { 'AAT' 'AAC' }
D: { 'GAT' 'GAC' }
C: { 'TGT' 'TGC' }
Q: { 'CAA' 'CAG' }
E: { 'GAA' 'GAG' }
G: { 'GGT' 'GGC' 'GGA' 'GGG' }
H: { 'CAT' 'CAC' }
I: { 'ATT' 'ATC' 'ATA' }
L: { 'TTA' 'TTG' 'CTT' 'CTC' 'CTA' 'CTG' }
K: { 'AAA' 'AAG' }
M: { 'ATG' }
F: { 'TTT' 'TTC' }
P: { 'CCT' 'CCC' 'CCA' 'CCG' }
S: { 'TCT' 'TCC' 'TCA' 'TCG' 'AGT' 'AGC' }
T: { 'ACT' 'ACC' 'ACA' 'ACG' }
W: { 'TGG' }
Y: { 'TAT' 'TAC' }
V: { 'GTT' 'GTC' 'GTA' 'GTG' }
Stops: { 'TAA' 'TAG' 'TGA' }
Starts: { 'TTG' 'CTG' 'ATG' }
```

References

[1] NCBI Web page describing genetic codes:

revgeneticcode

<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Taxonomy/Utils/wprintgc.cgi?mode=c>

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: aa2nt, aminolookup, baselookup, geneticcode, nt2aa

Purpose

Perform background adjustment on Affymetrix microarray probe-level data using Robust Multi-array Average (RMA) procedure

Syntax

```
BackAdjustedMatrix = rmabackadj(PMData)
BackAdjustedMatrix = rmabackadj(..., 'Method',
MethodValue, ...)
BackAdjustedMatrix = rmabackadj(..., 'Truncate',
TruncateValue, ...)
BackAdjustedMatrix = rmabackadj(..., 'Showplot',
ShowplotValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>PMData</i>	Matrix of intensity values where each row corresponds to a perfect match (PM) probe and each column corresponds to an Affymetrix CEL file. (Each CEL file is generated from a separate chip. All chips should be of the same type.)
<i>MethodValue</i>	Property to control the estimation method for the background adjustment model parameters. Enter either 'RMA' (to use estimation method described by Bolstad, 2005) or 'MLE' (to estimate the parameters using maximum likelihood). Default is 'RMA'.

TruncateValue Property to control the background noise model. Enter either `true` (use a truncated Gaussian distribution) or `false` (use a nontruncated Gaussian distribution). Default is `true`.

ShowplotValue Property to control the plotting of a histogram showing the distribution of PM probe intensity values (blue) and the convoluted probability distribution function (red), with estimated parameters. Enter either `'all'` (plot a histogram for each column or chip) or specify a subset of columns (chips) by entering the column number, list of numbers, or range of numbers.

For example:

- `..., 'Showplot', 3, ...)` plots the intensity values in column 3.
- `..., 'Showplot', [3,5,7], ...)` plots the intensity values in columns 3, 5, and 7.
- `..., 'Showplot', 3:9, ...)` plots the intensity values in columns 3 to 9.

Return Values

BackAdjustedMatrix Matrix of background-adjusted probe intensity values.

Description

BackAdjustedMatrix = `rmabackadj(PMData)` returns the background adjusted values of probe intensity values in the matrix, *PMData*. Note that each row in *PMData* corresponds to a perfect match (PM) probe and each column in *PMData* corresponds to an Affymetrix CEL file. (Each CEL file is generated from a separate chip. All chips should be of the same type.) Details on the background adjustment are described by Bolstad, 2005.

BackAdjustedMatrix = rmabackadj(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...) calls rmabackadj with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

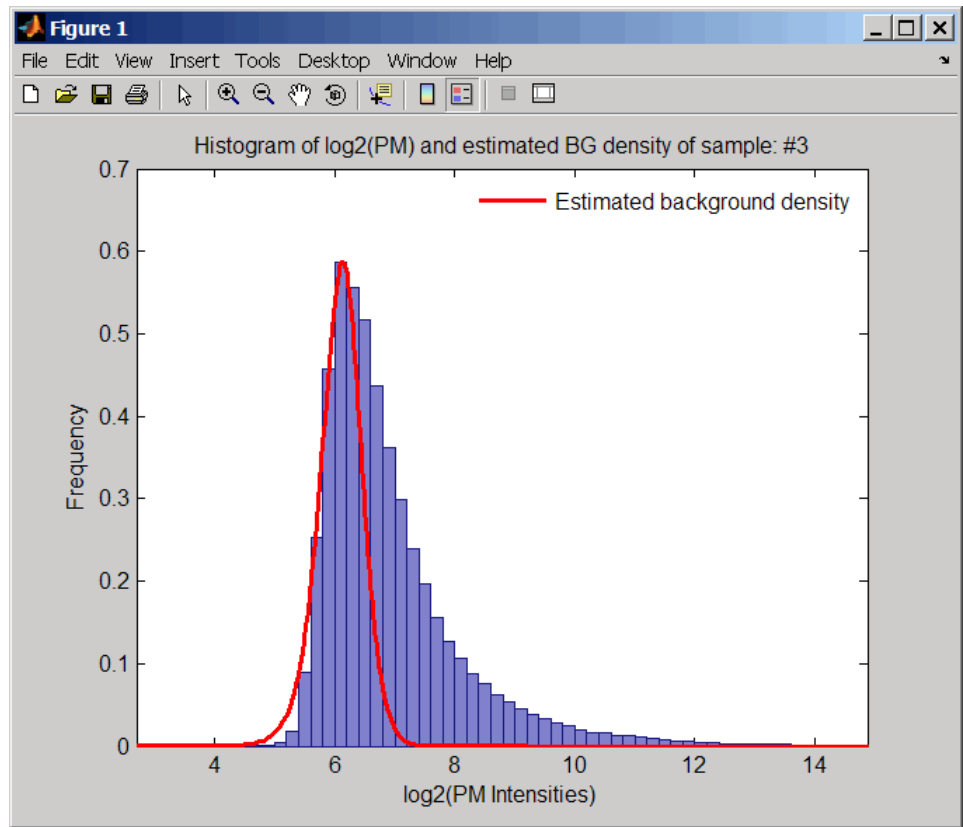
BackAdjustedMatrix = rmabackadj(..., 'Method', MethodValue, ...) controls the estimation method for the background adjustment model parameters. When *MethodValue* is 'RMA', rmabackadj implements the estimation method described by Bolstad, 2005. When *MethodValue* is 'MLE', rmabackadj estimates the parameters using maximum likelihood. Default is 'RMA'.

BackAdjustedMatrix = rmabackadj(..., 'Truncate', TruncateValue, ...) controls the background noise model used. When *TruncateValue* is false, rmabackadj uses nontruncated Gaussian as the background noise model. Default is true.

BackAdjustedMatrix = rmabackadj(..., 'Showplot', ShowplotValue, ...) lets you plot a histogram showing the distribution of PM probe intensity values (blue) and the convoluted probability distribution function (red), with estimated parameters. When *ShowplotValue* is 'all', rmabackadj plots a histogram for each column or chip. When *ShowplotValue* is a number, list of numbers, or range of numbers, rmabackadj plots a histogram for the indicated column number (chip).

For example:

- ..., 'Showplot', 3,...) plots the intensity values in column 3 of *Data*.
- ..., 'Showplot', [3,5,7],...) plots the intensity values in columns 3, 5, and 7 of *Data*.
- ..., 'Showplot', 3:9,...) plots the intensity values in columns 3 to 9 of *PMData*.



Examples

- 1 Load a MAT file, included with Bioinformatics Toolbox, which contains Affymetrix probe-level data, including `pmMatrix`, a matrix of PM probe intensity values from multiple CEL files.

```
load prostatecancerrawdata
```

- 2 Perform background adjustment on the PM probe intensity values in the matrix, `pmMatrix`, creating a new matrix, `BackgroundAdjustedMatrix`.


```
BackgroundAdjustedMatrix = rmabackadj(pmMatrix);
```

- 3 Perform background adjustment on the PM probe intensity values in only column 3 of the matrix, `pmMatrix`, creating a new matrix, `BackgroundAdjustedChip3`.

```
BackgroundAdjustedChip3 = rmabackadj(pmMatrix(:,3));
```

The `prostatecancerrawdata.mat` file used in the previous example contains data from Best et al., 2005.

References

- [1] Irizarry, R.A., Hobbs, B., Collin, F., Beazer-Barclay, Y.D., Antonellis, K.J., Scherf, U., Speed, T.P. (2003). Exploration, Normalization, and Summaries of High Density Oligonucleotide Array Probe Level Data. *Biostatistics* 4, 249–264.
- [2] Bolstad, B. (2005). “affy: Built-in Processing Methods” <http://www.bioconductor.org/repository/devel/vignette/builtinMethods.pdf>
- [3] Best, C.J.M., Gillespie, J.W., Yi, Y., Chandramouli, G.V.R., Perlmutter, M.A., Gathright, Y., Erickson, H.S., Georgevich, L., Tangrea, M.A., Duray, P.H., Gonzalez, S., Velasco, A., Linehan, W.M., Matusik, R.J., Price, D.K., Figg, W.D., Emmert-Buck, M.R., and Chuaqui, R.F. (2005). Molecular alterations in primary prostate cancer after androgen ablation therapy. *Clinical Cancer Research* 11, 6823–6834.

See Also

`affyinvarsetnorm`, `affyread`, `celintensityread`, `probelibraryinfo`, `probesetlink`, `probesetlookup`, `probesetvalues`, `quantilenorm`, `rmasummary`

rmasummary

Purpose Calculate gene (probe set) expression values from Affymetrix microarray probe-level data using Robust Multi-array Average (RMA) procedure

Syntax `ExpressionMatrix = rmasummary(ProbeIndices, Data)`
`ExpressionMatrix = rmasummary(..., 'Output', OutputValue)`

Arguments

ProbeIndices Column vector of probe indices. The convention for probe indices is, for each probe set, to label each probe 0 to $N - 1$, where N is the number of probes in the probe set.

Data Matrix of natural-scale intensity values where each row corresponds to a perfect match (PM) probe and each column corresponds to an Affymetrix CEL file. (Each CEL file is generated from a separate chip. All chips should be of the same type.)

OutputValue Property to control the scale of the returned gene expression values. *OutputValue* can be:

- 'log'
- 'log2'
- 'log10'
- 'natural'
- @functionname

In the last instance, the data is transformed as defined by the function *functionname*. Default is 'log2'.

Description `ExpressionMatrix = rmasummary(ProbeIndices, Data)` returns gene (probe set) expression values after calculating them from natural-scale probe intensities in the matrix *Data*, using the column vector of probe

indices, *ProbeIndices*. Note that each row in *Data* corresponds to a perfect match (PM) probe, and each column corresponds to an Affymetrix CEL file. (Each CEL file is generated from a separate chip. All chips should be of the same type.) Note that the column vector *ProbeIndices* designates probes within each probe set by labeling each probe 0 to $N - 1$, where N is the number of probes in the probe set. Note that each row in *ExpressionMatrix* corresponds to a gene (probe set) and each column in *ExpressionMatrix* corresponds to an Affymetrix CEL file, which represents a single chip.

For a given probe set n , with J probe pairs, let Y_{ijn} denote the background adjusted, base 2 log transformed and quantile-normalized PM probe intensity value of chip i and probe j . Y_{ijn} follows a linear additive model:

$$Y_{ijn} = U_{in} + A_{jn} + E_{ijn}; i = 1, \dots, I; j = 1, \dots, J; n = 1, \dots, N$$

where:

U_{in} = gene expression of the probe set n on chip i

A_{jn} = probe affinity effect for the j th probe in the probe set

E_{ijn} = residual for the j th probe on the i th chip

The RMA methods assumes $A_1 + A_2 + \dots + A_J = 0$ for all probe sets. A robust procedure, median polish, is used to estimate U_i as the log scale measure of expression.

Note There is no column in *ExpressionMatrix* that contains probe set or gene information.

ExpressionMatrix = rmasummary(..., 'PropertyName',
PropertyValue, ...) defines optional properties that use property

name/value pairs in any order. These property name/value pairs are as follows:

ExpressionMatrix = rmasummary(..., 'Output', *OutputValue*) controls the scale of the returned gene expression values. *OutputValue* can be:

- 'log'
- 'log2'
- 'log10'
- 'natural'
- *@functionname*

In the last instance, the data is transformed as defined by the function *functionname*. Default is 'log2'.

Examples

- 1 Load a MAT file, included with Bioinformatics Toolbox, which contains Affymetrix data variables, including *pmMatrix*, a matrix of PM probe intensity values from multiple CEL files.

```
load prostatecancerrawdata
```

- 2 Perform background adjustment on the PM probe intensity values in the matrix, *pmMatrix*, using the *rmabackadj* function, thereby creating a new matrix, *BackgroundAdjustedMatrix*.

```
BackgroundAdjustedMatrix = rmabackadj(pmMatrix);
```

- 3 Normalize the data in *BackgroundAdjustedMatrix*, using the *quantilenorm* function.

```
NormMatrix = quantilenorm(BackgroundAdjustedMatrix);
```

- 4 Calculate gene expression values from the probe intensities in *NormMatrix*, creating a new matrix, *ExpressionMatrix*. (You will

use the `probeIndices` column vector provided to supply information on the probe indices.)

```
ExpressionMatrix = rmasummary(probeIndices, NormMatrix);
```

The `prostatecancerrawdata.mat` file used in the previous example contains data from Best et al., 2005.

References

- [1] Irizarry, R.A., Hobbs, B., Collin, F., Beazer-Barclay, Y.D., Antonellis, K.J., Scherf, U., Speed, T.P. (2003). Exploration, Normalization, and Summaries of High Density Oligonucleotide Array Probe Level Data. *Biostatistics*. 4, 249-264.
- [2] Mosteller, F., and Tukey, J. (1977). *Data Analysis and Regression* (Reading, Massachusetts: Addison-Wesley Publishing Company), pp. 165-202.
- [3] Best, C.J.M., Gillespie, J.W., Yi, Y., Chandramouli, G.V.R., Perlmutter, M.A., Gathright, Y., Erickson, H.S., Georgevich, L., Tangrea, M.A., Duray, P.H., Gonzalez, S., Velasco, A., Linehan, W.M., Matusik, R.J., Price, D.K., Figg, W.D., Emmert-Buck, M.R., and Chuaqui, R.F. (2005). Molecular alterations in primary prostate cancer after androgen ablation therapy. *Clinical Cancer Research* 11, 6823-6834.

See Also

`affyinvarsetnorm`, `celintensityread`, `mainvarsetnorm`, `malowess`, `manorm`, `quantilenorm`, `rmabackadj`

rna2dna

Purpose Convert RNA sequence of nucleotides to DNA sequence

Syntax `SeqDNA = rna2dna(SeqRNA)`

Arguments

<code>SeqRNA</code>	Nucleotide sequence for RNA. Enter a character string with the characters A, C, U, G, and the ambiguous nucleotide bases N, R, Y, K, M, S, W, B, D, H, and V.
---------------------	---

Description `SeqDNA = rna2dna(SeqRNA)` converts any uracil nucleotides in an RNA sequence into thymine (U-->T), and returns in the same format as DNA. For example, if the RNA sequence is an integer sequence then so is `SeqRNA`.

Example

```
rna2dna('ACGAUGAGUCAUGCUU')  
  
ans =  
ACGATGAGTCATGCTT
```

See Also Bioinformatics Toolbox function: `dna2rna`
MATLAB functions: `strrep`, `regexp`

Purpose

Align two data sets containing sequential observations by introducing gaps

Syntax

```
[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y)
[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'Band', BandValue, ...)
[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'Width', WidthValue, ...)
[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'Gap', GapValue, ...)
[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'Quantile',
QuantileValue, ...)
[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'Distance',
DistanceValue, ...)
[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'Weights', WeightsValue, ...)
[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'ShowConstraints',
ShowConstraintsValue, ...)
[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'ShowNetwork',
ShowNetworkValue, ...)
[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'ShowAlignment',
ShowAlignmentValue, ...)
```

Arguments

X, Y

Matrices of data where rows correspond to observations or samples, and columns correspond to features or dimensions. X and Y can have a different number of rows, but they must have the same number of columns. The first column is the reference dimension and must contain unique values in ascending order. The reference dimension could contain sample indices of the observations or a measurable value, such as time.

BandValue

Either of the following:

- Scalar.
- Function specified using $@(z)$, where z is the mid-point between a given observation in one data set and a given observation in the other data set.

BandValue specifies a maximum allowable distance between observations (along the reference dimension only) in the two data sets, thus limiting the number of potential matches between observations in two data sets. If S is the value in the reference dimension for a given observation (row) in one data set, then that observation is matched only with observations in the other data set whose values in the reference dimension fall within $S \pm \text{BandValue}$. Then, only these potential matches are passed to the algorithm for further scoring. Default *BandValue* is `Inf`.

WidthValue

Either of the following:

- Two-element vector, $[U, V]$
- Scalar that is used for both U and V

WidthValue limits the number of potential matches between observations in two data sets; that is, each observation in X is scored to the closest U observations in Y , and each observation in Y is scored to the closest V observations in X . Then, only these potential matches are passed to the algorithm for further scoring. Closeness is measured using only the first column (reference dimension) in each data set. Default is `Inf` if 'Band' is specified; otherwise default is 10.

GapValue

Any of the following:

- Cell array, $\{G, H\}$, where G is either a scalar or a function handle specified using $@(X)$, and H is either a scalar or a function handle specified using $@(Y)$. The functions $@(X)$ and $@(Y)$ must calculate the penalty for each observation (row) when it is matched to a gap in the other data set. The functions $@(X)$ and $@(Y)$ must return a column vector with the same number of rows as X or Y , containing the gap penalty for each observation (row).
- Single function handle specified using $@(Z)$, which is used for both G and H . The function $@(Z)$ must calculate the penalty for each observation (row) in both X and Y when it is matched to a gap in the other data set. The function $@(Z)$ must take as arguments X and Y . The function $@(Z)$ must return a column vector with the same number of rows as X or Y , containing the gap penalty for each observation (row).
- Scalar that is used for both G and H .

GapValue specifies the position-dependent terms for assigning gap penalties. The calculated value, GPX , is the gap penalty for matching observations from the first data set X to gaps inserted in the second data set Y , and is the product of two terms: $GPX = G * QMS$. The term G takes its value as a function of the observations in X . Similarly, GPY is the gap penalty for matching observations from Y to gaps inserted in X , and is the product of two terms: $GPY = H * QMS$. The term H takes its value as a function of the observations in Y . By default, the term QMS is the 0.75 quantile of the score for the pairs of observations that are potential matches (that is, pairs that comply with the 'Band' and 'Width' constraints). Default *GapValue* is 1.

QuantileValue

Scalar between 0 and 1 that specifies the quantile value used to calculate the term *QMS*, which is used by the 'Gap' property to calculate gap penalties. Default is 0.75.

DistanceValue

Function handle specified using $@(R,S)$. The function $@(R,S)$ must:

- Calculate the distance between pairs of observations that are potential matches.
- Take as arguments, *R* and *S*, matrices that have the same number of rows and columns, and whose paired rows represent all potential matches of observations in *X* and *Y* respectively.
- Return a column vector of positive values with the same number of elements as rows in *R* and *S*.

Default is the Euclidean distance between the pairs.

Caution All columns in *X* and *Y*, including the reference dimension, are considered when calculating distances. If you do not want to include the reference dimension in the distance calculations, use the 'Weight' property to exclude it.

WeightsValue

Either of the following:

- Logical row vector with the same number of elements as columns in *X* and *Y*, that specifies columns in *X* and *Y*.
- Numeric row vector with the same number of elements as columns in *X* and *Y*, that specifies the relative weights of the columns (features).

This property controls the inclusion/exclusion of columns (features) or the emphasis of columns (features) when calculating the distance score between observations that are potential matches, that is, when using the 'Distance' property. Default is a logical row vector with all elements set to true.

Tip Using a numeric row vector for *WeightsValue* and setting some values to 0 can simplify the distance calculation when the data sets have many columns (features).

Note The weight values are not considered when using the 'Band', 'Width', or 'Gap' property.

- ShowConstraintsValue* Controls the display of the search space constrained by the specified 'Band' and 'Width' input parameters, thereby giving an indication of the memory required to run the algorithm with the specific 'Band' and 'Width' parameters on your data sets. Choices are true or false (default).
- ShowNetworkValue* Controls the display of the dynamic programming network, the match scores, the gap penalties, and the winning path. Choices are true or false (default).
- ShowAlignmentValue* Controls the display of the first and second columns of the X and Y data sets in the abscissa and the ordinate respectively, of a two-dimensional plot. Choices are true, false (default), or an integer specifying a column of the X and Y data sets to plot as the ordinate.

Return Values

- I Column vector containing indices of rows (observations) in X that match to a row (observation) in Y . Missing indices indicate that row (observation) is matched to a gap.
- J Column vector containing indices of rows (observations) in Y that match to a row (observation) in X . Missing indices indicate that row (observation) is matched to a gap.

Description

$[I, J] = \text{samplealign}(X, Y)$ aligns the observations in two matrices of data, X and Y , by introducing gaps. X and Y are matrices of data where rows correspond to observations or samples, and columns correspond to features or dimensions. X and Y can have different number of rows, but must have the same number of columns. The first column is the

samplealign

reference dimension and must contain unique values in ascending order. The reference dimension could contain sample indices of the observations or a measurable value, such as time. The `samplealign` function uses a dynamic programming algorithm to minimize the sum of positive scores resulting from pairs of observations that are potential matches and the penalties resulting from the insertion of gaps. Return values I and J are column vectors containing indices that indicate the matches for each row (observation) in X and Y respectively.

Tip If you do not specify return values, `samplealign` does not run the dynamic programming algorithm. Running `samplealign` without return values, but setting the 'ShowConstraints', 'ShowNetwork', or 'ShowAlignment' property to true, lets you explore the constrained search space, the dynamic programming network, or the aligned observations, without running into potential memory problems.

`[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `samplealign` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'Band', BandValue, ...)` specifies a maximum allowable distance between observations (along the reference dimension only) in the two data sets, thus limiting the number of potential matches between observations in the two data sets. If S is the value in the reference dimension for a given observation (row) in one data set, then that observation is matched only with observations in the other data set whose values in the reference dimension fall within $S \pm \text{BandValue}$. Then, only these potential matches are passed to the algorithm for further scoring. *BandValue* can be a scalar or a function specified using `@(z)`, where z is the mid-point between a given observation in one data set and a given observation in the other data set. Default *BandValue* is `Inf`.

This constraint reduces the time and memory complexity of the algorithm from $O(MN)$ to $O(\sqrt{MN} * K)$, where M and N are the number of observations in X and Y respectively, and K is a small constant such that $K \ll M$ and $K \ll N$. Adjust *BandValue* to the maximum expected shift between the reference dimensions in the two data sets, that is, between $X(:,1)$ and $Y(:,1)$.

`[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'Width', WidthValue, ...)` limits the number of potential matches between observations in two data sets; that is, each observation in X is scored to the closest U observations in Y , and each observation in Y is scored to the closest V observations in X . Then, only these potential matches are passed to the algorithm for further scoring. *WidthValue* is either a two-element vector, $[U, V]$ or a scalar that is used for both U and V . Closeness is measured using only the first column (reference dimension) in each data set. Default is `Inf` if 'Band' is specified; otherwise default is 10.

This constraint reduces the time and memory complexity of the algorithm from $O(MN)$ to $O(\sqrt{MN} * \sqrt{UV})$, where M and N are the number of observations in X and Y respectively, and U and V are small such that $U \ll M$ and $V \ll N$.

Note If you specify both 'Band' and 'Width', only pairs of observations that meet both constraints are considered potential matches and passed to the algorithm for scoring.

Tip Specify 'Width' when you do not have a good estimate for the 'Band' property. To get an indication of the memory required to run the algorithm with specific 'Band' and 'Width' parameters on your data sets, run `samplealign`, but do not specify return values and set 'ShowConstraints' to true.

`[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'Gap', GapValue, ...)` specifies the position-dependent terms for assigning gap penalties.

GapValue is any of the following:

- Cell array, $\{G, H\}$, where G is either a scalar or a function handle specified using $@(X)$, and H is either a scalar or a function handle specified using $@(Y)$. The functions $@(X)$ and $@(Y)$ must calculate the penalty for each observation (row) when it is matched to a gap in the other data set. The functions $@(X)$ and $@(Y)$ must return a column vector with the same number of rows as X or Y , containing the gap penalty for each observation (row).
- Single function handle specified using $@(Z)$, that is used for both G and H . The function $@(Z)$ must calculate the penalty for each observation (row) in both X and Y when it is matched to a gap in the other data set. The function $@(Z)$ must take as arguments X and Y . The function $@(Z)$ must return a column vector with the same number of rows as X or Y , containing the gap penalty for each observation (row).
- Scalar that is used for both G and H .

The calculated value, GPX , is the gap penalty for matching observations from the first data set X to gaps inserted in the second data set Y , and is the product of two terms: $GPX = G * QMS$. The term G takes its value as a function of the observations in X . Similarly, GPY is the gap penalty for matching observations from Y to gaps inserted in X , and is the product of two terms: $GPY = H * QMS$. The term H takes its value as a function of the observations in Y . By default, the term QMS is the 0.75 quantile of the score for the pairs of observations that are potential matches (that is, pairs that comply with the 'Band' and 'Width' constraints).

If G and H are positive scalars, then GPX and GPY are independent of the observation where the gap is being inserted.

Default *GapValue* is 1, that is, both G and H are 1, which indicates that the default penalty for gap insertions in both sequences is equivalent to the quantile (set by the 'Quantile' property, default = 0.75) of the score for the pairs of observations that are potential matches.

Note *GapValue* defaults to a relatively safe value. However, the success of the algorithm depends on the fine tuning of the gap penalties, which is application dependent. When the gap penalties are large relative to the score of the correct matches, `samplealign` returns alignments with fewer gaps, but with more incorrectly aligned regions. When the gap penalties are smaller, the output alignment contains longer regions with gaps and fewer matched observations. Set 'ShowNetwork' to true to compare the gap penalties to the score of matched observations in different regions of the alignment.

`[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'Quantile', QuantileValue, ...)` specifies the quantile value used to calculate the term *QMS*, which is used by the 'Gap' property to calculate gap penalties. *QuantileValue* is a scalar between 0 and 1. Default is 0.75.

Tip Set *QuantileValue* to an empty array (`[]`) to make the gap penalties independent of *QMS*, that is, *GPX* and *GPY* are functions of only the *G* and *H* input parameters respectively.

`[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'Distance', DistanceValue, ...)` specifies a function to calculate the distance between pairs of observations that are potential matches. *DistanceValue* is a function handle specified using `@(R,S)`. The function `@(R,S)` must take as arguments, *R* and *S*, matrices that have the same number of rows and columns, and whose paired rows represent all potential matches of observations in *X* and *Y* respectively. The function `@(R,S)` must return a column vector of positive values with the same number of elements as rows in *R* and *S*. Default is the Euclidean distance between the pairs.

Caution

All columns in X and Y , including the reference dimension, are considered when calculating distances. If you do not want to include the reference dimension in the distance calculations, use the 'Weight' property to exclude it.

`[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'Weights', WeightsValue, ...)` controls the inclusion/exclusion of columns (features) or the emphasis of columns (features) when calculating the distance score between observations that are potential matches, that is when using the 'Distance' property. *WeightsValue* can be a logical row vector that specifies columns in X and Y . *WeightsValue* can also be a numeric row vector with the same number of elements as columns in X and Y , that specifies the relative weights of the columns (features). Default is a logical row vector with all elements set to true.

Tip Using a numeric row vector for *WeightsValue* and setting some values to 0 can simplify the distance calculation when the data sets have many columns (features).

Note The weight values are not considered when computing the constrained alignment space, that is when using the 'Band' or 'Width' properties, or when calculating the gap penalties, that is when using the 'Gap' property.

`[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'ShowConstraints', ShowConstraintsValue, ...)` controls the display of the search space constrained by the input parameters 'Band' and 'Width', giving an indication of the memory required to run the algorithm with specific

'Band' and 'Width' on your data sets. Choices are true or false (default).

`[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'ShowNetwork', ShowNetworkValue, ...)` controls the display of the dynamic programming network, the match scores, the gap penalties, and the winning path. Choices are true or false (default).

`[I, J] = samplealign(X, Y, ...'ShowAlignment', ShowAlignmentValue, ...)` controls the display of the first and second columns of the X and Y data sets in the abscissa and the ordinate respectively, of a two-dimensional plot. Links between all the potential matches that meet the constraints are displayed, and the matches belonging to the output alignment are highlighted. Choices are true, false (default), or an integer specifying a column of the X and Y data sets to plot as the ordinate.

Examples

Warping a sine wave with a smooth function to more closely follow cyclical sunspot activity

- 1 Load `sunspot.dat`, a data file included with MATLAB, that contains the variable `sunspot`, which is a two-column matrix containing variations in sunspot activity over the last 300 years. The first column is the reference dimension (years), and the second column contains sunspot activity values. Sunspot activity is cyclical, reaching a maximum about every 11 years.

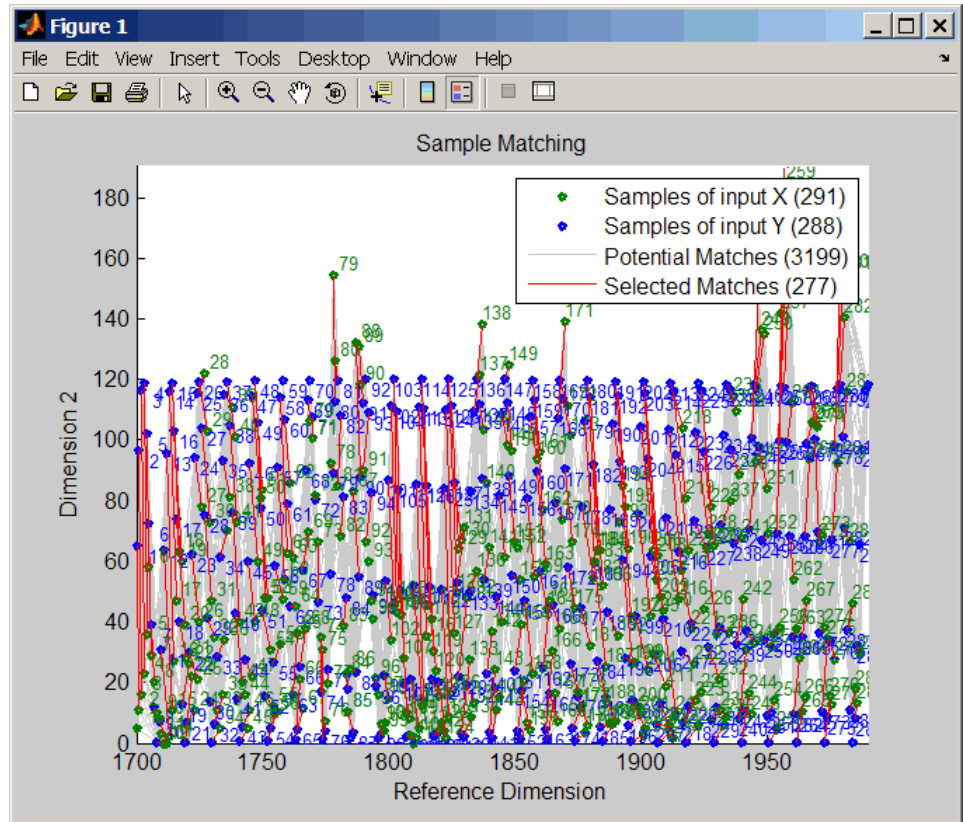
```
load sunspot.dat
```

- 2 Create a sine wave with a known period of sunspot activity.

```
years = (1700:1990)';
T = 11.038;
f = @(y) 60 + 60 * sin(y*(2*pi/T));
```

- 3 Align the observations between the sine wave and the sunspot activity by introducing gaps.

```
[i,j] = samplealign([years f(years)],sunspot,'weights',...
    [0 1],'showalignment',true);
```



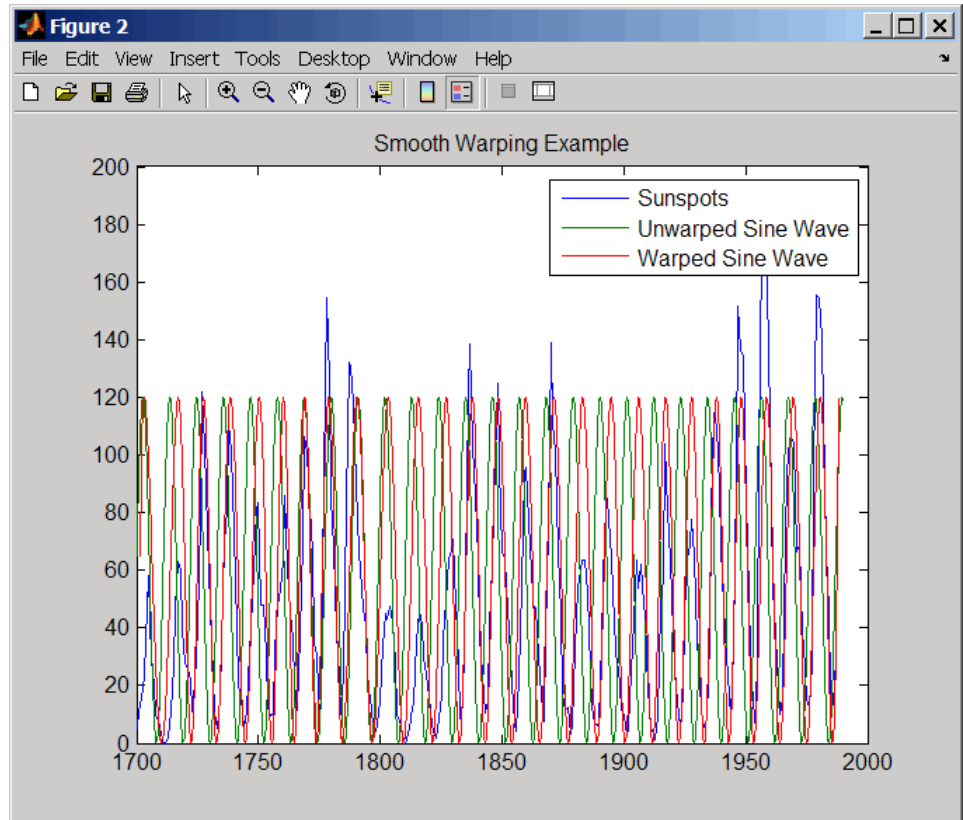
4 Estimate a smooth function to warp the sine wave.

```
[p,s,mu] = polyfit(years(i),years(j),15);
wy = @(y) polyval(p,(y-mu(1))./mu(2));
```

5 Plot the sunspot cycles, unwarped sine wave, and warped sine wave.

```
years = (1700:1/12:1990)';
```

```
figure
plot(sunspot(:,1),sunspot(:,2),years,f(years),wy(years),...
      f(years))
legend('Sunspots','Unwarped Sine Wave','Warped Sine Wave')
title('Smooth Warping Example')
```



Recovering a nonlinear warping between two signals containing noisy Gaussian peaks

- 1 Create two signals with noisy Gaussian peaks.

samplealign

```
rand('twister',5489)
peakLoc = [30 60 90 130 150 200 230 300 380 430];
peakInt = [7 1 3 10 3 6 1 8 3 10];
time = 1:450;
comp = exp(-(bsxfun(@minus,time,peakLoc')./5).^2);
sig_1 = (peakInt + rand(1,10)) * comp + rand(1,450);
sig_2 = (peakInt + rand(1,10)) * comp + rand(1,450);
```

2 Define a nonlinear warping function.

```
wf = @(t) 1 + (t<=100).*0.01.*(t.^2) + (t>100).*...
      (310+150*tanh(t./100-3));
```

3 Warp the second signal to distort it.

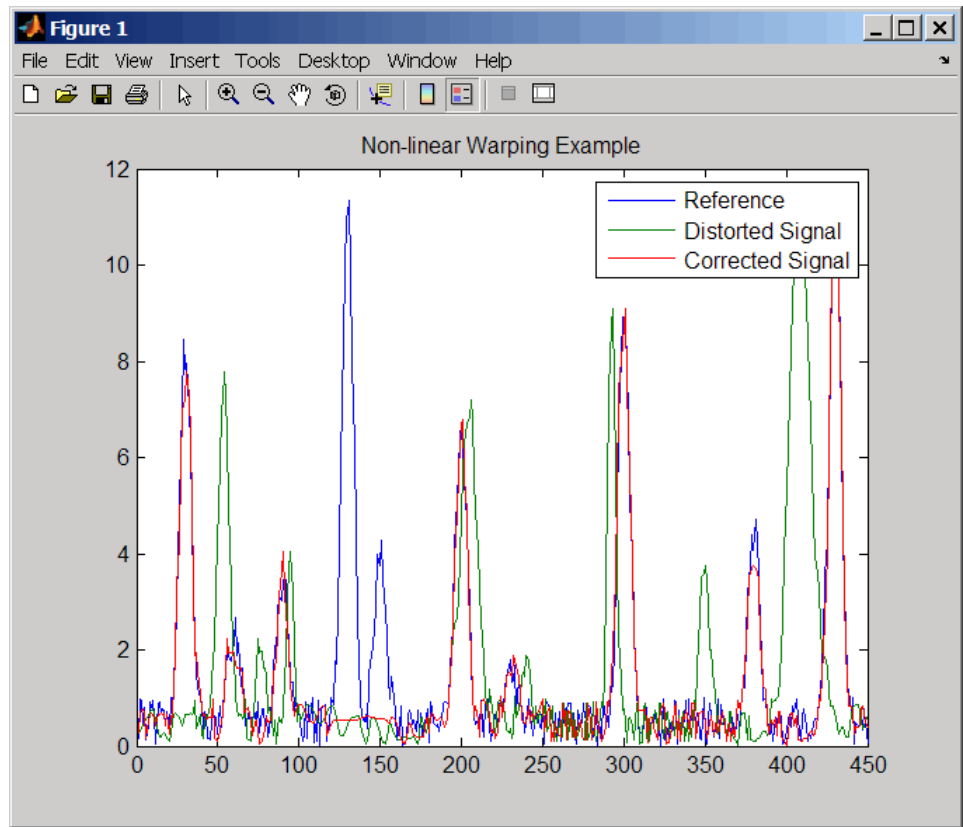
```
sig_2 = interp1(time,sig_2,wf(time),'pchip');
```

4 Align the observations between the two signals by introducing gaps.

```
[i,j] = samplealign([time;sig_1]',[time;sig_2]',...
                    'weights',[0,1],'band',35,'quantile',.5);
```

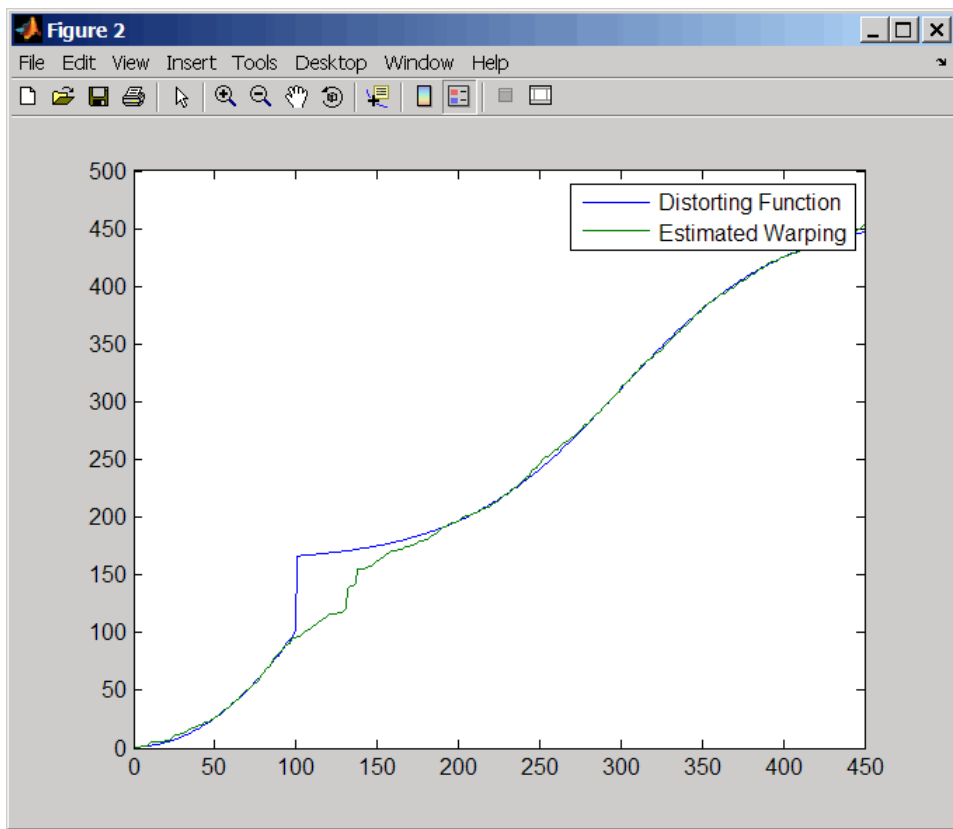
5 Plot the reference signal, distorted signal, and warped (corrected) signal.

```
figure
sig_3 = interp1(time,sig_2,interp1(i,j,time,'pchip'),'pchip');
plot(time,sig_1,time,sig_2,time,sig_3)
legend('Reference','Distorted Signal','Corrected Signal')
title('Non-linear Warping Example')
```



6 Plot the real and the estimated warping functions.

```
figure
plot(time,wf(time),time,interp1(j,i,time,'pchip'))
legend('Distorting Function','Estimated Warping')
```



Note For examples of using function handles for the Band, Gap, and Distance properties, see the demo Visualizing and Preprocessing Hyphenated Mass-Spectrometry Data Sets for Metabolite and Protein/Peptide Profiling.

References

[1] Myers, C.S. and Rabiner, L.R. (1981). A comparative study of several dynamic time-warping algorithms for connected word recognition. *The Bell System Technical Journal* 60:7, 1389–1409.

[2] Sakoe, H. and Chiba, S. (1978). Dynamic programming algorithm optimization for spoken word recognition. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech and Signal Processing ASSP-26(1)*, 43–49.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `msalign`, `msheatmap`, `mssalign`, `msspresample`, `msresample`

scfread

Purpose Read trace data from SCF file

Syntax

```
Sample = scfread('File')  
[Sample, Probability] = scfread('File')  
[Sample, Probability, Comments] = scfread('File')  
[A, C, T, G] = scfread ('File')  
[A, C, T, G, ProbA, ProbC, ProbG, ProbT] = scfread ('File')  
[A, C, T, G, ProbA, ProbC, ProbG, ProbT, Comments, PkIndex,  
Base] = scfread ('File')
```

Arguments

File SCF formatted file. Enter a file name or a path and file name.

Description scfread reads data from an SCF formatted file into MATLAB structures.

Sample = scfread('File') reads an SCF formatted file and returns the sample data in the structure *Sample*, which contains the following fields:

Field	Description
A	Column vector containing intensity of A fluorescence tag
C	Column vector containing intensity of C fluorescence tag
G	Column vector containing intensity of G fluorescence tag
T	Column vector containing intensity of T fluorescence tag

[*Sample*, *Probability*] = scfread('File') also returns the probability data in the structure *Probability*, which contains the following fields:

Field	Description
peak_index	Column vector containing the position in the SCF file for the start of the data for each peak
prob_A	Column vector containing the probability of each base in the sequence being an A
prob_C	Column vector containing the probability of each base in the sequence being a C
prob_G	Column vector containing the probability of each base in the sequence being a G
prob_T	Column vector containing the probability of each base in the sequence being a T
base	Column vector containing the called bases for the sequence

`[Sample, Probability, Comments] = scfread('File')` also returns the comment information from the SCF file in a character array `Comments`.

`[A, C, T, G] = scfread('File')` returns the sample data for the four bases in separate variables.

`[A, C, T, G, ProbA, ProbC, ProbG, ProbT] = scfread('File')` also returns the probabilities data for the four bases in separate variables.

`[A, C, T, G, ProbA, ProbC, ProbG, ProbT, Comments, PKIndex, Base] = scfread('File')` also returns the peak indices and called bases in separate variables.

SCF files store data from DNA sequencing instruments. Each file includes sample data, sequence information, and the relative probabilities of each of the four bases. For more information on SCF files, see

http://www.mrc-lmb.cam.ac.uk/pubseq/manual/formats_unix_2.html

scfread

Examples

```
[sampleStruct, probStruct, Comments] = scfread('sample.scf')
sampleStruct =
```

```
A: [10827x1 double]
C: [10827x1 double]
G: [10827x1 double]
T: [10827x1 double]
```

```
probStruct =
```

```
peak_index: [742x1 double]
prob_A: [742x1 double]
prob_C: [742x1 double]
prob_G: [742x1 double]
prob_T: [742x1 double]
base: [742x1 char]
```

```
Comments =
```

```
SIGN=A=121,C=103,G=119,T=82
SPAC= 16.25
PRIM=0
MACH=Arkansas_SN312
DYEP=DT3700POP5{BD}v2.mob
NAME=HCIUP1D61207
LANE=6
GELN=
PROC=
RTRK=
CONV=phred version=0.990722.h
COMM=
SRCE=ABI 373A or 377
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `genbankread`, `traceplot`

Purpose Convert sequence with ambiguous characters to regular expression

Syntax

```
seq2regexp(Seq)
seq2regexp(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)
seq2regexp(..., 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue)
seq2regexp(..., 'Ambiguous', AmbiguousValue)
```

Arguments

<i>Seq</i>	Amino acid or nucleotide sequence as a string of characters. You can also enter a structure with the field <i>Sequence</i> .
<i>AlphabetValue</i>	Property to select the sequence alphabet. Enter either 'AA' for amino acids or 'NT' for nucleotides. The default value is 'NT'.
<i>AmbiguousValue</i>	Property to control returning ambiguous characters in the regular expression. Enter either true (include ambiguous characters) or false (return only unambiguous characters). The default value is true.

Nucleotide Conversions

Nucleotide Letter	Nucleotide	Nucleotide Letter	Nucleotide
A—A	Adenosine	S—[GC]	(Strong)
C—C	Cytosine	W—[AT]	(Weak)
G—G	Guanine	B—[GTC]	
T—T	Thymidine	D—[GAT]	
U—U	Uridine	H—[ACT]	
R—[GA]	(Purine)	V—[GCA]	
Y—[TC]	(Pyrimidine)	N—[AGCT]	Any nucleotide

Nucleotide Letter	Nucleotide	Nucleotide Letter	Nucleotide
K—[GT]	(Keto)	- — -	Gap of indeterminate length
M—[AC]	(Amino)	?—?	Unknown

Amino Acid Conversion

Amino Acid Letter	Description
B—[DN]	Aspartic acid or asparagine
Z—[EQ]	Glutamic acid or glutamine
X—[ARNDQCQEGHILKMFSTWYV]	Any amino acid

Description

`seq2regex(Seq)` converts ambiguous nucleotide or amino acid symbols in a sequence into a regular expression format using IUB/IUPAC codes.

`seq2regex(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`seq2regex(..., 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue)` selects the sequence alphabet for nucleotide sequences or amino acid sequences.

`seq2regex(..., 'Ambiguous', AmbiguousValue)`, when *AmbiguousValue* is false, removes the ambiguous characters from the output regular expressions. For example:

- If *Seq* = 'ACGTK', and *AmbiguousValue* is true (default), MATLAB returns `ACGT[GTK]` with the unambiguous characters G and T, and the ambiguous character K.
- If *Seq* = 'ACGTK', and *AmbiguousValue* is false, MATLAB returns `ACGT[GT]` with only the unambiguous characters.

Example

- 1 Convert a nucleotide sequence into a regular expression.

```
seq2regexp('ACWTMAN')
```

```
ans =
```

```
AC[ATW]T[ACM]A[ACGTRYKMSWBDHVN]
```

- 2 Remove ambiguous characters from the regular expression.

```
seq2regexp('ACWTMAN', 'ambiguous', false)
```

```
ans =
```

```
AC[AT]T[AC]A[ACGT]
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `restrict`, `seqwordcount`
MATLAB functions: `regexp`, `regexp`

seqcomplement

Purpose Calculate complementary strand of nucleotide sequence

Syntax `SeqC = seqcomplement(SeqNT)`

Arguments

`SeqNT` Enter either a character string with the characters A, T (U), G, C, and ambiguous characters R, Y, K, M, S, W, B, D, H, V, N, or a vector of integers. You can also enter a structure with the field `Sequence`.

Description `SeqC = seqcomplement(SeqNT)` calculates the complementary strand (A-->T, C-->G, G-->C, T-->A) of a DNA sequence and returns a sequence in the same format as `SeqNT`. For example, if `SeqNT` is an integer sequence then so is `SeqC`.

Example Return the complement of a DNA nucleotide sequence.

```
s = 'ATCG';
seqcomplement(s)

ans =
TAGC
```

See Also Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `seqrcomplement`, `seqreverse`, `seqtool`

Purpose Calculate consensus sequence

Syntax

```
CSeq = seqconsensus(Seqs)
[CSeq, Score] = seqconsensus(Seqs)
CSeq = seqconsensus(Profile)
seqconsensus(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)
seqconsensus(..., 'ScoringMatrix', ScoringMatrixValue)
```

Arguments

<i>Seqs</i>	Set of multiply aligned amino acid or nucleotide sequences. Enter an array of strings, a cell array of strings, or an array of structures with the field <code>Sequence</code> .
<i>Profile</i>	Sequence profile. Enter a profile from the function <code>seqprofile</code> . Profile is a matrix of size [20 (or 4) x Sequence Length] with the frequency or count of amino acids (or nucleotides) for every position. Profile can also have 21 (or 5) rows if gaps are included in the consensus.
<i>ScoringMatrixValue</i>	Scoring matrix. The default value is BLOSUM50 for amino acid sequences or NUC44 for nucleotide sequences. <code>ScoringMatrix</code> can also be a 21x21, 5x5, 20x20, or 4x4 numeric array. For the gap-included cases, gap scores (last row/column) are set to <code>mean(diag(ScoringMatrix))</code> for a gap matching with another gap, and set to <code>mean(nodiag(ScoringMatrix))</code> for a gap matching with another symbol

Description

`CSeq = seqconsensus(Seqs)`, for a multiply aligned set of sequences (`Seqs`), returns a string with the consensus sequence (`CSeq`). The frequency of symbols (20 amino acids, 4 nucleotides) in the set of sequences is determined with the function `seqprofile`. For ambiguous

seqconsensus

nucleotide or amino acid symbols, the frequency or count is added to the standard set of symbols.

`[CSeq, Score] = seqconsensus(Seqs)` returns the conservation score of the consensus sequence. Scores are computed with the scoring matrix BLOSUM50 for amino acids or NUC44 for nucleotides. Scores are the average euclidean distance between the scored symbol and the M-dimensional consensus value. M is the size of the alphabet. The consensus value is the profile weighted by the scoring matrix.

`CSeq = seqconsensus(Profile)` returns a string with the consensus sequence (*CSeq*) from a sequence profile (*Profile*).

`seqconsensus(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`seqconsensus(..., 'ScoringMatrix', ScoringMatrixValue)` specifies the scoring matrix.

The following input parameters are analogous to the function `seqprofile` when the alphabet is restricted to 'AA' or 'NT'.

`seqconsensus(..., 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue)`

`seqconsensus(..., 'Gaps', GapsValue)`

`seqconsensus(..., 'Ambiguous', AmbiguousValue)`

`seqconsensus(..., 'Limits', LimitsValue)`

Examples

```
seqs = fastaread('pf00002.fa');  
[C,S] = seqconsensus(seqs,'limits',[50 60],'gaps','all')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `fastaread`, `multialignread`, `profalign`, `seqdisp`, `seqprofile`

Purpose

Format long sequence output for easy viewing

Syntax

```
seqdisp(Seq)
seqdisp(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
seqdisp(..., 'Row', RowValue)
seqdisp(..., 'Column', ColumnValue)
seqdisp(..., 'ShowNumbers', ShowNumbersValue)
```

Arguments

<i>Seq</i>	Nucleotide or amino acid sequence. Enter a character array, a FASTA file name, or a MATLAB structure with the field <i>Sequence</i> . Multiply aligned sequences are allowed. FASTA files can have the file extension <i>fa</i> , <i>fasta</i> , <i>fas</i> , <i>fsa</i> , or <i>fst</i> .
<i>Row</i>	Property to select the length of each row. Enter an integer. The default length is 60.
<i>Column</i>	Property to select the column width or number of symbols before displaying a space. Enter an integer. The default column width is 10.
<i>ShowNumbers</i>	Property to control displaying numbers at the start of each row. Enter either <code>true</code> (default) to show numbers or <code>false</code> to hide numbers.

Description

`seqdisp(Seq)` displays a sequence (*Seq*) in rows with a default row length of 60 and a default column width of 10.

`seqdisp(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`seqdisp(..., 'Row', RowValue)` specifies the length of each row for the displayed sequence.

seqdisp

`seqdisp(..., 'Column', ColumnValue)` specifies the number of letters to display before adding a space. Row must be larger than and evenly divisible by Column.

`seqdisp(..., 'ShowNumbers', ShowNumbersValue)` when `ShowNumbers` is false, turns off the position numbers at the start of each row off.

Examples

Read sequence information from the GenBank database. Display the sequence in rows with 50 letters, and within a row, separate every 10 letters with a space.

```
mouseHEXA = getgenbank('AK080777');
seqdisp(mouseHEXA, 'Row', 50, 'Column', 10)
```

Create and save a FASTA file with two sequences, and then display it.

```
hdr = ['Sequence A'; 'Sequence B'];
seq = ['TAGCTGRCCAAGGCCAAGCGAGCTTN'; 'ATCGACYGGTTCCGGTTCGCTCGAAN']
fastawrite('local.fa', hdr, seq);
seqdisp('local.fa', 'ShowNumbers', false')
```

```
ans =
>Sequence A
  1 TAGCTGRCCA AGGCCAAGCG AGCTTN
>Sequence B
  1 ATCGACYGGT TCCGGTTCGC TCGAAN
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `multialignread`, `seqconsensus`, `seqlogo`, `seqprofile`, `seqshoworfs`, `seqshowwords`, `seqtool`, `getgenbank`

Purpose Create dot plot of two sequences

Syntax

```
seqdotplot (Seq1, Seq2)
seqdotplot(Seq1,Seq2, Window, Number)
Matches = seqdotplot(...)
[Matches, Matrix] = seqdotplot(...)
```

Arguments

<i>Seq1, Seq2</i>	Nucleotide or amino acid sequences. Enter two character strings. Do not enter a vector of integers. You can also enter a structure with the field <i>Sequence</i> .
<i>Window</i>	Enter an integer for the size of a window.
<i>Number</i>	Enter an integer for the number of characters within the window that match.

Description

`seqdotplot (Seq1, Seq2)` plots a figure that visualizes the match between two sequences.

`seqdotplot(Seq1,Seq2, Window, Number)` plots sequence matches when there are at least *Number* matches in a window of size *Window*.

When plotting nucleotide sequences, start with a *Window* of 11 and *Number* of 7.

`Matches = seqdotplot(...)` returns the number of dots in the dot plot matrix.

`[Matches, Matrix] = seqdotplot(...)` returns the dotplot as a sparse matrix.

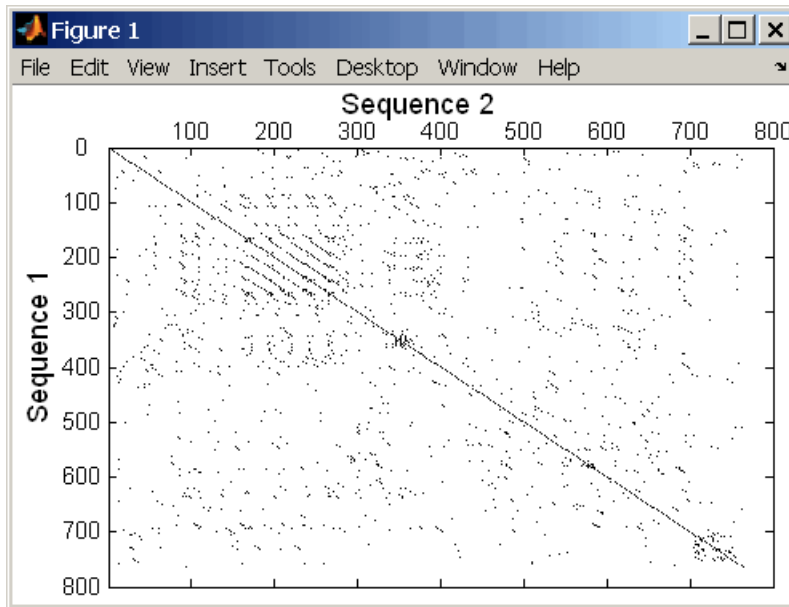
Examples

This example shows the similarities between the prion protein (PrP) nucleotide sequences of two ruminants, the moufflon and the golden takin.

```
moufflon = getgenbank('AB060288','Sequence',true);
```

seqdotplot

```
takin = getgenbank('AB060290','Sequence',true);  
seqdotplot(moufflon,takin,11,7)
```



```
Matches = seqdotplot(moufflon,takin,11,7)  
Matches =  
    5552
```

```
[Matches, Matrix] = seqdotplot(moufflon,takin,11,7)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `nwalign`, `swalign`

Purpose	Insert gaps into nucleotide or amino acid sequence
Syntax	<pre>NewSeq = seqinsertgaps(Seq, Positions) NewSeq = seqinsertgaps(Seq, GappedSeq) NewSeq = seqinsertgaps(Seq, GappedSeq, Relationship)</pre>
Arguments	
<i>Seq</i>	Either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• String specifying a nucleotide or amino acid sequence• MATLAB structure containing a Sequence field
<i>Positions</i>	Vector of integers to specify the positions in <i>Seq</i> before which to insert a gap.
<i>GappedSeq</i>	Either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• String specifying a nucleotide or amino acid sequence• MATLAB structure containing a Sequence field
<i>Relationship</i>	Integer specifying the relationship between <i>Seq</i> and <i>GappedSeq</i> . Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 1 — Both sequences use the same alphabet, that is both are nucleotide sequences or both are amino acid sequences.• 3 — <i>Seq</i> contains nucleotides representing codons and <i>GappedSeq</i> contains amino acids (default).
Return Values	
<i>NewSeq</i>	Sequence with gaps inserted, represented by a string specifying a nucleotide or amino acid sequence.

seqinsertgaps

Description

NewSeq = seqinsertgaps(*Seq*, *Positions*) inserts gaps in the sequence *Seq* before the positions specified by the integers in the vector *Positions*.

NewSeq = seqinsertgaps(*Seq*, *GappedSeq*) finds the gap positions in the sequence *GappedSeq*, then inserts gaps in the corresponding positions in the sequence *Seq*.

NewSeq = seqinsertgaps(*Seq*, *GappedSeq*, *Relationship*) specifies the relationship between *Seq* and *GappedSeq*. Enter 1 for *Relationship* when both sequences use the same alphabet, that is both are nucleotide sequences or both are amino acid sequences. Enter 3 for *Relationship* when *Seq* contains nucleotides representing codons and *GappedSeq* contains amino acids. Default is 3.

Examples

- 1 Retrieve two nucleotide sequences from the GenBank database for the neuraminidase (NA) protein of two strains of the Influenza A virus (H5N1).

```
hk01 = getgenbank('AF509094');  
vt04 = getgenbank('DQ094287');
```

- 2 Extract the coding region from the two nucleotide sequences.

```
hk01_cds = featuresparse(hk01,'feature','CDS','Sequence',true);  
vt04_cds = featuresparse(vt04,'feature','CDS','Sequence',true);
```

- 3 Align the amino acids sequences converted from the nucleotide sequences.

```
[sc,al]=nwalign(nt2aa(hk01_cds),nt2aa(vt04_cds),'extendgap',1);
```

- 4 Use the seqinsertgaps function to copy the gaps from the aligned amino acid sequences to their corresponding nucleotide sequences, thus codon-aligning them.

```
hk01_aligned = seqinsertgaps(hk01_cds,al(1,:))  
vt04_aligned = seqinsertgaps(vt04_cds,al(3,:))
```


- 5 Once you have code aligned the two sequences, you can use them as input to other functions such as `dnds`, which calculates the synonymous and nonsynonymous substitutions rates of the codon-aligned nucleotide sequences. By setting `Verbose` to `true`, you can also display the codons considered in the computations and their amino acid translations.

```
[dn,ds] = dnds(hk01_aligned,vt04_aligned,'verbose',true)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `dnds`, `dndsm1`, `int2aa`, `int2nt`

seqlinkage

Purpose Construct phylogenetic tree from pair-wise distances

Syntax

```
Tree = seqlinkage(Dist)
Tree = seqlinkage(Dist, Method)
Tree = seqlinkage(Dist, Method, Names)
```

Arguments

<i>Dist</i>	Matrix or vector of pair-wise distances, such as returned by the <code>seqpdist</code> function.
<i>Method</i>	String that specifies a distance method. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 'single'• 'complete'• 'average' (default)• 'weighted'• 'centroid'• 'median'
<i>Names</i>	Property to use alternative labels for leaf nodes. Enter a vector of structures, with the fields 'Header' or 'Name', or a cell array of strings. In both cases the number of elements you provide must comply with the number of samples used to generate the pair-wise distances in <i>Dist</i> .

Description

`Tree = seqlinkage(Dist)` returns a phylogenetic tree object from the pair-wise distances, *Dist*, between the species or products. *Dist* is a matrix or vector of pair-wise distances, such as returned by the `seqpdist` function.

`Tree = seqlinkage(Dist, Method)` creates a phylogenetic tree object using a specified patristic distance method. The available methods are:

'single'	Nearest distance (single linkage method)
'complete'	Furthest distance (complete linkage method)
'average' (default)	Unweighted Pair Group Method Average (UPGMA, group average).
'weighted'	Weighted Pair Group Method Average (WPGMA)
'centroid'	Unweighted Pair Group Method Centroid (UPGMC)
'median'	Weighted Pair Group Method Centroid (WPGMC)

Tree = seqlinkage(*Dist*, *Method*, *Names*) passes a list of names to label the leaf nodes (for example, species or products) in a phylogenetic tree object.

Examples

```
% Load a multiple alignment of amino acids:
seqs = fastaread('pf00002.fa');
% Measure the 'Jukes-Cantor' pairwise distances:
dist = seqpdist(seqs,'method','jukes-cantor',...
               'indels','pair');
% Build the phylogenetic tree with the single linkage
% method and pass the names of the sequences:
tree = seqlinkage(dist,'single',seqs)
view(tree)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `phytree` (object constructor), `phytreewrite`, `seqpdist`, `seqneighjoin`

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of `phytree` object: `plot`, `view`

seqlogo

Purpose Display sequence logo for nucleotide or amino acid sequences

Syntax

```
seqlogo(Seqs)
seqlogo(Profile)
DisplayInfo = seqlogo(Seqs)
seqlogo(..., 'Displaylogo', DisplaylogoValue, ...)
seqlogo(..., 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue, ...)
seqlogo(..., 'Startat', StartatValue, ...)
seqlogo(..., 'Endat', EndatValue, ...)
seqlogo(..., 'SSCorrection', SSCorrectionValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>Seqs</i>	Set of pair-wise or multiply aligned nucleotide or amino acid sequences, represented by any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Character array• Cell array of strings• Array of structures containing a Sequence field
<i>Profile</i>	Sequence profile distribution matrix with the frequency of nucleotides or amino acids for every column in the multiple alignment, such as returned by the seqprofile function. The size of the frequency distribution matrix is: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• For nucleotides — [4 x sequence length]• For amino acids — [20 x sequence length] If gaps were included, <i>Profile</i> may have 5 rows (for nucleotides) or 21 rows (for amino acids), but seqlogo ignores gaps.

<i>DisplaylogoValue</i>	Controls the display of a sequence logo. Choices are true (default) or false.
<i>AlphabetValue</i>	String specifying the type of sequence (nucleotide or amino acid). Choices are 'NT' (default) or 'AA'.
<i>StartatValue</i>	Positive integer that specifies the starting position for the sequences in <i>Seqs</i> . Default starting position is 1.
<i>EndatValue</i>	Positive integer that specifies the ending position for the sequences in <i>Seqs</i> . Default ending position is the maximum length of the sequences in <i>Seqs</i> .
<i>SSCorrectionValue</i>	Controls the use of small sample correction in the estimation of the number of bits. Choices are true (default) or false.

Return Values

<i>DisplayInfo</i>	Cell array containing the symbol list in <i>Seqs</i> and the weight matrix used to graphically display the sequence logo.
--------------------	---

Description

`seqlogo(Seqs)` displays a sequence logo for *Seqs*, a set of aligned sequences. The logo graphically displays the sequence conservation at a particular position in the alignment of sequences, measured in bits. The maximum sequence conservation per site is $\log_2(4)$ bits for nucleotide sequences and $\log_2(20)$ bits for amino acid sequences. If the sequence conservation value is zero or negative, no logo is displayed in that position.

`seqlogo(Profile)` displays a sequence logo for *Profile*, a sequence profile distribution matrix with the frequency of nucleotides or amino acids for every column in the multiple alignment, such as returned by the `seqprofile` function.

Color Code for Nucleotides

Nucleotide	Color
A	Green
C	Blue
G	Yellow
T, U	Red
Other	Purple

Color Code for Amino Acids

Amino Acid	Chemical Property	Color
G S T Y C Q N	Polar	Green
A V L I P W F M	Hydrophobic	Orange
D E	Acidic	Red
K R H	Basic	Blue
Other	—	Tan

DisplayInfo = seqlogo(*Seqs*) returns a cell array of unique symbols in a sequence (*Seqs*) and the information weight matrix used to graphically display the logo.

seqlogo(*Seqs*, ... '*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls seqpdist with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

seqlogo(..., '*Displaylogo*', *DisplaylogoValue*, ...) controls the display of a sequence logo. Choices are true (default) or false.

`seqlogo(..., 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue, ...)` specifies the type of sequence (nucleotide or amino acid). Choices are 'NT' (default) or 'AA'.

Note If you provide amino acid sequences to seqlogo, you must set Alphabet to 'AA'.

`seqlogo(..., 'Startat', StartatValue, ...)` specifies the starting position for the sequences in *Seqs*. Default starting position is 1.

`seqlogo(..., 'Endat', EndatValue, ...)` specifies the ending position for the sequences in *Seqs*. Default ending position is the maximum length of the sequences in *Seqs*.

`seqlogo(..., 'SSCorrection', SSCorrectionValue, ...)` controls the use of small sample correction in the estimation of the number of bits. Choices are true (default) or false.

Note A simple calculation of bits tends to overestimate the conservation at a particular location. To compensate for this overestimation, when `SSCorrection` is set to true, a rough estimate is applied as an approximate correction. This correction works better when the number of sequences is greater than 50.

Examples

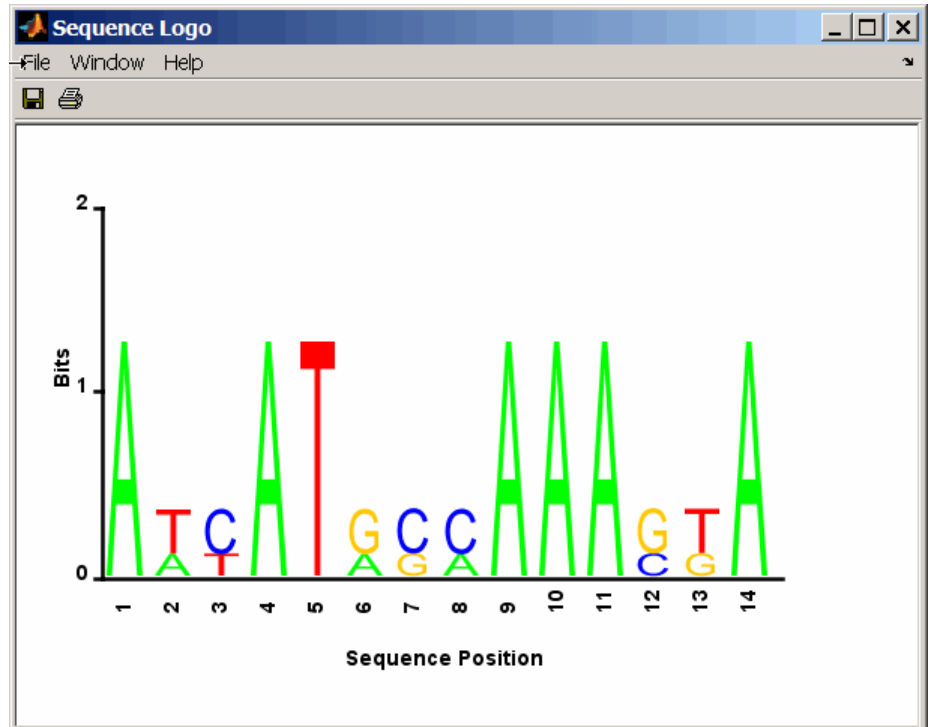
Displaying a Sequence Logo for a Nucleotide Sequence

- 1 Create a series of aligned nucleotide sequences.

```
S = { 'ATTATAGCAAAC TA', ...  
      'AACATGCCAAAG TA', ...  
      'ATCATGCAAAAAG GA' }
```

- 2 Display the sequence logo.

```
seqlogo(S)
```



- 3** Notice that correction for small samples prevents you from seeing columns with information equal to $\log_2(4) = 2$ bits, but you can turn this adjustment off.

```
seqlogo(S, 'sscorrection', false)
```

Displaying a Sequence Logo for an Amino Acid Sequence

- 1** Create a series of aligned amino acid sequences.

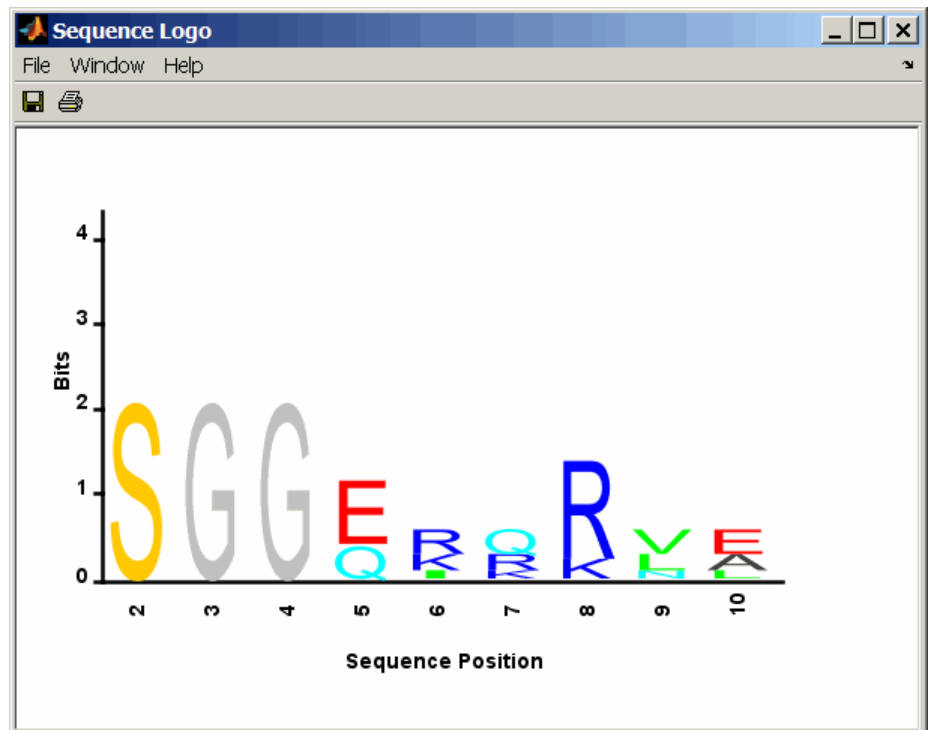
```
S2 = { 'LSGGQRQRVAIARALAL', ...  
      'LSGGEKQRVAIARALMN', ...
```



```
'LSGGQIQRVLLARALAA', ...
'LSGGERRRLEIACVLAL', ...
'FSGGEKKKNELWQMLAL', ...
'LSGGERRRLEIACVLAL'};
```

- 2 Display the sequence logo, specifying an amino acid sequence and limiting the logo to sequence positions 2 through 10.

```
seqlogo(S2, 'alphabet', 'aa', 'startAt', 2, 'endAt', 10)
```



References

- [1] Schneider, T.D., and Stephens, R.M. (1990). Sequence Logos: A new way to display consensus sequences. *Nucleic Acids Research* 18, 6097–6100.

seqlogo

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `seqconsensus`, `seqdisp`, `seqprofile`

Purpose Find matches for every string in library

Syntax Index = seqmatch(Strings, Library)

Description Index = seqmatch(Strings, Library) looks through the elements of Library to find strings that begin with every string in Strings. Index contains the index to the first occurrence for every string in the query. Strings and Library must be cell arrays of strings.

Examples

```
lib = {'VIPS_HUMAN', 'SCCR_RABIT', 'CALR_PIG', 'VIPR_RAT', 'PACR_MOUSE'};
query = {'CALR', 'VIP'};
h = seqmatch(query, lib);
lib(h)
```

See Also MATLAB functions: regexp, strmatch

seqneighjoin

Purpose Neighbor-joining method for phylogenetic tree reconstruction

Syntax

```
Tree = seqneighjoin(Dist)
Tree = seqneighjoin(Dist, Method)
Tree = seqneighjoin(Dist, Method, Names)
seqneighjoin(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
seqneighjoin(..., 'Reroot', RerootValue)
```

Arguments

<i>Dist</i>	Matrix or vector returned by the seqpdist function
<i>Method</i>	Method to compute the distances between nodes. Enter 'equivar' (default), 'firstorder', or 'average'.
<i>Names</i>	Vector of structures with the fields 'Header', 'Name', or a cell array of strings. In all cases the number of elements must equal the number of samples used to generate the pairwise distances in <i>Dist</i> .

Description

Tree = seqneighjoin(*Dist*) computes a phylogenetic tree object from pairwise distances (*Dist*) between the species or products using the neighbor-joining method.

Tree = seqneighjoin(*Dist*, *Method*) selects a method (*Method*) to compute the distances of the new nodes to all other nodes at every iteration. The general expression to calculate the distances between the new node (*n*), after joining *i* and *j* and all other nodes (*k*), is given by

$$D(n,k) = a*D(i,k) + (1-a)*D(j,k) - a*D(n,i) - (1-a)*D(n,j)$$

This expression is guaranteed to find the correct tree with additive data (minimum variance reduction).

The following table describes the values for *Method*.

'equivar' (default)	Assumes equal variance and independence of evolutionary distance estimates ($a = 1/2$). Such as in Studier and Keppler, JMBE (1988).
'firstorder'	Assumes a first-order model of the variances and covariances of evolutionary distance estimates, 'a' is adjusted at every iteration to a value between 0 and 1. Such as in Gascuel, JMBE (1997).
'average'	New distances are the weighted average of previous distances while the branch distances are ignored. $D(n,k) = [D(i,k) + D(j,k)] / 2$ <p>As in the original neighbor-joining algorithm by Saitou and Nei, JMBE (1987).</p>

`Tree = seqneighjoin(Dist, Method, Names)` passes a list of names (*Names*) to label the leaf nodes (e.g., species or products) in the phylogenetic tree object.

`seqneighjoin(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`seqneighjoin(..., 'Reroot', RerootValue)`, when *RerootValue* is false, excludes rerooting the resulting tree. This is useful for observing the original linkage order followed by the algorithm. By default `seqneighjoin` reroots the resulting tree using the midpoint method.

Examples

- 1 Load a multiple alignment of amino acids.

```
seqs = fastaread('pf00002.fa');
```

- 2 Measure the Jukes-Cantor pair-wise distances.

```
dist = seqpdist(seqs, 'method', 'jukes-cantor', 'indels', 'pair');
```

- 3 Build the phylogenetic using the neighbor-joining algorithm.

seqneighjoin

```
tree = seqneighjoin(dist,'equivar',seqs)
view(tree)
```

References

- [1] Saitou, N., and Nei, M. (1987). The neighbor-joining method: A new method for reconstructing phylogenetic trees. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 4(4), 406–425.
- [2] Gascuel, O. (1997). BIONJ: An improved version of the NJ algorithm based on a simple model of sequence data. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 14 685–695.
- [3] Studier, J.A., Keppler, K.J. (1988). A note on the neighbor-joining algorithm of Saitou and Nei. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* 5(6) 729–731.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `multialign`, `phytree` (object constructor), `seqlinkage` (alternative method to create a phylogenetic tree), `seqpdist`

Methods of `phytree` object: `reroot`, `view`

Purpose

Calculate pair-wise distance between sequences

Syntax

```
D = seqpdist(Seqs)
D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'Method', MethodValue, ...)
D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'Indels', IndelsValue, ...)
D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'Optargs', OptargsValue, ...)
D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'PairwiseAlignment',
    PairwiseAlignmentValue, ...)
D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'JobManager', JobManagerValue, ...)
D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'WaitInQueue', WaitInQueueValue, ...)
D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'SquareForm', SquareFormValue, ...)
D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'Alphabet', AlphabetValue, ...)
D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'ScoringMatrix', ScoringMatrixValue,
    ...)
D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'Scale', ScaleValue, ...)
D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'GapOpen', GapOpenValue, ...)
D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'ExtendGap', ExtendGapValue, ...)
```

Arguments

Seqs

Any of the following:

- Cell array containing nucleotide or amino acid sequences
- Vector of structures containing a Sequence field
- Matrix of characters, in which each row corresponds to a nucleotide or amino acid sequence

MethodValue

String that specifies the method for calculating pair-wise distances. Default is Jukes-Cantor.

IndelsValue

String that specifies how to treat sites with gaps. Default is score.

OptargsValue String or cell array specifying one or more input arguments required or accepted by the distance method specified by the Method property.

PairwiseAlignmentValue Controls the global pair-wise alignment of input sequences (using the `nwalign` function), while ignoring the multiple alignment of the input sequences (if any). Choices are `true` or `false`. Default is:

- `true` — When all input sequences do not have the same length.
- `false` — When all input sequences have the same length.

Tip If your input sequences have the same length, `seqpdist` will assume they are aligned. If they are not aligned, do one of the following:

- Align the sequences before passing them to `seqpdist`, for example, using the `multialign` function.
 - Set `PairwiseAlignment` to `true` when using `seqpdist`.
-

<i>JobManagerValue</i>	A <code>jobmanager</code> object, such as returned by the Distributed Computing Toolbox function <code>findResource</code> , that represents an available distributed MATLAB resource. Specifying this property distributes pair-wise alignments into a cluster of computers using Distributed Computing Toolbox. You must have Distributed Computing Toolbox to use this property.
<i>WaitInQueueValue</i>	Controls whether <code>seqpdist</code> waits for a distributed MATLAB resource to be available when you have set the <code>JobManager</code> property. Choices are <code>true</code> or <code>false</code> (default). You must have Distributed Computing Toolbox to use this property.
<i>SquareFormValue</i>	Controls the conversion of the output into a square matrix. Choices are <code>true</code> or <code>false</code> (default).
<i>AlphabetValue</i>	String specifying the type of sequence (nucleotide or amino acid). Choices are <code>'NT'</code> or <code>'AA'</code> (default).

<i>ScoringMatrixValue</i>	<p>String specifying the scoring matrix to use for the global pair-wise alignment. Choices for amino acid sequences are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 'PAM40'• 'PAM250'• 'DAYHOFF'• 'GONNET'• 'BLOSUM30' increasing by 5 up to 'BLOSUM90'• 'BLOSUM62'• 'BLOSUM100' <p>Default is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 'NUC44' (when <i>AlphabetValue</i> equals 'NT')• 'BLOSUM50' (when <i>AlphabetValue</i> equals 'AA')
<i>ScaleValue</i>	<p>Positive value that specifies the scale factor used to return the score in arbitrary units. If the scoring matrix information also provides a scale factor, then both are used.</p>
<i>GapOpenValue</i>	<p>Positive integer specifying the penalty for opening a gap in the alignment. Default is 8.</p>
<i>ExtendedGapValue</i>	<p>Positive integer specifying the penalty for extending a gap. Default is equal to <i>GapOpenValue</i>.</p>

Return Values D

Vector containing biological distances between each pair of sequences stored in the M elements of *Seqs*.

Description

$D = \text{seqpdist}(\text{Seqs})$ returns D , a vector containing biological distances between each pair of sequences stored in the M sequences of *Seqs*, a cell array of sequences, a vector of structures, or a matrix or sequences.

D is a 1-by- $(M*(M-1)/2)$ row vector corresponding to the $M*(M-1)/2$ pairs of sequences in *Seqs*. The output D is arranged in the order $((2,1), (3,1), \dots, (M,1), (3,2), \dots, (M,2), \dots, (M,M-1))$. This is the lower-left triangle of the full M -by- M distance matrix. To get the distance between the I th and the J th sequences for $I > J$, use the formula $D((J-1)*(M-J/2)+I-J)$.

$D = \text{seqpdist}(\text{Seqs}, \dots, \text{'PropertyName'}, \text{PropertyValue}, \dots)$ calls `seqpdist` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

$D = \text{seqpdist}(\text{Seqs}, \dots, \text{'Method'}, \text{MethodValue}, \dots)$ specifies a method to compute distances between every pair of sequences. Choices are shown in the following tables.

Methods for Nucleotides and Amino Acids

Method	Description
p-distance	Proportion of sites at which the two sequences are different. p is close to 1 for poorly related sequences, and p is close to 0 for similar sequences. $d = p$

Method	Description
Jukes-Cantor (default)	<p>Maximum likelihood estimate of the number of substitutions between two sequences. p is described with the method p-distance. For nucleotides:</p> $d = -3/4 \log(1 - p * 4/3)$ <p>For amino acids:</p> $d = -19/20 \log(1 - p * 20/19)$
alignment-score	<p>Distance (d) between two sequences (1, 2) is computed from the pair-wise alignment score between the two sequences ($score_{12}$), and the pair-wise alignment score between each sequence and itself ($score_{11}$, $score_{22}$) as follows:</p> $d = (1 - score_{12}/score_{11}) * (1 - score_{12}/score_{22})$ <p>This option does not imply that prealigned input sequences will be realigned, it only scores them. Use with care; this distance method does not comply with the ultrametric condition. In the rare case where the score between sequences is greater than the score when aligning a sequence with itself, then $d = 0$.</p>

Methods with No Scoring of Gaps (Nucleotides Only)

Method	Description
Tajima-Nei	Maximum likelihood estimate considering the background nucleotide frequencies. It can be computed from the input sequences or given by setting Optargs to [gA gC gG gT]. gA, gC, gG, gT are scalar values for the nucleotide frequencies.
Kimura	Considers separately the transitional nucleotide substitution and the transversional nucleotide substitution.
Tamura	Considers separately the transitional nucleotide substitution, the transversional nucleotide substitution, and the GC content. GC content can be computed from the input sequences or given by setting Optargs to the proportion of GC content (scalar value form 0 to 1).
Hasegawa	Considers separately the transitional nucleotide substitution, the transversional nucleotide substitution, and the background nucleotide frequencies. Background frequencies can be computed from the input sequences or given by setting the Optargs property to [gA gC gG gT].
Nei-Tamura	Considers separately the transitional nucleotide substitution between purines, the transitional nucleotide substitution between pyrimidines, the transversional nucleotide substitution, and the background nucleotide frequencies. Background frequencies can be computed from the input sequences or given by setting the Optargs property to [gA gC gG gT].

Methods with No Scoring of Gaps (Amino Acids Only)

Method	Description
Poisson	Assumes that the number of amino acid substitutions at each site has a Poisson distribution.
Gamma	Assumes that the number of amino acid substitutions at each site has a Gamma distribution with parameter α . You can set α by using the <code>Optargs</code> property. Default is 2.

You can also specify a user-defined distance function using `@`, for example, `@distfun`. The distance function must be of the form:

```
function D = distfun(S1, S2, OptArgsValue)
```

The `distfun` function takes the following arguments:

- `S1`, `S2` — Two sequences of the same length (nucleotide or amino acid).
- `OptArgsValue` — Optional problem-dependent arguments.

The `distfun` function returns a scalar that represents the distance between `S1` and `S2`.

`D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'Indels', IndelsValue, ...)` specifies how to treat sites with gaps. Choices are:

- `score` (default) — Scores these sites either as a point mutation or with the alignment parameters, depending on the method selected.
- `pairwise-del` — For every pair-wise comparison, it ignores the sites with gaps.

- `complete-del` — Ignores all the columns in the multiple alignment that contain a gap. This option is available only if a multiple alignment was provided as the input *Seqs*.

`D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'Optargs', OptargsValue, ...)` passes one or more arguments required or accepted by the distance method specified by the `Method` property. Use a string or cell array to pass one or multiple input arguments. For example, you can provide the nucleotide frequencies for the Tajima-Nei distance method, instead of computing them from the input sequences.

`D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'PairwiseAlignment', PairwiseAlignmentValue, ...)` controls the global pair-wise alignment of input sequences (using the `nwalign` function), while ignoring the multiple alignment of the input sequences (if any). Default is:

- `true` — When all input sequences do not have the same length.
- `false` — When all input sequences have the same length.

Tip If your input sequences have the same length, `seqpdist` will assume they aligned. If they are not aligned, do one of the following:

- Align the sequences before passing them to `seqpdist`, for example, using the `multialign` function.
 - Set `PairwiseAlignment` to `true` when using `seqpdist`.
-

`D = seqpdist(Seqs, ...'JobManager', JobManagerValue, ...)` distributes pair-wise alignments into a cluster of computers using Distributed Computing Toolbox. `JobManagerValue` is a `jobmanager` object such as returned by the Distributed Computing Toolbox function `findResource`, that represents an available distributed MATLAB resource. You must have Distributed Computing Toolbox to use this property.

$D = \text{seqpdist}(\text{Seqs}, \dots, \text{'WaitInQueue'}, \text{WaitInQueueValue}, \dots)$ controls whether `seqpdist` waits for a distributed MATLAB resource to be available when you have set the `JobManager` property. When `WaitInQueueValue` is true, `seqpdist` waits in the job manager queue for an available worker. When `WaitInQueueValue` is false (default) and there are no workers immediately available, `seqpdist` stops and displays an error message. You must have Distributed Computing Toolbox and have also set the `JobManager` property to use this property.

$D = \text{seqpdist}(\text{Seqs}, \dots, \text{'SquareForm'}, \text{SquareFormValue}, \dots)$, controls the conversion of the output into a square matrix such that $D(I, J)$ denotes the distance between the I th and J th sequences. The square matrix is symmetric and has a zero diagonal. Choices are true or false (default). Setting `SquareForm` to true is the same as using the `squareform` function in Statistics Toolbox.

$D = \text{seqpdist}(\text{Seqs}, \dots, \text{'Alphabet'}, \text{AlphabetValue}, \dots)$ specifies the type of sequence (nucleotide or amino acid). Choices are 'NT' or 'AA' (default).

The remaining input properties are available when the `Method` property equals 'alignment-score' or the `PairwiseAlignment` property equals true.

$D = \text{seqpdist}(\text{Seqs}, \dots, \text{'ScoringMatrix'}, \text{ScoringMatrixValue}, \dots)$ specifies the scoring matrix to use for the global pair-wise alignment. Default is:

- 'NUC44' (when `AlphabetValue` equals 'NT')
- 'BLOSUM50' (when `AlphabetValue` equals 'AA')

$D = \text{seqpdist}(\text{Seqs}, \dots, \text{'Scale'}, \text{ScaleValue}, \dots)$ specifies the scale factor used to return the score in arbitrary units. Choices are any positive value. If the scoring matrix information also provides a scale factor, then both are used.

$D = \text{seqpdist}(\text{Seqs}, \dots, \text{'GapOpen'}, \text{GapOpenValue}, \dots)$ specifies the penalty for opening a gap in the alignment. Choices are any positive integer. Default is 8.

$D = \text{seqpdist}(\text{Seqs}, \dots, \text{'ExtendGap'}, \text{ExtendGapValue}, \dots)$
 specifies the penalty for extending a gap in the alignment. Choices are any positive integer. Default is equal to *GapOpenValue*.

Examples

- 1 Read amino acids alignment data into a MATLAB structure.

```
seqs = fastaread('pf00002.fa');
```

- 2 For every possible pair of sequences in the multiple alignment, ignore sites with gaps and score with the scoring matrix PAM250.

```
dist = seqpdist(seqs, 'Method', 'alignment-score', ...
                'Indels', 'pairwise-delete', ...
                'ScoringMatrix', 'pam250');
```

- 3 Force the realignment of every pair of sequences ignoring the provided multiple alignment.

```
dist = seqpdist(seqs, 'Method', 'alignment-score', ...
                'Indels', 'pairwise-delete', ...
                'ScoringMatrix', 'pam250', ...
                'PairwiseAlignment', true);
```

- 4 Measure the 'Jukes-Cantor' pair-wise distances after realigning every pair of sequences, counting the gaps as point mutations.

```
dist = seqpdist(seqs, 'Method', 'jukes-cantor', ...
                'Indels', 'score', ...
                'Scoringmatrix', 'pam250', ...
                'PairwiseAlignment', true);
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `fastaread`, `dnds`, `dndsml`, `multialign`, `nwalgn`, `phytree` (object constructor), `seqlinkage`

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `phytree` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox method of a `phytree` object: `pdist`

seqprofile

Purpose Calculate sequence profile from set of multiply aligned sequences

Syntax

```
Profile = seqprofile(Seqs, 'PropertyName',  
    PropertyValue ...)  
[Profile, Symbols] = seqprofile(Seqs)  
seqprofile(..., 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue)  
seqprofile(..., 'Counts', CountsValue)  
seqprofile(..., 'Gaps', GapsValue)  
seqprofile(..., 'Ambiguous', AmbiguousValue),  
seqprofile(..., 'Limits', LimitsValue)
```

Arguments

Seqs	Set of multiply aligned sequences. Enter an array of strings, cell array of strings, or an array of structures with the field Sequence.
Alphabet	Sequence alphabet. Enter 'NT' (nucleotides), 'AA' (amino acids), or 'none'. The default alphabet is 'AA'. When Alphabet is 'none', the symbol list is based on the observed symbols. Every character can be a symbol except for a hyphen (-) and a period (.), which are reserved for gaps.
Count	Property to control returning frequency (ratio of counts/total counts) or counts. Enter either true (counts) or false (frequency). The default value is false.
Gaps	Property to control counting gaps in a sequence. Enter 'all' (counts all gaps), 'noflanks' (counts all gaps except those at the flanks of every sequence), or 'none'. The default value is 'none'.

Ambiguous	Property to control counting ambiguous symbols. Enter 'Count' to add partial counts to the standard symbols.
Limits	Property to specify using part of the sequences. Enter a [1x2] vector with the first position and the last position to include in the profile. The default value is [1, SeqLength].

Description

`Profile = seqprofile(Seqs, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue ...)` returns a matrix (Profile) of size [20 (or 4) x SequenceLength] with the frequency of amino acids (or nucleotides) for every column in the multiple alignment. The order of the rows is given by

- 4 nucleotides — A C G T/U
- 20 amino acids — A R N D C Q E G H I L K M F P S T W Y V

`[Profile, Symbols] = seqprofile(Seqs)` returns a unique symbol list (Symbols) where every symbol in the list corresponds to a row in the profile (Profile).

`seqprofile(..., 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue)` selects a nucleotide alphabet, amino acid alphabet, or no alphabet.

`seqprofile(..., 'Counts', CountsValue)` when Counts is true, returns the counts instead of the frequency.

`seqprofile(..., 'Gaps', GapsValue)` appends a row to the bottom of a profile (Profile) with the count for gaps.

`seqprofile(..., 'Ambiguous', AmbiguousValue)`, when Ambiguous is 'count', counts the ambiguous amino acid symbols (B Z X) and nucleotide symbols (R Y K M S W B D H V N) with the standard symbols. For example, the amino acid X adds a 1/20 count to every row while the amino acid B counts as 1/2 at the D and N rows.

`seqprofile(..., 'Limits', LimitsValue)` specifies the start and end positions for the profile relative to the indices of the multiple alignment.

seqprofile

Examples

```
seqs = fastaread('pf00002.fa');  
[P,S] = seqprofile(seqs,'limits',[50 60],'gaps','all')
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `fastaread`, `multialignread`, `seqconsensus`, `seqdisp`, `seqlogo`

Purpose Calculate reverse complement of nucleotide sequence

Syntax `SeqRC = seqrcomplement(SeqNT)`

Arguments

SeqNT Nucleotide sequence. Enter either a character string with the characters A, T (U), G, C, and ambiguous characters R, Y, K, M, S, W, B, D, H, V, N, or a vector of integers. You can also enter a structure with the field `Sequence`.

Description

`seqrcomplement` calculates the reverse complementary strand of a DNA sequence.

`SeqRC = seqrcomplement(SeqNT)` calculates the reverse complementary strand 3' --> 5' (A-->T, C-->G, G-->C, T-->A) for a DNA sequence and returns a sequence in the same format as `SeqNT`. For example, if `SeqNT` is an integer sequence then so is `SeqRC`.

Examples

Reverse a DNA nucleotide sequence and then return its complement.

```
s = 'ATCG'  
seqrcomplement(s)  
  
ans =  
CGAT
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `codoncount`, `palindromes`, `seqcomplement`, `seqreverse`, `seqtool`

seqreverse

Purpose Reverse letters or numbers in nucleotide sequence

Syntax `SeqR = seqreverse(SeqNT)`

Arguments

SeqNT Enter a nucleotide sequence. Enter either a character string with the characters A, T (U), G, C, and ambiguous characters R, Y, K, M, S, W, B, D, H, V, N, or a vector of integers. You can also enter a structure with the field `Sequence`.

SeqR Returns a sequence in the same format as the nucleotide sequence. For example, if *SeqNT* is an integer sequence, then so is *SeqR*.

Description `seqreverse` calculates the reverse strand of a DNA or RNA sequence. `SeqR = seqreverse(SeqNT)` calculates the reverse strand 3' --> 5' of the nucleotide sequence.

Examples Reverse a nucleotide sequence.

```
s = 'ATCG'  
seqreverse(s)  
  
ans =  
GCTA
```

See Also Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `seqcomplement`, `seqrcomplement`, `seqtool`

MATLAB function: `fliplr`

Purpose

Display open reading frames in sequence

Syntax

```
seqshoworfs(SeqNT)
seqshoworfs(SeqNT, ...'Frames', FramesValue, ...)
seqshoworfs(SeqNT, ...'GeneticCode', GeneticCodeValue, ...)
seqshoworfs(SeqNT, ...'MinimumLength', MinimumLengthValue,
             ...)
seqshoworfs(SeqNT, ...'AlternativeStartCodons',
             AlternativeStartCodonsValue, ...)
seqshoworfs(SeqNT, ...'Color', ColorValue, ...)
seqshoworfs(SeqNT, ...'Columns', ColumnsValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>SeqNT</i>	Nucleotide sequence. Enter either a character string with the characters A, T (U), G, C, and ambiguous characters R, Y, K, M, S, W, B, D, H, V, N, or a vector of integers. You can also enter a structure with the field Sequence.
<i>FramesValue</i>	Property to select the frame. Enter 1, 2, 3, -1, -2, -3, enter a vector with integers, or 'all'. The default value is the vector [1 2 3]. Frames -1, -2, and -3 correspond to the first, second, and third reading frames for the reverse complement.
<i>GeneticCodeValue</i>	Genetic code name. Enter a code number or a code name from the table see .
<i>MinimumLengthValue</i>	Property to set the minimum number of codons in an ORF.

seqshoworfs

<i>AlternativeStartCodonsValue</i>	Property to control using alternative start codons. Enter either true or false. The default value is false.
<i>ColorValue</i>	<p>Property to select the color for highlighting the reading frame. Enter either a 1-by-3 RGB vector specifying the intensity (0 to 255) of the red, green, and blue components of the color, or a character from the following list: 'b'—blue, 'g'—green, 'r'—red, 'c'—cyan, 'm'—magenta, or 'y'—yellow.</p> <p>To specify different colors for the three reading frames, use a 1-by-3 cell array of color values. If you are displaying reverse complement reading frames, then COLOR should be a 1-by-6 cell array of color values.</p>
<i>ColumnsValue</i>	Property to specify the number of columns in the output.

Description

seqshoworfs identifies and highlights all open reading frames using the standard or an alternative genetic code.

seqshoworfs(*SeqNT*) displays the sequence with all open reading frames highlighted, and it returns a structure of start and stop positions for each ORF in each reading frame. The standard genetic code is used with start codon 'AUG' and stop codons 'UAA', 'UAG', and 'UGA'.

seqshoworfs(*SeqNT*, ... '*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls seqshoworfs with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`seqshoworfs(SeqNT, ... 'Frames', FramesValue, ...)` specifies the reading frames to display. The default is to display the first, second, and third reading frames with ORFs highlighted in each frame.

`seqshoworfs(SeqNT, ... 'GeneticCode', GeneticCodeValue, ...)` specifies the genetic code to use for finding open reading frames.

`seqshoworfs(SeqNT, ... 'MinimumLength', MinimumLengthValue, ...)` sets the minimum number of codons for an ORF to be considered valid. The default value is 10.

`seqshoworfs(SeqNT, ... 'AlternativeStartCodons', AlternativeStartCodonsValue, ...)` uses alternative start codons if `AlternativeStartCodons` is set to true. For example, in the human mitochondrial genetic code, AUA and AUU are known to be alternative start codons. For more details on alternative start codons, see

<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Taxonomy/Utils/wprintgc.cgi?mode=t#SG1>

`seqshoworfs(SeqNT, ... 'Color', ColorValue, ...)` selects the color used to highlight the open reading frames in the output display. The default color scheme is blue for the first reading frame, red for the second, and green for the third frame.

`seqshoworfs(SeqNT, ... 'Columns', ColumnsValue, ...)` specifies how many columns per line to use in the output. The default value is 64.

Examples

Look for the open reading frames in a random nucleotide sequence.

```
s = randseq(200, 'alphabet', 'dna');
seqshoworfs(s);
```

seqshoworfs



```
Open Reading Frames
Frame 1
000001
TAGCTTCATCGTTGACTTCTACTAAAAGCAAGCTCCTGAGTAGCTGGCCAAGCGAGCTTGCTTG
000065
TGCCCGGCTGCGGCGGTTGTATCCTGAATACGCCATGCGCCAGTGGACTGCGTAGACCTATTTT
000129
CCAGCTGCGCCTGATGAAGGGCGCAACACGAAGGAAAGACGGGACCCAGGGCGACGTCCTATTAA
000193  AAGATAAT

Frame 2
000001
TAGCTTCATCGTTGACTTCTACTAAAAGCAAGCTCCTGAGTAGCTGGCCAAGCGAGCTTGCTTG
000065
TGCCCGGCTGCGGCGGTTGTATCCTGAATACGCCATGCGCCAGTGGACTGCGTAGACCTATTTT
000129
CCAGCTGCGCCTGATGAAGGGCGCAACACGAAGGAAAGACGGGACCCAGGGCGACGTCCTATTAA
000193  AAGATAAT

Frame 3
000001
TAGCTTCATCGTTGACTTCTACTAAAAGCAAGCTCCTGAGTAGCTGGCCAAGCGAGCTTGCTTG
000065
TGCCCGGCTGCGGCGGTTGTATCCTGAATACGCCATGCGCCAGTGGACTGCGTAGACCTATTTT
000129
CCAGCTGCGCCTGATGAAGGGCGCAACACGAAGGAAAGACGGGACCCAGGGCGACGTCCTATTAA
000193  AAGATAAT
```

Identify the open reading frames in a GenBank sequence.

```
HLA_DQB1 = getgenbank('NM_002123');  
seqshoworfs(HLA_DQB1.Sequence);
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `codoncount`, `cpgisland`, `geneticcode`, `seqdisp`, `seqshowwords`, `seqtool`, `seqwordcount`

MATLAB function: `regexp`

seqshowwords

Purpose Graphically display words in sequence

Syntax
`seqshowwords(Seq, Word)`
`seqshowwords(Seq, Word, ...'Color', ColorValue, ...)`
`seqshowwords(Seq, Word, ...'Columns', ColumnsValue, ...)`
`seqshowwords(Seq, Word, ...'Alphabet', AlphabetValue, ...)`

Arguments

<i>Seq</i>	Enter either a nucleotide or amino acid sequence. You can also enter a structure with the field <code>Sequence</code> .
<i>Word</i>	Enter a short character sequence.
<i>ColorValue</i>	Property to select the color for highlighted characters. Enter a 1-by-3 RGB vector specifying the intensity (0 255) of the red, green, and blue components, or enter a character from the following list: 'b'—blue, 'g'—green, 'r'—red, 'c'—cyan, 'm'—magenta, or 'y'—yellow. The default color is red 'r'.
<i>ColumnsValue</i>	Property to specify the number of characters in a line. Default value is 64.
<i>AlphabetValue</i>	Property to select the alphabet. Enter 'AA' for amino acid sequences or 'NT' for nucleotide sequences. The default is 'NT'.

Description `seqshowwords(Seq, Word)` displays the sequence with all occurrences of a word highlighted, and returns a structure with the start and stop positions for all occurrences of the word in the sequence.

`seqshowwords(Seq, Word, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `seqshowwords` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must

be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`seqshowwords(Seq, Word, ... 'Color', ColorValue, ...)` selects the color used to highlight the words in the output display.

`seqshowwords(Seq, Word, ... 'Columns', ColumnsValue, ...)` specifies how many columns per line to use in the output.

`seqshowwords(Seq, Word, ... 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue, ...)` selects the alphabet for the sequence (*Seq*) and the word (*Word*).

If the search work (*Word*) contains nucleotide or amino acid symbols that represent multiple possible symbols, then `seqshowwords` shows all matches. For example, the symbol R represents either G or A (purines). If *Word* is 'ART', then `seqshowwords` shows occurrences of both 'AAT' and 'AGT'.

Examples

This example shows two matches, 'TAGT' and 'TAAT', for the word 'BART'.

```
seqshowwords('GCTAGTAACGTATATATAAT', 'BART')
```

```
ans =
  Start: [3 17]
  Stop: [6 20]
```

```
000001 GCTAGTAACGTATATATAAT
```

`seqshowwords` does not highlight overlapping patterns multiple times. This example highlights two places, the first occurrence of 'TATA' and the 'TATATATA' immediately after 'CG'. The final 'TA' is not highlighted because the preceding 'TA' is part of an already matched pattern.

```
seqshowwords('GCTATAACGTATATATATA', 'TATA')
```

```
ans =
  Start: [3 10 14]
```

seqshowwords

```
Stop: [6 13 17]
```

```
000001 GCTATAACGTATATATATA
```

To highlight all multiple repeats of TA, use the regular expression 'TA(TA)*TA'.

```
seqshowwords('GCTATAACGTATATATATA', 'TA(TA)*TA')
```

```
ans =
```

```
Start: [3 10]
```

```
Stop: [6 19]
```

```
000001 GCTATAACGTATATATATA
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `palindromes`, `cleave`, `restrict`, `seqdisp`, `seqtool`, `seqwordcount`

MATLAB functions: `strfind`, `regexp`

Purpose

Open tool to interactively explore biological sequences

Syntax

```
seqtool(Seq)
seqtool(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
seqtool(..., 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue)
```

Arguments

Seq Struct with a field *Sequence*, a character array, or a file name with an extension of *.gbk*, *.gpt*, *.fasta*, *.fa*, or *.ebi*

Description

`seqtool(Seq)` loads a sequence (*Seq*) into the seqtool GUI.

`seqtool(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`seqtool(..., 'Alphabet', AlphabetValue)` specifies an alphabet (*AlphabetValue*) for the sequence (*Seq*). Default is 'AA', except when all of the symbols in the sequence are A, C, G, T, and -, then *AlphabetValue* is set to 'NT'. Use 'AA' when you want to force an amino acid sequence alphabet.

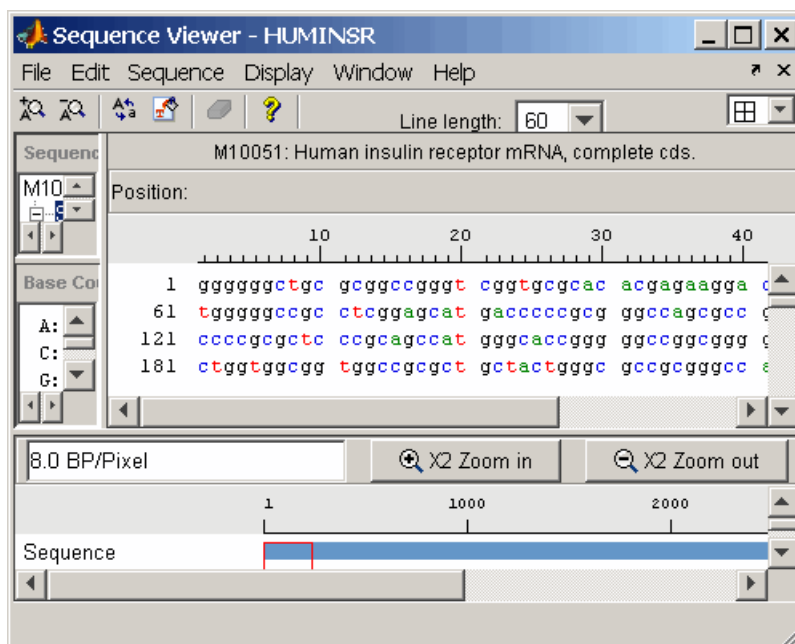
Example

- 1 Get a sequence from Genbank.

```
S = getgenbank('M10051')
```

- 2 Open the sequence tool window with the sequence.

```
seqtool(S)
```



See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: aa2nt, aacount, aminolookup, basecount, baselookup, dimercount, emblread, fastaread, fastawrite, genbankread, geneticcode, genpeptread, getembl, getgenbank, getgenpept, nt2aa, proteinplot, seqcomplement, seqdisp, seqrcomplement, seqreverse, seqshoworfs, seqshowwords, seqwordcount

Purpose Count number of occurrences of word in sequence

Syntax seqwordcount (Seq, Word)

Arguments

Seq	Enter a nucleotide or amino acid sequence of characters. You can also enter a structure with the field Sequence.
Word	Enter a short sequence of characters.

Description

seqwordcount (Seq, Word) counts the number of times that a word appears in a sequence, and then returns the number of occurrences of that word.

If Word contains nucleotide or amino acid symbols that represent multiple possible symbols (ambiguous characters), then seqwordcount counts all matches. For example, the symbol R represents either G or A (purines). For another example, if word equals 'ART', then seqwordcount counts occurrences of both 'AAT' and 'AGT'.

Examples

seqwordcount does not count overlapping patterns multiple times. In the following example, seqwordcount reports three matches. TATATATA is counted as two distinct matches, not three overlapping occurrences.

```
seqwordcount ('GCTATAACGTATATATAT', 'TATA')  
  
ans =  
    3
```

The following example reports two matches ('TAGT' and 'TAAT'). B is the ambiguous code for G, T, or C, while R is an ambiguous code for G and A.

```
seqwordcount ('GCTAGTAACGTATATATAAT', 'BART')  
  
ans =  
    2
```

seqwordcount

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions `codoncount`, `seqshoworfs`,
`seqshowwords`, `seqtool`, `seq2regex`

MATLAB functions `strfind`

Purpose Sequence alignment with color

Syntax

```
showalignment(Alignment)
showalignment(Alignment, ...'MatchColor',
MatchColorValue, ...)
showalignment(Alignment,
... 'SimilarColor' SimilarColorValue,
...)
showalignment(Alignment, ...'StartPointers',
StartPointersValue, ...)
showalignment(Alignment, ...'Columns', ColumnsValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>Alignment</i>	For pairwise alignments, matches and similar residues are highlighted and <i>Alignment</i> is the output from one of the functions <code>nwalign</code> or <code>swalign</code> . For multiple sequence alignment highly conserved columns are highlighted and <i>Alignment</i> is the output from the function <code>multialign</code> .
<i>MatchColorValue</i>	Property to select the color to highlight matching characters. Enter a 1-by-N RGB vector specifying the intensity (0 to 255) of the red, green, and blue components, or enter a character from the following list: 'b' – blue, 'g' – green, 'r' – red, 'c' – cyan, 'm' – magenta, or 'y' – yellow. The default color is red, 'r'.
<i>SimilarColorValue</i>	Property to select the color to highlight similar characters. Enter a 1-by-3 RGB vector or color character. The default color is magenta.

showalignment

<i>StartersPointersValue</i>	Property to specify the starting indices of the aligned sequences. <i>StartPointers</i> is the two element vector returned as the third output of the function <i>swalign</i> .
<i>ColumnsValue</i>	Property to specify the number of characters in a line. Enter the number of characters to display in one row. The default value is 64.

Description

`showalignment(Alignment)` displays an alignment in a MATLAB figure window.

`showalignment(Alignment, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `showalignment` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`showalignment(Alignment, ...'MatchColor', MatchColorValue, ...)` selects the color to highlight the matches in the output display. The default color is red. For example, to use cyan, enter 'c' or [0 255 255].

`showalignment(Alignment, ...'SimilarColor', SimilarColorValue, ...)` selects the color to highlight similar residues that are not exact matches. The default color is magenta.

The following options are only available when showing pairwise alignments:

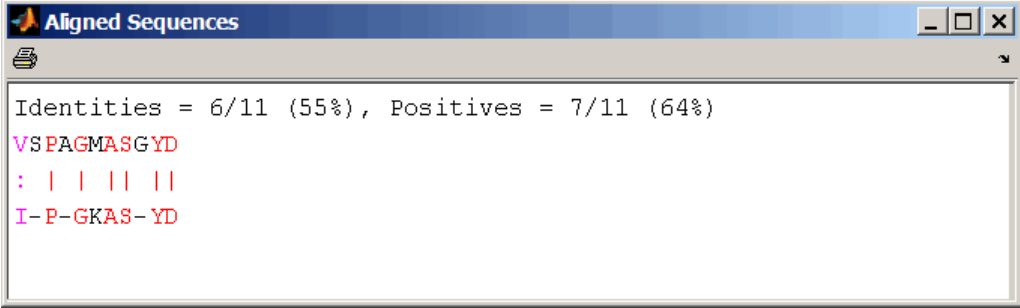
`showalignment(Alignment, ...'StartPointers', StartPointersValue, ...)` specifies the starting indices in the original sequences of a local alignment.

`showalignment(Alignment, ...'Columns', ColumnsValue, ...)` specifies how many columns per line to use in the output, and labels the start of each row with the sequence positions.

Examples

Enter two amino acid sequences and show their alignment.

```
[Score, Alignment] = nalign('VSPAGMASGYD','IPGKASYD');  
showalignment(Alignment);
```



```
Aligned Sequences  
Identities = 6/11 (55%), Positives = 7/11 (64%)  
VSPAGMASGYD  
: | | | | |  
I-P-GKAS-YD
```

Enter a multiply aligned set of sequences and show their alignment.

```
gag = multialignread('aagag.aln');  
showalignment(gag)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `nalign`, `swalign`

showhmmprof

Purpose Plot Hidden Markov Model (HMM) profile

Syntax

```
showhmmprof(Model)  
showhmmprof(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)  
showhmmprof(..., 'Scale', ScaleValue)  
showhmmprof(..., 'Order', OrderValue)
```

Arguments

<i>Model</i>	Hidden Markov model created by the function gethmmprof or pfamhmmread.
<i>ScaleValue</i>	Property to select a probability scale. Enter one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 'logprob' — Log probabilities• 'prob' — Probabilities• 'logodds' — Log-odd ratios
<i>OrderValue</i>	Property to specify the order of the amino acid alphabet. Enter a character string with the 20 standard amino acids characters A R N D C Q E G H I L K M F P S T W Y V. The ambiguous characters B Z X are not allowed.

Description showhmmprof(*Model*) plots a profile hidden Markov model described by the structure *Model*.

showhmmprof(..., '*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*,...) defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

showhmmprof(..., 'Scale', *ScaleValue*) specifies the scale to use. If log probabilities (*ScaleValue*='logprob'), probabilities (*ScaleValue*='prob'), or log-odd ratios (*ScaleValue*='logodds'). To compute the log-odd ratios, the null model probabilities are used for symbol emission and equally distributed transitions are used for the null transition probabilities. The default *ScaleValue* is 'logprob'.

showhmmprof(..., 'Order', *OrderValue*) specifies the order in which the symbols are arranged along the vertical axis. This option

allows you reorder the alphabet and group the symbols according to their properties.

Examples

- 1 Load a model example.

```
model = pfamhmmread('pf00002.ls')
```

- 2 Plot the profile.

```
showhmmprof(model, 'Scale', 'logodds')
```

- 3 Order the alphabet by hydrophobicity.

```
hydrophobic = 'IVLFCMAGTSWYPHNDQEKR'
```

- 4 Plot the profile.

```
showhmmprof(model, 'Order', hydrophobic)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `gethmmprof`, `hmmprofalign`, `hmmprofestimate`, `hmmprofgenerate`, `hmmprofstruct`, `pfamhmmread`

sptread

Purpose Read data from SPOT file

Syntax
`SPOTData = sptread(File)`
`SPOTData = sptread(File, 'CleanColNames',
CleanColNamesValue)`

Arguments

File Either of the following:

- String specifying a file name, a path and file name, or a URL pointing to a file. The referenced file is a SPOT-formatted file (ASCII text file). If you specify only a file name, that file must be on the MATLAB search path or in the MATLAB Current Directory.
- MATLAB character array that contains the text of a SPOT-formatted file.

CleanColNamesValue Property to control using valid MATLAB variable names.

Description

`SPOTData = sptread(File)` reads a SPOT formatted file, *File*, and creates a MATLAB structure, *SPOTData*, containing the following fields:

Header
Data
Blocks
Columns
Rows
IDs
ColumnNames
Indices
Shape

`SPOTData = sptread(File, 'CleanColNames', CleanColNamesValue)` The column names in the SPOT file contain periods and some characters that cannot be used in MATLAB variable names. If you plan to use the column names as variable names in a function, use this option with `CleanColNames` set to `true` and the function will return the field `ColumnNames` with valid variable names.

The `Indices` field of the structure includes the MATLAB indices that you can use for plotting heat maps of the data.

Examples

- 1 Read in a sample SPOT file and plot the median foreground intensity for the 635 nm channel. Note that the example file `spotdata.txt` is not provided with Bioinformatics Toolbox.

```
spotStruct = sptread('spotdata.txt')
mimage(spotStruct, 'Rmedian');
```

- 2 Alternatively, create a similar plot using more basic graphics commands.

```
Rmedian = magetfield(spotStruct, 'Rmedian');
imagesc(Rmedian(spotStruct.Indices));
colormap bone
colorbar
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `affyread`, `agferead`, `celintensityread`, `geosoftread`, `gprread`, `imageneread`, `maboxplot`, `magetfield`

svmclassify

Purpose Classify data using support vector machine

Syntax `Group = svmclassify(SVMStruct, Sample)`
`Group = svmclassify(SVMStruct, Sample, 'Showplot', ShowplotValue)`

Description `Group = svmclassify(SVMStruct, Sample)` classifies each row of the data in `Sample` using the information in a support vector machine classifier structure `SVMStruct`, created using the `svmtrain` function. `Sample` must have the same number of columns as the data used to train the classifier in `svmtrain`. `Group` indicates the group to which each row of `Sample` has been assigned.

`Group = svmclassify(SVMStruct, Sample, 'Showplot', ShowplotValue)` controls the plotting of the sample data in the figure created using the `Showplot` property with the `svmtrain` function.

Examples

- 1 Load the sample data, which includes Fisher's iris data of 5 measurements on a sample of 150 irises.

```
load fisheriris
```

- 2 Create data, a two-column matrix containing sepal length and sepal width measurements for 150 irises.

```
data = [meas(:,1), meas(:,2)];
```

- 3 From the species vector, create a new column vector, `groups`, to classify data into two groups: Setosa and non-Setosa.

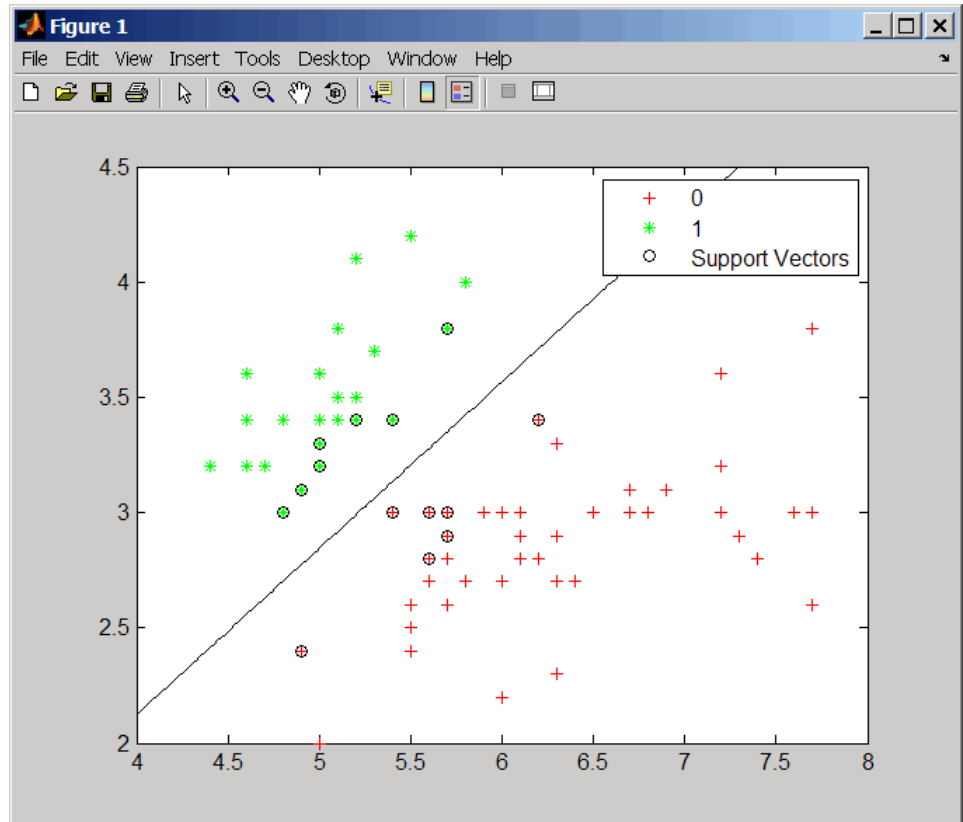
```
groups = ismember(species, 'setosa');
```

- 4 Randomly select training and test sets.

```
[train, test] = crossvalind('holdOut', groups);  
cp = classperf(groups);
```

- 5 Use the `svmtrain` function to train an SVM classifier using a linear kernel function and plot the grouped data.

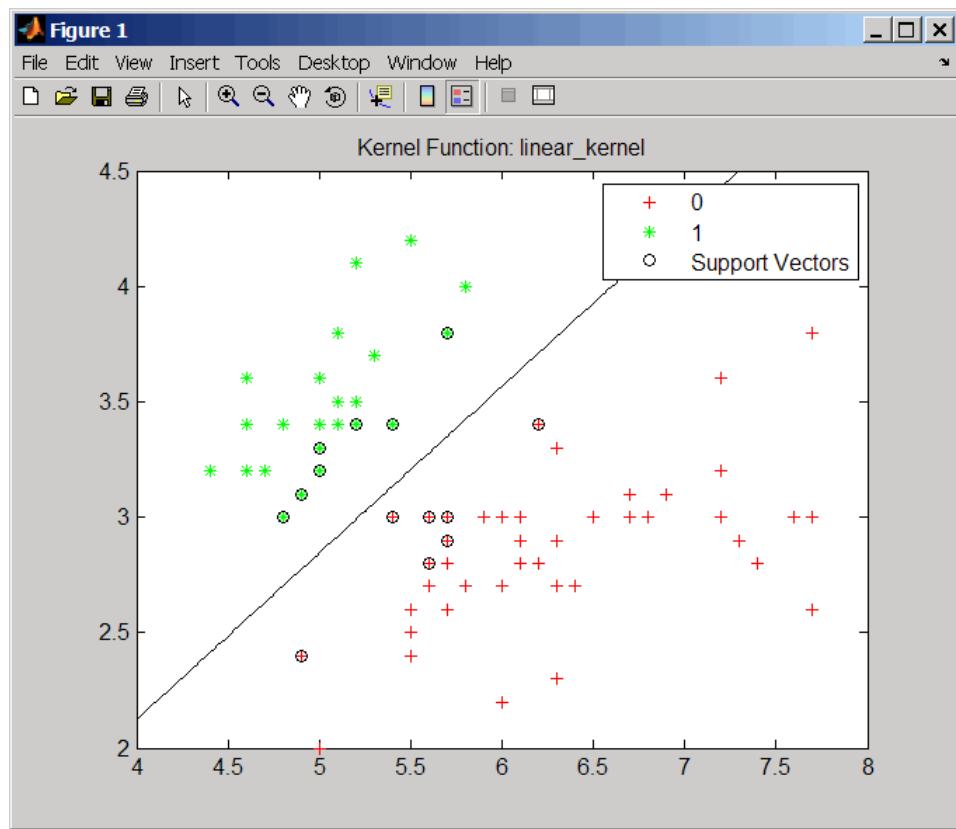
```
svmStruct = svmtrain(data(train,:),groups(train),'showplot',true);
```



- 6 Add a title to the plot, using the `KernelFunction` field from the `svmStruct` structure as the title.

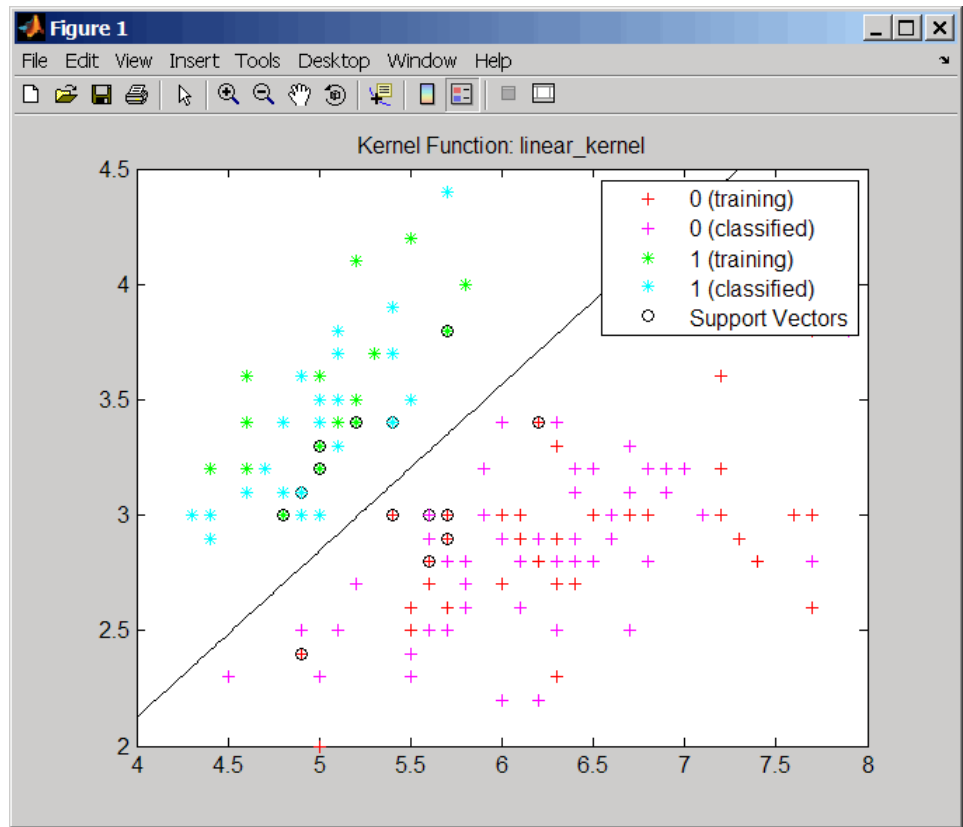
```
title(sprintf('Kernel Function: %s',...
             func2str(svmStruct.KernelFunction)),...
       'interpreter','none');
```

svmclassify



7 Classify the test set using a support vector machine.

```
classes = svmclassify(svmStruct,data(test,:), 'showplot', true);
```



8 Evaluate the performance of the classifier.

```
classperf(cp, classes, test);
cp.CorrectRate
```

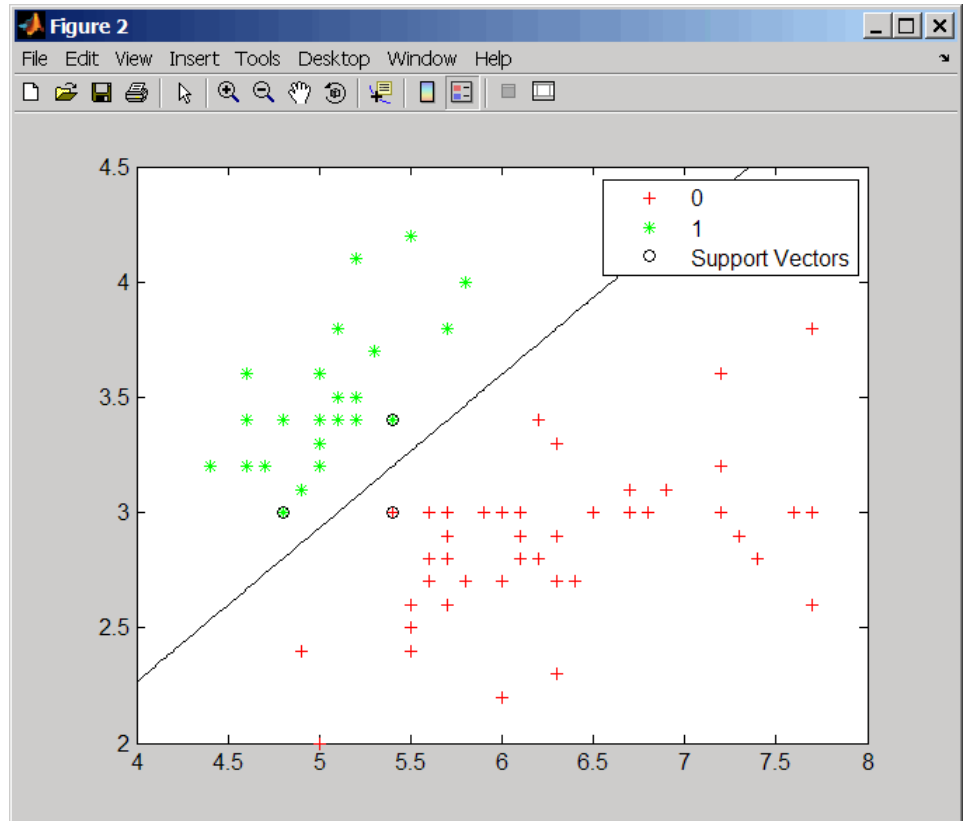
```
ans =
```

```
0.9867
```

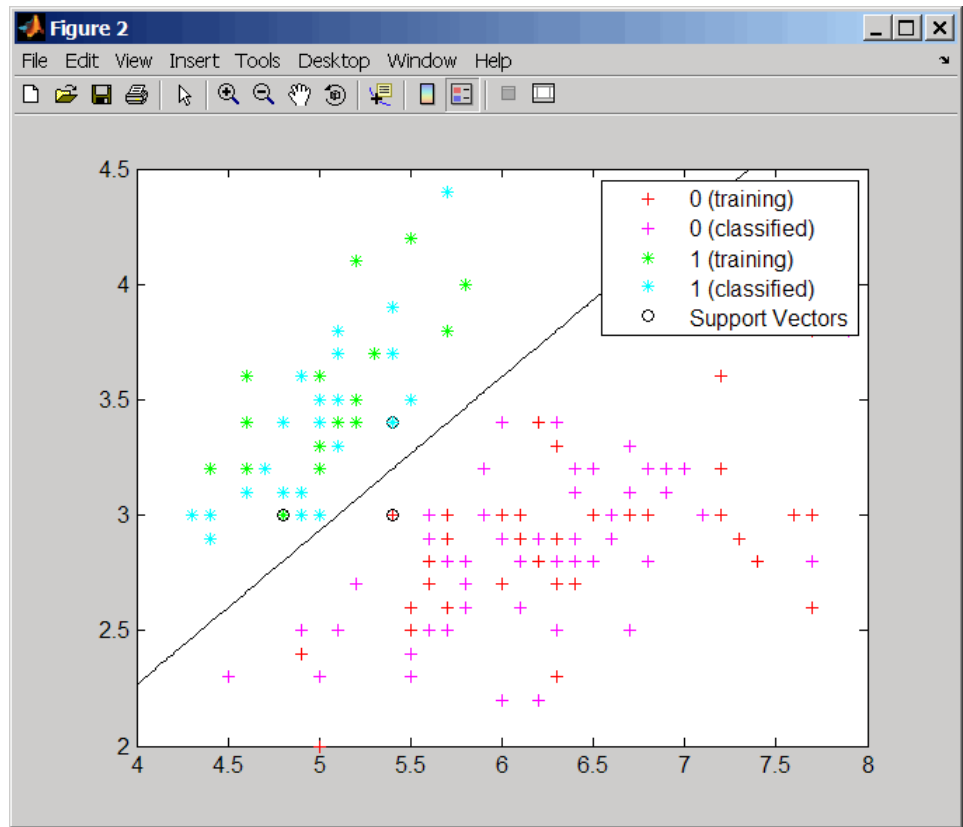
9 Use a one-norm, hard margin support vector machine classifier by changing the boxconstraint property.

svmclassify

```
figure
svmStruct = svmtrain(data(train,:),groups(train),...
                    'showplot',true,'boxconstraint',1e6);
```



```
classes = svmclassify(svmStruct,data(test,:), 'showplot',true);
```



10 Evaluate the performance of the classifier.

```
classperf(cp,classes,test);  
cp.CorrectRate
```

```
ans =
```

```
0.9867
```

References

- [1] Kecman, V., Learning and Soft Computing, MIT Press, Cambridge, MA. 2001.
- [2] Suykens, J.A.K., Van Gestel, T., De Brabanter, J., De Moor, B., and Vandewalle, J., Least Squares Support Vector Machines, World Scientific, Singapore, 2002.
- [3] Scholkopf, B., and Smola, A.J., Learning with Kernels, MIT Press, Cambridge, MA. 2002.
- [4] Cristianini, N., and Shawe-Taylor, J. (2000). An Introduction to Support Vector Machines and Other Kernel-based Learning Methods, First Edition (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press). <http://www.support-vector.net/>

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `classperf`, `crossvalind`, `knnclassify`, `svmtrain`

Statistics Toolbox function: `classify`

Optimization Toolbox function: `quadprog`

Purpose Create or edit Sequential Minimal Optimization (SMO) options structure

Syntax

```
SMO_OptsStruct = svmsmoset('Property1Name', Property1Value,
    'Property2Name', Property2Value, ...)
SMO_OptsStruct = svmsmoset(OldOpts, 'Property1Name',
    Property1Value, 'Property2Name', Property2Value, ...)
SMO_OptsStruct = svmsmoset(OldOpts, NewOpts)
```

Arguments

<i>OldOpts</i>	Structure that specifies options used by the SMO method used by the svmtrain function.
<i>NewOpts</i>	Structure that specifies options used by the SMO method used by the svmtrain function.

<i>PropertyName</i>	Description of <i>PropertyValue</i>
TolKKT	Value that specifies the tolerance with which the KKT conditions are checked. KKT conditions are Karush-Kuhn-Tucker conditions. Default is 1.0000e-003.
MaxIter	Integer that specifies the maximum number of iterations of the main loop. If this limit is exceeded before the algorithm converges, then the algorithm stops and returns an error. Default is 1500.

<i>PropertyName</i>	<i>Description of PropertyValue</i>
Display	String that specifies the level of information about the optimization iterations that is displayed as the algorithm runs. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>off</code> — Default. Reports nothing. • <code>iter</code> — Reports every 10 iterations. • <code>final</code> — Reports only when the algorithm finishes.
KKTViolationLevel	Value that specifies the fraction of variables allowed to violate the KKT conditions. Choices are any value ≥ 0 and < 1 . Default is 0. For example, if you set <code>KKTViolationLevel</code> to 0.05, then 5% of the variables are allowed to violate the KKT conditions. <hr/> <p>Tip Set this option to a positive value to help the algorithm converge if it is fluctuating near a good solution.</p> <hr/> <p>For more information on KKT conditions, see Cristianini, et al. 2000.</p>
KernelCacheLimit	Value that specifies the size of the kernel matrix cache. The algorithm keeps a matrix with up to <code>KernelCacheLimit</code> \times <code>KernelCacheLimit</code> double-precision, floating-point numbers in memory. Default is 7500.

Return Values

SMO_OptsStruct Structure that specifies options used by the SMO method used by the `svmtrain` function.

Description

`SMO_OptsStruct = svmsmoset('Property1Name', Property1Value, 'Property2Name', Property2Value, ...)` creates `SMO_OptsStruct`, an SMO options structure from the specified inputs. This structure can be used as input for the `svmtrain` function.

`SMO_OptsStruct = svmsmoset(OldOpts, 'Property1Name', Property1Value, 'Property2Name', Property2Value, ...)` alters the options in `OldOpts`, an existing SMO options structure, with the specified inputs, creating a new output options structure.

`SMO_OptsStruct = svmsmoset(OldOpts, NewOpts)` alters the options in `OldOpts`, an existing SMO options structure, with the options specified in `NewOpts`, another SMO options structure, creating a new output options structure.

Examples

- 1 Create an SMO options structure and specify the `Display`, `MaxIter`, and `KernelCacheLimit` properties.

```
opts = svmsmoset('Display','final','MaxIter',200,...
                'KernelCacheLimit',1000)
```

```
opts =
```

```

                Display: 'final'
                TolKKT: 1.0000e-003
                MaxIter: 200
KKTViolationLevel: 0
KernelCacheLimit: 1000
```

- 2 Create an alternate SMO options structure from the previous structure. Specify different `Display` and `KKTViolationLevel` properties.

```
alt_opts = svmsmoset(opts,'Display','iter','KKTViolationLevel',.05)
```

```
alt_opts =
```

```
Display: 'iter'
```

TolKKT: 1.0000e-003
MaxIter: 200
KKTViolationLevel: 0.0500
KernelCacheLimit: 1000

References

- [1] Cristianini, N., and Shawe-Taylor, J. (2000). An Introduction to Support Vector Machines and Other Kernel-based Learning Methods, First Edition (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press). <http://www.support-vector.net/>
- [2] Platt, J.C. (1999). Sequential Minimal Optimization: A Fast Algorithm for Training Support Vector Machines. In Advances in Kernel Methods - Support Vector Learning, B. Scholkopf, J.C. Burges, and A.J. Smola, eds. (Cambridge MA: MIT Press), pp. 185–208.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `svmclassify`, `svmtrain`
Optimization Toolbox functions: `optimset`

Purpose

Train support vector machine classifier

Syntax

```
SVMStruct = svmtrain(Training, Group)
SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'Kernel_Function',
Kernel_FunctionValue, ...)
SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'RBF_Sigma', RBFSigmaValue, ...)
SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'Polyorder', PolyorderValue, ...)
SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'Mlp_Params',
Mlp_ParamsValue, ...)
SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'Method', MethodValue, ...)
SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'QuadProg_Opts',
QuadProg_OptsValue, ...)
SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'SMO_Opts', SMO_OptsValue, ...)
SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'BoxConstraint',
BoxConstraintValue, ...)
SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'Autoscale', AutoscaleValue, ...)
SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'Showplot', ShowplotValue, ...)
```

Arguments

Training

Matrix of training data, where each row corresponds to an observation or replicate, and each column corresponds to a feature or variable.

Group

Column vector, character array, or cell array of strings for classifying data in *Training* into two groups. It has the same number of elements as there are rows in *Training*. Each element specifies the group to which the corresponding row in *Training* belongs.

<i>Kernel_FunctionValue</i>	String or function handle specifying the kernel function that maps the training data into kernel space. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>linear</code> — Default. Linear kernel or dot product.• <code>quadratic</code> — Quadratic kernel.• <code>rbf</code> — Gaussian Radial Basis Function kernel with a default scaling factor, <code>sigma</code>, of 1.• <code>polynomial</code> — Polynomial kernel with a default order of 3.• <code>mlp</code> — Multilayer Perceptron kernel with default scale and bias parameters of [1, -1].• <code>@functionname</code> — Handle to a kernel function specified using <code>@</code> and the <code>functionname</code>. For example, <code>@kfun</code>, or an anonymous function.
<i>RBFSigmaValue</i>	Positive number that specifies the scaling factor, <code>sigma</code> , in the radial basis function kernel. Default is 1.
<i>PolyorderValue</i>	Positive number that specifies the order of a polynomial kernel. Default is 3.
<i>Mlp_ParamsValue</i>	Two-element vector, [p1, p2], that specifies the scale and bias parameters of the multilayer perceptron (mlp) kernel. $K = \tanh(p1*U*V' + p2)$. p1 must be > 0, and p2 must be < 0. Default is [1, -1].

MethodValue

String specifying the method to find the separating hyperplane. Choices are:

- QP — Quadratic Programming (requires Optimization Toolbox). The classifier is a two-norm, soft-margin support vector machine.
- SMO — Sequential Minimal Optimization. The classifier is a one-norm, soft-margin support vector machine.
- LS — Least-Squares.

If you installed Optimization Toolbox, the QP method is the default. Otherwise, the SMO method is the default.

QuadProg_OptsValue

An options structure created by the `optimset` function (Optimization Toolbox). This structure specifies options used by the QP method. For more information on creating this structure, see the `optimset` and `quadprog` reference pages.

SMO_OptsValue

An options structure created by the `svmsmoset` function. This structure specifies options used by the SMO method. For more information on creating this structure, see the `svmsmoset` function.

<i>BoxConstraintValue</i>	<p>Box constraints for the soft margin. Choices are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Strictly positive numeric scalar.• Array of strictly positive values with the number of elements equal to the number of rows in the <i>Training</i> matrix. <p>If <i>BoxConstraintValue</i> is a scalar, it is automatically rescaled by $N/(2*N1)$ for the data points of group one and by $N/(2*N2)$ for the data points of group two. $N1$ is the number of elements in group one, $N2$ is the number of elements in group two, and $N = N1 + N2$. This rescaling is done to take into account unbalanced groups, that is cases where $N1$ and $N2$ have very different values.</p> <p>If <i>BoxConstraintValue</i> is an array, then each array element is taken as a box constraint for the data point with the same index.</p> <p>Default is a scalar value of 1.</p>
<i>AutoscaleValue</i>	<p>Controls the shifting and scaling of data points before training. When <i>AutoscaleValue</i> is true, the columns of the input data matrix <i>Training</i> are shifted to zero mean and scaled to unit variance. Default is false.</p>
<i>ShowplotValue</i>	<p>Controls the display of a plot of the grouped data, including the separating line for the classifier, when using two-dimensional data. Choices are true or false (default).</p>

Return Values*SVMStruct*

Structure containing information about the trained SVM classifier, including the following fields:

- SupportVectors
- Alpha
- Bias
- KernelFunction
- KernelFunctionArgs
- GroupNames
- SupportVectorIndices
- ScaleData
- FigureHandles

Tip You can use *SVMStruct* as input to the `svmclassify` function, to use for classification.

Description

SVMStruct = `svmtrain(Training, Group)` trains a support vector machine (SVM) classifier using *Training*, a matrix of training data taken from two groups, specified by *Group*. `svmtrain` treats NaNs or empty strings in *Group* as missing values and ignores the corresponding rows of *Training*. Information about the trained SVM classifier is returned in *SVMStruct*, a structure with the following fields.

- SupportVectors
- Alpha
- Bias
- KernelFunction

- KernelFunctionArgs
- GroupNames
- SupportVectorIndices
- ScaleData
- FigureHandles

SVMStruct = svmtrain(*Training*, *Group*, ...'*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls svmtrain with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'Kernel_Function', *Kernel_FunctionValue*, ...) specifies the kernel function (*Kernel_FunctionValue*) that maps the training data into kernel space. *Kernel_FunctionValue* can be one of the following strings or a function handle:

- linear — Default. Linear kernel or dot product.
- quadratic — Quadratic kernel.
- rbf — Gaussian Radial Basis Function kernel with a default scaling factor, sigma, of 1.
- polynomial — Polynomial kernel with a default order of 3.
- mlp — Multilayer Perceptron kernel with default scale and bias parameters of [1, -1].
- @functionname — Handle to a kernel function specified using @and the functionname. For example, @kfun, or an anonymous function.

A kernel function must be of the following form:

```
function K = kfun(U, V)
```

Input arguments U and V are matrices with m and n rows respectively. Return value K is an m -by- n matrix. If $kfun$ is parameterized, you can use anonymous functions to capture the problem-dependent parameters. For example, suppose that your kernel function is:

```
function K = kfun(U,V,P1,P2)
K = tanh(P1*(U*V')+P2);
```

You can set values for $P1$ and $P2$ and then use an anonymous function as follows:

```
@(U,V) kfun(U,V,P1,P2)
```

For more information on the types of functions that can be used as kernel functions, see Cristianini and Shawe-Taylor, 2000.

`SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'RBF_Sigma', RBFSigmaValue, ...)` specifies the scaling factor, σ , in the radial basis function kernel. *RBFSigmaValue* must be a positive number. Default is 1.

`SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'Polyorder', PolyorderValue, ...)` specifies the order of a polynomial kernel. *PolyorderValue* must be a positive number. Default is 3.

`SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'Mlp_Params', Mlp_ParamsValue, ...)` specifies the scale and bias parameters of the multilayer perceptron (mlp) kernel as a two-element vector, $[p1, p2]$. $K = \tanh(p1*U*V' + p2)$, $p1 > 0$, and $p2 < 0$. $p1$ must be > 0 , and $p2$ must be < 0 . Default is $[1, -1]$.

`SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'Method', MethodValue, ...)` specifies the method to find the separating hyperplane. Choices are:

- QP — Quadratic Programming (requires Optimization Toolbox). The classifier is a two-norm, soft-margin support vector machine.
- SMO — Sequential Minimal Optimization. The classifier is a one-norm, soft-margin support vector machine.
- LS — Least-Squares.

If you installed Optimization Toolbox, the QP method is the default. Otherwise, the SMO method is the default.

Note If you specify the QP method, the classifier is a two-norm, soft-margin support vector machine.

SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'QuadProg_Opts', *QuadProg_OptsValue*, ...) specifies an options structure created by the optimset function (Optimization Toolbox). This structure specifies options used by the QP method. For more information on creating this structure, see the optimset and quadprog functions.

SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'SMO_Opts', *SMO_OptsValue*, ...) specifies an options structure created by svmsmoset function. This structure specifies options used by the SMO method. For more information on creating this structure, see the svmsmoset function.

SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'BoxConstraint', *BoxConstraintValue*, ...) specifies box constraints for the soft margin. *BoxConstraintValue* can be either of the following:

- Strictly positive numeric scalar
- Array of strictly positive values with the number of elements equal to the number of rows in the *Training* matrix

If *BoxConstraintValue* is a scalar, it is automatically rescaled by $N/(2*N1)$ for the data points of group one and by $N/(2*N2)$ for the data points of group two. $N1$ is the number of elements in group one, $N2$ is the number of elements in group two, and $N = N1 + N2$. This rescaling is done to take into account unbalanced groups, that is cases where $N1$ and $N2$ have very different values.

If *BoxConstraintValue* is an array, then each array element is taken as a box constraint for the data point with the same index.

Default is a scalar value of 1.

`SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'Autoscale', AutoscaleValue, ...)` controls the shifting and scaling of data points before training. When `AutoscaleValue` is true, the columns of the input data matrix *Training* are shifted to zero mean and scaled to unit variance. Default is false.

`SVMStruct = svmtrain(..., 'Showplot', ShowplotValue, ...)`, controls the display of a plot of the grouped data, including the separating line for the classifier, when using two-dimensional data. Choices are true or false (default).

Memory Usage and Out of Memory Error

When you set 'Method' to 'QP', the `svmtrain` function operates on a data set containing N elements, it creates an $(N+1)$ -by- $(N+1)$ matrix to find the separating hyperplane. This matrix needs at least $8 * (n+1)^2$ bytes of contiguous memory. If this size of contiguous memory is not available, MATLAB displays an “out of memory” message.

When you set 'Method' to 'SMO', memory consumption is controlled by the SMO option `KernelCacheLimit`. For more information on the `KernelCacheLimit` option, see the `svmsmoset` function. The SMO algorithm stores only a submatrix of the kernel matrix, limited by the size specified by the `KernelCacheLimit` option. However, if the number of data points exceeds the size specified by the `KernelCacheLimit` option, the SMO algorithm slows down because it has to recalculate the kernel matrix elements.

When using `svmtrain` on large data sets, and you run out of memory or the optimization step is very time consuming, try either of the following:

- Use a smaller number of samples and use cross validation to test the performance of the classifier.
- Set 'Method' to 'SMO', and set the `KernelCacheLimit` option as large as your system permits. For information on setting the `KernelCacheLimit` option, see the `svmsmoset` function.

Tip If you set 'Method' to 'SMO', setting the 'BoxConstraint' property as small as possible will help the SMO algorithm run faster.

Examples

- 1 Load the sample data, which includes Fisher's iris data of 5 measurements on a sample of 150 irises.

```
load fisheriris
```

- 2 Create data, a two-column matrix containing sepal length and sepal width measurements for 150 irises.

```
data = [meas(:,1), meas(:,2)];
```

- 3 From the species vector, create a new column vector, groups, to classify data into two groups: Setosa and non-Setosa.

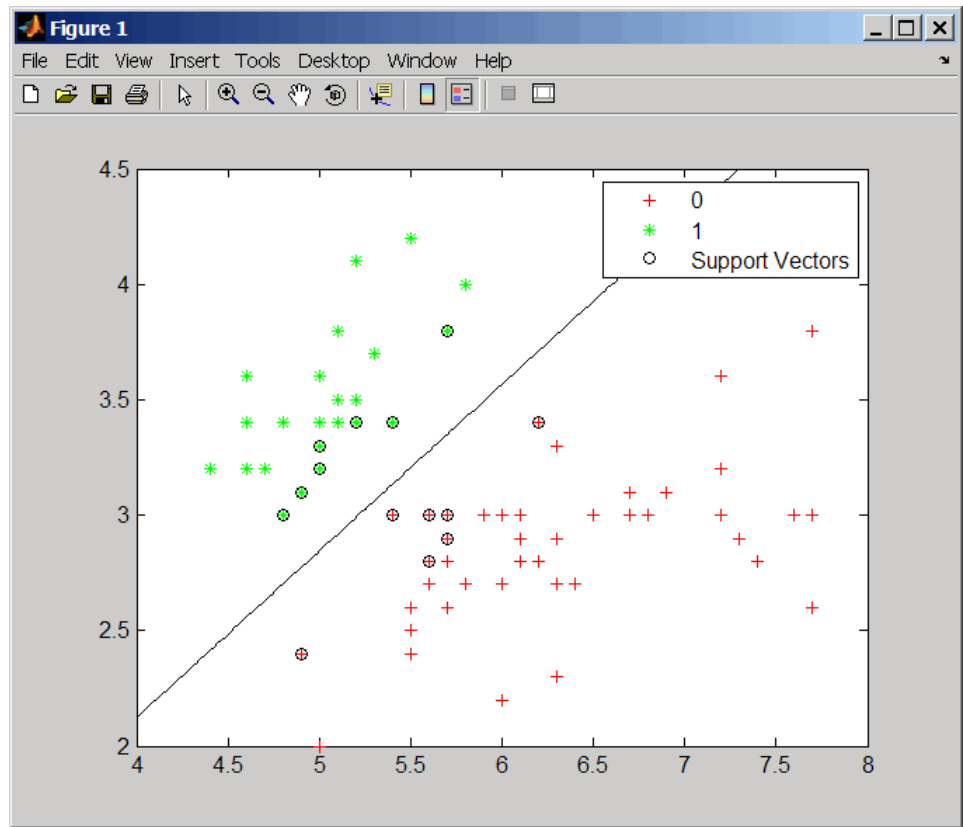
```
groups = ismember(species, 'setosa');
```

- 4 Randomly select training and test sets.

```
[train, test] = crossvalind('holdOut', groups);  
cp = classperf(groups);
```

- 5 Train an SVM classifier using a linear kernel function and plot the grouped data.

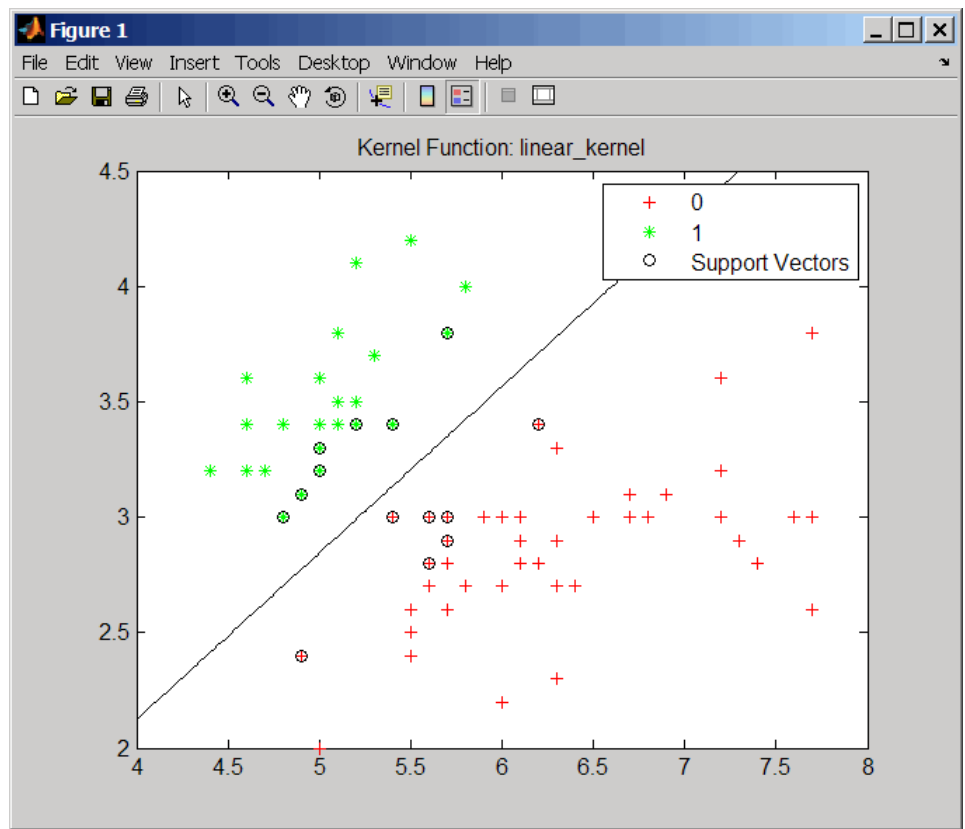
```
svmStruct = svmtrain(data(train,:), groups(train), 'showplot', true);
```



- 6 Add a title to the plot, using the KernelFunction field from the svmStruct structure as the title.

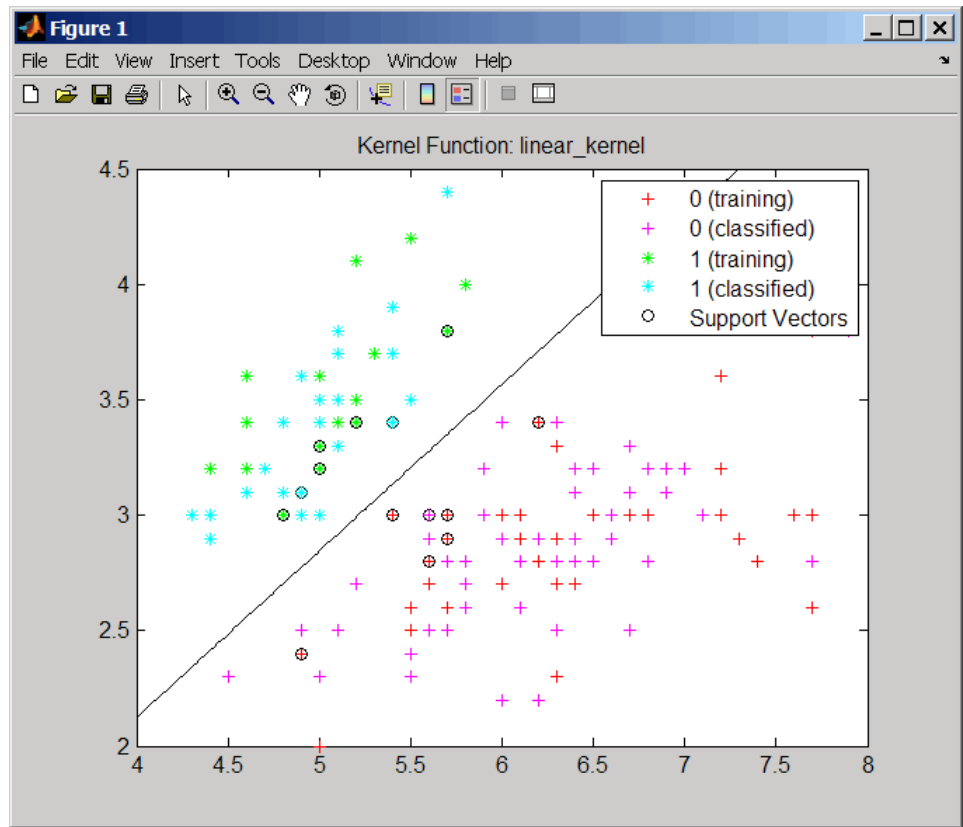
```
title(sprintf('Kernel Function: %s',...
             func2str(svmStruct.KernelFunction)),...
       'interpreter','none');
```

svmtrain



7 Use the `svmclassify` function to classify the test set.

```
classes = svmclassify(svmStruct,data(test,:), 'showplot', true);
```

8 Evaluate the performance of the classifier.

```
classperf(cp,classes,test);
cp.CorrectRate
```

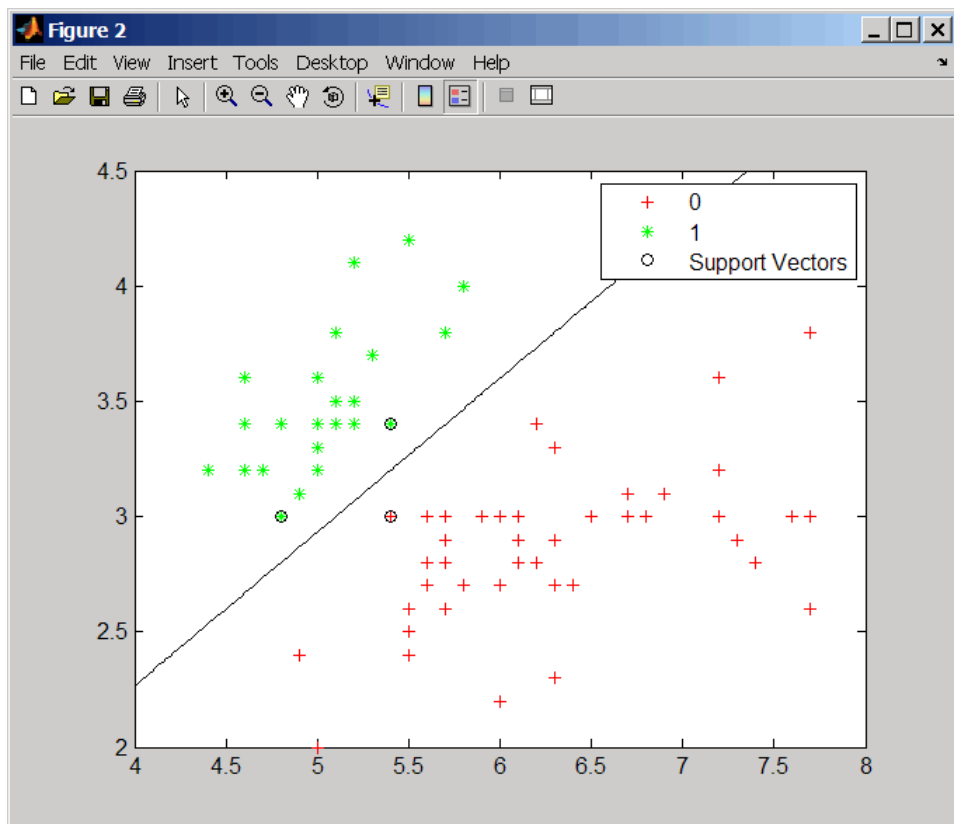
```
ans =
```

```
0.9867
```

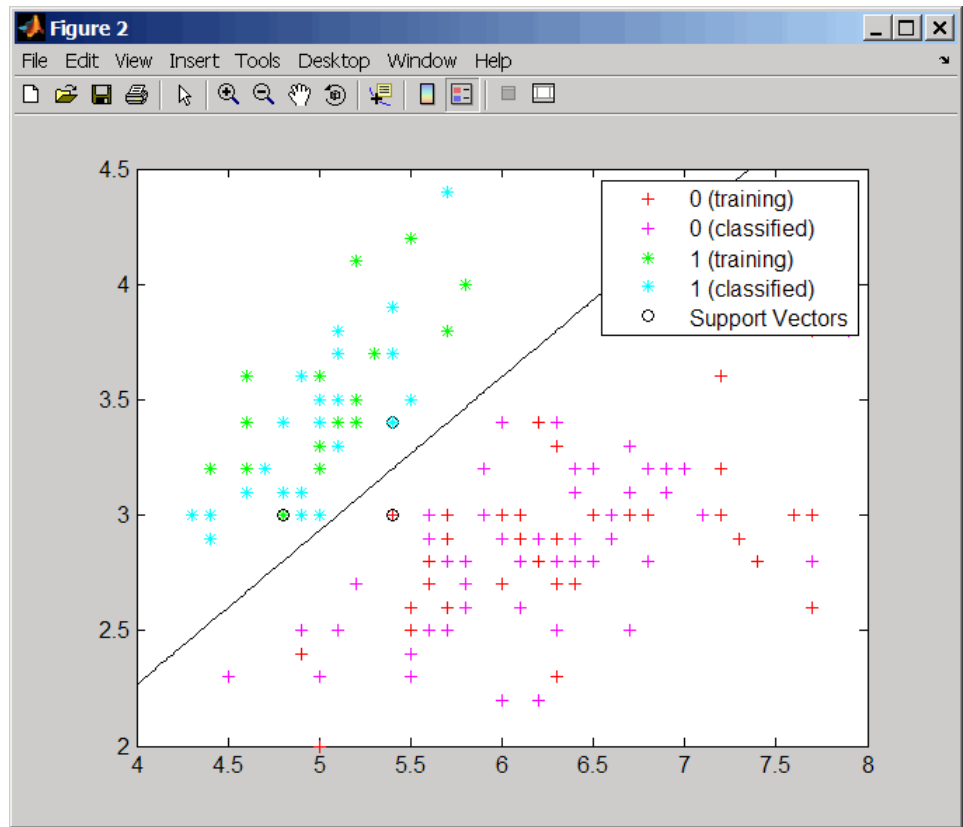
9 Use a one-norm, hard margin support vector machine classifier by changing the boxconstraint property.

svmtrain

```
figure  
svmStruct = svmtrain(data(train,:),groups(train),...  
                    'showplot',true,'boxconstraint',1e6);
```



```
classes = svmclassify(svmStruct,data(test,:), 'showplot',true);
```



10 Evaluate the performance of the classifier.

```
classperf(cp,classes,test);  
cp.CorrectRate
```

```
ans =
```

```
0.9867
```

References

- [1] Kecman, V. (2001). Learning and Soft Computing (Cambridge, MA: MIT Press).
- [2] Suykens, J.A.K., Van Gestel, T., De Brabanter, J., De Moor, B., and Vandewalle, J. (2002). Least Squares Support Vector Machines (Singapore: World Scientific).
- [3] Scholkopf, B., and Smola, A.J. (2002). Learning with Kernels (Cambridge, MA: MIT Press).
- [4] Cristianini, N. and Shawe-Taylor, J. (2000). An Introduction to Support Vector Machines and Other Kernel-based Learning Methods, First Edition (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press).
<http://www.support-vector.net/>

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `knnclassify`, `svmclassify`, `svmsmoset`

Statistics Toolbox function: `classify`

Optimization Toolbox function: `quadprog`

MATLAB function: `optimset`

Purpose

Locally align two sequences using Smith-Waterman algorithm

Syntax

```
Score = swalign(Seq1, Seq2)
[Score, Alignment] = swalign(Seq1, Seq2)
[Score, Alignment, Start] = swalign(Seq1, Seq2)
... = swalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'Alphabet', AlphabetValue)
... = swalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'ScoringMatrix',
    ScoringMatrixValue, ...)
... = swalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'Scale', ScaleValue, ...)
... = swalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'GapOpen', GapOpenValue, ...)
... = swalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'ExtendGap',
    ExtendGapValue, ...)
... = swalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'Showscore',
    ShowscoreValue, ...)
```

Arguments

Seq1, Seq2

Amino acid or nucleotide sequences. Enter any of the following:

- Character string of letters representing amino acids or nucleotides, such as returned by `int2aa` or `int2nt`
- Vector of integers representing amino acids or nucleotides, such as returned by `aa2int` or `nt2int`
- Structure containing a Sequence field

Tip For help with letter and integer representations of amino acids and nucleotides, see Amino Acid Lookup on page 2-56 or Nucleotide Lookup Table on page 2-66.

AlphabetValue

String specifying the type of sequence. Choices are 'AA' (default) or 'NT'.

ScoringMatrixValue String specifying the scoring matrix to use for the local alignment. Choices for amino acid sequences are:

- 'PAM40'
- 'PAM250'
- 'DAYHOFF'
- 'GONNET'
- 'BLOSUM30' increasing by 5 up to 'BLOSUM90'
- 'BLOSUM62'
- 'BLOSUM100'

Default is:

- 'BLOSUM50' (when *AlphabetValue* equals 'AA')
- 'NUC44' (when *AlphabetValue* equals 'NT')

Note All of the above scoring matrices have a built-in scale factor that returns *Score* in bits.

ScaleValue Scale factor used to return *Score* in arbitrary units other than bits. Choices are any positive value. For example, if you enter $\log(2)$ for *ScaleValue*, then *swalign* returns *Score* in nats.

GapOpenValue Penalty for opening a gap in the alignment. Choices are any positive integer. Default is 8.

<i>ExtendGapValue</i>	Penalty for extending a gap. Choices are any positive integer. Default is equal to <i>GapOpenValue</i> .
<i>ShowscoreValue</i>	Controls the display of the scoring space and the winning path of the alignment. Choices are true or false (default).

Return Values

<i>Score</i>	Optimal local alignment score in bits.
<i>Alignment</i>	3-by-N character array showing the two sequences, <i>Seq1</i> and <i>Seq2</i> , in the first and third rows, and symbols representing the optimal local alignment between them in the second row.
<i>Start</i>	2-by-1 vector of indices indicating the starting point in each sequence for the alignment.

Description

Score = `swalign(Seq1, Seq2)` returns the optimal local alignment score in bits. The scale factor used to calculate the score is provided by the scoring matrix.

`[Score, Alignment]` = `swalign(Seq1, Seq2)` returns a 3-by-N character array showing the two sequences, *Seq1* and *Seq2*, in the first and third rows, and symbols representing the optimal local alignment between them in the second row. The symbol | indicates amino acids or nucleotides that match exactly. The symbol : indicates amino acids or nucleotides that are related as defined by the scoring matrix (nonmatches with a zero or positive scoring matrix value).

`[Score, Alignment, Start]` = `swalign(Seq1, Seq2)` returns a 2-by-1 vector of indices indicating the starting point in each sequence for the alignment.

swalign

... = swalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls swalign with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

... = swalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'*Alphabet*', *AlphabetValue*) specifies the type of sequences. Choices are 'AA' (default) or 'NT'.

... = swalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'*ScoringMatrix*', *ScoringMatrixValue*, ...) specifies the scoring matrix to use for the local alignment. Default is:

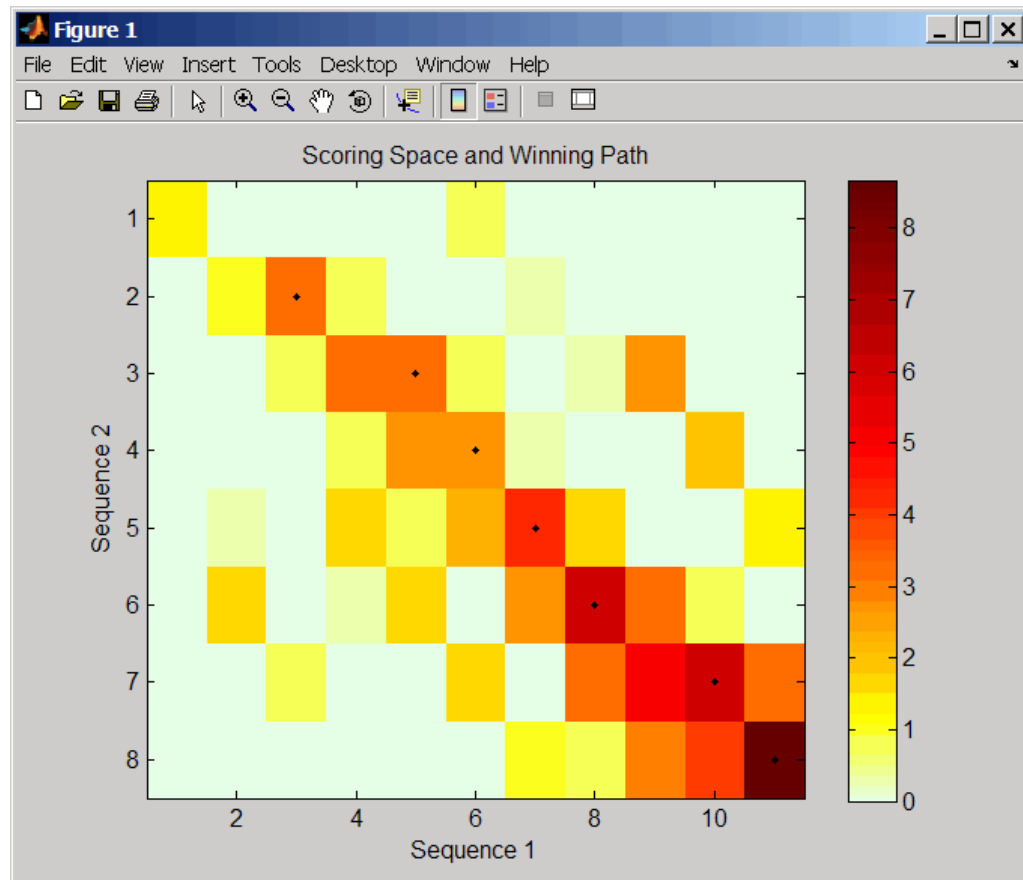
- 'BLOSUM50' (when *AlphabetValue* equals 'AA')
- 'NUC44' (when *AlphabetValue* equals 'NT')

... = swalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'*Scale*', *ScaleValue*, ...) specifies the scale factor used to return *Score* in arbitrary units other than bits. Choices are any positive value.

... = swalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'*GapOpen*', *GapOpenValue*, ...) specifies the penalty for opening a gap in the alignment. Choices are any positive integer. Default is 8.

... = swalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'*ExtendGap*', *ExtendGapValue*, ...) specifies the penalty for extending a gap in the alignment. Choices are any positive integer. Default is equal to *GapOpenValue*.

... = swalign(Seq1,Seq2, ...'*Showscore*', *ShowscoreValue*, ...) controls the display of the scoring space and winning path of the alignment. Choices are true or false (default)



The scoring space is a heat map displaying the best scores for all the partial alignments of two sequences. The color of each (n_1, n_2) coordinate in the scoring space represents the best score for the pairing of subsequences $\text{Seq1}(s_1:n_1)$ and $\text{Seq2}(s_2:n_2)$, where n_1 is a position in Seq1 , n_2 is a position in Seq2 , s_1 is any position in Seq1 between $1:n_1$, and s_2 is any position in Seq2 between $1:n_2$. The best score for a pairing of specific subsequences is determined by scoring all possible alignments of the subsequences by summing matches and gap penalties.

The winning path is represented by black dots in the scoring space and represents the pairing of positions in the optimal local alignment. The color of the last point (lower right) of the winning path represents the optimal local alignment score for the two sequences and is the *Score* output returned by `swalign`.

Tip The scoring space visually shows tandem repeats, small segments that potentially align, and partial alignments of domains from rearranged sequences.

Examples

- 1 Locally align two amino acid sequences using the BLOSUM50 (default) scoring matrix and the default values for the `GapOpen` and `ExtendGap` properties. Return the optimal local alignment score in bits and the alignment character array. Return the optimal global alignment score in bits and the alignment character array.

```
[Score, Alignment] = swalign('VSPAGMASGYD','IPGKASYD')
```

```
Score =
```

```
8.6667
```

```
Alignment =
```

```
PAGMASGYD
| | || |
P-GKAS-YD
```

- 2 Locally align two amino acid sequences specifying the PAM250 scoring matrix and a gap open penalty of 5.

```
[Score, Alignment] = swalign('HEAGAWGHEE','PAWHEAE',...
                             'ScoringMatrix','pam250',...
                             'GapOpen',5)
```

```

Score =

      8
Alignment =

GAWGHE
:| | | |
PAW-HE

```

- 3** Locally align two amino acid sequences returning the *Score* in nat units (nats) by specifying a scale factor of $\log(2)$.

```

[Score, Alignment] = swalign('HEAGAWGHEE', 'PAWHEAE', 'Scale', log(2))

Score =

      6.4694

Alignment =

AWGHE
| | | |
AW-HE

```

References

[1] Durbin, R., Eddy, S., Krogh, A., and Mitchison, G. (1998). *Biological Sequence Analysis* (Cambridge University Press).

[2] Smith, T., and Waterman, M. (1981). Identification of common molecular subsequences. *Journal of Molecular Biology* 147, 195–197.

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `blosum`, `nt2aa`, `nwalign`, `pam`, `seqdotplot`, `showalignment`

traceplot

Purpose Draw nucleotide trace plots

Syntax `traceplot(TraceStructure)`
`traceplot(A, C, G, T)`
`h = traceplot()`

Description `traceplot(TraceStructure)` creates a trace plot from data in a structure with fields `A`, `C`, `G`, `T`.
`traceplot(A, C, G, T)` creates a trace plot from data in vectors `A`, `C`, `G`, `T`.
`h = traceplot()` returns a structure with the handles of the lines corresponding to `A`, `C`, `G`, `T`.

Examples

```
tstruct = scfread('sample.scf');  
traceplot(tstruct)
```

See Also Bioinformatics Toolbox

- `function` — `scfread`

Purpose Perform background adjustment on Affymetrix microarray probe-level data using zone-based method

Syntax

```
BackAdjustedData = zonebackadj(Data)
[BackAdjustedData, ZoneStruct] = zonebackadj(Data)
... = zonebackadj(Data, ...'NumZones', NumZonesValue, ...)
... = zonebackadj(Data, ...'Percent', PercentValue, ...)
... = zonebackadj(Data, ...'SmoothFactor',
SmoothFactorValue,
    ...)
... = zonebackadj(Data, ...'NoiseFrac',
NoiseFracValue, ...)
... = zonebackadj(Data, ...'CDF', CDFValue, ...)
... = zonebackadj(Data, ...'Mask', MaskValue, ...)
... = zonebackadj(Data, ...'Showplot', ShowplotValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>Data</i>	Either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• MATLAB structure containing probe intensities from an Affymetrix CEL file, such as returned by <code>affyread</code> when used to read a CEL file.• An array of MATLAB structures containing probe intensities from multiple Affymetrix CEL files.
<i>NumZonesValue</i>	Scalar or two-element vector that specifies the number of zones to use in the background adjustment. If a scalar, it must be a square number. If a two-element vector, the first element specifies the number of rows and the second element specifies the number of columns in a nonsquare grid. Default is 16.

<i>PercentValue</i>	Value that specifies a percentage, P , such that the lowest P percent of ranked intensity values from each zone is used to estimate the background for that zone. Default is 2.
<i>SmoothFactorValue</i>	Value that specifies the smoothing factor used in the calculation of the weighted average of the contributions of each zone to the background of a point. Default is 100.
<i>NoiseFracValue</i>	Value that specifies the noise fraction, NF , such that the background-adjusted value is given by $\max((Intensity - WeightedBackground), NF * LocalNoiseEstimate)$. Default is 0.5.
<i>CDFValue</i>	<p>Either of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• String specifying a file name or path and file name of an Affymetrix CDF library file. If you specify only a file name, the file must be on the MATLAB search path or in the current directory.• MATLAB structure containing information from an Affymetrix CDF library file, such as returned by <code>affyread</code> when used to read a CDF file. <p>The CDF library file or structure specifies control cells, which are not used in the background estimates.</p>
<i>MaskValue</i>	Logical vector that specifies which cells to mask and not use in the background estimates. In the vector, 0 = not masked and 1 = masked. Defaults are the values in the Masked column of the Probes field of the CEL file.
<i>ShowplotValue</i>	Controls the plotting of an image of the background estimates. Choices are true or false (default).

Return Values

<i>BackAdjustedData</i>	Matrix or cell array of vectors containing background-adjusted probe intensity values.
<i>ZoneStruct</i>	MATLAB structure containing the centers of the zones used to perform the background adjustment and the estimates of the background values at the center of each zone.

Description

BackAdjustedData = zonebackadj(*Data*) returns the background-adjusted probe intensities from *Data*, which contains probe intensities from Affymetrix CEL files. Details of the background adjustment are described in the Statistical Algorithms Description Document.

[*BackAdjustedData*, *ZoneStruct*] = zonebackadj(*Data*) also returns a structure containing the centers of the zones used to perform the background adjustment and the estimates of the background values at the center of each zone.

... = zonebackadj(*Data*, ...'PropertyName', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls zonebackadj with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotation marks and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

... = zonebackadj(*Data*, ...'NumZones', *NumZonesValue*, ...) specifies the number of zones to use in the background adjustment. *NumZonesValue* can be either a scalar that is a square number or a two-element array in which the first element specifies the number of rows and the second element specifies the number of columns in a nonsquare grid. Default is 16.

... = zonebackadj(*Data*, ...'Percent', *PercentValue*, ...) specifies a percentage, *P*, such that the lowest *P* percent of ranked

intensity values from each zone is used to estimate the background for that zone. Default is 2.

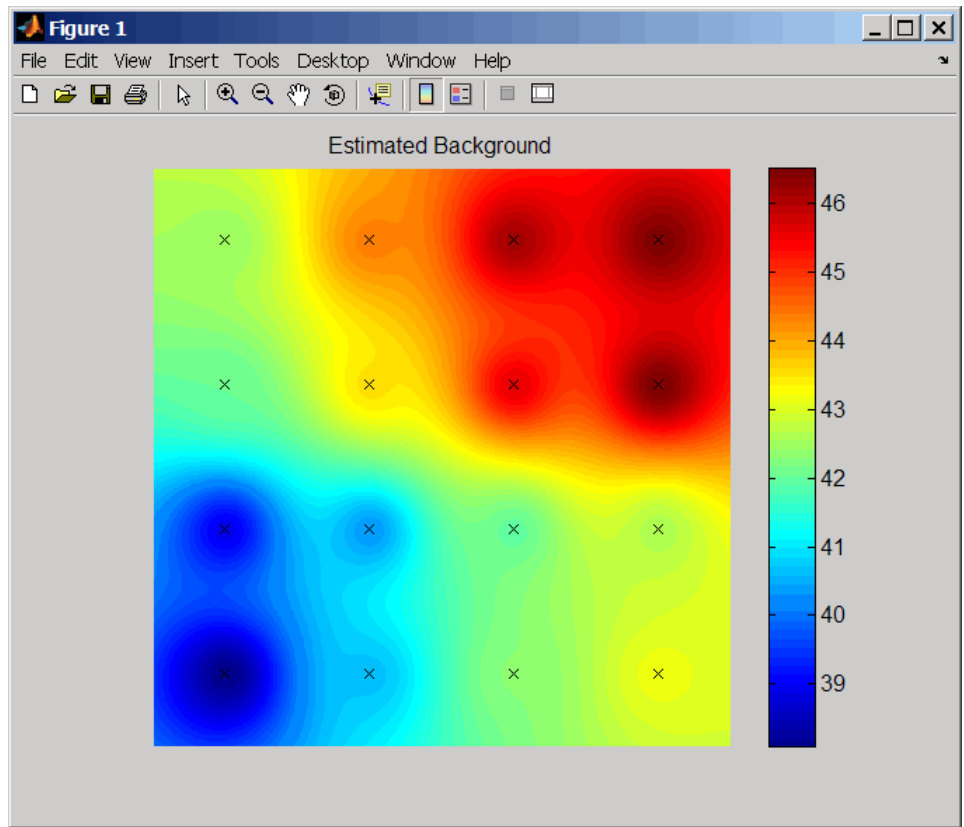
... = zonebackadj(*Data*, ...'SmoothFactor', *SmoothFactorValue*, ...) specifies the smoothing factor used in the calculation of the weighted average of the contributions of each zone to the background of a point, thus providing a smooth transition between zones. Default is 100.

... = zonebackadj(*Data*, ...'NoiseFrac', *NoiseFracValue*, ...) specifies the noise fraction, such that the background-adjusted value is given by $\max((\text{Intensity} - \text{WeightedBackground}), \text{NF} * \text{LocalNoiseEstimate})$, where NF is *NoiseFracValue*. Default is 0.5.

... = zonebackadj(*Data*, ...'CDF', *CDFValue*, ...) specifies an Affymetrix CDF library file or structure, which specifies control cells, which are not used in the background estimates.

... = zonebackadj(*Data*, ...'Mask', *MaskValue*, ...) specifies a logical vector of that specifies which cells to mask and not use in the background estimates. In the vector, 0 = not masked and 1 = masked. Defaults are the values in the Masked column of the Probes field of the CEL file.

... = zonebackadj(*Data*, ...'Showplot', *ShowplotValue*, ...) plots an image of the background estimates. Choices are true or false (default).



Examples

The following example uses a sample CEL file and CDF library file from the *E. coli* Antisense Genome array, which you can download from:

http://www.affymetrix.com/support/technical/sample_data/demo_data.affx

After you download the demo data, you will need the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool to extract the CEL file from a DTT file. You can download the Affymetrix Data Transfer Tool from:

<http://www.affymetrix.com/products/software/specific/dtt.affx>

The following example assumes that the `Ecoli-antisense-121502.CEL` file is stored on the MATLAB search path or in the current directory. It also assumes that the associated CDF library file, `Ecoli_ASv2.CDF`, is stored at `D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\Ecoli`.

- 1 Use the `affyread` function to read an Affymetrix CEL file and create `celStruct`, a MATLAB structure containing probe intensities for a single Affymetrix GeneChip.

```
celStruct = affyread('Ecoli-antisense-121502.CEL');
```

- 2 Perform background adjustment on the probe intensities in the structure, excluding the probe intensities from the control cells on the chip.

```
BackAdjMatrix = zonebackadj(celStruct, 'cdf',...  
                             'D:\Affymetrix\LibFiles\Ecoli\Ecoli_ASv2.CDF');
```

References

[1] Statistical Algorithms Description Document,
www.affymetrix.com/support/technical/whitepapers/sadd_whitepaper.pdf

See Also

`affyinvvarsetnorm`, `affyread`, `celintensityread`, `gcrma`,
`gcrmabackadj`, `probelibraryinfo`, `probesetlink`, `probesetlookup`,
`probesetvalues`, `quantilenorm`, `rmabackadj`, `rmasummary`

Methods — By Category

Phylogenetic Tree (p. 3-1)	Select, modify, and plot phylogenetic trees using <code>phytree</code> object methods
Graph Visualization (p. 3-2)	View relationships between data visually with interactive maps, hierarchy plots, and pathways using <code>biograph</code> object methods
Gene Ontology (p. 3-3)	Explore and analyze Gene Ontology data using <code>geneont</code> object methods

Phylogenetic Tree

Following are methods for use with a `phytree` object.

<code>get (phytree)</code>	Information about phylogenetic tree object
<code>getbyname (phytree)</code>	Branches and leaves from <code>phytree</code> object
<code>getcanonical (phytree)</code>	Calculate canonical form of phylogenetic tree
<code>getmatrix (phytree)</code>	Convert <code>phytree</code> object into relationship matrix
<code>getnewickstr (phytree)</code>	Create Newick-formatted string
<code>pdist (phytree)</code>	Calculate pair-wise patristic distances in <code>phytree</code> object

plot (phytree)	Draw phylogenetic tree
prune (phytree)	Remove branch nodes from phylogenetic tree
reorder (phytree)	Reorder leaves of phylogenetic tree
reroot (phytree)	Change root of phylogenetic tree
select (phytree)	Select tree branches and leaves in phytree object
subtree (phytree)	Extract phylogenetic subtree
view (phytree)	View phylogenetic tree
weights (phytree)	Calculate weights for phylogenetic tree

Graph Visualization

Following are methods for use with a `biograph` object.

allshortestpaths (biograph)	Find all shortest paths in biograph object
conncomp (biograph)	Find strongly or weakly connected components in biograph object
dolayout (biograph)	Calculate node positions and edge trajectories
getancestors (biograph)	Find ancestors in biograph object
getdescendants (biograph)	Find descendants in biograph object
getedgesbynodeid (biograph)	Get handles to edges in biograph object
getmatrix (biograph)	Get connection matrix from biograph object
getnodesbyid (biograph)	Get handles to nodes
getrelatives (biograph)	Find relatives in biograph object

isdag (biograph)	Test for cycles in biograph object
isomorphism (biograph)	Find isomorphism between two biograph objects
isspantree (biograph)	Determine if tree created from biograph object is spanning tree
maxflow (biograph)	Calculate maximum flow and minimum cut in biograph object
minspantree (biograph)	Find minimal spanning tree in biograph object
shortestpath (biograph)	Solve shortest path problem in biograph object
topoorder (biograph)	Perform topological sort of directed acyclic graph extracted from biograph object
traverse (biograph)	Traverse biograph object by following adjacent nodes
view (biograph)	Draw figure from biograph object

Gene Ontology

Following are methods for use with a `geneont` object.

getancestors (geneont)	Numeric IDs for ancestors of Gene Ontology term
getdescendants (geneont)	Numeric IDs for descendants of Gene Ontology term
getmatrix (geneont)	Convert geneont object into relationship matrix
getrelatives (geneont)	Numeric IDs for relatives of Gene Ontology term

Methods — Alphabetical List

allshortestpaths (biograph)

Purpose Find all shortest paths in biograph object

Syntax

```
[dist] = allshortestpaths(BGObj)
[dist] = allshortestpaths(BGObj, ...'Directed',
    DirectedValue, ...)
[dist] = allshortestpaths(BGObj, ...'Weights', WeightsValue,
    ...)
```

Arguments

BGObj biograph object created by biograph (object constructor).

DirectedValue Property that indicates whether the graph is directed or undirected. Enter `false` for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is `true`.

WeightsValue Column vector that specifies custom weights for the edges in the N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj*. It must have one entry for every nonzero value (edge) in the matrix. The order of the custom weights in the vector must match the order of the nonzero values in the matrix when it is traversed column-wise. This property lets you use zero-valued weights. By default, `allshortestpaths` gets weight information from the nonzero entries in the matrix.

Description

Tip For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

`[dist] = allshortestpaths(BGObj)` finds the shortest paths between every pair of nodes in a graph represented by an N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj*, using Johnson’s

algorithm. Nonzero entries in the matrix represent the weights of the edges.

Output *dist* is an N-by-N matrix where *dist*(S, T) is the distance of the shortest path from node S to node T. A 0 in this matrix indicates the source node; an Inf is an unreachable node.

Johnson's algorithm has a time complexity of $O(N \cdot \log(N) + N \cdot E)$, where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

[...] = allshortestpaths(*BGObj*, '*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls allshortestpaths with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

[*dist*] = allshortestpaths(*BGObj*, ...'*Directed*', *DirectedValue*, ...) indicates whether the graph is directed or undirected. Set *DirectedValue* to false for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is true.

[*dist*] = allshortestpaths(*BGObj*, ...'*Weights*', *WeightsValue*, ...) lets you specify custom weights for the edges. *WeightsValue* is a column vector having one entry for every nonzero value (edge) in the N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj*. The order of the custom weights in the vector must match the order of the nonzero values in the N-by-N adjacency matrix when it is traversed column-wise. This property lets you use zero-valued weights. By default, allshortestpaths gets weight information from the nonzero entries in the N-by-N adjacency matrix.

References

- [1] Johnson, D.B. (1977). Efficient algorithms for shortest paths in sparse networks. *Journal of the ACM* 24(1), 1-13.
- [2] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). *The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual*, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

allshortestpaths (biograph)

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `biograph` (object constructor), `graphallshortestpaths`

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `biograph` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a `biograph` object: `conncomp`, `isdag`, `isomorphism`, `isspantree`, `maxflow`, `minspantree`, `shortestpath`, `topoorder`, `traverse`

Purpose Find strongly or weakly connected components in biograph object

Syntax

```
[S, C] = conncomp(BGObj)
[S, C] = conncomp(BGObj, ...'Directed', DirectedValue, ...)
[S, C] = conncomp(BGObj, ...'Weak', WeakValue, ...)
```

Arguments

<i>BGObj</i>	biograph object created by biograph (object constructor).
<i>DirectedValue</i>	Property that indicates whether the graph is directed or undirected. Enter <code>false</code> for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is <code>true</code> . A DFS-based algorithm computes the connected components. Time complexity is $O(N+E)$, where N and E are number of nodes and edges respectively.
<i>WeakValue</i>	Property that indicates whether to find weakly connected components or strongly connected components. A weakly connected component is a maximal group of nodes that are mutually reachable by violating the edge directions. Set <i>WeakValue</i> to <code>true</code> to find weakly connected components. Default is <code>false</code> , which finds strongly connected components. The state of this parameter has no effect on undirected graphs because weakly and strongly connected components are the same in undirected graphs. Time complexity is $O(N+E)$, where N and E are number of nodes and edges respectively.

Description

Tip For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

conncomp (biograph)

`[S, C] = conncomp(BGObj)` finds the strongly connected components of an N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj* using Tarjan's algorithm. A strongly connected component is a maximal group of nodes that are mutually reachable without violating the edge directions. The N-by-N sparse matrix represents a directed graph; all nonzero entries in the matrix indicate the presence of an edge.

The number of components found is returned in *S*, and *C* is a vector indicating to which component each node belongs.

Tarjan's algorithm has a time complexity of $O(N+E)$, where *N* and *E* are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

`[S, C] = conncomp(BGObj, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `conncomp` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`[S, C] = conncomp(BGObj, ...'Directed', DirectedValue, ...)` indicates whether the graph is directed or undirected. Set *directedValue* to `false` for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is `true`. A DFS-based algorithm computes the connected components. Time complexity is $O(N+E)$, where *N* and *E* are number of nodes and edges respectively.

`[S, C] = conncomp(BGObj, ...'Weak', WeakValue, ...)` indicates whether to find weakly connected components or strongly connected components. A weakly connected component is a maximal group of nodes that are mutually reachable by violating the edge directions. Set *WeakValue* to `true` to find weakly connected components. Default is `false`, which finds strongly connected components. The state of this parameter has no effect on undirected graphs because weakly and strongly connected components are the same in undirected graphs. Time complexity is $O(N+E)$, where *N* and *E* are number of nodes and edges respectively.

Note By definition, a single node can be a strongly connected component.

Note A directed acyclic graph (DAG) cannot have any strongly connected components larger than one.

References

[1] Tarjan, R.E., (1972). Depth first search and linear graph algorithms. *SIAM Journal on Computing* 1(2), 146–160.

[2] Sedgewick, R., (2002). *Algorithms in C++, Part 5 Graph Algorithms* (Addison-Wesley).

[3] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). *The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual*, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `biograph` (object constructor), `graphconncomp`

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `biograph` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a `biograph` object:
`allshortestpaths`, `isdag`, `isomorphism`, `isspantree`, `maxflow`,
`minspantree`, `shortestpath`, `topoorder`, `traverse`

dolayout (biograph)

Purpose Calculate node positions and edge trajectories

Syntax `dolayout(BGobj)`
`dolayout(BGobj, 'Paths', PathsOnlyValue)`

Arguments

<i>BGobj</i>	Biograph object created by the biograph function (object constructor).
<i>PathsOnlyValue</i>	Controls the calculation of only the edge paths, leaving the nodes at their current positions. Choices are true or false (default).

Description `dolayout(BGobj)` calls the layout engine to calculate the optimal position for each node so that its 2-D rendering is clean and uncluttered, and then calculates the best curves to represent the edges. The layout engine uses the following properties of the biograph object:

- `LayoutType` — Specifies the layout engine as 'hierarchical', 'equilibrium', or 'radial'.
- `LayoutScale` — Rescales the sizes of the node before calling the layout engine. This gives more space to the layout and reduces the overlapping of nodes.
- `NodeAutoSize` — Controls precalculating the node size before calling the layout engine. When `NodeAutoSize` is set to 'on', the layout engine uses the node properties `FontSize` and `Shape`, and the biograph object property `LayoutScale` to precalculate the actual size of each node. When `NodeAutoSize` is set to 'off', the layout engine uses the node property `Size`.

For more information on the above properties, see [Properties of a Biograph Object](#) on page 5-4. For information on accessing and specifying the above properties of a biograph object, see [and](#) .

`dolayout(BGobj, 'Paths', PathsOnlyValue)` controls the calculation of only the edge paths, leaving the nodes at their current positions. Choices are true or false (default).

Examples

- 1 Create a biograph object.

```
cm = [0 1 1 0 0;1 0 0 1 1;1 0 0 0 0;0 0 0 0 1;1 0 1 0 0];
bg = biograph(cm)
Biograph object with 5 nodes and 9 edges.
bg.nodes(1).Position

ans =

    []
```

Nodes do not have a position yet.

- 2 Call the layout engine and render the graph.

```
dolayout(bg)
bg.nodes(1).Position

ans =

    112    224

view(bg)
```

- 3 Manually modify a node position and recalculate the paths only.

```
bg.nodes(1).Position = [150 150];
dolayout(bg, 'Pathsonly', true)
view(bg)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function: `biograph` (object constructor)

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `biograph` object

dolayout (biograph)

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a biograph object: `dolayout`,
`getancestors`, `getdescendants`, `getedgesbynodeid`, `getnodesbyid`,
`getrelatives`, `view`

MATLAB functions: `get`, `set`

Purpose Information about phylogenetic tree object

Syntax `[Value1, Value2,...] = get(Tree, 'Property1', 'Property2', ...)`
`get(Tree)`
`V = get(Tree)`

Arguments

Tree Phytree object created with the function `phytree`.

Name Property name for a phytree object.

Description

`[Value1, Value2,...] = get(Tree, 'Property1', 'Property2', ...)` returns the specified properties from a phytree object (*Tree*).

Properties for a phytree object are listed in the following table.

Property	Description
NumLeaves	Number of leaves
NumBranches	Number of branches
NumNodes	Number of nodes (NumLeaves + NumBranches)
Pointers	Branch to leaf/branch connectivity list
Distances	Edge length for every leaf/branch
LeafNames	Names of the leaves
BranchNames	Names of the branches
NodeNames	Names of all the nodes

`get(Tree)` displays all property names and their current values for a phytree object (*Tree*).

get (phytree)

`V = get(Tree)` returns a structure where each field name is the name of a property of a phytree object (*Tree*) and each field contains the value of that property.

Examples

- 1 Read in a phylogenetic tree from a file.

```
tr = phytread('pf00002.tree')
```

- 2 Get the names of the leaves.

```
protein_names = get(tr, 'LeafNames')
```

```
protein_names =
```

```
    'BAI2_HUMAN/917-1197'
```

```
    'BAI1_HUMAN/944-1191'
```

```
    '000406/622-883'
```

```
    ...
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox

- functions — `phytree` (object constructor), `phytreeread`
- phytree object methods — `getbyname`, `select`

Purpose Find ancestors in biograph object

Syntax `Nodes = getancestors(BiographNode)`
`Nodes = getancestors(BiographNode, NumGenerations)`

Arguments

BiographNode Node in a biograph object.
NumGenerations Number of generations. Enter a positive integer.

Description

`Nodes = getancestors(BiographNode)` returns a node (`BiographNode`) and all of its direct ancestors.

`Nodes = getancestors(BiographNode, NumGenerations)` finds the node (`BiographNode`) and its direct ancestors up to a specified number of generations (`NumGenerations`).

Examples

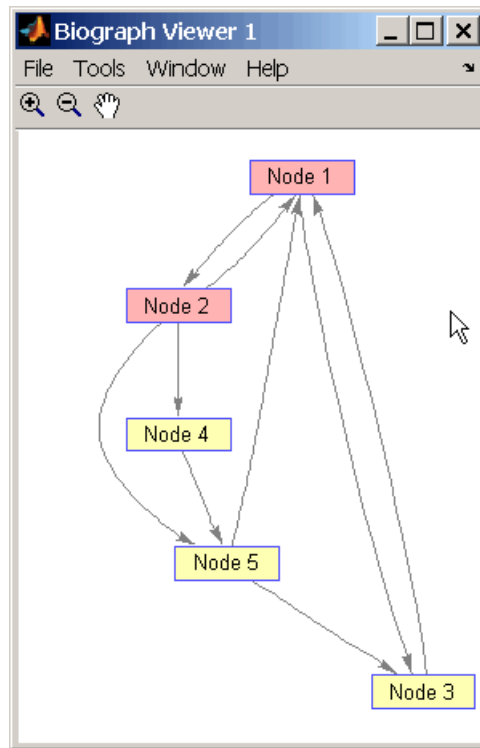
1 Create a biograph object.

```
cm = [0 1 1 0 0;1 0 0 1 1;1 0 0 0 0;0 0 0 0 1;1 0 1 0 0];  
bg = biograph(cm)
```

2 Find one generation of ancestors for node 2.

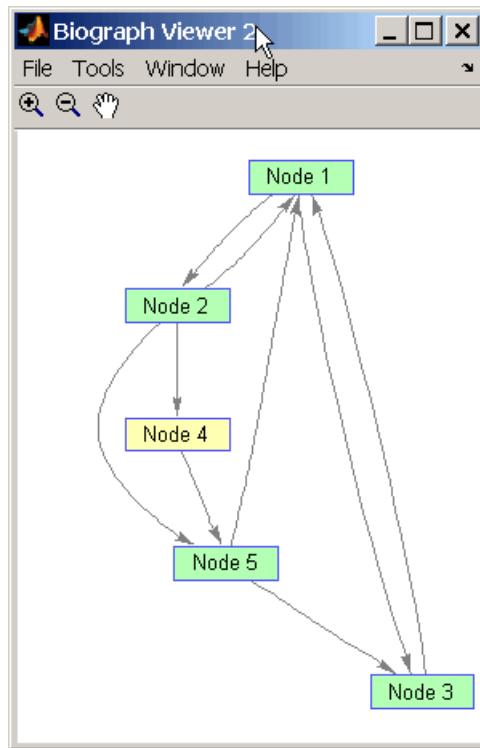
```
ancNodes = getancestors(bg.nodes(2));  
set(ancNodes, 'Color', [1 .7 .7]);  
bg.view;
```

getancestors (biograph)



3 Find two generations of ancestors for node 2.

```
ancNodes = getancestors(bg.nodes(2),2);  
set(ancNodes,'Color',[.7 1 .7]);  
bg.view;
```



See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function: `biograph` (object constructor)

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `biograph` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a `biograph` object: `dolayout`, `getancestors`, `getdescendants`, `getedgesbynodeid`, `getnodesbyid`, `getrelatives`, `view`

MATLAB functions: `get`, `set`

getancestors (geneont)

Purpose Numeric IDs for ancestors of Gene Ontology term

Syntax `AncestorIDs = getancestors(GeneontObj, ID)`
`AncestorIDs = getancestors(..., 'Height', HeightValue, ...)`

Description `AncestorIDs = getancestors(GeneontObj, ID)` returns the numeric IDs (*AncestorIDs*) for the ancestors of a term (*ID*) including the ID for the term. *ID* is a nonnegative integer or a numeric vector with a set of IDs.

`AncestorIDs = getancestors(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`AncestorIDs = getancestors(..., 'Height', HeightValue, ...)` searches up through a specified number of levels (*HeightValue*) in the Gene Ontology database. *HeightValue* is a positive integer. Default is Inf.

Examples **1** Download the Gene Ontology database from the Web into MATLAB.

```
GO = geneont('LIVE', true);
```

MATLAB creates a geneont object and displays the number of terms in the database.

```
Gene Ontology object with 20005 Terms.
```

2 Get the ancestors for a Gene Ontology term.

```
ancestors = getancestors(GO,46680)
```

```
ancestors =  
    8150  
    9628  
    9636  
   17085  
   42221
```

```
46680  
50896
```

3 Create a sub Gene Ontology.

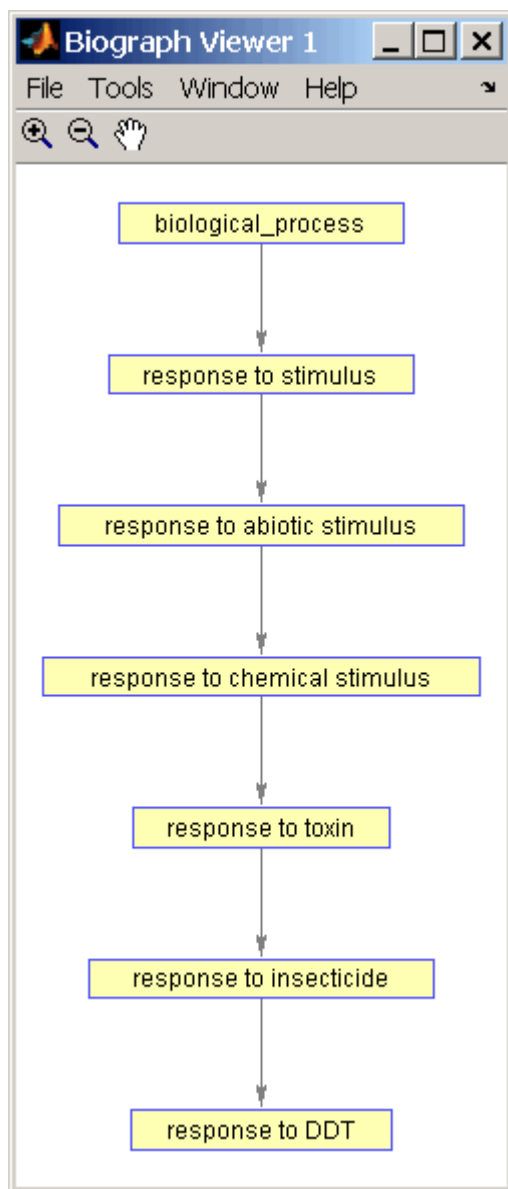
```
subontology = GO(ancestors)
```

Gene Ontology object with 7 Terms.

4 View relationships using the biograph functions.

```
[cm acc rels] = getmatrix(subontology);  
BG = biograph(cm, get(subontology.Terms, 'name'))  
view(BG)
```

getancestors (geneont)



See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox

- functions — geneont (object constructor), goannotread, num2goid
- geneont object methods — getdescendants, getmatrix, getrelatives

getbyname (phytree)

Purpose Branches and leaves from phytree object

Syntax
`S = getbyname(Tree, Expression)`
`S = getbyname(Tree, String, 'Exact', true)`

Arguments

Tree phytree object created by phytree function (object constructor).

Expression Regular expression. When *Expression* is a cell array of strings, getbyname returns a matrix where every column corresponds to every query in *Expression*.

For information about the symbols that you can use in a matching regular expression, see the MATLAB function regexp.

String String or cell array of strings.

Description

`S = getbyname(Tree, Expression)` returns a logical vector (*S*) of size NumNodes-by-1 with the node names of a phylogenetic tree (*Tree*) that match the regular expression (*Expression*) regardless of letter case.

`S = getbyname(Tree, String, 'Exact', true)` looks for exact string matches and ignores case. When *String* is a cell array of char strings, getbyname returns a vector with indices.

Examples

1 Load a phylogenetic tree created from a protein family.

```
tr = phytreeread('pf00002.tree');
```

2 Select all the 'mouse' and 'human' proteins.

```
sel = getbyname(tr,{'mouse','human'});  
view(tr,any(sel,2));
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox

- `function` — `phytree` (object constructor)
- `phytree` object methods — `get`, `prune`, `select`

getcanonical (phytree)

Purpose Calculate canonical form of phylogenetic tree

Syntax `Pointers = getcanonical(Tree)`
`[Pointers, Distances, Names] = getcanonical(Tree)`

Arguments

<code>Tree</code>	phytree object created by phytree function (object constructor).
-------------------	--

Description `Pointers = getcanonical(Tree)` returns the pointers for the canonical form of a phylogenetic tree (`Tree`). In a canonical tree the leaves are ordered alphabetically and the branches are ordered first by their width and then alphabetically by their first element. A canonical tree is isomorphic to all the trees with the same skeleton independently of the order of their leaves and branches.

`[Pointers, Distances, Names] = getcanonical(Tree)` returns, in addition to the pointers described above, the reordered distances (`Distances`) and node names (`Names`).

Examples

- 1 Create two phylogenetic trees with the same skeleton but slightly different distances.

```
b = [1 2; 3 4; 5 6; 7 8;9 10];  
tr_1 = phytree(b,[.1 .2 .3 .3 .4 ]');  
tr_2 = phytree(b,[.2 .1 .2 .3 .4 ]');
```

- 2 Plot the trees.

```
plot(tr_1)  
plot(tr_2)
```

- 3 Check whether the trees have an isomorphic construction.

```
isequal(getcanonical(tr_1),getcanonical(tr_2))
```

```
ans =  
    1
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox

- functions — `phytree` (object constructor), `phytreeread`
- `phytree` object methods — `getbyname`, `select`, `subtree`

getdescendants (biograph)

Purpose Find descendants in biograph object

Syntax `Nodes = getdescendants(BiographNode)`
`Nodes = getdescendants(BiographNode, NumGenerations)`

Arguments

BiographNode Node in a biograph object.

NumGenerations Number of generations. Enter a positive integer.

Description `Nodes = getdescendants(BiographNode)` finds a given node (*BiographNode*) all of its direct descendants.

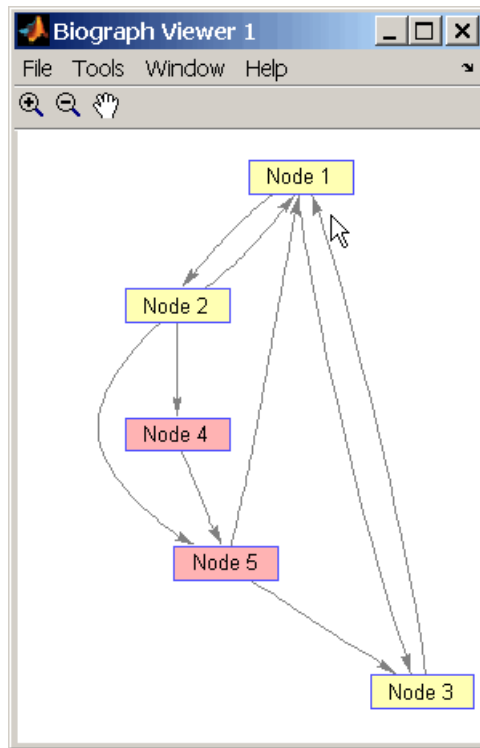
`Nodes = getdescendants(BiographNode, NumGenerations)` finds the node (*BiographNode*) and all of its direct descendants up to a specified number of generations (*NumGenerations*).

Examples **1** Create a biograph object.

```
cm = [0 1 1 0 0;1 0 0 1 1;1 0 0 0 0;0 0 0 0 1;1 0 1 0 0];  
bg = biograph(cm)
```

2 Find one generation of descendants for node 4.

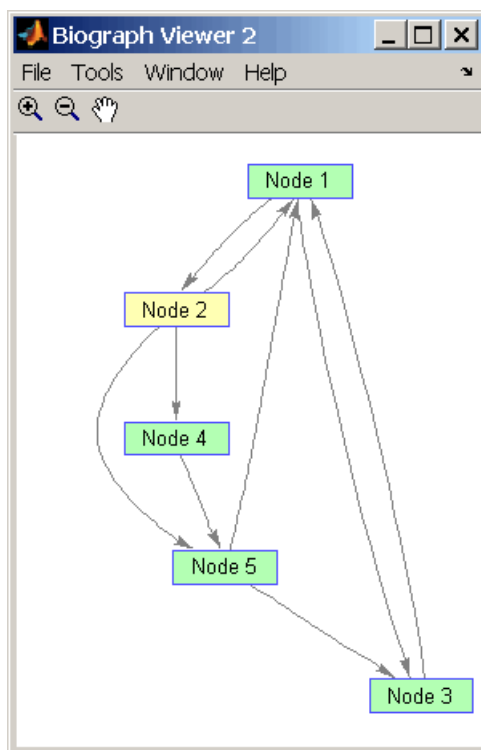
```
desNodes = getdescendants(bg.nodes(4));  
set(desNodes, 'Color', [1 .7 .7]);  
bg.view;
```



3 Find two generations of descendants for node 4.

```
desNodes = getdescendants(bg.nodes(4),2);  
set(desNodes,'Color',[.7 1 .7]);  
bg.view;
```

getdescendants (biograph)



See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function: `biograph` (object constructor)

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `biograph` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a `biograph` object: `dolayout`, `getancestors`, `getdescendants`, `getedgesbynodeid`, `getnodesbyid`, `getrelatives`, `view`

MATLAB functions: `get`, `set`

Purpose

Numeric IDs for descendants of Gene Ontology term

Syntax

```
DescendantIDs = getdescendants(GeneontObj, ID)  
DescendantIDs = getdescendants(..., 'Depth',  
DepthValue,...)
```

Description

DescendantIDs = getdescendants(*GeneontObj*, *ID*) returns the numeric IDs (*DescendantIDs*) for the descendants of a term (*ID*) including the ID for the term. *ID* is a nonnegative integer or a numeric vector with a set of IDs.

DescendantIDs = getdescendants(..., '*PropertyName*',
PropertyValue,...) defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

DescendantIDs = getdescendants(..., 'Depth',
DepthValue,...) searches down through a specified number of levels (*DepthValue*) in the Gene Ontology. *DepthValue* is a positive integer. Default is Inf.

Examples

- 1 Download the Gene Ontology database from the Web into MATLAB.

```
GO = geneont('LIVE', true);
```

MATLAB creates a geneont object and displays the number of terms in the database.

```
Gene Ontology object with 20005 Terms.
```

- 2 Get the ancestors for a Gene Ontology term.

```
descendants = getdescendants(GO,5622, 'Depth', 5)
```

- 3 Create a sub Gene Ontology.

```
subontology = GO(descendants)
```

```
Gene Ontology object with 1071 Terms.
```

getdescendants (geneont)

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox

- functions — geneont (object constructor), goannotread, num2goid
- geneont object methods — getancestors, getmatrix, getrelatives

Purpose Get handles to edges in biograph object

Syntax `Edges = getedgesbynodeid(BGobj, SourceIDs, SinkIDs)`

Arguments

<i>BGobj</i>	Biograph object.
<i>SourceIDs</i> , <i>SinkIDs</i>	Enter a cell string, or an empty cell array (gets all edges).

Description

`Edges = getedgesbynodeid(BGobj, SourceIDs, SinkIDs)` gets the handles to the edges that connect the specified source nodes (*SourceIDs*) to the specified sink nodes (*SinkIDs*) in a biograph object.

Example

1 Create a biograph object for the Hominidae family.

```
species = {'Homo', 'Pan', 'Gorilla', 'Pongo', 'Baboon', ...  
          'Macaca', 'Gibbon'};  
cm = magic(7)>25 & 1-eye(7);  
bg = biograph(cm, species);
```

2 Find all the edges that connect to the Homo node.

```
EdgesIn = getedgesbynodeid(bg, [], 'Homo');  
EdgesOut = getedgesbynodeid(bg, 'Homo', []);  
set(EdgesIn, 'LineColor', [0 1 0]);  
set(EdgesOut, 'LineColor', [1 0 0]);  
bg.view;
```

3 Find all edges that connect members of the Cercopithecidae family to members of the Hominidae family.

```
Cercopithecidae = {'Macaca', 'Baboon'};  
Hominidae = {'Homo', 'Pan', 'Gorilla', 'Pongo'};  
edgesSel = getedgesbynodeid(bg, Cercopithecidae, Hominidae);  
set(bg.edges, 'LineColor', [.5 .5 .5]);  
set(edgesSel, 'LineColor', [0 0 1]);
```

getedgesbynodeid (biograph)

```
bg.view;
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function: `biograph` (object constructor)

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `biograph` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a `biograph` object: `dolayout`, `getancestors`, `getdescendants`, `getedgesbynodeid`, `getnodesbyid`, `getrelatives`, `view`

MATLAB functions: `get`, `set`

Purpose

Get connection matrix from biograph object

Syntax

```
[Matrix, ID, Distances] = getmatrix(BGObj)
```

Arguments

BGObj biograph object created by biograph (object constructor).

Description

[*Matrix*, *ID*, *Distances*] = getmatrix(*BGObj*) converts the biograph object, *BiographObj*, into a logical sparse matrix, *Matrix*, in which 1 indicates that a node (row index) is connected to another node (column index). *ID* is a cell array of strings listing the ID properties for each node, and corresponds to the rows and columns of *Matrix*. *Distances* is a column vector with one entry for every nonzero entry in *Matrix* traversed column-wise and representing the respective Weight property for each edge.

Examples

```
cm = [0 1 1 0 0;2 0 0 4 4;4 0 0 0 0;0 0 0 0 2;4 0 5 0 0];  
bg = biograph(cm);  
[cm, IDs, dist] = getmatrix(bg)
```

See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function: biograph (object constructor)

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: biograph object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a biograph object: dolayout, getancestors, getdescendants, getedgesbynodeid, getnodesbyid, getrelatives, view

getmatrix (geneont)

- Purpose** Convert geneont object into relationship matrix
- Syntax** `[Matrix, ID, Relationship] = getmatrix(GeneontObj)`
- Arguments** `GeneontObj` geneont object created by geneont (object constructor)
- Description** `[Matrix, ID, Relationship] = getmatrix(GeneontObj)` converts a geneont object, `GeneontObj`, into `Matrix`, a matrix of relationship values between nodes (row and column indices), in which 0 indicates no relationship, 1 indicates an “is_a” relationship, and 2 indicates a “part_of” relationship. `ID` is a column vector listing Gene Ontology IDs that correspond to the rows and columns of `Matrix`. `Relationship` is a cell array of strings defining the types of relationships.
- Examples**
- ```
GO = geneont('LIVE',true);
[MATRIX, ID, REL] = getmatrix(GO);
```
- See Also**
- Bioinformatics Toolbox functions — geneont (object constructor), goannotread, num2goid
  - Bioinformatics Toolbox object — geneont object
  - Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of geneont object — getancestors, getdescendants, getmatrix, getrelatives

**Purpose**

Convert phytree object into relationship matrix

**Syntax**

```
[Matrix, ID, Distances] = getmatrix(PhytreeObj)
```

**Arguments**

*PhytreeObj* phytree object created by phytree (object constructor).

**Description**

[*Matrix*, *ID*, *Distances*] = `getmatrix(PhytreeObj)` converts a phytree object, *PhytreeObj*, into a logical sparse matrix, *Matrix*, in which 1 indicates that a branch node (row index) is connected to its child (column index). The child can be either another branch node or a leaf node. *ID* is a column vector of strings listing the labels that correspond to the rows and columns of *Matrix*, with the labels from 1 to *Number of Leaves* being the leaf nodes, then the labels from *Number of Leaves* + 1 to *Number of Leaves* + *Number of Branches* being the branch nodes, and the label for the last branch node also being the root node. *Distances* is a column vector with one entry for every nonzero entry in *Matrix* traversed column-wise and representing the distance between the branch node and the child.

**Examples**

```
T = phytreeread('pf00002.tree')
[MATRIX, ID, DIST] = getmatrix(T);
```

**See Also**

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `phytree` (object constructor), `phytreetool`

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `phytree` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of `phytree` object: `get`, `pdist`, `prune`

# getnewickstr (phytree)

---

**Purpose** Create Newick-formatted string

**Syntax**

```
String = getnewickstr(Tree)
getnewickstr(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
getnewickstr(..., 'Distances', DistancesValue)
getnewickstr(..., 'BranchNames', BranchNamesValue)
```

## Arguments

|                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Tree</i>             | Phytree object created with the function <code>phytree</code> .                                                                                                                                            |
| <i>DistancesValue</i>   | Property to control including or excluding distances in the output. Enter either <code>true</code> (include distances) or <code>false</code> (exclude distances). Default is <code>true</code> .           |
| <i>BranchNamesValue</i> | Property to control including or excluding branch names in the output. Enter either <code>true</code> (include branch names) or <code>false</code> (exclude branch names). Default is <code>false</code> . |

## Description

*String* = `getnewickstr(Tree)` returns the Newick formatted string of a phylogenetic tree object (*Tree*).

`getnewickstr(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`getnewickstr(..., 'Distances', DistancesValue)`, when *DistancesValue* is `false`, excludes the distances from the output.

`getnewickstr(..., 'BranchNames', BranchNamesValue)`, when *BranchNamesValue* is `true`, includes the branch names in the output.

## References

Information about the Newick tree format.

<http://evolution.genetics.washington.edu/phylip/newicktree.html>



## Examples

**1** Create some random sequences.

```
seqs = int2nt(ceil(rand(10)*4));
```

**2** Calculate pairwise distances.

```
dist = seqpdist(seqs,'alpha','nt');
```

**3** Construct a phylogenetic tree.

```
tree = seqlinkage(dist);
```

**4** Get the Newick string.

```
str = getnewickstr(tree)
```

## See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox

- functions — `phytree` (object constructor), `phytreeread`, `phytreetool`, `phytreewrite`, `seqlinkage`
- `phytree` object methods — `get`, `getbyname`, `getcanonical`

# getnodesbyid (biograph)

---

**Purpose** Get handles to nodes

**Syntax** `NodesHandles = getnodesbyid(BGobj, NodeIDs)`

## Arguments

*BGobj* Biograph object.

*NodeIDs* Enter a cell string of node identifications.

**Description** `NodesHandles = getnodesbyid(BGobj, NodeIDs)` gets the handles for the specified nodes (*NodeIDs*) in a biograph object.

## Example

**1** Create a biograph object.

```
species = {'Homosapiens', 'Pan', 'Gorilla', 'Pongo', 'Baboon', ...
 'Macaca', 'Gibbon'};
cm = magic(7)>25 & 1-eye(7);
bg = biograph(cm, species)
```

**2** Find the handles to members of the Cercopithecidae family and members of the Hominidae family.

```
Cercopithecidae = {'Macaca', 'Baboon'};
Hominidae = {'Homosapiens', 'Pan', 'Gorilla', 'Pongo'};
CercopithecidaeNodes = getnodesbyid(bg, Cercopithecidae);
HominidaeNodes = getnodesbyid(bg, Hominidae);
```

**3** Color the families differently and draw a graph.

## See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function: `biograph` (object constructor)

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `biograph` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a biograph object: `dolayout`, `getancestors`, `getdescendants`, `getedgesbynodeid`, `getnodesbyid`, `getrelatives`, `view`

MATLAB functions: `get`, `set`

# getrelatives (biograph)

---

**Purpose** Find relatives in biograph object

**Syntax** `Nodes = getrelatives(BiographNode)`  
`Nodes = getrelatives(BiographNode, NumGenerations)`

## Arguments

|                       |                                                  |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>BiographNode</i>   | Node in a biograph object.                       |
| <i>NumGenerations</i> | Number of generations. Enter a positive integer. |

**Description** `Nodes = getrelatives(BiographNode)` finds all the direct relatives for a given node (*BiographNode*).

`Nodes = getrelatives(BiographNode, NumGenerations)` finds the direct relatives for a given node (*BiographNode*) up to a specified number of generations (*NumGenerations*).

## Examples

**1** Create a biograph object.

```
cm = [0 1 1 0 0;1 0 0 1 1;1 0 0 0 0;0 0 0 0 1;1 0 1 0 0];
bg = biograph(cm)
```

**2** Find all nodes interacting with node 1.

```
intNodes = getrelatives(bg.nodes(1));
set(intNodes, 'Color', [.7 .7 1]);
bg.view;
```

## See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function: `biograph` (object constructor)

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `biograph` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a `biograph` object: `dolayout`, `getancestors`, `getdescendants`, `getedgesbynodeid`, `getnodesbyid`, `getrelatives`, `view`

MATLAB functions: `get`, `set`

## Purpose

Numeric IDs for relatives of Gene Ontology term

## Syntax

```
RelativeIDs = getrelatives(GeneontObj, ID)
getrelatives(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
getrelatives(..., 'Height', HeightValue)
getrelatives(..., 'Depth', DepthValue)
```

## Arguments

*GeneontObj*

*ID*

## Description

*RelativeIDs* = `getrelatives(GeneontObj, ID)` returns the numeric IDs (*RelativeIDs*) for the relatives of a term (*ID*) including the ID for the term. *ID* is a nonnegative integer or a numeric vector with a set of IDs.

`getrelatives(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`getrelatives(..., 'Height', HeightValue)` includes terms that are related up through a specified number of levels (*HeightValue*) in the Gene Ontology database. *HeightValue* is a positive integer. Default is 1.

`getrelatives(..., 'Depth', DepthValue)` includes terms that are related down through a specified number of levels (*DepthValue*) in the Gene Ontology database. *DepthValue* is a positive integer. Default is 1.

## Examples

- 1 Download the Gene Ontology database from the Web into MATLAB.

```
GO = geneont('LIVE', true);
```

MATLAB creates a `geneont` object and displays the number of terms in the database.

```
Gene Ontology object with 20005 Terms.
```

- 2 Get the relatives for a Gene Ontology term.

## getrelatives (geneont)

---

```
subontology = getrelatives(GO,46680)
```

### See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox

- functions — geneont (object constructor), goannotread, num2goid
- geneont object methods — getancestors, getdescendants, getmatrix

**Purpose** Test for cycles in biograph object

**Syntax** `isdag(BGObj)`

**Arguments**

*BGObj* biograph object created by biograph (object constructor).

**Description**

---

**Tip** For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

---

`isdag(BGObj)` returns logical 1 (`true`) if an N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj*, is a directed acyclic graph (DAG) and logical 0 (`false`) otherwise. In the N-by-N sparse matrix, all nonzero entries indicate the presence of an edge.

**References**

[1] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

**See Also**

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `biograph` (object constructor), `graphisdag`

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `biograph` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a biograph object:  
`allshortestpaths`, `conncomp`, `isomorphism`, `isspanntree`, `maxflow`,  
`minspantree`, `shortestpath`, `topoorder`, `traverse`

# isomorphism (biograph)

---

**Purpose** Find isomorphism between two biograph objects

**Syntax**

```
[Isomorphic, Map] = isomorphism(BGObj1, BGObj2)
[Isomorphic, Map] = isomorphism(BGObj1, BGObj2, 'Directed',
 DirectedValue)
```

## Arguments

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>BGObj1</i>        | biograph object created by biograph (object constructor).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <i>BGObj2</i>        | biograph object created by biograph (object constructor).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <i>DirectedValue</i> | Property that indicates whether the graphs are directed or undirected. Enter <code>false</code> when both <i>BGObj1</i> and <i>BGObj2</i> produce undirected graphs. In this case, the upper triangles of the sparse matrices extracted from <i>BGObj1</i> and <i>BGObj2</i> are ignored. Default is <code>true</code> , meaning that both graphs are directed. |

## Description

---

**Tip** For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

---

`[Isomorphic, Map] = isomorphism(BGObj1, BGObj2)` returns logical 1 (`true`) in *Isomorphic* if two N-by-N adjacency matrices extracted from biograph objects *BGObj1* and *BGObj2* are isomorphic graphs, and logical 0 (`false`) otherwise. A graph isomorphism is a 1-to-1 mapping of the nodes in the graph from *BGObj1* and the nodes in the graph from *BGObj2* such that adjacencies are preserved. Return value *Isomorphic* is Boolean. When *Isomorphic* is `true`, *Map* is a row vector containing the node indices that map from *BGObj2* to *BGObj1*. When *Isomorphic* is `false`, the worst-case time complexity is  $O(N!)$ , where N is the number of nodes.



[*Isomorphic*, *Map*] = `isomorphism(BGObj1, BGObj2, 'Directed', DirectedValue)` indicates whether the graphs are directed or undirected. Set *DirectedValue* to false when both *BGObj1* and *BGObj2* produce undirected graphs. In this case, the upper triangles of the sparse matrices extracted from *BGObj1* and *BGObj2* are ignored. The default is true, meaning that both graphs are directed.

## References

[1] Fortin, S. (1996). The Graph Isomorphism Problem. Technical Report, 96-20, Dept. of Computer Science, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta, Canada.

[2] McKay, B.D. (1981). Practical Graph Isomorphism. *Congressus Numerantium* 30, 45-87.

[3] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

## See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `biograph` (object constructor), `graphisomorphism`

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `biograph` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a `biograph` object:  
`allshortestpaths`, `conncomp`, `isdag`, `isspantree`, `maxflow`,  
`minspantree`, `shortestpath`, `topoorder`, `traverse`

# isspantree (biograph)

---

**Purpose** Determine if tree created from biograph object is spanning tree

**Syntax** `TF = isspantree(BGObj)`

**Arguments**

`BGObj` biograph object created by biograph (object constructor).

## Description

---

**Tip** For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

---

`TF = isspantree(BGObj)` returns logical 1 (true) if the N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, `BGObj`, is a spanning tree, and logical 0 (false) otherwise. A spanning tree must touch all the nodes and must be acyclic. The lower triangle of the N-by-N adjacency matrix represents an undirected graph, and all nonzero entries indicate the presence of an edge.

**References**

[1] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

**See Also** Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: biograph (object constructor), graphisspantree

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: biograph object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a biograph object:  
allshortestpaths, conncomp, isdag, isomorphism, maxflow,  
minspantree, shortestpath, topoorder, traverse

**Purpose** Calculate maximum flow and minimum cut in biograph object

**Syntax**

```
[MaxFlow, FlowMatrix, Cut] = maxflow(BGObj, SNode, TNode)
[...] = maxflow(BGObj, SNode, TNode, ...'Capacity',
CapacityValue, ...)
[...] = maxflow(BGObj, SNode, TNode, ...'Method', MethodValue,
...)
```

## Arguments

|              |                                                                                                                   |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>BGObj</i> | biograph object created by biograph (object constructor).                                                         |
| <i>SNode</i> | Node in a directed graph represented by an N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from biograph object, <i>BGObj</i> . |
| <i>TNode</i> | Node in a directed graph represented by an N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from biograph object, <i>BGObj</i> . |

# maxflow (biograph)

---

## *CapacityValue*

Column vector that specifies custom capacities for the edges in the N-by-N adjacency matrix. It must have one entry for every nonzero value (edge) in the N-by-N adjacency matrix. The order of the custom capacities in the vector must match the order of the nonzero values in the N-by-N adjacency matrix when it is traversed column-wise. By default, `maxflow` gets capacity information from the nonzero entries in the N-by-N adjacency matrix.

## *MethodValue*

String that specifies the algorithm used to find the minimal spanning tree (MST). Choices are:

- 'Edmonds' — Uses the Edmonds and Karp algorithm, the implementation of which is based on a variation called the *labeling algorithm*. Time complexity is  $O(N \cdot E^2)$ , where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.
- 'Goldberg' — Default algorithm. Uses the Goldberg algorithm, which uses the generic method known as *preflow-push*. Time complexity is  $O(N^2 \cdot \sqrt{E})$ , where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

## Description

---

**Tip** For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

---

`[MaxFlow, FlowMatrix, Cut] = maxflow(BGObj, SNode, TNode)` calculates the maximum flow of a directed graph represented by an N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, `BGObj`, from

node *SNode* to node *TNode*. Nonzero entries in the matrix determine the capacity of the edges. Output *MaxFlow* is the maximum flow, and *FlowMatrix* is a sparse matrix with all the flow values for every edge. *FlowMatrix(X,Y)* is the flow from node *X* to node *Y*. Output *Cut* is a logical row vector indicating the nodes connected to *SNode* after calculating the minimum cut between *SNode* and *TNode*. If several solutions to the minimum cut problem exist, then *Cut* is a matrix.

[...] = maxflow(*BGObj*, *SNode*, *TNode*, ...'*PropertyName*', *PropertyValue*, ...) calls maxflow with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

[...] = maxflow(*BGObj*, *SNode*, *TNode*, ...'*Capacity*', *CapacityValue*, ...) lets you specify custom capacities for the edges. *CapacityValue* is a column vector having one entry for every nonzero value (edge) in the N-by-N adjacency matrix. The order of the custom capacities in the vector must match the order of the nonzero values in the matrix when it is traversed column-wise. By default, graphmaxflow gets capacity information from the nonzero entries in the matrix.

[...] = maxflow(*BGObj*, *SNode*, *TNode*, ...'*Method*', *MethodValue*, ...) lets you specify the algorithm used to find the minimal spanning tree (MST). Choices are:

- '*Edmonds*' — Uses the Edmonds and Karp algorithm, the implementation of which is based on a variation called the *labeling algorithm*. Time complexity is  $O(N \cdot E^2)$ , where *N* and *E* are the number of nodes and edges respectively.
- '*Goldberg*' — Default algorithm. Uses the Goldberg algorithm, which uses the generic method known as *preflow-push*. Time complexity is  $O(N^2 \cdot \sqrt{E})$ , where *N* and *E* are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

# maxflow (biograph)

---

## References

- [1] Edmonds, J. and Karp, R.M. (1972). Theoretical improvements in the algorithmic efficiency for network flow problems. *Journal of the ACM* 19, 248-264.
- [2] Goldberg, A.V. (1985). A New Max-Flow Algorithm. MIT Technical Report MIT/LCS/TM-291, Laboratory for Computer Science, MIT.
- [3] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). *The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual*, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

## See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `biograph` (object constructor), `graphmaxflow`

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `biograph` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a `biograph` object:  
`allshortestpaths`, `conncomp`, `isdag`, `isomorphism`, `isspantree`,  
`minspantree`, `shortestpath`, `topoorder`, `traverse`

**Purpose** Find minimal spanning tree in biograph object

**Syntax**

```
[Tree, pred] = minspantree(BGObj)
[Tree, pred] = minspantree(BGObj, R)
[Tree, pred] = minspantree(..., 'Method', MethodValue, ...)
[Tree, pred] = minspantree(..., 'Weights', WeightsValue, ...)
```

## Arguments

*BGObj* biograph object created by biograph (object constructor).  
*R* Scalar between 1 and the number of nodes.

## Description

---

**Tip** For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

---

`[Tree, pred] = minspantree(BGObj)` finds an acyclic subset of edges that connects all the nodes in the undirected graph represented by an N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj*, and for which the total weight is minimized. Weights of the edges are all nonzero entries in the lower triangle of the N-by-N sparse matrix. Output *Tree* is a spanning tree represented by a sparse matrix. Output *pred* is a vector containing the predecessor nodes of the minimal spanning tree (MST), with the root node indicated by 0. The root node defaults to the first node in the largest connected component. This computation requires an extra call to the `graphconncomp` function.

`[Tree, pred] = minspantree(BGObj, R)` sets the root of the minimal spanning tree to node *R*.

`[Tree, pred] = minspantree(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `minspantree` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

# minspantree (biograph)

---

`[Tree, pred] = minspantree(..., 'Method', MethodValue, ...)` lets you specify the algorithm used to find the minimal spanning tree (MST). Choices are:

- 'Kruskal' — Grows the minimal spanning tree (MST) one edge at a time by finding an edge that connects two trees in a spreading forest of growing MSTs. Time complexity is  $O(E+X\log(N))$ , where  $X$  is the number of edges no longer than the longest edge in the MST, and  $N$  and  $E$  are the number of nodes and edges respectively.
- 'Prim' — Default algorithm. Grows the minimal spanning tree (MST) one edge at a time by adding a minimal edge that connects a node in the growing MST with any other node. Time complexity is  $O(E\log(N))$ , where  $N$  and  $E$  are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

---

**Note** When the graph is unconnected, Prim's algorithm returns only the tree that contains  $R$ , while Kruskal's algorithm returns an MST for every component.

---

`[Tree, pred] = minspantree(..., 'Weights', WeightsValue, ...)` lets you specify custom weights for the edges. *WeightsValue* is a column vector having one entry for every nonzero value (edge) in the  $N$ -by- $N$  sparse matrix. The order of the custom weights in the vector must match the order of the nonzero values in the  $N$ -by- $N$  sparse matrix when it is traversed column-wise. By default, `minspantree` gets weight information from the nonzero entries in the  $N$ -by- $N$  sparse matrix.

## References

[1] Kruskal, J.B. (1956). On the Shortest Spanning Subtree of a Graph and the Traveling Salesman Problem. Proceedings of the American Mathematical Society 7, 48-50.

[2] Prim, R. (1957). Shortest Connection Networks and Some Generalizations. Bell System Technical Journal 36, 1389-1401.



[3] Siek, J.G. Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

### See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `biograph` (object constructor), `graphminspantree`

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `biograph` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a `biograph` object:  
`allshortestpaths`, `conncomp`, `isdag`, `isomorphism`, `isspantree`,  
`maxflow`, `shortestpath`, `topoorder`, `traverse`

# pdist (phytree)

---

**Purpose** Calculate pair-wise patristic distances in phytree object

**Syntax**

```
D = pdist(Tree)
[D,C] = pdist(Tree)
pdist(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
pdist(..., 'Nodes', NodeValue)
pdist(..., 'Squareform', SquareformValue)
pdist(..., 'Criteria', CriteriaValue)
```

## Arguments

|                 |                                                                         |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Tree            | Phylogenetic tree object created with the phytree constructor function. |
| NodeValue       | Property to select the nodes. Enter either 'leaves' (default) or 'all'. |
| SquareformValue | Property to control creating a square matrix.                           |

## Description

`D = pdist(Tree)` returns a vector (*D*) containing the patristic distances between every possible pair of leaf nodes a phylogenetic tree object (*Tree*). The patristic distances are computed by following paths through the branches of the tree and adding the patristic branch distances originally created with `seqlinkage`.

The output vector *D* is arranged in the order  $((2,1), (3,1), \dots, (M,1), (3,2), \dots (M,3), \dots (M,M-1))$  (the lower-left triangle of the full *M*-by-*M* distance matrix). To get the distance between the *I*th and *J*th nodes ( $I > J$ ), use the formula  $D((J-1)*(M-J/2)+I-J)$ . *M* is the number of leaves.

`[D,C] = pdist(Tree)` returns in *C* the index of the closest common parent nodes for every possible pair of query nodes.

`pdist(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`pdist(..., 'Nodes', NodeValue)` indicates the nodes included in the computation. When `Node='leaves'`, the output is ordered as before, but *M* is the total number of nodes in the tree (`NumLeaves+NumBranches`).

`pdist(..., 'Squareform', SquareformValue)`, when `Squareform` is true, converts the output into a square formatted matrix, so that  $D(I,J)$  denotes the distance between the  $I$ th and the  $J$ th nodes. The output matrix is symmetric and has a zero diagonal.

`pdist(..., 'Criteria', CriteriaValue)` changes the criteria used to relate pairs. `C` can be 'distance' (default) or 'levels'.

## Examples

- 1 Get a phylogenetic tree from a file.

```
tr = phytread('pf00002.tree')
```

- 2 Calculate the tree distances between pairs of leaves.

```
dist = pdist(tr, 'nodes', 'leaves', 'squareform', true)
```

## See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox

- functions — `phytree` (object constructor), `phytreeread`, `phytreetool`, `seqlinkage`, `seqpdist`

# plot (phytree)

---

**Purpose** Draw phylogenetic tree

**Syntax**

```
plot(Tree)
plot(Tree, ActiveBranches)
plot(..., 'Type', TypeValue)
plot(..., 'Orientation', OrientationValue)
plot(..., 'BranchLabels', BranchLabelsValue)
plot(..., 'LeafLabels', LeafLabelsValue)
plot(..., 'TerminalLabels', TerminalLabelsValue)
```

## Arguments

|                          |                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Tree</i>              | Phylogenetic tree object created with the <code>phytree</code> constructor function.                                                |
| <i>ActiveBranches</i>    | Branches veivable in the figure window.                                                                                             |
| <i>TypeValue</i>         | Property to select a method for drawing a phylogenetic tree. Enter 'square', 'angular', or 'radial'. The default value is 'square'. |
| <i>OrientationValue</i>  | Property to orient a phylogram or cladogram tree. Enter 'top', 'bottom', 'left', or 'right'. The default value is 'left'.           |
| <i>BranchLabelsValue</i> | Property to control displaying branch labels. Enter either true or false. The default value is false.                               |
| <i>LeafLabelsValue</i>   | Property to control displaying leaf labels. Enter either true or false. The default value is false.                                 |
| <i>TerminalLabels</i>    | Property to control displaying terminal labels. Enter either true or false. The default value is false.                             |

**Description** `plot(Tree)` draws a phylogenetic tree object into a MATLAB figure as a phylogram. The significant distances between branches and nodes

are in the horizontal direction. Vertical distances have no significance and are selected only for display purposes. Handles to graph elements are stored in the figure field `UserData` so that you can easily modify graphic properties.

`plot(Tree, ActiveBranches)` hides the nonactive branches and all of their descendants. `ActiveBranches` is a logical array of size `numBranches x 1` indicating the active branches.

`plot(..., 'Type', TypeValue)` selects a method for drawing a phylogenetic tree.

`plot(..., 'Orientation', OrientationValue)` orients a phylogenetic tree within a figure window. The `Orientation` property is valid only for phylogram and cladogram trees.

`plot(..., 'BranchLabels', BranchLabelsValue)` hides or displays branch labels placed next to the branch node.

`plot(..., 'LeafLabels', LeafLabelsValue)` hides or displays leaf labels placed next to the leaf nodes.

`plot(..., 'TerminalLabels', TerminalLabelsValue)` hides or displays terminal labels. Terminal labels are placed over the axis tick labels and ignored when `Type= 'radial'`.

`H = plot(...)` returns a structure with handles to the graph elements.

## Examples

```
tr = phytread('pf00002.tree')
plot(tr, 'Type', 'radial')
```

Graph element properties can be modified as follows:

```
h=get(gcf, 'UserData')
set(h.branchNodeLabels, 'FontSize', 6, 'Color', [.5 .5 .5])
```

## See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox

- functions — `phytree` (object constructor), `phytreeread`, `phytreetool`, `seqlinkage`

## plot (phytree)

---

- phytree object method — view

**Purpose** Remove branch nodes from phylogenetic tree

**Syntax**  
T2 = prune(T1, Nodes)  
T2 = prune(T1, Nodes, 'Mode', 'Exclusive')

## Arguments

|       |                                                                                                                       |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| T1    | Phylogenetic object created with the phytree constructor function.                                                    |
| Nodes | Nodes to remove from tree.                                                                                            |
| Mode  | Property to control the method of pruning. Enter either 'Inclusive' or 'Exclusive'. The default value is 'Inclusive'. |

## Description

T2 = prune(T1, Nodes) removes the nodes listed in the vector Nodes from the tree T1. prune removes any branch or leaf node listed in Nodes and all their descendants from the tree T1, and returns the modified tree T2. The parent nodes are connected to the 'brothers' as required. Nodes in the tree are labeled as [1:numLeaves] for the leaves and as [numLeaves+1:numLeaves+numBranches] for the branches. Nodes can also be a logical array of size [numLeaves+numBranches x 1] indicating the nodes to be removed.

T2 = prune(T1, Nodes, 'Mode', 'Exclusive') changes the property (Mode) for pruning to 'Exclusive' and removes only the descendants of the nodes listed in the vector Nodes. Nodes that do not have a predecessor become leaves in the list Nodes. In this case, pruning is the process of reducing a tree by turning some branch nodes into leaf nodes, and removing the leaf nodes under the original branch.

## Examples

Load a phylogenetic tree created from a protein family

```
tr = phytreeread('pf00002.tree');
view(tr)
```

% To :

## prune (phytree)

---

Remove all the 'mouse' proteins

```
ind = getbyname(tr,'mouse');
tr = prune(tr,ind);
view(tr)
```

Remove potential outliers in the tree

```
[sel,sel_leaves] = select(tr,'criteria','distance',...
 'threshold',.3,...
 'reference','leaves',...
 'exclude','leaves',...
 'propagate','toleaves');

tr = prune(tr,~sel_leaves)
view(tr)
```

### See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox

- functions — `phytree` (object constructor), `phytreetool`
- `phytree` object methods — `select`, `get`



## Purpose

Reorder leaves of phylogenetic tree

## Syntax

```
Tree1Reordered = reorder(Tree1, Order)
[Tree1Reordered, OptimalOrder] = reorder(Tree1, Order,
 'Approximate', ApproximateValue)
[Tree1Reordered, OptimalOrder] = reorder(Tree1, Tree2)
```

## Arguments

|                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Tree1, Tree2</i>     | Phytree objects.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <i>Order</i>            | Vector with position indices for each leaf.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <i>ApproximateValue</i> | Controls the use of the optimal leaf-ordering calculation to find the closest order possible to the suggested one without dividing the clades or producing crossing branches. Enter true to use the calculation. Default is false. |

## Return Values

|                       |                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Tree1Reordered</i> | Phytree object with reordered leaves.                                                                                    |
| <i>OptimalOrder</i>   | Vector of position indices for each leaf in <i>Tree1Reordered</i> , determined by the optimal leaf-ordering calculation. |

## Description

*Tree1Reordered* = `reorder(Tree1, Order)` reorders the leaves of the phylogenetic tree *Tree1*, without modifying its structure and distances, creating a new phylogenetic tree, *Tree1Reordered*. *Order* is a vector of position indices for each leaf. If *Order* is invalid, that is, if it divides the clades (or produces crossing branches), then `reorder` returns an error message.

`[Tree1Reordered, OptimalOrder] = reorder(Tree1, Order, 'Approximate', ApproximateValue)` controls the use of the optimal leaf-ordering calculation, which finds the best approximate order closest to the suggested one, without dividing the clades or producing crossing branches. Enter true to use the calculation and return

# reorder (phytree)

---

*Tree1Reordered*, the reordered tree, and *OptimalOrder*, a vector of position indices for each leaf in *Tree1Reordered*, determined by the optimal leaf-ordering calculation. Default is false.

```
[Tree1Reordered, OptimalOrder] = reorder(Tree1, Tree2)
```

uses the optimal leaf-ordering calculation to reorder the leaves in *Tree1* such that it matches the order of leaves in *Tree2* as closely as possible, without dividing the clades or producing crossing branches. *Tree1Reordered* is the reordered tree, and *OptimalOrder* is a vector of position indices for each leaf in *Tree1Reordered*, determined by the optimal leaf-ordering calculation

## Examples

### Reordering Leaves Using a Valid Order

- 1 Create and view a phylogenetic tree.

```
b = [1 2; 3 4; 5 6; 7 8; 9 10];
tree = phytree(b)
 Phylogenetic tree object with 6 leaves (5 branches)
view(tree)
```

- 2 Reorder the leaves on the phylogenetic tree, and then view the reordered tree.

```
treeReordered = reorder(tree, [5, 6, 3, 4, 1, 2])
view(treeReordered)
```

### Finding Best Approximate Order When Using an Invalid Order

- 1 Create a phylogenetic tree by reading a Newick-formatted tree file (ASCII text file).

```
tree = phytread('pf00002.tree')
 Phylogenetic tree object with 33 leaves (32 branches)
```

- 2 Create a row vector of the leaf names in alphabetical order.

```
[dummy, order] = sort(get(tree, 'LeafNames'));
```

- 3 Reorder the phylogenetic tree to match as closely as possible the row vector of alphabetically ordered leaf names, without dividing the clades or having crossing branches.

```
treeReordered = reorder(tree,order,'approximate',true)
Phylogenetic tree object with 33 leaves (32 branches)
```

- 4 View the original and the reordered phylogenetic trees.

```
view(tree)
view(treeReordered)
```

## Reordering Leaves to Match Leaf Order in Another Phylogenetic Tree

- 1 Create a phylogenetic tree by reading sequence data from a FASTA file, calculating the pair-wise distances between sequences, and then using the neighbor-joining method.

```
seqs = fastaread('pf00002.fa')

seqs =

33x1 struct array with fields:
 Header
 Sequence

dist = seqpdist(seqs,'method','jukes-cantor','indels','pair');
NJtree = seqneighjoin(dist,'equivar',seqs)
Phylogenetic tree object with 33 leaves (32 branches)
```

- 2 Create another phylogenetic tree from the same sequence data and pair-wise distances between sequences, using the single linkage method.

```
HCtree = seqlinkage(dist,'single',seqs)
Phylogenetic tree object with 33 leaves (32 branches)
```

## reorder (phytree)

---

- 3 Use the optimal leaf-ordering calculation to reorder the leaves in HCtree such that it matches the order of leaves in NJtree as closely as possible, without dividing the clades or having crossing branches.

```
HCtree_reordered = reorder(HCtree,NJtree)
Phylogenetic tree object with 33 leaves (32 branches)
```

- 4 View the reordered phylogenetic tree and the tree used to reorder it.

```
view(HCtree_reordered)
view(NJtree)
```

### See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function: `phytree` (object constructor)

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `phytree` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a `phytree` object: `get`, `getbyname`, `prune`

**Purpose** Change root of phylogenetic tree

**Syntax**

```
Tree2 = reroot(Tree1)
Tree2 = reroot(Tree1, Node)
Tree2 = reroot(Tree1, Node, Distance)
```

## Arguments

|                 |                                                                                     |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Tree1</i>    | Phylogenetic tree (phytree object) created with the function <code>phytree</code> . |
| <i>Node</i>     | Node index returned by the phytree object method <code>getbyname</code> .           |
| <i>Distance</i> | Distance from the reference branch.                                                 |

## Description

`Tree2 = reroot(Tree1)` changes the root of a phylogenetic tree (*Tree1*) using a midpoint method. The midpoint is the location where the mean values of the branch lengths, on either side of the tree, are equalized. The original root is deleted from the tree.

`Tree2 = reroot(Tree1, Node)` changes the root of a phylogenetic tree (*Tree1*) to a branch node using the node index (*Node*). The new root is placed at half the distance between the branch node and its parent.

`Tree2 = reroot(Tree1, Node, Distance)` changes the root of a phylogenetic tree (*Tree1*) to a new root at a given distance (*Distance*) from the reference branch node (*Node*) toward the original root of the tree. Note: The new branch representing the root in the new tree (*Tree2*) is labeled 'Root'.

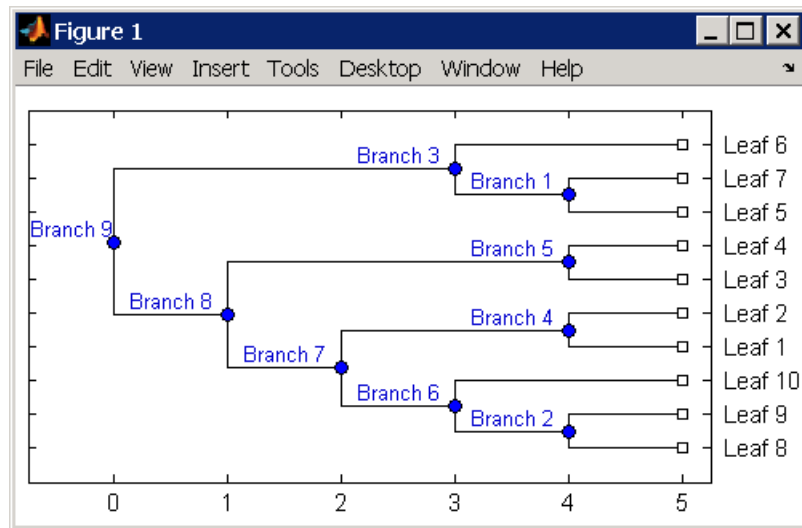
## Examples

1 Create an ultrametric tree.

```
tr_1 = phytree([5 7;8 9;6 11; 1 2;3 4;10 12;...
 14 16; 15 17;13 18])
plot(tr_1,'branchlabels',true)
```

MATLAB draws a figure with the phylogenetic tree.

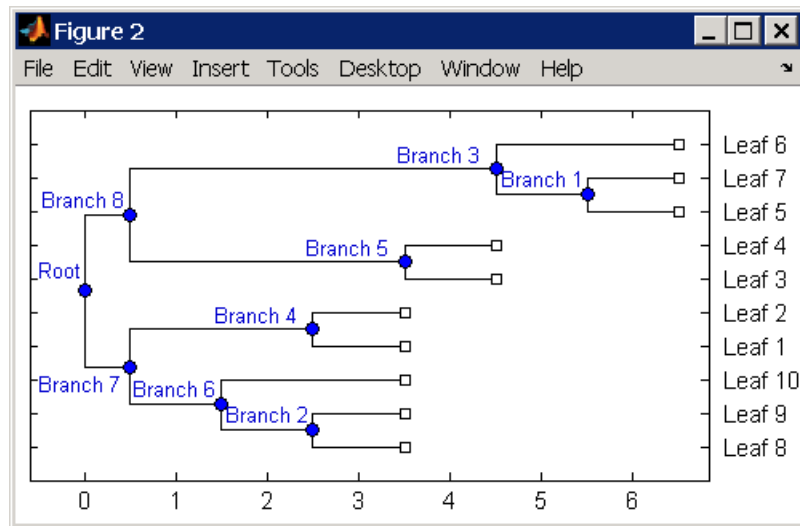
# reroot (phytree)



**2** Place the root at 'Branch 7'.

```
sel = getbyname(tr_1,'Branch 7');
tr_2 = reroot(tr_1,sel)
plot(tr_2,'branchlabels',true)
```

MATLAB draws a tree with the root moved to the center of branch 7.

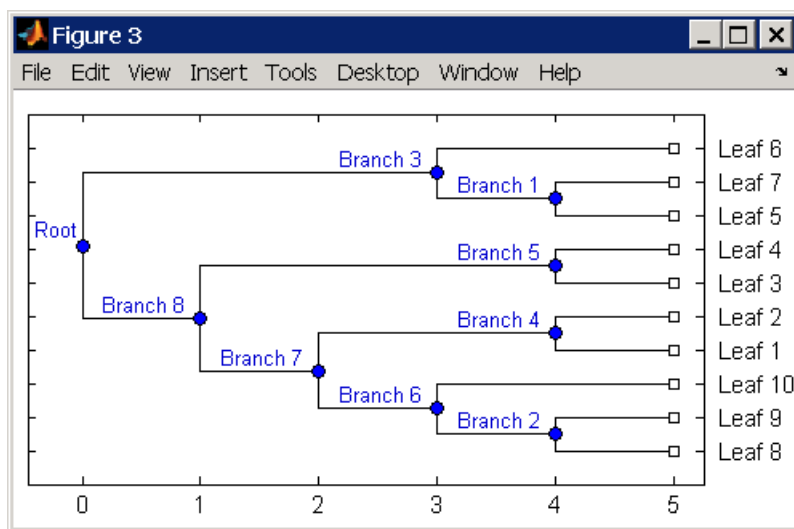


- 3** Move the root to a branch that makes the tree as ultrametric as possible.

```
tr_3 = reroot(tr_2)
plot(tr_3, 'branchlabels', true)
```

MATLAB draws the new tree with the root moved from the center of branch 7 to branch 8.

# reroot (phytree)



## See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox

- functions — `phytree` (object constructor), `seqneighjoin`
- `phytree` object methods — `get`, `getbyname`, `prune`, `select`



**Purpose** Select tree branches and leaves in phytree object

**Syntax**

```
S = select(Tree, N)
[S, Selleaves, Selbranches] = select(...)
select(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue,...)
select(..., 'Reference', ReferenceValue)
select(..., 'Criteria', CriteriaValue)
select(..., 'Threshold', ThresholdValue)
select(..., 'Exclude', ExcludeValue),
select(..., 'Propagate', PropagateValue)
```

## Arguments

|                       |                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Tree</i>           | Phylogenetic tree (phytree object) created with the function phytree.                                                                  |
| <i>N</i>              | Number of closest nodes to the root node.                                                                                              |
| <i>ReferenceValue</i> | Property to select a reference point for measuring distance.                                                                           |
| <i>CriteriaValue</i>  | Property to select a criteria for measuring distance.                                                                                  |
| <i>ThresholdValue</i> | Property to select a distance value. Nodes with distances below this value are selected.                                               |
| <i>ExcludeValue</i>   | Property to remove (exclude) branch or leaf nodes from the output. Enter 'none', 'branches', or 'leaves'. The default value is 'none'. |
| <i>PropagateValue</i> | Property to select propagating nodes toward the leaves or the root.                                                                    |

## Description

`S = select(Tree, N)` returns a logical vector (*S*) of size [NumNodes x 1] indicating the *N* closest nodes to the root node of a phytree object (*Tree*) where NumNodes = NumLeaves + NumBranches. The first criterion select uses is branch levels, then patristic distance (also

## select (phytree)

---

known as tree distance). By default, `select` uses `inf` as the value of `N`, and `select(Tree)` returns a vector with values of `true`.

`[S, Selleaves, Selbranches] = select(...)` returns two additional logical vectors, one for the selected leaves and one for the selected branches.

`select(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` defines optional properties using property name/value pairs.

`select(..., 'Reference', ReferenceValue)` changes the reference point(s) to measure the closeness. `Reference` can be the root (default) or leaves. When using leaves, a node can have multiple distances to its descendant leaves (nonultrametric tree). If this the case, `select` considers the minimum distance to any descendant leaf.

`select(..., 'Criteria', CriteriaValue)` changes the criteria `select` uses to measure closeness. If `C = 'levels'` (default), the first criterion is branch levels and then patristic distance. If `C = 'distance'`, the first criterion is patristic distance and then branch levels.

`select(..., 'Threshold', ThresholdValue)` selects all the nodes where closeness is less than or equal to the threshold value (`ThresholdValue`). Notice, you can also use either of the properties `'criteria'` or `'reference'`, if `N` is not specified, then `N = inf`; otherwise you can limit the number of selected nodes by `N`.

`select(..., 'Exclude', ExcludeValue)`, when `ExcludeValue = 'branches'`, sets a postfilter that excludes all the branch nodes from `S`, or when `ExcludeValue = 'leaves'`, all the leaf nodes. The default is `'none'`.

`select(..., 'Propagate', PropagateValue)` activates a postfunctionality that propagates the selected nodes to the leaves when `P == 'toleaves'` or toward the root finding a common ancestor when `P == 'toroot'`. The default value is `'none'`. `P` may also be `'both'`. The `'Propagate'` property acts after the `'Exclude'` property.

## Examples

```
% Load a phylogenetic tree created from a protein family:
tr = phytread('pf00002.tree');

% To find close products for a given protein (e.g. vips_human):
ind = getbyname(tr,'vips_human');
[sel,sel_leaves] = select(tr,'criteria','distance',...
 'threshold',0.6,'reference',ind);
view(tr,sel_leaves)

% To find potential outliers in the tree, use
[sel,sel_leaves] = select(tr,'criteria','distance',...
 'threshold',.3,...
 'reference','leaves',...
 'exclude','leaves',...
 'propagate','toleaves');
view(tr,~sel_leaves)
```

## See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox

- functions — `phytree` (object constructor), `phytreetool`
- `phytree` object methods — `get`, `pdist`, `prune`

# shortestpath (biograph)

---

**Purpose** Solve shortest path problem in biograph object

**Syntax**

```
[dist, path, pred] = shortestpath(BGObj, S)
[dist, path, pred] = shortestpath(BGObj, S, T)
[...] = shortestpath(..., 'Directed', DirectedValue, ...)
[...] = shortestpath(..., 'Method', MethodValue, ...)
[...] = shortestpath(..., 'Weights', WeightsValue, ...)
```

## Arguments

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>BGObj</i>         | biograph object created by biograph (object constructor).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <i>S</i>             | Node in graph represented by an N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, <i>BGObj</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <i>T</i>             | Node in graph represented by an N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, <i>BGObj</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <i>DirectedValue</i> | Property that indicates whether the graph represented by the N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, <i>BGObj</i> , is directed or undirected. Enter false for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is true. |

## *MethodValue*

String that specifies the algorithm used to find the shortest path. Choices are:

- 'Bellman-Ford' — Assumes weights of the edges to be nonzero entries in the N-by-N adjacency matrix. Time complexity is  $O(N * E)$ , where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.
- 'BFS' — Breadth-first search. Assumes all weights to be equal, and nonzero entries in the N-by-N adjacency matrix to represent edges. Time complexity is  $O(N + E)$ , where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.
- 'Acyclic' — Assumes the graph represented by the N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj*, to be a directed acyclic graph and that weights of the edges are nonzero entries in the N-by-N adjacency matrix. Time complexity is  $O(N + E)$ , where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.
- 'Dijkstra' — Default algorithm. Assumes weights of the edges to be positive values in the N-by-N adjacency matrix. Time complexity is  $O(\log(N) * E)$ , where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

## *WeightsValue*

Column vector that specifies custom weights for the edges in the N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj*. It must have one entry for every nonzero value (edge) in the N-by-N adjacency matrix. The order of the custom weights in the vector must match the order of the nonzero values in the N-by-N adjacency matrix when it is traversed column-wise. This property lets you use zero-valued weights. By default, `shortestpaths` gets weight information from the nonzero entries in the N-by-N adjacency matrix.

# shortestpath (biograph)

---

## Description

---

**Tip** For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

---

`[dist, path, pred] = shortestpath(BGObj, S)` determines the single-source shortest paths from node *S* to all other nodes in the graph represented by an N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj*. Weights of the edges are all nonzero entries in the N-by-N adjacency matrix. *dist* are the N distances from the source to every node (using Inf for nonreachable nodes and 0 for the source node). *path* contains the winning paths to every node. *pred* contains the predecessor nodes of the winning paths.

`[dist, path, pred] = shortestpath(BGObj, S, T)` determines the single source-single destination shortest path from node *S* to node *T*.

`[...] = shortestpath(..., 'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `shortestpath` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`[...] = shortestpath(..., 'Directed', DirectedValue, ...)` indicates whether the graph represented by the N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj*, is directed or undirected. Set *DirectedValue* to false for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is true.

`[...] = shortestpath(..., 'Method', MethodValue, ...)` lets you specify the algorithm used to find the shortest path. Choices are:

- 'Bellman-Ford' — Assumes weights of the edges to be nonzero entries in the N-by-N adjacency matrix. Time complexity is  $O(N \cdot E)$ , where *N* and *E* are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

- 'BFS' — Breadth-first search. Assumes all weights to be equal, and nonzero entries in the N-by-N adjacency matrix to represent edges. Time complexity is  $O(N+E)$ , where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.
- 'Acyclic' — Assumes the graph represented by the N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj*, to be a directed acyclic graph and that weights of the edges are nonzero entries in the N-by-N adjacency matrix. Time complexity is  $O(N+E)$ , where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.
- 'Dijkstra' — Default algorithm. Assumes weights of the edges to be positive values in the N-by-N adjacency matrix. Time complexity is  $O(\log(N)*E)$ , where N and E are the number of nodes and edges respectively.

[...] = shortestpath(..., 'Weights', *WeightsValue*, ...) lets you specify custom weights for the edges. *WeightsValue* is a column vector having one entry for every nonzero value (edge) in the N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj*. The order of the custom weights in the vector must match the order of the nonzero values in the N-by-N adjacency matrix when it is traversed column-wise. This property lets you use zero-valued weights. By default, shortestpath gets weight information from the nonzero entries in the N-by-N adjacency matrix.

## References

- [1] Dijkstra, E.W. (1959). A note on two problems in connexion with graphs. *Numerische Mathematik 1*, 269-271.
- [2] Bellman, R. (1958). On a Routing Problem. *Quarterly of Applied Mathematics 16(1)*, 87-90.
- [3] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). *The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual*, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

## See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: biograph (object constructor), graphshortestpath

## shortestpath (biograph)

---

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: biograph object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a biograph object:  
allshortestpaths, conncomp, isdag, isomorphism, isspantree,  
maxflow, minspantree, topoorder, traverse



**Purpose** Extract phylogenetic subtree

**Syntax** `Tree2 = subtree(Tree1, Nodes)`

**Description** `Tree2 = subtree(Tree1, Nodes)` extracts a new subtree (*Tree2*) where the new root is the first common ancestor of the *Nodes* vector from *Tree1*. Nodes in the tree are indexed as [1:NUMLEAVES] for the leaves and as [NUMLEAVES+1:NUMLEAVES+NUMBRANCHES] for the branches. Nodes can also be a logical array of following sizes [NUMLEAVES+NUMBRANCHES x 1], [NUMLEAVES x 1] or [NUMBRANCHES x 1].

**Examples** **1** Load a phylogenetic tree created from a protein family.

```
tr = phytread('pf00002.tree')
```

**2** Get the subtree that contains the VIPS and CGRR human proteins.

```
sel = getbyname(tr,{'vips_human','cgrh_human'});
sel = any(sel,2);
tr = subtree(tr,sel)
view(tr);
```

**See Also** Bioinformatics Toolbox

- functions — `phytree` (object constructor)
- `phytree` object methods — `get`, `getbyname`, `prune`, `select`

# topoorder (biograph)

---

**Purpose** Perform topological sort of directed acyclic graph extracted from biograph object

**Syntax** `order = topoorder(BGObj)`

**Arguments**

`BGObj` biograph object created by biograph (object constructor).

**Description**

---

**Tip** For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

---

`order = topoorder(BGObj)` returns an index vector with the order of the nodes sorted topologically. In topological order, an edge can exist between a source node `u` and a destination node `v`, if and only if `u` appears before `v` in the vector `order`. `BGObj` is a biograph object from which an N-by-N adjacency matrix is extracted and represents a directed acyclic graph (DAG). In the N-by-N sparse matrix, all nonzero entries indicate the presence of an edge.

**References**

[1] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

**See Also**

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `biograph` (object constructor), `graphtopoorder`

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `biograph` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a biograph object: `allshortestpaths`, `conncomp`, `isdag`, `isomorphism`, `isspantree`, `maxflow`, `minspantree`, `shortestpath`, `traverse`

**Purpose** Traverse biograph object by following adjacent nodes

**Syntax**

```
[disc, pred, closed] = traverse(BGObj, S)
[...] = traverse(BGObj, S, ...'Depth', DepthValue, ...)
[...] = traverse(BGObj, S, ...'Directed', DirectedValue, ...)
[...] = traverse(BGObj, S, ...'Method', MethodValue, ...)
```

## Arguments

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>BGObj</i>         | biograph object created by biograph (object constructor).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <i>S</i>             | Integer that indicates the source node in <i>BGObj</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <i>DepthValue</i>    | Integer that indicates a node in <i>BGObj</i> that specifies the depth of the search. Default is Inf (infinity).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>DirectedValue</i> | Property that indicates whether graph represented by an N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, <i>BGObj</i> is directed or undirected. Enter false for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is true.                                                                                                                                    |
| <i>MethodValue</i>   | String that specifies the algorithm used to traverse the graph. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 'BFS' — Breadth-first search. Time complexity is <math>O(N+E)</math>, where N and E are number of nodes and edges respectively.</li><li>• 'DFS' — Default algorithm. Depth-first search. Time complexity is <math>O(N+E)</math>, where N and E are number of nodes and edges respectively.</li></ul> |

## Description

---

**Tip** For introductory information on graph theory functions, see “Graph Theory Functions” in the Bioinformatics Toolbox documentation.

---

## traverse (biograph)

---

`[disc, pred, closed] = traverse(BGObj, S)` traverses the directed graph represented by an N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj*, starting from the node indicated by integer *S*. In the N-by-N sparse matrix, all nonzero entries indicate the presence of an edge. *disc* is a vector of node indices in the order in which they are discovered. *pred* is a vector of predecessor node indices (listed in the order of the node indices) of the resulting spanning tree. *closed* is a vector of node indices in the order in which they are closed.

`[...] = traverse(BGObj, S, ...'PropertyName', PropertyValue, ...)` calls `traverse` with optional properties that use property name/property value pairs. You can specify one or more properties in any order. Each *PropertyName* must be enclosed in single quotes and is case insensitive. These property name/property value pairs are as follows:

`[...] = traverse(BGObj, S, ...'Depth', DepthValue, ...)` specifies the depth of the search. *DepthValue* is an integer indicating a node in the graph represented by the N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj*. Default is Inf (infinity).

`[...] = traverse(BGObj, S, ...'Directed', DirectedValue, ...)` indicates whether the graph represented by the N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj* is directed or undirected. Set *DirectedValue* to false for an undirected graph. This results in the upper triangle of the sparse matrix being ignored. Default is true.

`[...] = traverse(BGObj, S, ...'Method', MethodValue, ...)` lets you specify the algorithm used to traverse the graph represented by the N-by-N adjacency matrix extracted from a biograph object, *BGObj*. Choices are:

- 'BFS' — Breadth-first search. Time complexity is  $O(N+E)$ , where *N* and *E* are number of nodes and edges respectively.
- 'DFS' — Default algorithm. Depth-first search. Time complexity is  $O(N+E)$ , where *N* and *E* are number of nodes and edges respectively.

## References

[1] Sedgewick, R., (2002). Algorithms in C++, Part 5 Graph Algorithms (Addison-Wesley).

[2] Siek, J.G., Lee, L-Q, and Lumsdaine, A. (2002). The Boost Graph Library User Guide and Reference Manual, (Upper Saddle River, NJ:Pearson Education).

## See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `biograph` (object constructor), `graphtraverse`

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `biograph` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a `biograph` object:  
`allshortestpaths`, `conncomp`, `isdag`, `isomorphism`, `isspantree`,  
`maxflow`, `minspantree`, `shortestpath`, `topoorder`

# view (biograph)

---

**Purpose** Draw figure from biograph object

**Syntax** `view(BGobj)`  
`BGobjHandle = view(BGobj)`

## Arguments

*BGobj* Biograph object created with the function `biograph`.

## Description

`view(BGobj)` opens a figure window and draws a graph represented by a biograph object (*BGobj*). When the biograph object is already drawn in the figure window, this function only updates the graph properties.

`BGobjHandle = view(BGobj)` returns a handle to a deep copy of the biograph object (*BGobj*) in the figure window. When updating an existing figure, you can use the returned handle to change object properties programmatically or from the command line. When you close the figure window, the handle is no longer valid. The original biograph object (*BGobj*) is left unchanged.

## Examples

**1** Create a biograph object.

```
cm = [0 1 1 0 0;1 0 0 1 1;1 0 0 0 0;0 0 0 0 1;1 0 1 0 0];
bg = biograph(cm)
```

**2** Render the biograph object into a Handles Graphic figure and get back a handle.

```
h = view(bg)
```

**3** Change the color of all nodes and edges.

```
set(h.Nodes, 'Color', [.5 .7 1])
set(h.Edges, 'LineColor', [0 0 0])
```

## See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function: `biograph` (object constructor)

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: biograph object

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a biograph object: dolayout, getancestors, getdescendants, getedgesbynodeid, getnodesbyid, getrelatives, view

MATLAB functions: get, set

# view (phytree)

---

**Purpose** View phylogenetic tree

**Syntax** `view(Tree)`  
`view(Tree, IntNodes)`

## Arguments

*Tree* Phylogenetic tree (phytree object) created with the function `phytree`.

*IntNodes* Nodes from the phytree object to initially display in the *Tree*.

## Description

`view(Tree)` opens the Phylogenetic Tree Tool window and draws a tree from data in a phytree object (*Tree*). The significant distances between branches and nodes are in the horizontal direction. Vertical distances have no significance and are selected only for display purposes. You can access tools to edit and analyze the tree from the Phylogenetic Tree Tool menu bar or by using the left and right mouse buttons.

`view(Tree, IntNodes)` opens the Phylogenetic Tree Tool window with an initial selection of nodes specified by *IntNodes*. *IntNodes* can be a logical array of any of the following sizes: `NumLeaves + NumBranches x 1`, `NumLeaves x 1`, or `NumBranches x 1`. *IntNodes* can also be a list of indices.

## Example

```
tree = phytreeread('pf00002.tree')
view(tree)
```

## See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `phytree` (object constructor), `phytreeread`, `phytreetool`, `seqlinkage`, `seqneighjoin`

Bioinformatics Toolbox object: `phytree` object

Bioinformatics Toolbox method of phytree object: `plot`



**Purpose** Calculate weights for phylogenetic tree

**Syntax** `W = weights(Tree)`

**Arguments**

*Tree* Phylogenetic tree (phytree object) created with the function `phytree`.

**Description**

`W = weights(Tree)` calculates branch proportional weights for every leaf in a tree (*Tree*) using the Thompson-Higgins-Gibson method. The distance of every segment of the tree is adjusted by dividing it by the number of leaves it contains. The sequence weights are the result of normalizing to unity the new patristic distances between every leaf and the root.

**Examples**

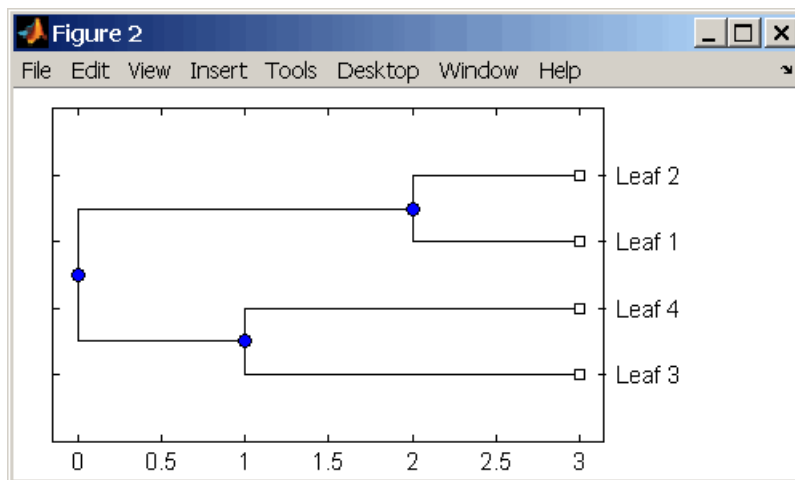
**1** Create an ultrametric tree with specified branch distances.

```
bd = [1 2 3]';
tr_1 = phytree([1 2;3 4;5 6],bd)
```

**2** View the tree.

```
view(tr_1)
```

# weights (phytree)



**3** Display the calculated weights.

```
weights(tr_1)
```

```
ans =
```

```
1.0000
1.0000
0.8000
0.8000
```

## References

[1] Thompson JD, Higgins DG, Gibson TJ (1994), "CLUSTAL W: Improving the sensitivity of progressive multiple sequence alignment through sequence weighting, position-specific gap penalties and weight matrix choice," *Nucleic Acids Research*, 22(22):4673-4680.

[2] Henikoff S, Henikoff JG (1994), "Position-based sequence weights," *Journal Molecular Biology*, 243(4):574-578.

### See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox

- functions — `multialign`, `phytree` (object constructor), `profalign`, `seqlinkage`



# Objects — Alphabetical List

---

# biograph object

---

## Purpose

Data structure containing generic interconnected data used to implement directed graph

## Description

A biograph object is a data structure containing generic interconnected data used to implement a directed graph. Nodes represent proteins, genes, or any other biological entity, and edges represent interactions, dependences, or any other relationship between the nodes. A biograph object also stores information, such as color properties and text label characteristics, used to create a 2-D visualization of the graph.

You create a biograph object using the object constructor function `biograph`. You can view a graphical representation of a biograph object using the `view` method.

## Method Summary

Following are methods of a biograph object:

|                                          |                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>allshortestpaths (biograph)</code> | Find all shortest paths in biograph object                      |
| <code>conncomp (biograph)</code>         | Find strongly or weakly connected components in biograph object |
| <code>dolayout (biograph)</code>         | Calculate node positions and edge trajectories                  |
| <code>getancestors (biograph)</code>     | Find ancestors in biograph object                               |
| <code>getdescendants (biograph)</code>   | Find descendants in biograph object                             |
| <code>getedgesbynodeid (biograph)</code> | Get handles to edges in biograph object                         |
| <code>getmatrix (biograph)</code>        | Get connection matrix from biograph object                      |
| <code>getnodesbyid (biograph)</code>     | Get handles to nodes                                            |
| <code>getrelatives (biograph)</code>     | Find relatives in biograph object                               |
| <code>isdag (biograph)</code>            | Test for cycles in biograph object                              |

|                         |                                                                                   |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| isomorphism (biograph)  | Find isomorphism between two biograph objects                                     |
| isspantree (biograph)   | Determine if tree created from biograph object is spanning tree                   |
| maxflow (biograph)      | Calculate maximum flow and minimum cut in biograph object                         |
| minspantree (biograph)  | Find minimal spanning tree in biograph object                                     |
| shortestpath (biograph) | Solve shortest path problem in biograph object                                    |
| topoorder (biograph)    | Perform topological sort of directed acyclic graph extracted from biograph object |
| traverse (biograph)     | Traverse biograph object by following adjacent nodes                              |
| view (biograph)         | Draw figure from biograph object                                                  |

Following are methods of a node object:

|                           |                                     |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| getancestors (biograph)   | Find ancestors in biograph object   |
| getdescendants (biograph) | Find descendants in biograph object |
| getrelatives (biograph)   | Find relatives in biograph object   |

## Property Summary

A biograph object contains two objects, node objects and edge objects, that have their own properties. For a list of the properties of node objects and edge objects, see the following tables.

# biograph object

---

## Properties of a Biograph Object

| Property    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ID          | String to identify the biograph object. Default is ''. (This information is for bookkeeping purposes only.)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Label       | String to label the biograph object. Default is ''. (This information is for bookkeeping purposes only.)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Description | String that describes the biograph object. Default is ''. (This information is for bookkeeping purposes only.)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| LayoutType  | String that specifies the algorithm for the layout engine. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 'hierarchical' (default)</li><li>• 'equilibrium'</li><li>• 'radial'</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| EdgeType    | String that specifies how edges display. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 'straight'</li><li>• 'curved' (default)</li><li>• 'segmented'</li></ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note</b> Curved or segmented edges occur only when necessary to avoid obstruction by nodes. Biograph objects with LayoutType equal to 'equilibrium' or 'radial' cannot produce curved or segmented edges.</p> <hr/> |
| Scale       | Positive number that post-scales the node coordinates. Default is 1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |



| Property        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| LayoutScale     | Positive number that scales the size of the nodes before calling the layout engine. Default is 1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| EdgeTextColor   | Three-element numeric vector of RGB values. Default is [0, 0, 0], which defines black.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| EdgeFontSize    | Positive number that sets the size of the edge font in points. Default is 8.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| ShowArrows      | Controls the display of arrows with the edges. Choices are 'on' (default) or 'off'.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| ArrowSize       | Positive number that sets the size of the arrows in points. Default is 8.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| ShowWeights     | Controls the display of text indicating the weight of the edges. Choices are 'on' (default) or 'off'.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| ShowTextInNodes | String that specifies the node property used to label nodes when you display a biograph object using the view method. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 'Label' — Uses the Label property of the node object (default).</li><li>• 'ID' — Uses the ID property of the node object.</li><li>• 'None'</li></ul> |

# biograph object

---

| Property          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NodeAutoSize      | Controls precalculating the node size before calling the layout engine. Choices are 'on' (default) or 'off'.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| NodeCallback      | User-defined callback for all nodes. Enter the name of a function, a function handle, or a cell array with multiple function handles. After using the view function to display the biograph object in the Biograph Viewer, you can double-click a node to activate the first callback, or right-click and select a callback to activate. Default is the anonymous function, @(node) inspect (node), which displays the Property Inspector dialog box.  |
| EdgeCallback      | User-defined callback for all edges. Enter the name of a function, a function handle, or a cell array with multiple function handles. After using the view function to display the biograph object in the Biograph Viewer, you can double-click an edge to activate the first callback, or right-click and select a callback to activate. Default is the anonymous function, @(edge) inspect (edge), which displays the Property Inspector dialog box. |
| CustomNodeDrawFcn | Function handle to customized function to draw nodes. Default is [].                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

| Property | Description                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Nodes    | Read-only column vector with handles to node objects of a biograph object. The size of the vector is the number of nodes. For properties of node objects, see Properties of a Node Object on page 5-7. |
| Edges    | Read-only column vector with handles to edge objects of a biograph object. The size of vector is the number of edges. For properties of edge objects, see Properties of an Edge Object on page 5-9.    |

## Properties of a Node Object

| Property    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ID          | Read-only string defined when the biograph object is created, either by the <i>NodeIDs</i> input argument or internally by the biograph constructor function. Each node object's ID is unique and used internally to identify the node.                                                                                  |
| Label       | String for labeling a node when you display a biograph object using the view method. Default is the ID property of the node object.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Description | String that describes the node. Default is ' '. (This information is for bookkeeping purposes only.)                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Position    | Two-element numeric vector of <i>x</i> - and <i>y</i> -coordinates, for example, [ 150, 150]. If you do not specify this property, default is initially [], then when the layout algorithms are executed, it becomes a two-element numeric vector of <i>x</i> - and <i>y</i> -coordinates computed by the layout engine. |

# biograph object

---

| Property  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Shape     | String that specifies the shape of the nodes. Choices are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 'box'(default)</li><li>• 'ellipse'</li><li>• 'circle'</li><li>• 'rectangle'</li><li>• 'diamond'</li><li>• 'trapezium'</li><li>• 'invtrapezium'</li><li>• 'house'</li><li>• 'inverse'</li><li>• 'parallelogram'</li></ul> |
| Size      | Two-element numeric vector calculated before calling the layout engine using the actual font size and shape of the node. Default is [10, 10].                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Color     | Three-element numeric vector of RGB values that specifies the fill color of the node. Default is [1, 1, 0.7], which defines yellow.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| LineWidth | Positive number. Default is 1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| LineColor | Three-element numeric vector of RGB values that specifies the outline color of the node. Default is [0.3, 0.3, 1], which defines blue.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| FontSize  | Positive number that sets the size of the node font in points. Default is 8.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

| Property  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TextColor | Three-element numeric vector of RGB values that specifies the color of the node labels. Default is [0, 0, 0], which defines black.                                                                 |
| UserData  | Miscellaneous, user-defined data that you want to associate with the node. The node does not use this property, but you can access and specify it using the get and set functions. Default is [ ]. |

## Properties of an Edge Object

| Property    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ID          | Read-only string defined when the biograph object is created, internally by the biograph constructor function. Each edge object's ID is unique and used internally to identify the edge.           |
| Label       | String for labeling an edge when you display a biograph object using the view method. Default is the ID property of the edge object.                                                               |
| Description | String that describes the edge. Default is ' '. (This information is for bookkeeping purposes only.)                                                                                               |
| Weight      | Value that represents the weight (cost, distance, length, or capacity) associated with the edge. Default is 1.                                                                                     |
| LineWidth   | Positive number. Default is 1.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| LineColor   | Three-element numeric vector of RGB values that specifies the color of the edge. Default is [0.5, 0.5, 0.5], which defines gray.                                                                   |
| UserData    | Miscellaneous, user-defined data that you want to associate with the edge. The edge does not use this property, but you can access and specify it using the get and set functions. Default is [ ]. |

# biograph object

---

## Examples

### Accessing Properties of a Biograph Object

You can access properties of a biograph object, *BGobj*, by using either of the following syntaxes:

```
PropertyValue = get(BGobj, 'PropertyName')
```

```
PropertyValue = BGobj.PropertyName
```

### Accessing Allowed Values of Biograph Object Properties

You can access allowed values for any property that has a finite set of choices by using the following syntax:

```
set(BGobj, 'PropertyName')
```

### Specifying Properties of a Biograph Object

You can specify properties of a biograph object, *BGobj*, by using any of the following syntaxes:

```
set(BGobj, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue)
```

```
BGobj.PropertyName = PropertyValue
```

## See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox function: `biograph` (object constructor)

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of a biograph object:  
`allshortestpaths`, `conncomp`, `dolayout`, `getancestors`,  
`getdescendants`, `getedgesbynodeid`, `getmatrix`, `getnodesbyid`,  
`getrelatives`, `isdag`, `isomorphism`, `isspantree`, `maxflow`,  
`minspantree`, `shortestpath`, `topoorder`, `traverse`, `view`

MATLAB functions: `get`, `set`

**Purpose** Data structure containing Gene Ontology (GO) information

**Description** A geneont object is a data structure containing Gene Ontology information. Gene Ontology terms can be explored and traversed through “is\_a” and “part\_of” relationships.

**Method Summary** Following are methods of a geneont object:

|                          |                                                   |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| getancestors (geneont)   | Numeric IDs for ancestors of Gene Ontology term   |
| getdescendants (geneont) | Numeric IDs for descendants of Gene Ontology term |
| getmatrix (geneont)      | Convert geneont object into relationship matrix   |
| getrelatives (geneont)   | Numeric IDs for relatives of Gene Ontology term   |

## Property Summary

### Properties of a geneont Object

| Property          | Description                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| default_namespace | Read-only string containing the namespace to which terms are assigned.                                                                                  |
| format_version    | Read-only string containing the version of the encoding of the OBO flat format file.                                                                    |
| date              | Read-only string containing the date the OBO file was last updated.                                                                                     |
| Terms             | Read-only column vector with handles to term objects of a geneont object. For properties of term objects, see Properties of Terms Objects on page 5-12. |

# geneont object

---

## Properties of Terms Objects

| Property   | Description                                                                                                                                              |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| id         | Numeric value that corresponds to the GO ID of the GO term.<br><hr/> <b>Tip</b> You can use the num2goid function to convert id to a GO ID string. <hr/> |
| name       | String representing the name of the GO term.                                                                                                             |
| ontology   | String limited to 'molecular function', 'biological process', or 'cellular component'.                                                                   |
| definition | String that defines the GO term.                                                                                                                         |
| synonym    | Numeric array containing GO IDs of GO terms that are synonyms of this GO term.                                                                           |
| is_a       | Numeric array containing GO IDs of GO terms that have an “is_a” relationship with this GO term.                                                          |
| part_of    | Numeric array containing GO IDs that of GO terms that have a “part_of” relationship with this GO term.                                                   |
| obsolete   | Boolean value that indicates if the GO term is obsolete (1) or not obsolete (0).                                                                         |

### See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: geneont (object constructor), goannotread, num2goid

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of geneont object: getancestors, getdescendants, getmatrix, getrelatives



## Purpose

Data structure containing phylogenetic tree

## Description

A phytree object is a data structure containing a phylogenetic tree. Phylogenetic trees are binary rooted trees, which means that each branch is the parent of two other branches, two leaves, or one branch and one leaf. A phytree object can be ultrametric or nonultrametric.

## Method Summary

Following are methods of a phytree object:

|                                     |                                                           |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>get (phytree)</code>          | Information about phylogenetic tree object                |
| <code>getbyname (phytree)</code>    | Branches and leaves from phytree object                   |
| <code>getcanonical (phytree)</code> | Calculate canonical form of phylogenetic tree             |
| <code>getmatrix (phytree)</code>    | Convert phytree object into relationship matrix           |
| <code>getnewickstr (phytree)</code> | Create Newick-formatted string                            |
| <code>pdist (phytree)</code>        | Calculate pair-wise patristic distances in phytree object |
| <code>plot (phytree)</code>         | Draw phylogenetic tree                                    |
| <code>prune (phytree)</code>        | Remove branch nodes from phylogenetic tree                |
| <code>reorder (phytree)</code>      | Reorder leaves of phylogenetic tree                       |
| <code>reroot (phytree)</code>       | Change root of phylogenetic tree                          |
| <code>select (phytree)</code>       | Select tree branches and leaves in phytree object         |
| <code>subtree (phytree)</code>      | Extract phylogenetic subtree                              |

# phytree object

---

|                   |                                         |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| view (phytree)    | View phylogenetic tree                  |
| weights (phytree) | Calculate weights for phylogenetic tree |

## Property Summary

---

**Note** You cannot modify these properties directly. You can access these properties using the get method.

---

| Property    | Description                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------|
| NumLeaves   | Number of leaves                          |
| NumBranches | Number of branches                        |
| NumNodes    | Number of nodes (NumLeaves + NumBranches) |
| Pointers    | Branch to leaf/branch connectivity list   |
| Distances   | Edge length for every leaf/branch         |
| LeafNames   | Names of the leaves                       |
| BranchNames | Names of the branches                     |
| NodeNames   | Names of all the nodes                    |

## See Also

Bioinformatics Toolbox functions: `phytree` (object constructor), `phytreeread`, `phytreetool`, `phytreewrite`, `seqlinkage`, `seqneighjoin`, `seqpdist`

Bioinformatics Toolbox methods of `phytree` object: `get`, `getbyname`, `getcanonical`, `getmatrix`, `getnewickstr`, `pdist`, `plot`, `prune`, `reroot`, `select`, `subtree`, `view`, `weights`

## A

aa2int function  
reference 2-2

aa2nt function  
reference 2-5

aacount function  
reference 2-10

affyinvsetnorm function  
reference 2-14

affyprobeaffinities function  
reference 2-22

affyprobeseqread function  
reference 2-29

affyread function  
reference 2-34

agferead function  
reference 2-53

allshortestpaths method  
reference 4-2

aminolookup function  
reference 2-55

atomiccomp function  
reference 2-60

## B

basecount function  
reference 2-62

baselookup function  
reference 2-66

biograph constructor  
reference 2-69

biograph object  
reference 5-2

blastncbi function  
reference 2-79

blastread function  
reference 2-93

blosum function  
reference 2-98

## C

celintensityread function  
reference 2-100

classperf function  
reference 2-105

cleave function  
reference 2-109

clustergram function  
reference 2-112

codonbias function  
reference 2-123

codoncount function  
reference 2-126

conncomp method  
reference 4-5

cpgisland function  
reference 2-130

crossvalind function  
reference 2-133

## D

dayhoff function  
reference 2-136

dimercount function  
reference 2-137

dna2rna function  
reference 2-140

dnds function  
reference 2-141

dndsml function  
reference 2-148

dolayout method  
reference 4-8

## E

emblread function  
reference 2-153

evalrasmolscript function

- reference 2-156
- exprprofrange function
  - reference 2-158
- exprprofvar function
  - reference 2-159

## **F**

- fastaread function
  - reference 2-160
- fastawrite function
  - reference 2-163
- featuresmap
  - reference 2-165
- featuresparse
  - reference 2-175
- functions
  - aa2int 2-2
  - aa2nt 2-5
  - aaccount 2-10
  - affyinvvarsetnorm 2-14
  - affyprobeaffinities 2-22
  - affyprobeseqread 2-29
  - affyread 2-34
  - agferead 2-53
  - aminolookup 2-55
  - atomiccomp 2-60
  - basecount 2-62
  - baselookup 2-66
  - biograph constructor 2-69
  - blastncbi 2-79
  - blastread 2-93
  - blosum 2-98
  - celintensityread 2-100
  - classperf 2-105
  - cleave 2-109
  - clustergram 2-112
  - codonbias 2-123
  - codoncount 2-126
  - cpgisland 2-130
  - crossvalind 2-133
  - dayhoff 2-136
  - dimercount 2-137
  - dna2rna 2-140
  - dnds 2-141
  - dndsml 2-148
  - emblread 2-153
  - evalrasmolscript 2-156
  - exprprofrange 2-158
  - exprprofvar 2-159
  - fastaread 2-160
  - fastawrite 2-163
  - featuresmap 2-165
  - featuresparse 2-175
  - galread 2-181
  - gcrma 2-182
  - gcrmabackadj 2-191
  - genbankread 2-200
  - geneentropyfilter 2-202
  - genelowvalfilter 2-204
  - geneont 2-206
  - generangefilter 2-209
  - geneticcode 2-211
  - genevarfilter 2-213
  - genpeptread 2-215
  - geosoftread 2-218
  - getblast 2-220
  - getembl 2-226
  - getgenbank 2-229
  - getgenpept 2-232
  - getgeodata 2-235
  - gethmmalignment 2-237
  - gethmmprof 2-241
  - gethmmtree 2-246
  - getpdb 2-248
  - goannotread 2-255
  - gonnet 2-257
  - gprread 2-258
  - graphallshortestpaths 2-261
  - graphconncomp 2-268

graphisdag 2-275  
graphisomorphism 2-281  
graphisspantree 2-288  
graphmaxflow 2-290  
graphminspantree 2-298  
graphpred2path 2-304  
graphshortestpath 2-308  
graphtopoorder 2-320  
graphtraverse 2-324  
hmmprofalign 2-333  
hmmprofestimate 2-336  
hmmprofgenerate 2-339  
hmmprofmerge 2-341  
hmmprofstruct 2-343  
imageneread 2-349  
int2aa 2-352  
int2nt 2-355  
isoelectric 2-358  
jcampread 2-361  
joinseq 2-364  
knnclassify 2-365  
knnimpute 2-372  
maboxplot 2-376  
mafdr 2-379  
magetfield 2-386  
maimage 2-387  
mainvarsetnorm 2-389  
mairplot 2-397  
maloglog 2-405  
malowess 2-407  
manorm 2-409  
mapcaplot 2-412  
mattest 2-415  
mavolcanoplot 2-421  
molviewer 2-429  
molweight 2-428  
msalign 2-437  
msbackadj 2-451  
msdotplot 2-456  
msheatmap 2-462  
mslowess 2-472  
msnorm 2-477  
mspalign 2-481  
mspeaks 2-491  
msppresample 2-504  
msresample 2-512  
mssgolay 2-516  
msviewer 2-518  
multialign 2-521  
multialignread 2-530  
multialignviewer 2-532  
mzxml2peaks 2-533  
mzxmlread 2-536  
nmercount 2-539  
nt2aa 2-540  
nt2int 2-545  
ntdensity 2-547  
nuc44 2-549  
num2goid 2-550  
nwalign 2-551  
oligoprop 2-558  
optimalleaforder 2-567  
palindromes 2-571  
pam 2-573  
pdbdistplot 2-575  
pdbname 2-577  
pdbwrite 2-584  
pfamhmmread 2-587  
phytree constructor 2-588  
phytreeread 2-592  
phytreetool 2-593  
phytreewrite 2-595  
probelibraryinfo 2-597  
probesetlink 2-599  
probesetlookup 2-602  
probesetplot 2-604  
probesetvalues 2-609  
profalign 2-612  
proteinplot 2-615  
proteinpropplot 2-618

quantilenorm 2-624  
ramachandran 2-625  
randfeatures 2-627  
randseq 2-630  
rankfeatures 2-633  
rebasecuts 2-638  
redgreenmap 2-640  
restrict 2-642  
revgeneticcode 2-645  
rmabackadj 2-649  
rmasummary 2-654  
rna2dna 2-658  
samplealign 2-659  
scfread 2-678  
seq2regexp 2-681  
seqcomplement 2-684  
seqconsensus 2-685  
seqdisp 2-687  
seqdotplot 2-689  
seqinsertgaps 2-691  
seqlinkage 2-694  
seqlogo 2-696  
seqmatch 2-703  
seqneighjoin 2-704  
seqpdist 2-707  
seqprofile 2-718  
seqrcomplement 2-721  
seqreverse 2-722  
seqshoworfs 2-723  
seqshowwords 2-728  
seqtool 2-731  
seqwordcount 2-733  
showalignment 2-735  
showhmmprof 2-738  
sptread 2-740  
svmclassify 2-742  
svmsmoset 2-749  
svmtrain 2-753  
swalign 2-769  
traceplot 2-776

zonebackadj 2-777

## G

galread function  
reference 2-181  
gcrma function  
reference 2-182  
gcrmabackadj function  
reference 2-191  
genbankread function  
reference 2-200  
geneentropyfilter function  
reference 2-202  
genelowvalfilter function  
reference 2-204  
geneont function  
reference 2-206  
geneont object  
reference 5-11  
generangefilter function  
reference 2-209  
geneticcode function  
reference 2-211  
genevarfilter function  
reference 2-213  
genpeptread function  
reference 2-215  
geosoftread function  
reference 2-218  
get method  
reference 4-11  
getancestors method  
biograph object 4-13  
geneont object 4-16  
getblast function  
reference 2-220  
getbyname method  
reference 4-20  
getcanonical method

reference 4-22  
getdescendants method  
  biograph object 4-24  
  geneont object 4-27  
getedgesbynodeid method  
  reference 4-29  
getembl function  
  reference 2-226  
getgenbank function  
  reference 2-229  
getgenpept function  
  reference 2-232  
getgeodata function  
  reference 2-235  
gethmmalignment function  
  reference 2-237  
gethmmprof function  
  reference 2-241  
gethmmtree function  
  reference 2-246  
getmatrix (biograph) method  
  reference 4-31  
getmatrix (geneont) method  
  reference 4-32  
getmatrix (phytree) method  
  reference 4-33  
getnewickstr method  
  reference 4-34  
getnodesbyid method  
  reference 4-36  
getpdb function  
  reference 2-248  
getrelatives method  
  biograph object 4-38  
  geneont object 4-39  
goannotread function  
  reference 2-255  
gonnet function  
  reference 2-257  
gprread function

reference 2-258  
graphallshortestpaths function  
  reference 2-261  
graphconncomp function  
  reference 2-268  
graphisdag function  
  reference 2-275  
graphisomorphism function  
  reference 2-281  
graphisspantree function  
  reference 2-288  
graphmaxflow function  
  reference 2-290  
graphminspantree function  
  reference 2-298  
graphpred2path function  
  reference 2-304  
graphshortestpath function  
  reference 2-308  
graphtopoorder function  
  reference 2-320  
graphtraverse function  
  reference 2-324

## H

hmmprofalign function  
  reference 2-333  
hmmprofestimate function  
  reference 2-336  
hmmprofgenerate function  
  reference 2-339  
hmmprofmerge function  
  reference 2-341  
hmmprofstruct function  
  reference 2-343

## I

imageneread function

reference 2-349  
int2aa function  
reference 2-352  
int2nt function  
reference 2-355  
isdag method  
reference 4-41  
isoelectric function  
reference 2-358  
isomorphism method  
reference 4-42  
isspantree method  
reference 4-44

## J

jcampread function  
reference 2-361  
joinseq function  
reference 2-364

## K

knnclassify function  
reference 2-365  
knnimpute function  
reference 2-372

## M

maboxplot function  
reference 2-376  
mafdr function  
reference 2-379  
magetfield function  
reference 2-386  
maimage function  
reference 2-387  
mainvarsetnorm function  
reference 2-389  
mairplot function

reference 2-397  
maloglog function  
reference 2-405  
malowess function  
reference 2-407  
manorm function  
reference 2-409  
mapcaplot function  
reference 2-412  
mattest function  
reference 2-415  
mavolcanoplot function  
reference 2-421  
maxflow method  
reference 4-45  
methods  
allshortestpaths 4-2  
conncomp 4-5  
dolayout 4-8  
get 4-11  
getancestors (biograph) 4-13  
getancestors (geneont) 4-16  
getbyname 4-20  
getcanonical 4-22  
getdescendants (biograph) 4-24  
getdescendants (geneont) 4-27  
getedgesbynoid 4-29  
getmatrix (biograph) 4-31  
getmatrix (geneont) 4-32  
getmatrix (phytree) 4-33  
getnewickstr 4-34  
getnodesbyid 4-36  
getrelatives (biograph) 4-38  
getrelatives (geneont) 4-39  
isdag 4-41  
isomorphism 4-42  
isspantree 4-44  
maxflow 4-45  
minspantree 4-49  
pdist 4-52



- plot 4-54
- prune 4-57
- reorder 4-59
- reroot 4-63
- select 4-67
- shortestpath 4-70
- subtree 4-75
- topoorder 4-76
- traverse 4-77
- view (biograph) 4-80
- view (phytree) 4-82
- weights 4-83
- minspanntree method
  - reference 4-49
- molviewer function
  - reference 2-429
- molweight function
  - reference 2-428
- msalign function
  - reference 2-437
- msbackadj function
  - reference 2-451
- msdotplot function
  - reference 2-456
- msheatmap function
  - reference 2-462
- mslowess function
  - reference 2-472
- msnorm function
  - reference 2-477
- mssalign function
  - reference 2-481
- mspeaks function
  - reference 2-491
- mssppresample function
  - reference 2-504
- msresample function
  - reference 2-512
- mssgolay function
  - reference 2-516

- msviewer function
  - reference 2-518
- multialign function
  - reference 2-521
- multialignread function
  - reference 2-530
- multialignviewer function
  - reference 2-532
- mzxml2peaks function
  - reference 2-533
- mzxmlread function
  - reference 2-536

## N

- nmercount function
  - reference 2-539
- nt2aa function
  - reference 2-540
- nt2int function
  - reference 2-545
- ntdensity function
  - reference 2-547
- nuc44 function
  - reference 2-549
- num2goid function
  - reference 2-550
- nwalign function
  - reference 2-551

## O

- objects
  - biograph 5-2
  - geneont 5-11
  - phytree 5-13
- oligoprop function
  - reference 2-558
- optimalleaforder function
  - reference 2-567

**P**

palindromes function  
reference 2-571

pam function  
reference 2-573

pbdbdistplot function  
reference 2-575

pdbread function  
reference 2-577

pdbwrite function  
reference 2-584

pdist method  
reference 4-52

pfamhmmread function  
reference 2-587

phytree constructor  
reference 2-588

phytree object  
reference 5-13

phytreeread function  
reference 2-592

phytreetool function  
reference 2-593

phytreewrite function  
reference 2-595

plot method  
reference 4-54

probelibraryinfo function  
reference 2-597

probesetlink function  
reference 2-599

probesetlookup function  
reference 2-602

probesetplot function  
reference 2-604

probesetvalues function  
reference 2-609

profalign function  
reference 2-612

proteinplot function

reference 2-615

proteinpropplot function

reference 2-618

prune method

reference 4-57

**Q**

quantilenorm function

reference 2-624

**R**

ramachandran function

reference 2-625

randfeatures function

reference 2-627

randseq function

reference 2-630

rankfeatures function

reference 2-633

rebasecuts function

reference 2-638

redgreencmap function

reference 2-640

reorder method

reference 4-59

reroot method

reference 4-63

restrict function

reference 2-642

revgeneticcode function

reference 2-645

rmabackadj function

reference 2-649

rmasummary function

reference 2-654

rna2dna function

reference 2-658

**S**

samplealign function  
reference 2-659

scfread function  
reference 2-678

select method  
reference 4-67

seq2regexp function  
reference 2-681

seqcomplement function  
reference 2-684

seqconsensus function  
reference 2-685

seqdisp function  
reference 2-687

seqdotplot function  
reference 2-689

seqinsertgaps function  
reference 2-691

seqlinkage function  
reference 2-694

seqlogo function  
reference 2-696

seqmatch function  
reference 2-703

seqneighjoin function  
reference 2-704

seqpdist function  
reference 2-707

seqprofile function  
reference 2-718

seqrcomplement function  
reference 2-721

seqreverse function  
reference 2-722

seqshoworfs function  
reference 2-723

seqshowwords function  
reference 2-728

seqtool function

reference 2-731

seqwordcount function  
reference 2-733

shortestpath method  
reference 4-70

showalignment function  
reference 2-735

showhmmprof function  
reference 2-738

sptread function  
reference 2-740

subtree method  
reference 4-75

svmclassify function  
reference 2-742

svmsmoset function  
reference 2-749

svmtrain function  
reference 2-753

swalign function  
reference 2-769

**T**

topoorder method  
reference 4-76

traceplot function  
reference 2-776

traverse method  
reference 4-77

**V**

view (biograph) method  
reference 4-80

view (phytree) method  
reference 4-82

**W**

weights method

reference 4-83

reference 2-777

**Z**

zonebackadj function